

# FUJITSU Storage

## ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4 Hybrid Storage Systems

### ETERNUS CLI User's Guide



CLI operations for configuration, management, and maintenance

# Table of Contents

<b>1. Overview .....</b>	<b>19</b>
Accessing CLI .....	20
User Policy .....	21
The Command Syntax .....	23
Command Format .....	23
Keywords and Parameters .....	24
Controller Enclosure Syntax .....	25
Drive Enclosure Syntax .....	25
Drive Syntax .....	25
PFM Syntax .....	26
Alias Name Syntax .....	26
Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax .....	27
Flexible Tier Pool Syntax .....	28
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Syntax .....	28
RAID Group Syntax .....	29
Volume Syntax .....	30
Host Syntax .....	31
Host Group Syntax .....	32
Host Response Syntax .....	32
Host Interface Port Syntax .....	33
Port Group Syntax .....	33
LUN Group Syntax .....	34
Eco-mode Schedule Syntax .....	35
Domain Syntax and User ID Syntax .....	35
Size of Drives and Logical Units .....	36
Command Auto-complete and History Recall .....	36
Command Editing Hotkeys .....	37
Viewing Command Help .....	38
Error Message Format .....	39
Multiple Sessions .....	39
Slave Controller Logins .....	39
CLI User Authority .....	40
Command Descriptions .....	40

<b>2. Status Display .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Storage System Status .....	41
show status .....	43
show enclosure-status .....	44
show fru-ce .....	53
show fru-fe .....	67
show pfm .....	75
show fru-de .....	78
show disks .....	81
show hardware-information .....	85
show power-consumption .....	87
<b>3. Configuration Settings and Display .....</b>	<b>89</b>
RAID Group Management .....	89
RAID Group .....	89
show raid-groups .....	90
show raid-group-progress .....	93
create raid-group .....	95
set raid-group .....	97
delete raid-group .....	99
expand raid-group .....	100
Hot Spares .....	102
set global-spare .....	103
release global-spare .....	104
set dedicated-spare .....	105
release dedicated-spare .....	106
Eco-mode Management .....	107
show eco-mode .....	108
set eco-mode .....	109
show eco-schedule .....	110
create eco-schedule .....	112
set eco-schedule .....	115
delete eco-schedule .....	118
show eco-raid-group .....	119
set eco-raid-group .....	120
release eco-raid-group .....	122
Volume Management .....	123
Volume .....	123
show volumes .....	124
show volume-progress .....	140
show volume-mapping .....	142
create volume .....	145
set volume .....	152
delete volume .....	154
delete all-volumes .....	155
format volume .....	156
expand volume .....	158

## Table of Contents

set volume-parameters .....	161
show migration .....	164
start migration .....	166
stop migration .....	170
stop external-volume-data-synchronization .....	171
show balancing-thin-pro-volumes .....	172
start balancing-thin-pro-volume .....	174
stop balancing-thin-pro-volume .....	175
start zero-reclamation .....	176
stop zero-reclamation .....	177
show volume-qos .....	178
set volume-qos .....	179
Flexible Tier Volumes .....	180
create flexible-tier-volume .....	181
set flexible-tier-volume .....	184
format flexible-tier-volume .....	186
expand flexible-tier-volume .....	187
delete flexible-tier-volume .....	188
delete all-flexible-tier-volumes .....	189
start flexible-tier-migration .....	190
ODX Buffer Volume .....	192
show odx-mode .....	193
set odx-mode .....	194
create odx-buffer-volume .....	195
set odx-buffer-volume .....	198
delete odx-buffer-volume .....	200
Extreme Cache .....	201
show extreme-cache .....	202
set extreme-cache .....	204
release extreme-cache .....	207
set volume-exc .....	208
VVOL .....	210
show vvol-mode .....	211
set vvol-mode .....	212
show vvol-task .....	213
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool Management .....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool .....</b>	<b>217</b>
show thin-provisioning .....	221
set thin-provisioning .....	222
show thin-pro-pools .....	224
show thin-pro-pool-progress .....	229
create thin-pro-pool .....	231
set thin-pro-pool .....	235
delete thin-pro-pool .....	237
expand thin-pro-pool .....	238
format thin-pro-pool .....	240
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode Management .....</b>	<b>241</b>
show eco-thin-pro-pool .....	242

## Table of Contents

set eco-thin-pro-pool .....	243
release eco-thin-pro-pool .....	245
<b>Compression .....</b>	<b>246</b>
<b>Flexible Tier Management .....</b>	<b>250</b>
Flexible Tier Pool .....	250
show flexible-tier-mode .....	251
show flexible-tier-pools .....	252
show flexible-tier-pool-progress .....	255
delete flexible-tier-pool .....	257
show flexible-tier-sub-pools .....	258
set flexible-tier-sub-pool .....	262
stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool .....	263
FTRPE Migration .....	264
show ftrpe-migration .....	265
FTRP Balancing .....	266
show balancing-flexible-tier-pools .....	267
start balancing-flexible-tier-pool .....	269
stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool .....	270
<b>Host Interface Management .....</b>	<b>271</b>
Host Interface Port Parameters .....	275
show fc-parameters .....	276
set fc-parameters .....	281
show iscsi-parameters .....	285
set iscsi-parameters .....	290
Host Identifiers .....	300
show host-wwn-names .....	301
create host-wwn-name .....	302
set host-wwn-name .....	304
delete host-wwn-name .....	306
discover host-wwn-names .....	307
show host-iscsi-names .....	308
create host-iscsi-name .....	310
set host-iscsi-name .....	313
delete host-iscsi-name .....	316
discover host-iscsi-names .....	317
Volume Access Permission Setting with the Host Affinity Setting .....	319
show host-affinity .....	320
set host-affinity .....	326
copy host-affinity .....	330
release host-affinity .....	332
Volume Access Permission Setting without the Host Affinity Setting .....	335
show mapping .....	336
set mapping .....	340
copy mapping .....	342
release mapping .....	344
Host Groups .....	346
show host-groups .....	347

## Table of Contents

create host-group .....	350
set host-group .....	352
delete host-group .....	354
Port Groups .....	355
show port-groups .....	356
create port-group .....	358
set port-group .....	359
delete port-group .....	361
LUN Groups .....	362
show lun-groups .....	363
create lun-group .....	365
set lun-group .....	367
copy lun-group .....	369
delete lun-group .....	370
show host-path-state .....	371
set host-path-state .....	373
show host-lu-qos-performance .....	374
start host-lu-qos-performance .....	381
stop host-lu-qos-performance .....	382
Host Response .....	383
show host-response .....	384
set host-response .....	387
delete host-response .....	392
Host Sense Conversion .....	393
show host-sense .....	394
set host-sense .....	395
delete host-sense .....	397
Reset Group for Host Interface Port .....	398
show ca-reset-group .....	399
set ca-reset-group .....	400
Ping Command for iSCSI Hosts .....	401
test iscsi-ping .....	402
Host LU QoS .....	404
show qos-mode .....	405
set qos-mode .....	406
show lu-qos-groups .....	407
set lu-qos-group .....	408
delete lu-qos-group .....	409
show host-lu-qos .....	410
set host-lu-qos .....	416
show qos-schedule .....	419
set qos-schedule .....	420
delete all-qos-setting .....	423
show qos-bandwidth-limit .....	424
set qos-bandwidth-limit .....	426
Login Host Display .....	429
show ca-port-login-host .....	430

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display ..... 433

Advanced Copy Management .....	433
SnapOPC+ Outline .....	434
Preparations for the Advanced Copy Function .....	434
Copy Session Management .....	438
show advanced-copy-license .....	440
set advanced-copy-license .....	441
delete advanced-copy-license .....	442
show advanced-copy-policy .....	443
set advanced-copy-policy .....	444
show advanced-copy-parameters .....	445
set advanced-copy-parameters .....	446
show snap-data-volume .....	448
initialize snap-data-volume .....	449
show snap-data-pool .....	450
delete snap-data-pool-volume .....	451
show advanced-copy-sessions .....	452
start advanced-copy .....	457
stop advanced-copy .....	458
Remote Equivalent Copy Management .....	459
show host-port-mode .....	474
set host-port-mode .....	475
show rec-path .....	477
import rec-path .....	480
show backup-rec-path-information .....	482
export backup-rec-path .....	483
convert rec-path .....	485
set rec-path-parameters .....	487
measure rec-round-trip-time .....	488
set rec-round-trip-time .....	490
set rec-multiplicity .....	491
show rec-buffer .....	493
set rec-buffer .....	494
delete rec-buffer .....	497
show rec-disk-buffer .....	498
create rec-disk-buffer .....	500
set rec-disk-buffer .....	502
delete rec-disk-buffer .....	503
format rec-disk-buffer .....	504
release rec-disk-buffer .....	505
set rec-path-qos .....	506

## 5. System Settings and Display ..... 508

System Settings .....	508
Date, Time, and NTP .....	508
show date .....	509
set date .....	510

## Table of Contents

show ntp .....	513
set ntp .....	515
ETERNUS DX Name .....	517
show storage-system-name .....	518
set storage-system-name .....	519
Box ID .....	520
show boxid .....	521
set boxid .....	522
Subsystem Parameters .....	523
show subsystem-parameters .....	524
set subsystem-parameters .....	525
Encryption Mode .....	528
show encryption .....	529
set encryption .....	530
Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) Authentication Settings .....	531
show sed-authentication .....	532
set sed-authentication .....	533
Syslog Server Settings .....	534
show syslog-notification .....	535
set syslog-notification .....	536
Audit Log Settings .....	538
show audit .....	539
set audit .....	540
Key Management Server Linkage Function .....	542
show sed-key-machine-name .....	544
set sed-key-machine-name .....	545
show sed-key-servers .....	546
set sed-key-server .....	547
import ssl-kmip-certificate .....	548
show sed-key-groups .....	549
create sed-key-group .....	551
set sed-key-group .....	553
delete sed-key-group .....	555
change sed-key .....	556
recover sed-key-group .....	557
Power Synchronization .....	558
show power-synchronization .....	559
set power-synchronization .....	561
Power-Off/Reboot System .....	564
shutdown .....	565
Compression Mode Setting .....	566
show data-reduction .....	567
set data-reduction .....	568
Non-disruptive Storage Migration Function .....	569
show non-disruptive-storage-migration .....	575
set non-disruptive-storage-migration .....	576
discover external-storage .....	577
show external-drive .....	579
create external-drive .....	583

## Table of Contents

delete external-drive .....	585
show external-raid-group .....	586
create external-raid-group .....	589
delete external-raid-group .....	591
recover external-raid-group .....	592
<b>User Management .....</b>	<b>593</b>
Role .....	594
show role .....	595
create role .....	596
set role .....	597
delete role .....	598
User Policy .....	599
show user-policy .....	601
set user-policy .....	602
show users .....	605
create user .....	606
set user .....	608
delete user .....	610
show login-users .....	611
set password .....	612
initialize all-users .....	614
Account Authentication .....	615
import ssh-public-key .....	616
delete ssh-public-key .....	618
show maintenance-key .....	619
RADIUS Server Settings .....	621
show radius .....	622
set radius .....	624
<b>Network Management .....</b>	<b>627</b>
Network Settings .....	627
show network .....	628
set network .....	632
show firewall .....	637
set firewall .....	639
show network-stat .....	642
test network .....	646
SNMP .....	648
show snmp .....	649
set snmp .....	650
show snmp-manager .....	652
create snmp-manager .....	653
set snmp-manager .....	654
delete snmp-manager .....	655
show snmp-view .....	656
create snmp-view .....	658
set snmp-view .....	660
delete snmp-view .....	662
show snmp-user .....	663

## Table of Contents

create snmp-user .....	665
set snmp-user .....	667
delete snmp-user .....	669
show community-profile .....	670
create community-profile .....	672
set community-profile .....	674
delete community-profile .....	676
show snmp-trap .....	677
set snmp-trap .....	678
delete snmp-trap .....	680
test snmp-trap .....	681
export enhanced-mib .....	682
E-mail Notification .....	684
show email-notification .....	685
set email-notification .....	687
test email .....	692
Event Notification .....	693
show event-notification .....	694
set event-notification .....	697
show lcd-suppress .....	706
set lcd-suppress .....	707
SMI-S .....	709
show smi-s .....	710
set smi-s .....	712
SSH/SSL Security Configuration .....	714
create ssh-server-key .....	716
create ssl-certificate .....	717
export ssl-certificate-request .....	719
import ssl-certificate .....	723
show ssl-version .....	725
set ssl-version .....	726
AIS Connect Settings .....	728
show ais-connect .....	729
set ais-connect .....	731
set ais-connect-remote-session .....	736
test ais-connect .....	737
send ais-connect-log .....	738
test ais-connect-event-notification .....	739
import ais-ssl-certificate .....	740
show ais-communication-log .....	741
set remote-support-mode .....	742
Performance/Tuning .....	743
Performance Information .....	743
show performance .....	744
start performance .....	751
stop performance .....	752
Performance Tuning Parameters .....	753
show raid-tuning .....	754

## Table of Contents

set raid-tuning .....	755
show cache-parameters .....	757
set cache-parameters .....	758
<b>Event Log Information .....</b>	<b>761</b>
show events .....	762
delete events .....	764
<b>Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information .....</b>	<b>765</b>
Remote Directory .....	766
show remote-dir .....	767
Controller Firmware .....	768
show controller-firmware .....	769
Log .....	771
export log .....	772
Panic Dump .....	775
show panic-dump .....	776
export panic-dump .....	777
Configuration Information .....	779
show config-information .....	780
export config-information .....	781
Error Information .....	783
show disk-error .....	784
clear disk-error .....	785
show port-error .....	786
Bad Data Information in Volumes .....	791
show bad-data-info .....	792
<b>Utility .....</b>	<b>793</b>
Diagnostic Utilities .....	793
show diagnosis .....	794
LED .....	798
show led .....	799
set led .....	801
Other Notification .....	803
show event-parameters .....	804
set event-parameters .....	805
Reservations .....	806
show reservation .....	807
release reservation .....	809
Cache Utilities .....	810
show pinned-data .....	811
Disk Patrol .....	812
show disk-patrol .....	813
set disk-patrol .....	814

<b>6. Storage Cluster Management.....</b>	<b>815</b>
Storage Cluster .....	816
show storage-cluster-license .....	818
set storage-cluster-license .....	819
delete storage-cluster-license .....	820
show tfo-groups .....	821
create tfo-group .....	823
set tfo-group .....	826
delete tfo-group .....	829
show tfo-pair .....	831
set tfo-pair .....	837
release tfo-pair .....	838
recover tfo-pair .....	840
forced tfo-group-activate .....	842
<b>7. CLI Original Function .....</b>	<b>843</b>
CLI Environment .....	843
set clienv-force-unlock .....	844
set clienv-idle-timeout .....	845
logoff/logout/exit .....	846
help .....	847
<b>A. Error Messages/Error Codes .....</b>	<b>849</b>
Error Messages.....	849
Error Codes.....	907
Copy Session Error Codes .....	907
<b>B. List of Supported Commands .....</b>	<b>908</b>
List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model) .....	908
List of Supported Commands (Policies) .....	921
List of Supported Commands (Default Roles) .....	932
<b>C. Status List.....</b>	<b>941</b>
General Status.....	941
Component Status.....	941
Drive Status.....	942
Volume Status.....	942
Volume Usage Details .....	943
Pool Status (TPP/FTRP/FTSP Status) .....	943
RAID Group Status .....	944

---

Key Status .....	944
Key Server Status .....	945
<b>D. Default Value List .....</b>	<b>946</b>

# List of Figures

Figure 1	Relationship between TPPs and TPVs .....	219
Figure 2	Overview of the Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode setting .....	241
Figure 3	Host affinity settings (association of host groups, port groups, and LUN groups) .....	272
Figure 4	Host Affinity Mode concept .....	273
Figure 5	SnapOPC+ outline.....	434
Figure 6	Overview of the path information file.....	461
Figure 7	Example of an REC path information file .....	468
Figure 8	Overview of REC multiplicity .....	470
Figure 9	Structure of an REC disk buffer.....	472
Figure 10	Setup procedure for an REC disk buffer .....	473
Figure 11	Syslog server overview.....	534
Figure 12	Audit log function overview.....	538
Figure 13	Non-disruptive Storage Migration function overview .....	569
Figure 14	Structure of the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function .....	573
Figure 15	RADIUS server overview .....	621
Figure 16	How to register the SSL certificate .....	715

# List of Tables

Table 1	List of the US-ASCII character codes (hexadecimal) .....	24
Table 2	Drive and logical unit sizes.....	36
Table 3	List of command editing hotkeys .....	37
Table 4	Maximum number and capacity of pools.....	220
Table 5	Chunk size based on the maximum pool capacity .....	220
Table 6	Default roles and policies .....	594
Table 7	List of error messages.....	849
Table 8	List of copy session error codes.....	907
Table 9	List of supported commands for status display (of the target model) .....	908
Table 10	List of supported commands for RAID group management (of the target model) .....	908
Table 11	List of supported commands for volume management (of the target model) .....	909
Table 12	List of supported commands for Thin Provisioning Pool management (of the target model) .....	910
Table 13	List of supported commands for Flexible Tier management (of the target model) .....	911
Table 14	List of supported commands for host interface management (of the target model) .....	911
Table 15	List of supported commands for Advanced Copy management (of the target model) .....	913
Table 16	List of supported commands for system management (of the target model) .....	914
Table 17	List of supported commands for user management (of the target model) .....	916
Table 18	List of supported commands for network management (of the target model) .....	916
Table 19	List of supported commands for performance management (of the target model) .....	918
Table 20	List of supported commands for event log information management (of the target model) .....	918
Table 21	List of supported commands for maintenance operation and maintenance information management (of the target model) .....	918
Table 22	List of supported commands for utility management (of the target model) .....	919
Table 23	List of supported commands for Storage Cluster management (of the target model) .....	919
Table 24	List of supported commands for CLI original function management (of the target model) .....	920
Table 25	List of supported commands (policies) .....	921
Table 26	List of supported commands (default roles) .....	932
Table 27	List of general statuses.....	941
Table 28	List of component statuses.....	941
Table 29	List of drive statuses.....	942
Table 30	List of volume statuses.....	942
Table 31	List of volume usage details.....	943
Table 32	List of pool statuses.....	943
Table 33	List of RAID group statuses.....	944
Table 34	List of key statuses .....	944
Table 35	List of key server statuses.....	945
Table 36	List of the default values for RAID group management commands .....	946
Table 37	List of the default values for volume management commands.....	946
Table 38	List of the default values for Thin Provisioning management commands .....	946
Table 39	List of the default values for Flexible Tier management commands.....	946
Table 40	List of the default values for host interface management commands.....	947
Table 41	List of the default values for Advanced Copy management commands .....	949
Table 42	List of the default values for user management commands .....	950
Table 43	List of the default values for network management commands.....	951
Table 44	List of the default values for system management commands.....	953
Table 45	List of the default values for performance management commands.....	954
Table 46	List of the default values for maintenance operation/information management commands .....	954
Table 47	List of the default values for utility management commands .....	954
Table 48	List of the default values for Storage Cluster management commands .....	954
Table 49	List of the default values for management commands for CLI original functions .....	955

# Preface

This manual provides operational information on how to set up and manage the FUJITSU Storage ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4 Hybrid Storage Systems via the Command Line Interface (CLI).

This manual is written for controller firmware versions V11L10 and later.

First Edition  
December 2018

## Trademarks

---

Third-party trademark information related to this product is available at:

<http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/storage/eternus/trademarks.html>

## About This Manual

---

### Intended Audience

---

This manual is intended for field engineers or system administrators who configure, manage, and maintain the ETERNUS DX.

### Target Models

---

Product name	Model name
Hybrid Storage Systems	ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4

## Related Information and Documents

---

The latest version of this manual and the latest information for your model are available at:

<http://www.fujitsu.com/global/support/products/computing/storage/disk/manuals/>

Refer to the following manuals of your model as necessary:

- Overview
- Site Planning Guide
- Operation Guide (Basic)
- Configuration Guide -Server Connection-
- ETERNUS Web GUI User's Guide
- ETERNUS SF KM
- ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide
- ETERNUS vCenter Plug-in User's Guide
- ETERNUS SMI-S Server SMI-S API Reference

## Document Conventions

---

### ■ Third-party product names

- Oracle Solaris may be referred to as Solaris, Solaris Operating System, or Solaris OS.
- Microsoft® Windows Server® may be referred to as Windows Server.
- Trademark symbols such as ™ and ® are omitted in this document.

### ■ Notice symbols

The following notice symbols are used in this manual:

**Caution**

Indicates information that you need to observe when using the ETERNUS storage system. Make sure to read the information.

**Note**

Indicates information and suggestions that supplement the descriptions in this manual.

## ■ Typographic conventions

Typeface	Meaning	Example
[ ]	Brackets indicate that the enclosed parameter is optional.	<i>[parameter]</i>
[   ]	A separator within brackets indicates that only one of the separated parameters can be specified.	<i>[parameter   parameter]</i>
{   }	<p>A separator within braces indicates that only one of the separated parameters must be specified.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Note that some cases, two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma.</p>	<i>{parameter   parameter}</i>

- Italics are used to show variables such as values and characters that appear in command parameters and outputs.

## ■ ETERNUS DX/AF naming conventions

ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4 Hybrid Storage Systems are hereinafter referred to as "storage system" or "ETERNUS DX (storage systems)". For other models, refer to the following table.

Storage system models	Naming conventions
ETERNUS DX60 S4/DX100 S4/DX200 S4, ETERNUS DX500 S4/DX600 S4, ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4, ETERNUS DX60 S3/DX100 S3/DX200 S3, ETERNUS DX500 S3/DX600 S3, ETERNUS DX8100 S3/DX8700 S3/DX8900 S3 Hybrid Storage Systems, ETERNUS DX200F All-Flash Arrays	storage system
ETERNUS DX60 S4/DX100 S4/DX200 S4, ETERNUS DX500 S4/DX600 S4, ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4, ETERNUS DX60 S3/DX100 S3/DX200 S3, ETERNUS DX500 S3/DX600 S3, ETERNUS DX8100 S3/DX8700 S3/DX8900 S3 Hybrid Storage Systems	ETERNUS DX
ETERNUS DX60 S4/DX100 S4/DX200 S4, ETERNUS DX500 S4/DX600 S4, ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4 Hybrid Storage Systems	ETERNUS DX S4/S3 series
ETERNUS DX60 S3/DX100 S3/DX200 S3, ETERNUS DX500 S3/DX600 S3, ETERNUS DX8100 S3/DX8700 S3/DX8900 S3 Hybrid Storage Systems	ETERNUS DX S3 series
ETERNUS DX60 S2/DX80 S2/DX90 S2, ETERNUS DX410 S2/DX440 S2, ETERNUS DX8100 S2/DX8700 S2 Disk Storage Systems	ETERNUS DX S2 series
ETERNUS AF250 S2/AF650 S2, ETERNUS AF250/AF650 All-Flash Arrays	ETERNUS AF
ETERNUS AF250 S2/AF650 S2 All-Flash Arrays	ETERNUS AF series
ETERNUS AF250 S2/AF650 S2 All-Flash Arrays	ETERNUS AF S2
ETERNUS AF250 S2/AF650 S2 All-Flash Arrays	ETERNUS AF S2 series

# 1. Overview

---

The ETERNUS command line interface (hereinafter referred to as "CLI") is installed in controllers of the ETERNUS DX. The CLI is used for performing settings and maintenance via commands and command scripts.

This chapter describes the outlines for the CLI.

## Accessing CLI

The CLI software embedded in each ETERNUS DX controller module enables storage systems to be configured, monitored, and managed. This may be done via LAN connection to the controller module's Ethernet port, using telnet, an SSH application, or a terminal emulator on a remote administrator client. For telnet connection, a user name and password are required. For SSH, in addition to a user name and password, SSH public key authentication is also supported. For details, refer to the description of the "[import ssh-public-key](#)" command.

Default IP address, user name, and password are as follows:

IP address:	192.168.1.1
user name:	root
password:	root

The default IP address is assigned to the FST port.

The network for the MNT port or the RMT port must be configured from the "set network" command.

CLI will display the following pre-login message on the terminal:

```
ETERNUS login is required. [2010-01-01 05:38:00]
```

The date and time are the local values. However, this message may not be displayed when logged in with SSH. This is due to the fact it depends on terminal software.

### ■ Non-interactive CLI command execution

Use of SSH public key authentication enables non-interactive (scriptable) CLI command execution.  
Perform the following procedure to execute the CLI command interactively:

#### Procedure ►►► ——————

- 1 Create a key pair for SSH authentication in a client.
- 2 Convert the created public key file into IETF format.
- 3 Register the public key in the ETERNUS DX.
- 4 Check that CLI is available in the ETERNUS DX by using the public key authentication.
- 5 Execute a CLI command using a here document in the SSH client.



## 1. Overview

### Accessing CLI

#### Example(s)

```
$ ssh-keygen -t rsa -N "" -f ~/.ssh/identity
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Your identification has been saved in /home/foo/.ssh/identity.
Your public key has been saved in /home/foo/.ssh/identity.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00 foo@192.168.0.100
$ ssh-keygen -e -f .ssh/identity.pub > identity.pub.ietf
$ telnet 192.168.0.101
Trying 192.168.0.101...
Connected to 192.168.0.101 (192.168.0.101).
Escape character is '^>'.
ETERNUS login is required. [2011-11-11 11:11:11]
Login:foo
Password:

CLI> import ssh-public-key -server 192.168.0.100 -port maintenance -user foo -filename identity.pub.ietf -account-name foo
Password :
    importing ./identity.pub.ietf from 192.168.0.100
CLI> exit
$ rm identity.pub.ietf
$ ssh foo@192.168.0.101

CLI> exit
$ echo show status | ssh foo@192.168.0.101
CLI> show status
Summary Status [Normal]
CLI> $
$ ssh foo@192.168.0.101 show smi-s
CLI> show smi-s
SMI-S           [Disable]
CLI> $
```

For details, refer to ["SSH/SSL Security Configuration" \(page 714\)](#).

## User Policy

User policies (password policy and account lockout policy) can be applied to the user account (username and password) that is used during the log in process. Depending on the user policy setting, a message might be displayed during the log in process or the account might be locked out.

For information about user policies, refer to ["User Policy" \(page 599\)](#).

### ■ Password expiration

If the password expiration is set with the password policy, the password must be changed on a regular basis. If the password is close to expiring or is already expired, a message is displayed during the log in process.

- If the password expires within 14 days

A message prompting for a password change is displayed.

- If the password expires within 14 days

Your password will expire in 14 days.

- If the password expires in zero days (under 24 hours)

Your password will expire in 24 hours.

- If the password is expired

A message forcing a password change is displayed.

Your password has expired.  
You must change your password using 'set password' and log in again.

If the password has expired, only the following commands can be used.

- logoff/logout/exit
- set clienv-force-unlock
- show maintenance-key
- apply controller-firmware
- show diagnosis -type raid-groups
- show diagnosis -type disks
- stop diagnosis -type raid-groups (\*1)
- stop diagnosis -type disks (\*1)
- clear diagnosis -type raid-groups (\*1)
- clear diagnosis -type disks (\*1)
- set password (\*2)

\*1: The Maintenance Operation policy is required.

\*2: The "-name" parameter of the "set password" command cannot be specified. If the "-name" parameter is specified, the error message "E8007" is displayed.

If the message for a password change is displayed, change the password using the "set password" command.  
The usage restriction on the commands is removed when the account is logged back in after the password change.

## ■ Account lockout

If the number of logon failures for a lockout is set in the account lockout policy, when the wrong password is entered in succession, that account cannot log in for a fixed period of time.

# The Command Syntax

---

This section explains command syntax.

## Command Format

---

The command format is as follows:

Command name Parameter Parameter ... Parameter

command-name: Verb section + Object section (Ex: create volume)

parameter: Hyphen(-) + Parameter name section + Operand section (Ex: -n 80)

- Basically, a command name consists of a verb section and an object section (Example: "create volume"). However, there are also some commands that consist of one word (Example: "logoff" and "shutdown").
- A parameter consists of a parameter name section and an operand section. A parameter name is appended with a hyphen (-) before it (Example: "-name").
- An operand is always required after a parameter name (Example: "-name abcdef").
- The maximum length of the CLI command including the command names and the parameters is 5,120 characters.

## Keywords and Parameters

---

Command and parameter names are not case-sensitive and can be entered in either or both uppercase and lowercase. Operands, however, are case-sensitive. Any of the printable US-ASCII codes 0x20 – 0x7E (hexadecimal notation) are allowed as input characters. Note that the following additional restrictions apply:

- Question marks (?) cannot be used.
- When spaces ( ) are used as characters, they must be enclosed by double quotation marks (") (Example: "ABC DEF","ABC DEF,GHIJKL").
- When double quotation marks ("") and single quotation marks ('') are used as characters, they must be escaped with a backslash (\). Example: \"

A list of the US-ASCII character codes (hexadecimal) is shown below.

Table 1 List of the US-ASCII character codes (hexadecimal)

Symbol	US-ASCII code	Symbol	US-ASCII code	Symbol	US-ASCII code	Symbol	US-ASCII code
(space)	0x20	8	0x38	P	0x50	h	0x68
!	0x21	9	0x39	Q	0x51	i	0x69
"	0x22	:	0x3A	R	0x52	j	0x6A
#	0x23	;	0x3B	S	0x53	k	0x6B
\$	0x24	<	0x3C	T	0x54	l	0x6C
%	0x25	=	0x3D	U	0x55	m	0x6D
&	0x26	>	0x3E	V	0x56	n	0x6E
'	0x27	?	0x3F	W	0x57	o	0x6F
(	0x28	@	0x40	X	0x58	p	0x70
)	0x29	A	0x41	Y	0x59	q	0x71
*	0x2A	B	0x42	Z	0x5A	r	0x72
+	0x2B	C	0x43	[	0x5B	s	0x73
,	0x2C	D	0x44	\	0x5C	t	0x74
-	0x2D	E	0x45	]	0x5D	u	0x75
.	0x2E	F	0x46	^	0x5E	v	0x76
/	0x2F	G	0x47	_	0x5F	w	0x77
0	0x30	H	0x48	'	0x60	x	0x78
1	0x31	I	0x49	a	0x61	y	0x79
2	0x32	J	0x4A	b	0x62	z	0x7A
3	0x33	K	0x4B	c	0x63	{	0x7B
4	0x34	L	0x4C	d	0x64		0x7C
5	0x35	M	0x4D	e	0x65	}	0x7D
6	0x36	N	0x4E	f	0x66	~	0x7E
7	0x37	O	0x4F	g	0x67		

## Controller Enclosure Syntax

---

For the DX8900 S4, the controller enclosure syntax is used when specifying the controller enclosure number. The format is indicated by an "x" (hexadecimal number). The range is 0 to b.

## Drive Enclosure Syntax

---

The format that can be used for drive enclosure numbers is either "xx" or "x" ("xx" and "x" indicate hexadecimal numbers). "xx" indicates a two-digit number for the drive enclosure number and "x" indicates a one-digit number for the drive enclosure number. When a two-digit enclosure number is specified, the format "xx" must be used. When a one-digit enclosure number is specified, either format can be specified. For example, "1" can be specified for a one-digit number. However, if the format "xx" is used, 0 must be specified before the enclosure number. For example, when an enclosure number is 1, "01" must be specified.

The specifiable ranges are as follows.

DX8100 S4: 01 and 10

DX8900 S4: 0 to bf

## Drive Syntax

---

The format that can be used for drive numbers is either "xxyy" or "xyy".

"xx" or "x" indicates the enclosure number. If drives are installed in a controller enclosure, 00 or 0 indicates the controller enclosure. For details, refer to "[Drive Enclosure Syntax](#) (page 25).

The "yy" is the drive number (a two-digit decimal). The specifiable ranges for "yy" are as follows.

3.5" drive: 00 to 11

2.5" drive: 00 to 23

3.5" drive in a high-density drive enclosure: 00 to 59 (\*1)

\*1: 3.5" drives (only for high-density drive enclosures)

Drive numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single drive number: 1003
- A list of drive numbers: 1003,004
- A hyphenated range of drive numbers from *a* to *z*: 0210-0211
- A list of drive numbers, drive ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 0003,0006,010-011

## PFM Syntax

---

The format that can be used for PFM numbers is "xy".

"x" indicates a single-digit controller enclosure number. The specifiable range for the "x" is from 0 to b. "x" can be omitted only if the PFM to be specified is installed in CE#0.

"y" is a single-digit PFM slot number. The specifiable range for the "y" is from 0 to 7. PFMs and drives use the same slots in the controller enclosure. The corresponding PFM slot numbers and drive slot numbers are as follows:

- PFM Slot#0 : Drive Slot #16
- PFM Slot#1 : Drive Slot #17
- PFM Slot#2 : Drive Slot #18
- PFM Slot#3 : Drive Slot #19
- PFM Slot#4 : Drive Slot #20
- PFM Slot#5 : Drive Slot #21
- PFM Slot#6 : Drive Slot #22
- PFM Slot#7 : Drive Slot #23

For example, "07" is the PFM number for the PFM installed in Drive Slot #23 (PFM Slot#7) of CE#0.

## Alias Name Syntax

---

The format of an alias is a character string that has a maximum of 16 US-ASCII characters. However, a maximum of 32 characters can be specified only for volume names. Usable characters are those given in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#) of the document overview. Commas (,) cannot be used.

## Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax

---

There are two methods for specifying Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers; Thin Provisioning Pool numbers or Thin Provisioning Pool names.

- **Thin Provisioning Pool number**

A Thin Provisioning Pool number is automatically created by the system when a Thin Provisioning Pool is created. This is a decimal number. Thin Provisioning Pool numbers can be displayed by using the "show thin-pro-pools" command.

Thin Provisioning Pool numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single Thin Provisioning Pool number: 1
- A list of Thin Provisioning Pool numbers: 1,8,12
- A hyphenated range of Thin Provisioning Pool numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of Thin Provisioning Pool numbers, Thin Provisioning Pool ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **Thin Provisioning Pool name**

A Thin Provisioning Pool name must be specified when creating a Thin Provisioning Pool. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of Thin Provisioning Pool names. A Thin Provisioning Pool name and a Thin Provisioning Pool number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

- Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.
  - Since Thin Provisioning Pools and Flexible Tier Sub Pools (FTSP) use the same resource, the same number and name cannot be used for both a Thin Provisioning Pool and an FTSP. If the Thin Provisioning Pool number or the Thin Provisioning Pool name that is specified for a command is already used for an FTSP, the command is not executed.
-

## Flexible Tier Pool Syntax

---

There are two methods for identifying an entered Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP); FTRP numbers or FTRP names.

- **FTRP number**

An FTRP number is automatically created by the system when an FTRP is created. This is a decimal number. FTRP numbers can be displayed by using the "show flexible-tier-pools" command.

FTRP numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single FTRP number: 1
- A list of FTRP numbers: 1,8,12
- A hyphenated range of FTRP numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of FTRP numbers, ranges, or both, separated by commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **FTRP name**

An FTRP name must be specified when creating an FTRP. For details about the syntax, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of FTRP names. An FTRP name and an FTRP number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Flexible Tier Sub Pool Syntax

---

There are two methods for identifying an entered Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP); FTSP numbers or FTSP names.

- **FTSP number**

An FTSP number is automatically created by the system when an FTSP is created. This is a decimal number. FTSP numbers can be displayed by using the "show flexible-tier-sub-pools" command.

FTSP numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single FTSP number: 1
- A list of FTSP numbers: 1,8,12
- A hyphenated range of FTSP numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of FTSP numbers, ranges, or both, separated by commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **FTSP name**

An FTSP name must be specified when creating an FTSP. For details about the syntax, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of FTSP names. An FTSP name and an FTSP number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

- Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.
  - Since Thin Provisioning Pools and FTSPs use the same resource, the same number and name cannot be used for both a Thin Provisioning Pool and an FTSP. If the FTSP number or FTSP name that is specified for a command is already used for a Thin Provisioning Pool, the command is not executed.
-

## RAID Group Syntax

---

There are two methods for specifying RAID group identifiers; RAID group numbers or RAID group names.

- RAID group number

A RAID group number is automatically created by the system when a RAID group is created. This is a decimal number. RAID group numbers can be displayed by using the "show raid-groups" command or the "show external-raid-groups" command.

RAID group numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single RAID group number: 1
- A list of RAID group numbers: 1,8,12
- A hyphenated range of RAID group numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of RAID group numbers, RAID group ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- RAID group name

A RAID group name must be specified when creating a RAID group. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" ([page 26](#)). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of RAID group names. A RAID group name and a RAID group number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Volume Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify a volume identifier; a volume number or a volume name.

- **Volume number**

A volume number is automatically created by the system when a volume is created. This is a decimal number. Volume numbers can be displayed by using the "show volumes" command.

Volume numbers may be combined as follows:

- A volume number: 1
- A list of volume numbers: 5,10
- A hyphenated range of volume numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of volume numbers, volume ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **Volume name**

When creating new volumes or when changing volume names, the following character strings cannot be used as a prefix:

- \$SYSVOL
- \$VVOL\_META
- \$DATA\_CNTNR (Data Container Volume)

To specify a volume name, use the volume name that is set when the volume is created. Note that this does not apply when a volume is created or renamed.

For details about the syntax, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of volume names. A volume name and a volume number cannot both be specified in the same command unless a volume is created or renamed. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Host Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify a host identifier; a host number or a host name.

- Host number

A host number is automatically created by the system when a host identifier or a host alias is registered. This is a decimal number.

The following types of host identifier are available:

- Host WWN name (FC)
- iSCSI host name (iSCSI)

The identifier can be displayed by using the following commands:

- "show host-wwn-names"
- "show host-iscsi-names"

Host numbers may be combined as follows:

- A single host number: 1
- A list of host numbers: 2,3
- A hyphenated range of host numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of host numbers, host ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- Host name

A host alias must be specified when registering a host identifier. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" ([page 26](#)). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of host names. A host name and a host number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Host Group Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify an host group identifier; an host group number or an host group name.

- Host group number  
An host group number is automatically created by the system when an host group is created. This is a decimal number. Host group numbers can be displayed by using the "show host-groups" command.  
Host group numbers may be combined as follows:
  - A single host group number: 1
  - A list of host group numbers: 2,8
  - A hyphenated range of host group numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
  - A list of host group numbers, host group ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12
- Host group name  
An host group name must be specified when creating an host group. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of host group names. An host group name and an host group number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

### Caution

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Host Response Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify a host response identifier; a host response number or a host response name.

- Host response number  
The host response number can be assigned by the user. This is a decimal number. A host response number of "#0" is the system default and it cannot be assigned by the user. However, the parameters for host response #0 can be changed. Host response settings can be displayed by using the "show host-response" command.  
Host response numbers may be combined as follows:
  - A single host response number: 1
  - A list of host response numbers: 2,5
  - A hyphenated range of host response numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
  - A list of host response numbers, host response ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12
- Host response name  
A host response name must be specified when registering a host response. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of host response names. A host response name and a host response number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

### Caution

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Host Interface Port Syntax

---

The format of the host interface port is indicated as "xyz" or "wxyz".

- For the DX8100 S4

A fixed 3-digit "xyz" numbering format is used for the host interface port.  
The controller module (CM) number is indicated with an "x", the channel adapter (CA) number is indicated with a "y", and the host interface port number is indicated with a "z".  
For example, "110" indicates CM#1-CA#1-Port#0.  
Multiple parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). To indicate both CM#0-CA#0-Port#0 and CM#1-CA#1-Port#0, specify "-port 000,110".

- For the DX8900 S4

A fixed 4-digit "wxyz" numbering format is used for the host interface port.  
The controller enclosure (CE) number is indicated with a "w", the controller module (CM) number is indicated with an "x", the channel adapter (CA) number is indicated with a "y", and the host interface port number is indicated with a "z".  
The values 0 to b (hex) can be specified for "w", 0 to 1 for "x", 0 to 3 for "y", and 0 to 3 for "z".  
For example, "0110" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#1-Port#0.  
Multiple parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). To indicate both CE#0-CM#0-CA#0-Port#0 and CE#1-CM#0-CA#1-Port#0, specify "-port 0000,1010".

## Port Group Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify a port group identifier; a port group number or a port group name.

- Port group number

A port group number is automatically created by the system when a port group is created. This is a decimal number.  
Port group numbers can be displayed by using the "show port-groups" command.

Port group numbers may be combined as follows:

- A single port group number: 1
- A list of port group numbers: 2,8
- A hyphenated range of port group numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of port group numbers, port group ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- Port group name

A port group name must be specified when creating a port group. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax \(page 26\)](#)". Some commands accept a comma-separated list of port group names. A port group name and a port group number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## LUN Group Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify a LUN group identifier; a LUN group number or a LUN group name.

---

### Note

In GUI, "LUN group number" and "LUN group name" is respectively displayed instead of "affinity group number" and "affinity group name".

---

- **LUN group number**

A LUN group number is automatically created by the system when a LUN group is created. This is a decimal number. LUN group numbers can be displayed by using the "show lun-groups" command.

LUN group numbers can be combined as follows:

- A single LUN group number: 1
- A list of LUN group numbers: 2,8
- A hyphenated range of LUN group numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of LUN group numbers, LUN group ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **LUN group name**

A LUN group name must be specified when creating a LUN group. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" ([page 26](#)). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of LUN group names. A LUN group name and a LUN group number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

### Caution

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Eco-mode Schedule Syntax

---

There are two methods to specify an Eco-mode schedule identifier; an Eco-mode schedule number or an Eco-mode schedule name.

- **Eco-mode schedule number**

An Eco-mode schedule number is automatically created by the system when an Eco-mode schedule is created. This is a decimal number. Eco-mode schedule numbers can be displayed by using the "show eco-schedule" command.

Eco-mode schedule numbers may be combined as follows:

- A single Eco-mode schedule number: 1
- A list of Eco-mode schedule numbers: 2,5
- A hyphenated range of Eco-mode schedule numbers from *a* to *z*: 2-5
- A list of Eco-mode schedule numbers, Eco-mode schedule ranges, or both, separated by commas (,). Spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,): 1,3,10-12

- **Eco-mode schedule name**

An Eco-mode schedule name must be specified when creating an Eco-mode schedule. For details about the syntax, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26). Some commands accept a comma-separated list of Eco-mode schedule names. An Eco-mode schedule name and an Eco-mode schedule number cannot both be specified in the same command. Do not include spaces before or after commas (,).

---

**Caution**

Two or more parameters might not be able to be specified for several commands. For details, refer to the command descriptions.

---

## Domain Syntax and User ID Syntax

---

Specify domain names and domain administrator user IDs with a range of 1 to 255 characters.

Alphanumeric characters and symbols (US-ASCII code 0x20 to 0x7E) can be used.

However, "?" (US-ASCII code 0x3F) and "\\" (US-ASCII code 0x5C) cannot be used.

## 1. Overview

### Size of Drives and Logical Units

## Size of Drives and Logical Units

---

The size of drives and logical units (such as RAID groups and volumes) are presented in base 2 (binary) formats.

Table 2 Drive and logical unit sizes

Unit	Size in binary
Kilobyte (KB)	1024 bytes
Megabyte (MB)	1024KB (1,048,576 bytes)
Gigabyte (GB)	1024MB (1,073,741,824 bytes)
Terabyte (TB)	1024GB (109,951,162,776 bytes)
Petabyte (PB)	1024TB (1,125,899,906,842,624 bytes)

In some size presentations, the units are converted as follows in consideration of readability:

0.00KB to 1023.99KB

1.00MB to 1023.99MB

1.00GB to 1023.99GB

1.00TB to 1023.99TB

1.00PB and later

## Command Auto-complete and History Recall

---

CLI supports an auto-complete command function and also a command history recall function. When using the auto-complete command function, if too few letters are entered to uniquely identify a keyword, the CLI lists keywords that match the entered string and redisplays the string so it can be completed. The auto-complete function applies to a command name, a parameter name and an operand name. It does NOT apply when two or more operands are used that are separated with a comma (,). Except for operand names, even if not all the letters of the keyword are not entered, once enough letters are entered to identify a unique keyword, it is handled as a complete character string.

The history contains all the commands entered in the active CLI session. A command from the history can be recalled, edited, and run.

For details about usable keys, refer to ["Command Editing Hotkeys" \(page 37\)](#).

## Command Editing Hotkeys

---

The following table lists the CLI command editing functions:

Table 3 List of command editing hotkeys

To	Press
Complete a partially entered keyword	Tab
Get previous command from history	Up Arrow, Ctrl-P, or Ctrl-p
Get next command from history	Down Arrow, Ctrl-N, or Ctrl-n
Move cursor left	Left Arrow, Ctrl-B, or Ctrl-b
Move cursor right	Right Arrow, Ctrl-F, or Ctrl-f
Move back one word	Esc-B or Esc-b
Move forward one word	Esc-F or Esc-f
Move cursor to start of line	Ctrl-A or Ctrl-a
Move cursor to end of line	Ctrl-E or Ctrl-e
Transpose current and previous character	Ctrl-T or Ctrl-t
Delete current character	Ctrl-D or Ctrl-d
Delete previous character	Ctrl-H or Ctrl-h
Delete word up to cursor	Ctrl-W or Ctrl-w
Delete rest of word	Esc-D or Esc-d
Delete text up to cursor	Ctrl-U or Ctrl-u
Delete the rest of a line	Ctrl-K or Ctrl-k
Convert the rest of a word to uppercase	Esc-C or Esc-c
Convert the rest of a word to lowercase	Esc-L or Esc-l
Enter command and redisplay prompt	Ctrl-Z or Ctrl-z
Refresh input line	Ctrl-L or Ctrl-l

## 1. Overview

### Viewing Command Help

## Viewing Command Help

By inputting a question mark (?) after the CLI command name or the parameter name, a brief description can be displayed. By using the "help" command, the command syntax can also be displayed. For further information, refer to the "[help](#)" command.

# If a question mark [?] is entered by itself, the entire verb list is displayed.

```
CLI> ?
copy           - copy
create         - create
delete         - delete
discover       - discover
exit           - Exit the CLI sessions.
... (snip)
```

# If [s?] is entered, all the verbs beginning with "s" are displayed.

```
CLI> s?
set            show          start          stop
```

# If [show ?] is entered (note the space between the "show" and "?"), only the "show" command is possible, so all the "show" command objects are displayed.

```
CLI> show ?
advanced-copy-licens - Display the Extended Advanced Copy license status.
advanced-copy-parame - Display the Advanced Copy parameters.
advanced-copy-policy - Display the currently registered Advance Copy policy.
advanced-copy-sessio - Display the list of Advance Copy sessions.
lun-groups          - Display a list of lun groups or display the details of a specified lun group.
... (snip)
```

# If [show m?] is entered, all the "show" command objects beginning with "m" are displayed.

```
CLI> show m?
mapping        migration
```

# If [create raid-group ?] is entered (note the space between the "create raid-group" and "?"), the parameters that can be specified for the "create raid-group" command are displayed.

# Bracketed parameters are optional. All other parameters are required.

```
CLI> create raid-group ?
-name          - Name of a RAID group
-disks         - Disks to use in the RAID group
-level         - RAID level
[-assigned-cm] - Assigned controller for the RAID group
```

# Long parameters and command names are truncated at 20 characters, as in the following example.

# Note that one or more spaces are required before a question mark.

```
CLI> show host-response ?
[-host-response-num - Host response numbers to display details
[-host-response-nam - Host response names to display details
```

## Error Message Format

---

This section explains the CLI error messages format. For commands other than "show" commands that display information, if the CLI command ends normally, there is no output on the terminal. The CLI prompt is returned to the next line. If an error occurs, an error message is displayed. For further details of the error messages, refer to "["A. Error Messages/Error Codes" \(page 849\)](#)".

```
Error: E0019 Inconsistent parameter.  
      A   B  
      [001C-0002] -disks 003  
      C   D
```

- A: Error message number (E + 4-digit fixed number)
- B: Error message (human-readable message)
- C: Internal error code (4-digit fixed number + hyphen + 4-digit fixed number)
- D: Details (the specified parameters, etc.)

Note that there are messages without an error message number. The location of the error is indicated by a circumflex (^). This will display where there is a syntax error. Check the input parameters and the error message as indicated by the circumflex (^).

The following are examples.

```
CLI> create raid-group ^a  
Error: Missing parameter data
```

```
CLI> show disks -de 1 ^-de 2
```

## Multiple Sessions

---

A maximum of 16 CLI sessions can run on a single system simultaneously (including accesses with the Software role). A session for an exclusive resource may conflict with a GUI session or another CLI session. When a resource is locked by exclusive access control, the command terminates with an error message. If this occurs, wait until the GUI session or another CLI session that uses the locked resource completes, and then execute the command again. Resources can be forcibly released by using the "set clienv-force-unlock" command. This is useful when a terminal is suddenly disconnected or unexpected errors occur.

## Slave Controller Logins

---

For the ETERNUS DX, there is always one controller that is the master and the rest are slaves. Normal logins are to the master controller, and are able to access all the normal functions. However, if the master controller becomes inaccessible, a redundant IP address function is available that allows a (reduced functionality) login to the slave controller. Slave controller login is only possible if a redundant IP address has been preset, and only some of the "show" commands to check the status of components are available. It also allows the "change master" command to be used to forcibly swap the master-slave relationship of the two controllers. The "change master" command can only be used by a user account that has the Maintenance Operation policy and that is logged in to the slave controller. Commands that are not supported by the current login type will fail with an error message if attempted.

# CLI User Authority

---

User authority is determined by the role and policy. For details on roles and policies, refer to ["User Management" \(page 593\)](#).

## Command Descriptions

---

This section explains the commands in a functional order. Each command topic includes one or more of the following sections.

- Description  
A description of the command
- Syntax  
The command syntax
- Parameters  
A description of parameter(s)
- Output (only for reference commands)  
A description of information displayed by the command
- Example(s)  
One or more examples of the command

## 2. Status Display

---

This chapter explains the commands related to storage system status.

### Storage System Status

---

This section explains the commands that display the status of the system.

- Summary status

Display Items	The command syntax
Summary status of the system	<code>show status</code>

- Enclosure status

Display Items	The command syntax
Summary status of each enclosure	<code>show enclosure-status</code>
Controller enclosure status	<code>show enclosure-status -type ce</code>
Drive enclosure status	<code>show enclosure-status -type de -de enclosure_number</code>
Status of the controller enclosure and all drive enclosures	<code>show enclosure-status -type all</code>

- Component status of the controller enclosure

Display Items	The command syntax
Controller module status	<code>show fru-ce -type {cm0   cm1}</code>
PSU status in the controller enclosures	<code>show fru-ce -type {psu0   psu1}</code>
Status of a specific controller enclosure	<code>show fru-ce -type {ce0   ce1   ce2   ce3   ce4   ce5   ce6   ce7   ce8   ce9   cea   ceb}</code>
Status of a specific CM in the controller enclosure	<code>show fru-ce -type {ce0cm0   ce0cm1   ce1cm0   ce1cm1   ce2cm0   ce2cm1   ce3cm0   ce3cm1   ce4cm0   ce4cm1   ce5cm0   ce5cm1   ce6cm0   ce6cm1   ce7cm0   ce7cm1   ce8cm0   ce8cm1   ce9cm0   ce9cm1   ceacm0   ceacm1   cebcm0   cebcm1}</code>
Status of a specific PSU in the controller enclosure	<code>show fru-ce -type {ce0psu0   ce0psu1   ce1psu0   ce1psu1   ce2psu0   ce2psu1   ce3psu0   ce3psu1   ce4psu0   ce4psu1   ce5psu0   ce5psu1   ce6psu0   ce6psu1   ce7psu0   ce7psu1   ce8psu0   ce8psu1   ce9psu0   ce9psu1   ceapsu0   ceapsu1   cebpsu0   cebpsu1}</code>
Status of all the components in the controller enclosure	<code>show fru-ce</code>

- Component status of the frontend enclosure

Display Items	The command syntax
Status of the SVC in the frontend enclosure	<code>show fru-fe -type {svc0   svc1}</code>
Status of the FRT in the frontend enclosure	<code>show fru-fe -type {frt0   frt1   frt2   frt3}</code>
Status of the PSU in the frontend enclosure	<code>show fru-fe -type {psu0   psu1   psu2   psu3}</code>
Status of all the components in the frontend enclosure	<code>show fru-fe</code>

## 2. Status Display

### Storage System Status

- component status of the drive enclosure

Display Items	The command syntax
Status of the expander in a specific drive enclosure	show fru-de -de <i>enclosure_number</i> -type {exp0   exp1}
Status of all the expanders in all drive enclosures	show fru-de -type {exp0   exp1}
Status of the Fan Expander Module in a specific drive enclosure	show fru-de -de <i>enclosure_number</i> -type {fem0   fem1}
Status of all the Fan Expander Modules in all drive enclosures	show fru-de -type {fem0   fem1}
Status of the PSU in a specific drive enclosure	show fru-de -de <i>enclosure_number</i> -type {psu0   psu1   psu2   psu3}
Status of all the PSUs in all drive enclosures	show fru-de -type {psu0   psu1   psu2   psu3}
Status of all the components in a specific drive enclosure	show fru-de -de <i>enclosure_number</i>
Status of all the components in all drive enclosures	show fru-de

- Drive status

Display Items	The command syntax
Status of all the undefined drives	show disks -type undefined
Status of all the drives in the controller enclosure	show disks -type ce
Status of all the drives in the specified controller enclosure	show disks -type ce -ce <i>enclosure_number</i>
Status of all the drives in a specific drive enclosure	show disks -type de -de <i>enclosure_number</i>
Details of specific drives	show disks -disks disks
Details of all drives	show disks -disks all
Product IDs of all drives	show disks -disks productid

- Hardware information

Display Items	The command syntax
Hardware information	show hardware-information

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show status

### show status

This command displays a summary of the system status. It will display if any components in the system are in an error or warning condition. It does not indicate if hosts are able to access the system.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show status
```

#### ■ Parameters

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Summary status	Summary of the system status.
Empty	The ETERNUS DX is not defined or installed.
Normal	The ETERNUS DX is in normal state.
Pinned Data	PIN data exists in the ETERNUS DX.
Unused	An undefined component is installed in the ETERNUS DX.
Warning	A component that is the target for preventive maintenance exists in the ETERNUS DX.
Maintenance	Maintenance is currently being performed on the ETERNUS DX.
Error	A component with an error exists in the ETERNUS DX.
Loop Down	The ETERNUS DX is in the BackEnd Down state.
Not Ready	"Not Ready" is a status where an abnormality is detected at a power-off, and I/O access from the host cannot be received.
Subsystem Down	The ETERNUS DX is not available.
Change Assigned CM	Hot expansion and recovery of the controller is required.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of the system status:

```
CLI> show status
Summary Status [Normal]

CLI> show status
Summary Status [Error]

CLI> show status
Summary Status [Warning]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

### show enclosure-status

This command displays a summary of the controller enclosure, frontend enclosure or the drive enclosure status. Details will be displayed if the type of enclosure is specified.

#### Syntax

```
show enclosure-status [-type {all | ce | fe | de [-ce enclosure_number] [-de enclosure_number]}]
```

#### Parameter

- type      Optional. This parameter specifies the enclosure type. If omitted, only summary information will be displayed.
- all        Detailed status of both the controller enclosure and all the drive enclosures are displayed.
  - ce        Detailed status of the controller enclosure is displayed.
  - fe        Detailed status of the frontend enclosure is displayed (for the DX8900 S4 only).
  - de        Detailed status of the specified drive enclosure is displayed.
- ce      Optional. This parameter can specify the controller enclosure number only when "ce" is specified for "-type" (for the DX8900 S4 only). For details, refer to ["Controller Enclosure Syntax" \(page 25\)](#). If omitted, all the controller enclosures are selected.
- Example: -type ce -ce 1  
(When specifying controller enclosure #1)
- de      Optional. This parameter can specify the drive enclosure number only when "de" is specified for "-type". For details, refer to ["Drive Enclosure Syntax" \(page 25\)](#). If omitted, all the drive enclosures are selected.
- Example: -type de -de 1  
(When specifying drive enclosure #1)

#### Output

The following information is the output information when all the parameters are omitted.

Item name	Description
Storage System Name	ETERNUS DX name
Model Name	Model name of the system
Serial Number	Serial number of the system
Device Identification Number	Device identification number used by the ETERNUS Multipath Driver or other external software to identify the storage system.
Status	Status of the system
Cache Mode	The cache control mode (Write Back Mode or Write Through [factors]) For Write Through Mode, the main cause is displayed in "(factors)". The factors for all the CMs are collected and if there are multiple factors, they are shown separated with a slash (/).
Write Through (Pinned Data)	A large amount of pinned data was generated.
Write Through(Battery)	The battery charge rate is low.

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

Item name	Description
Write Through (Maintenance)	The following maintenance operation is currently running: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hot controller firmware update</li><li>• Changing the controlling CM of the RAID group</li><li>• Hot expanding the CM</li></ul>
Write Through(1CM)	The ETERNUS DX is operating with only one CM.
Remote Support	The remote support state (Operating, Maintenance, Stopping, or Not yet Set) Stopping indicates a temporarily stopped status.
Operation Mode	The operation mode (Normal [normal operation mode] or Maintenance Mode [Maintenance mode])
CLI Connecting Controller Module	Controller module that has an active CLI connection.
Firmware Version	Current firmware version Example: Firmware Version [V11L10-0000]
Controller Enclosure	Controller enclosure status
Frontend Enclosure	Frontend enclosure status (Only for the DX8900 S4)
Drive Enclosure #n	Indicates the number of the drive enclosure and its status The character string, "#n", in the field indicates the drive enclosure number.  Example: Drive Enclosure #01 (2.5" 24DE) [ status ] (For the status of drive enclosure #01 [2.5" type 24-drive DE])

The following information is output for the controller enclosure components.

Item name	Description
Intake Temp	Intake temperature status, status code, and intake temperature values. Each controller has two redundant intake temperature sensors, and both temperature values is displayed in Celsius. If a sensor fails, "Failed" is displayed.
Exhaust Temp	Exhaust temperature status, status code, and exhaust temperature values. Each controller has two redundant exhaust temperature sensors, and both temperature values is displayed in Celsius. If a sensor fails, "Failed" is displayed.
CM#n	Controller Module status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the controller module number.  Example: CM#1 [Status / Status Code] (For controller module#1)
PFM#x	PCIe Flash Module status and the status code (only for the DX8900 S4). The "#x" in the field indicates the PCIe Flash Module number. If a drive is installed in the target slot, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
PFM#x Port#y	PCIe Flash Module port status and status code (only for the DX8900 S4). The "#x" in the field indicates the PCIe Flash Module number and the "#y" in the field indicates the PCIe Flash Module port number (0 or 1). If a drive is installed in the target slot, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
PSU#n	Power Supply Unit status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the Power Supply Unit number.  Example: PSU#1 [Status / Status Code] (For Power Supply Unit#1)

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

Item name	Description
CE-DISK#yy	Drive status (only for the DX8100 S4) Example: CE-Disk#1 [ status ] (Drive #001 status) (For details, refer to <a href="#">"Drive Syntax" (page 25)</a> .)
CE#x-Disk#yy	Drive status (only for the DX8900 S4) Example: CE#1-Disk#1 [ status ] (Status of Drive #001 in CE#01) (For details, refer to <a href="#">"Drive Syntax" (page 25)</a> .) If a PCIe Flash Module is installed in the target slot, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

The following information is displayed if the frontend enclosure is specified (only for the DX8900 S4).

Item name	Description
Intake Temp	Intake temperature status, status code, and intake temperature values. Each controller has two redundant intake temperature sensors, and both temperature values are displayed in Celsius. If a sensor fails, "Failed" is displayed.
Exhaust Temp	Exhaust temperature status and the status code. The exhaust temperature value of the frontend enclosure is not displayed.
FRT#n	Front End Router (FRT) status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the FRT number.
SVC#n	Service Controller (SVC) status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the SVC number.
FANU#n	Fan Unit (FANU) status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the FANU number.
OPNL	Operation panel (OPNL) status and the status code.
PSU#n	Frontend enclosure Power Supply Unit (PSU) status and the status code. The "#n" in the field indicates the PSU number.

The following information is displayed if the drive enclosure is specified.

Item name	Description
Intake Temp	Intake temperature status, status code, and intake temperature values. Each controller has two redundant intake temperature sensors, and both temperature values are displayed in Celsius. If a sensor fails, "Failed" is displayed.
Exhaust Temp	Exhaust temperature status and the status code. Note that exhaust temperature values are not displayed.
IOM#n	Status and the status code of the I/O module. The I/O module number is indicated by the character string "#n" within the field.
FEM#n	Status and the status code of the Fan Expander Module. (This information only appears for high-density drive enclosures.) The fan expander module number is indicated by the character string "#n" within the field. FEM#1 is displayed regardless of the number of CMs.
FEM#n EXP#m	Status and the status code of the Expander in the Fan Expander Module. (This information only appears for high-density drive enclosures.) The fan expander module number is indicated by the character string "#n" and the expander number is indicated by the character string "#m" within the field. FEM#1 EXP#0 and FEM#1 EXP#1 are displayed regardless of the number of CMs.
PSU#n	Status and the status code of the drive enclosure Power Supply Unit (PSU). The Power Supply Unit number is indicated by the character string "#n" within the field. PSU#2 and PSU#3 are only displayed for high-density drive enclosures.
DE-DISK#xyy	Drive status Example: DE#1-Drive#1 [ status ] (Drive #101 status) (For details, refer to <a href="#">"Drive Syntax" (page 25)</a> .)

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

### ■ Example(s)

The following information is displayed when no parameters are specified (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status
Enclosure View
 Storage System Name      [ETERNUS DX8900]
 Model Name                []
 Serial Number              [000000]
 Device Identification Number [010000]
 Status                     [Normal]
 Cache Mode                [Write Back Mode]
 Remote Support             [Not yet Set]
 Operation Mode             [Maintenance Mode]
 CLI Connecting Controller Module [CE#0 CM#0]
 Firmware Version          [V11L10-0000]

 Controller Enclosure #0    [Normal]
 Frontend Enclosure          [Normal]
 Drive Enclosure #01 (3.5" 12DE) [Error]
 Drive Enclosure #02 (3.5" 60DE) [Error]
```

The following example shows the information that is displayed when the controller enclosure is specified (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type ce
Controller Enclosure #0 Information
 Location     Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
 Intake Temp  Normal     0x0000     25 (C)   / 25 (C)
 Exhaust Temp Normal     0x0000     25 (C)   / 25 (C)

Controller Enclosure #0 Status
 Controller Module Status/Status Code
 CM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
 CM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
 Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
 PSU#0         [Normal      / 0xE001]
 PSU#1         [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

The following example shows the information that is displayed when controller enclosure #0 is specified (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type ce -ce 0
Controller Enclosure #0 Information
  Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
  Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000    20 (C)   / 20 (C)
  Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000    25 (C)   / 25 (C)

Controller Enclosure #0 Status
  Controller Module Status/Status Code
    CM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    CM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
  PCIE Flash Module Status/Status Code
    PFM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
  Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
    PSU#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PSU#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]

Disk Status
  CE#0-Disk#0  [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#1  [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#2  [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#3  [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#4  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#5  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#6  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#7  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#8  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#9  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#10 [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#11 [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#12 [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#13 [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#14 [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#15 [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#16 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#17 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#18 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#19 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#20 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#21 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#22 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#23 [-]                  ]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

The following example shows the information that is displayed when the frontend enclosure is specified (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type fe
Frontend Enclosure Information
Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000    20 (C)   / 20 (C)
Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000    -        / - 

Frontend Enclosure Status
Front End Router Status/Status Code
FRT#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#2          [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#3          [Normal      / 0xE001]
Service Controller Status/Status Code
SVC#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
SVC#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
FAN Unit Status/Status Code
FANU#0         [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#1         [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#2         [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#3         [Normal      / 0xE001]
Operation Panel Status/Status Code
OPNL           [Normal      / 0xE001]
Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
PSU#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#2          [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#3          [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

The following example shows the information that is displayed when drive enclosure #1 is specified:

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type de -de 1
Drive Enclosure #01 Information
Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000    25 (C)   / 25 (C)
Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000    -        / - 

Drive Enclosure #01 Status
I/O Module Status/Status Code
IOM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
IOM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
PSU#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
Disk Status
DE#01-Disk#0  [Available]   ] DE#01-Disk#1  [Available]   ]
DE#01-Disk#2  [Available]   ] DE#01-Disk#3  [Rebuild/Copyback]
DE#01-Disk#4  [Rebuild/Copyback] ] DE#01-Disk#5  [Available]
DE#01-Disk#6  [Available]   ] DE#01-Disk#7  [Available(Predictive Failure)]
DE#01-Disk#8  [Available]   ] DE#01-Disk#9  [Available]
DE#01-Disk#10 [Available(Predictive Failure)] ] DE#01-Disk#11 [Broken]
DE#01-Disk#12 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#13 [Present]
DE#01-Disk#14 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#15 [Present]
DE#01-Disk#16 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#17 [Present]
DE#01-Disk#18 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#19 [Present]
DE#01-Disk#20 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#21 [Present]
DE#01-Disk#22 [Present]    ] DE#01-Disk#23 [Present]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

The following example shows the information that is displayed when all of the enclosures are specified (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type all
Controller Enclosure #0 Information
  Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
  Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000     25 (C)    / 25 (C)
  Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000     -
Controller Enclosure #0 Status
  Controller Module Status/Status Code
    CM#0          [Normal     / 0xE001]
    CM#1          [Normal     / 0xE001]
  Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
    PSU#0         [Normal     / 0xE001]
    PSU#1         [Normal     / 0xE001]

Drive Enclosure #01 Information
  Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
  Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000     25 (C)    / 25 (C)
  Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000     -
Drive Enclosure #01 Status
  I/O Module Status/Status Code
    IOM#0         [Normal     / 0xE001]
    IOM#1         [Normal     / 0xE001]
  Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
    PSU#0         [Normal     / 0xE001]
    PSU#1         [Normal     / 0xE001]

Disk Status
  DE#01-Disk#0  [Available]           ]  DE#01-Disk#1  [Available]
  DE#01-Disk#2  [Available]           ]  DE#01-Disk#3  [Rebuild/Copyback]
  DE#01-Disk#4  [Rebuild/Copyback]    ]  DE#01-Disk#5  [Available]
  DE#01-Disk#6  [Available]           ]  DE#01-Disk#7  [Available(Predictive Failure)]
  DE#01-Disk#8  [Available]           ]  DE#01-Disk#9  [Available]
  DE#01-Disk#10 [Available(Predictive Failure)]  DE#01-Disk#11 [Broken]
  DE#01-Disk#12 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#13 [Present]
  DE#01-Disk#14 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#15 [Present]
  DE#01-Disk#16 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#17 [Present]
  DE#01-Disk#18 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#19 [Present]
  DE#01-Disk#20 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#21 [Present]
  DE#01-Disk#22 [Present]            ]  DE#01-Disk#23 [Present]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

The following example shows the information that is displayed when all of the enclosures are specified (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show enclosure-status -type all
Controller Enclosure #0 Information
  Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
  Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000    20 (C)   / 20 (C)
  Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000    25 (C)   / 25 (C)

Controller Enclosure #0 Status
  Controller Module Status/Status Code
    CM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    CM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
  PCIe Flash Module Status/Status Code
    PFM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#5 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#6 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#7 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
  Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
    PSU#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PSU#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]

Disk Status
  CE#0-Disk#0  [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#1  [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#2  [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#3  [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#4  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#5  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#6  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#7  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#8  [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#9  [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#10 [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#11 [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#12 [Available]           ] CE#0-Disk#13 [Available]           ]
  CE#0-Disk#14 [Present]            ] CE#0-Disk#15 [Present]            ]
  CE#0-Disk#16 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#17 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#18 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#19 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#20 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#21 [-]                  ]
  CE#0-Disk#22 [-]                  ] CE#0-Disk#23 [-]                  ]

Controller Enclosure #1 Information
  Location      Status      Error Code  Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
  Intake Temp   Normal     0x0000    20 (C)   / 20 (C)
  Exhaust Temp  Normal     0x0000    25 (C)   / 25 (C)

Controller Enclosure #1 Status
  Controller Module Status/Status Code
    CM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    CM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
  PCIe Flash Module Status/Status Code
    PFM#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#0 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#1 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#2 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3          [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#0  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#3 Port#1  [Normal      / 0xE001]
    PFM#4          [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show enclosure-status

```

PFM#4 Port#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#4 Port#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#5 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#5 Port#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#5 Port#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#6 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#6 Port#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#6 Port#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#7 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#7 Port#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PFM#7 Port#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
PSU#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Disk Status
CE#1-Disk#0 [Available      ] CE#1-Disk#1 [Available      ]
CE#1-Disk#2 [Available      ] CE#1-Disk#3 [Available      ]
CE#1-Disk#4 [Present      ] CE#1-Disk#5 [Present      ]
CE#1-Disk#6 [Present      ] CE#1-Disk#7 [Present      ]
CE#1-Disk#8 [Present      ] CE#1-Disk#9 [Present      ]
CE#1-Disk#10 [Present      ] CE#1-Disk#11 [Present      ]
CE#0-Disk#10 [Available      ] CE#0-Disk#11 [Available      ]
CE#0-Disk#12 [Available      ] CE#0-Disk#13 [Available      ]
CE#0-Disk#14 [Present      ] CE#0-Disk#15 [Present      ]
CE#0-Disk#16 [-           ] CE#0-Disk#17 [-           ]
CE#0-Disk#18 [-           ] CE#0-Disk#19 [-           ]
CE#0-Disk#20 [-           ] CE#0-Disk#21 [-           ]
CE#0-Disk#22 [-           ] CE#0-Disk#23 [-           ]
Frontend Enclosure Information
Location Status Error Code Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
Intake Temp Normal 0x0000 20 (C) / 20 (C)
Exhaust Temp Normal 0x0000 - / -
Frontend Enclosure Status
Front End Router Status/Status Code
FRT#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#2 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FRT#3 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Service Controller Status/Status Code
SVC#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
SVC#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FAN Unit Status/Status Code
FANU#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#2 [Normal      / 0xE001]
FANU#3 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Operation Panel Status/Status Code
OPNL [Normal      / 0xE001]
Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
PSU#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#2 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#3 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Drive Enclosure #01 Information
Location Status Error Code Sensor 1 / Sensor 2
Intake Temp Normal 0x0000 29 (C) / 29 (C)
Exhaust Temp Normal 0x0000 - / -
Drive Enclosure #01 Status
I/O Module Status/Status Code
IOM#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
IOM#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Power Supply Unit Status/Status Code
PSU#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
PSU#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
Disk Status
DE#01-Disk#0 [Available      ] DE#01-Disk#1 [Available      ]
DE#01-Disk#2 [Available      ] DE#01-Disk#3 [Available      ]
DE#01-Disk#4 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#5 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#6 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#7 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#8 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#9 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#10 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#11 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#12 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#13 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#14 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#15 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#16 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#17 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#18 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#19 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#20 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#21 [Present      ]
DE#01-Disk#22 [Present      ] DE#01-Disk#23 [Present      ]

```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

### show fru-ce

This command displays the status of components (or Field Replaceable Units: FRU) of the controller enclosure.

#### Syntax

```
show fru-ce [-type {cm0 | cm1 | psu0 | psu1 | ce0 | ce1 | ce2 | ce3 | ce4 | ce5 | ce6 | ce7 | ce8 | ce9 | cea | ceb | ce0cm0 | ce0cm1 | ce1cm0 | ce1cm1 | ce2cm0 | ce2cm1 | ce3cm0 | ce3cm1 | ce4cm0 | ce4cm1 | ce5cm0 | ce5cm1 | ce6cm0 | ce6cm1 | ce7cm0 | ce7cm1 | ce8cm0 | ce8cm1 | ce9cm0 | ce9cm1 | ceacm0 | ceacm1 | cebcm0 | cebcm1 | ce0psu0 | ce0psu1 | ce1psu0 | ce1psu1 | ce2psu0 | ce2psu1 | ce3psu0 | ce3psu1 | ce4psu0 | ce4psu1 | ce5psu0 | ce5psu1 | ce6psu0 | ce6psu1 | ce7psu0 | ce7psu1 | ce8psu0 | ce8psu1 | ce9psu0 | ce9psu1 | ceapsu0 | ceapsu1 | cebpsu0 | cebpsu1}]
```

#### Parameter

-type	Optional. This parameter specifies the target component (FRU) name. The details and status of each component embedded in the controller enclosure will be displayed. Only one parameter can be specified. If omitted, all of the FRUs are displayed.
cmX	Details and status of Controller Module Unit #X and the sub-components (only for the DX8100 S4)
psuX	Details and status of PSU #X (only for the DX8100 S4)
ceW	Details and status of Controller Enclosure #W and the sub-components (only for the DX8900 S4) For details on the specification methods, refer to " <a href="#">Controller Enclosure Syntax</a> (page 25).
ceWcmX	Details and status of Controller Enclosure #W, Controller Module Unit #X, and the sub-components (only for the DX8900 S4)
ceWpsuX	Details and status of Controller Enclosure #W and Power Supply Unit #X (only for the DX8900 S4)

#### Output

The following table shows the output information when the controller enclosure, the controller module and the sub-components are specified.

Item name	Description
<b>CM#W Information</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number</b> (only for the DX8900 S4)
Cache Mode	Cache control mode ("Write Back Mode" or "Write Through [factors]"). For Write Through Mode, the main cause is displayed in "(factors)". Displays a summary of factors for all the CMs within the controller enclosure of the displayed target. If there are multiple factors, they are shown separated by a slash (/).
Write Through(Pinned Data)	A large amount of pinned data was generated.
Write Through(Battery)	The battery charge rate is low.
Write Through(Maintenance)	The following maintenance operation is currently running: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hot controller firmware update</li><li>• Changing the controlling CM of the RAID group</li><li>• Hot expanding the CM</li></ul>
Write Through(1CM)	The ETERNUS DX is operating with only one CM.

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

Item name	Description
<b>(CE#W) CM#X Information</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number, X: The controller module number</b> (For the DX8900 S4, CE#W is also displayed)
CPU Status/Status Code	Controller Module (CM#X) status and the status code
Memory Size	Memory size of a controller module
Parts Number	Parts number
Serial Number	Serial number
Hardware Revision	Hardware version
CPU Clock	CPU clock frequency
CM Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (The current operating firmware)
CM Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (The generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
BIOS Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (The current operating firmware)
BIOS Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (The generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
CM EXP Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (The current operating firmware)
CM EXP Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (The generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
<b>(CE#W) CM#X Internal Parts Status and Status Code</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number, X: The controller module number</b> (For the DX8900 S4, CE#W is also displayed)
Memory#	Memory status and the status code
Memory# Parts Number	Memory parts number
Memory# Serial Number	Memory serial number
Memory# Hard Revision	Memory hardware revision
BUD#	BUD (Bootup and Utility Device) status and the status code
BUD# Parts Number	BUD parts number
BUD# Serial Number	BUD serial number
BUD# Hard Revision	BUD hardware revision
CM FAN	CM FAN status and the status code (only for the DX8900 S4)
CA# Parts Number	CA parts number
CA# Serial Number	CA serial number
CA# Hard Revision	CA hardware revision
CA Slot#	CA Slot status and the status code
DMA Port#	DMA Port status and the status code (only for the DX8100 S4)
Frontend cable(FRT#)	Frontend cable status and the status code (only for the DX8900 S4)
BIOS#	BIOS status and the status code
CM EXP	CM EXP status and the status code
CM EXP# InPort#	CM EXP InPort status and the status code
SAS Cable# (OUT)	SAS Cable (OUT) status and the status code
Management Cable(SVC#)	Management cable status and the status code (only for the DX8900 S4)
CM RTC	CM RTC status and the status code
CM NVRAM	CM NVRAM status and the status code
CM FPGA	CM FPGA status and the status code
Storage Acceleration Engine	Storage Acceleration Engine status and the status code
CM LAN Port#	CM LAN Port status and the status code (only for the DX8100 S4)
DI# Port#	DI port status and the status code

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

Item name	Description
<b>(CE#W) CM#X CA#Y Port#Z Information</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number, X: The controller module number, Y: The Channel Adapter number, Z: The port number</b> <b>For FC and iSCSI</b> (For the DX8900 S4, CE#W is also displayed)
Port Type	Indicates whether the host interface port type is FC or iSCSI.
Port Mode	Indicates whether the host interface port mode is CA, RA, CA/RA auto, or Initiator.
Status/Status Code	Host interface Port (Port#m) status and the status code
Multiple VLAN	This information only appears when the port type is iSCSI. This information indicates whether multiple VLAN is enabled. When multiple VLAN is enabled, "Enable" is displayed. When multiple VLAN is disabled, "Disable" is displayed. When the port mode is RA, "-" is displayed.
Number of IP Addresses	This information only appears when the port type is iSCSI. This information indicates the number of IP addresses with enabled ports. When "Enable" is displayed for the Multiple VLAN item, the number of IP addresses with enabled ports (from 1 to 16) is displayed. When "Disable" or "-" is displayed for the Multiple VLAN item, "1" is displayed.
CA Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (the current operating firmware)
CA Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (the generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
Connection	Connection condition
Loop ID	Loop ID
Transfer Rate	Transfer rate (A value specified by the operator)
Link Status	Link status (Link Up, Link Down, or if requesting auto negotiation, then the actual transfer rate is displayed.)
Port WWN	Port World-Wide-Name
Node WWN	Node World-Wide-Name
iSCSI Name	iSCSI Name
iSCSI Alias Name	iSCSI Alias Name
Host Affinity	Indicates whether Host Affinity Mode is enabled.
Host Response	Host response information assigned to this port
iSNS Server Port No	iSNS Server Port Number
TCP Port No	TCP Port Number
TCP Window Size	TCP Window Size
FC Frame Size	FC Frame Size
VLAN ID	VLAN ID
Header Digest	Indicates whether or not Header Digest is added.
Date Digest	Indicates whether or not Date Digest is added.
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value)
Target Portal Group Number	Target Portal Group Number
CmdSN Count	CmdSN Count
Err Recovery Lvl	Error Recovery Level
Task Retain Time	The time required for processes stopped due to disconnection to restart from where they were stopped after reconnection
Reconnection Wait Time	The time required to reconnect the TCP connection
Fabric Name	Fabric Name
SFP Type	SFP Type This information only appears when the port type is FC or iSCSI 10G.
<b>SFP Information</b>	<b>For FC and 10Gbit/s iSCSI (SFP+ with/without modules)</b>

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

Item name	Description
Temperature	Temperature (Present, Warning[Low/High], and Alarm[Low/High])
Voltage	Voltage (Present, Warning[Low/High], and Alarm[Low/High])
Current	Current (Present, Warning[Low/High], and Alarm[Low/High])
TX Power	Transmitter power (Present, Warning[Low/High], and Alarm[Low/High])
RX Power	Receiver power (Present, Warning[Low/High], and Alarm[Low/High])
<b>(CE#W) CM#X CA#Y Port#Z Information</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number, X: The controller module number, Y: The Channel Adapter number, Z: The port number</b> <b>For FCLINK</b> (For the DX8900 S4, CE#W is also displayed)
Port Type	Host interface port type (FCLINK)
Status/Status Code	Host interface port (Port#m) status and status code
<b>(CE#W) BCU/BTU Information</b>	<b>W: The controller enclosure number</b> (For the DX8900 S4, CE#W is also displayed)
BCU Status/Status Code	BCU status and the status code
BTU Status/Status Code	BTU status and the status code
BCU# ChargeRate	Charging rate of BCU
BCU# Expires	Expiry date of the BCU
BCU# Parts Number	BCU parts number
BCU# Serial Number	BCU serial number
BCU# Hard Revision	BCU hardware revision
<b>SCCI#X Information or PPC#X Information</b>	<b>X: SCCI number or PPC number</b>
Status/Status Code	Status and the status code of SCCI or PPC
<b>PSU</b>	<b>Power Supply Unit</b>
Status/Status Code	PSU status and the status code

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays each status and detail of controller module #0 (For the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show fru-ce -type cm0
CM#0 Information
CPU Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
Memory Size           [1.5GB]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number         []
Hard Revision         []
CPU Clock             [2.00GHz]
CM Active EC          [EC#1]
CM Next EC            [EC#1]
BIOS Active EC        [EC#0]
BIOS Next EC          [EC#0]
CM EXP Active EC     [EC#1]
CM EXP Next EC        [EC#1]
CM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
Memory#0              [Normal      / 0xE001]
Memory#0 Parts Number [18JSF25672PZ-1G1F0]
Memory#0 Serial Number [0951D864C0D0]
Memory#0 Hard Revision [4631]
Memory#1              [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#1 Parts Number []
Memory#1 Serial Number []
Memory#1 Hard Revision []
Memory#2              [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#2 Parts Number []
Memory#2 Serial Number []
Memory#2 Hard Revision []
Memory#3              [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#3 Parts Number []
Memory#3 Serial Number []
Memory#3 Hard Revision []
Memory#4              [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#4 Parts Number []
Memory#4 Serial Number []
Memory#4 Hard Revision []
Memory#5              [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#5 Parts Number []
Memory#5 Serial Number []
Memory#5 Hard Revision []
BUD#0                 [Normal      / 0xE001]
BUD#0 Parts Number   [QEMU HARDDISK]
BUD#0 Serial Number  [QM00002]
BUD#0 Hard Revision  [0 10 6]
BUD#1                 [Normal      / 0xE001]
BUD#1 Parts Number   [QEMU HARDDISK]
BUD#1 Serial Number  [QM00002]
BUD#1 Hard Revision  [0 10 6]
CM FAN                [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA#0 Parts Number    []
CA#0 Serial Number   []
CA#0 Hard Revision   []
CA Slot#0-0            [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Slot#0-1            [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA#1 Parts Number    []
CA#1 Serial Number   []
CA#1 Hard Revision   []
CA Slot#1-0            [Undefined   / 0x4000]
CA Slot#1-1            [Undefined   / 0x0000]
DMA Port#0            [Normal      / 0xE001]
DMA Port#1            [Normal      / 0xE001]
BIOS#0                [Normal      / 0xE001]
BIOS#1                [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP                [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#0       [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#1       [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#0(OUT)      [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#1(OUT)      [Undefined   / 0x0000]
SAS Cable#2(OUT)      [Undefined   / 0x0000]
SAS Cable#3(OUT)      [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CM RTC                [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM NVRAM              [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM FPGA               [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

```

Storage Acceleration Engine [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#0           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#1           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#2           [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#0             [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#1             [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#0             [Undefined   / 0x0000]
DI#1 Port#1             [Undefined   / 0x0000]

CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type              [FC]
Port Mode               [CA]
Status/Status Code     [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC            [EC#0]
CA Next EC              [EC#0]
Connection              [Fabric]
Loop ID                 [-]
Transfer Rate           [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status              [Unknown]
Port WWN                [500000E0D1000000]
Node WWN                [500000E0D1000000]
Host Affinity            [Enable]
Host Response            [-]
SFP Type                [ShortWave]
SFP Information

Temperature             Present      Warning (Low/High)      Alarm (Low/High)
                      [40.11C]    [-15.00C/100.00C]    [-30.00C/128.00C]
Voltage                 [4.24V]     [3.00V/5.00V]          [2.00V/7.00V]
Current                 [10.25mA]   [5.00mA/12.00mA]        [2.00mA/15.00mA]
TX Power                [1.35mW]   [0.50mW/1.50mW]        [0.00mW/1.80mW]
RX Power                [1.35mW]   [0.50mW/1.50mW]        [0.00mW/1.80mW]

CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 Information
Port Type              [FC]
Port Mode               [CA]
Status/Status Code     [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC            [EC#0]
CA Next EC              [EC#0]
Connection              [Fabric]
Loop ID                 [-]
Transfer Rate           [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status              [Unknown]
Port WWN                [500000E0D1000000]
Node WWN                [500000E0D1000000]
Host Affinity            [Enable]
Host Response            [-]
SFP Type                [ShortWave]
SFP Information

Temperature             Present      Warning (Low/High)      Alarm (Low/High)
                      [40.11C]    [-15.00C/100.00C]    [-30.00C/128.00C]
Voltage                 [4.24V]     [3.00V/5.00V]          [2.00V/7.00V]
Current                 [10.25mA]   [5.00mA/12.00mA]        [2.00mA/15.00mA]
TX Power                [1.35mW]   [0.50mW/1.50mW]        [0.00mW/1.80mW]
RX Power                [1.35mW]   [0.50mW/1.50mW]        [0.00mW/1.80mW]

BCU/BTU Information
BCU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BTU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#0 ChargeRate        [0%]
BCU#0 Expires            [0-00]
BCU#0 Parts Number       []
BCU#0 Serial Number      []
BCU#0 Hard Revision      []
BCU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BTU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#1 ChargeRate        [0%]
BCU#1 Expires            [0-00]
BCU#1 Parts Number       []
BCU#1 Serial Number      []
BCU#1 Hard Revision      []

SCCI#0 Information
SCCI#1 Information
SCCI#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CE PSU#0 Information
CE PSU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CE PSU#1 Information
CE PSU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]

```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

The following example displays each status and detail of controller enclosure #0 (For the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show fru-ce -type ce0
CE#0 Information
Cache Mode [Write Back Mode]
CE#0 CM#0 Information
CPU Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Memory Size [8.0GB]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []
CPU Clock [0.04GHz]
CM Active EC [EC#1]
CM Next EC [EC#1]
BIOS Active EC [EC#0]
BIOS Next EC [EC#0]
CM EXP Active EC [EC#1]
CM EXP Next EC [EC#1]
CE#0 CM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
Memory#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
Memory#0 Parts Number []
Memory#0 Serial Number []
Memory#0 Hard Revision []
Memory#1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#1 Parts Number []
Memory#1 Serial Number []
Memory#1 Hard Revision []
Memory#2 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#2 Parts Number []
Memory#2 Serial Number []
Memory#2 Hard Revision []
Memory#3 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#3 Parts Number []
Memory#3 Serial Number []
Memory#3 Hard Revision []
Memory#4 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#4 Parts Number []
Memory#4 Serial Number []
Memory#4 Hard Revision []
Memory#5 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#5 Parts Number []
Memory#5 Serial Number []
Memory#5 Hard Revision []
BUD#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
BUD#0 Parts Number []
BUD#0 Serial Number []
BUD#0 Hard Revision []
BUD#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
BUD#1 Parts Number []
BUD#1 Serial Number []
BUD#1 Hard Revision []
CM FAN [Normal / 0xE001]
CA#0 Parts Number []
CA#0 Serial Number []
CA#0 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#0-0 [Normal / 0xE001]
CA Slot#0-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#1 Parts Number []
CA#1 Serial Number []
CA#1 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#1-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#1-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#2 Parts Number []
CA#2 Serial Number []
CA#2 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#2-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#2-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#3 Parts Number []
CA#3 Serial Number []
CA#3 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#3-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#3-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Frontend Cable(FRT#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#2) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#3) [Normal / 0xE001]
BIOS#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

```

BIOS#1           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP          [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#2 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#3 [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#0(OUT) [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#1(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
SAS Cable#2(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
SAS Cable#3(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
Management Cable(SVC#0) [Normal      / 0xE001]
Management Cable(SVC#1) [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM RTC          [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM NVRAM        [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM FPGA          [Normal      / 0xE001]
Storage Acceleration Engine [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#0   [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#1   [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#2   [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#0     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#1     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#0     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#1     [Normal      / 0xE001]

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type        [FC]
Port Mode         [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC     [EC#0]
CA Next EC       [EC#0]
Connection        [Fabric]
Loop ID          [-]
Transfer Rate    [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status      [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN          [500000E0DA800020]
Node WWN          [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity    [Enable]
Host Response    [-]
SFP Type          [SFP+(MMF)]
SFP Information
Present          Warning(Low/High)      Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature       [0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage           [0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]
Current           [0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 Information
Port Type        [FC]
Port Mode         [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC     [EC#0]
CA Next EC       [EC#0]
Connection        [Fabric]
Loop ID          [-]
Transfer Rate    [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status      [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN          [500000E0DA800021]
Node WWN          [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity    [Enable]
Host Response    [-]
SFP Type          [SFP+(MMF)]
SFP Information
Present          Warning(Low/High)      Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature       [0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage           [0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]
Current           [0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]

CE#0 CM#1 Information
CPU Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
Memory Size        [8.0GB]
Parts Number        []
Serial Number        []
Hard Revision        []
CPU Clock          [0.04GHz]
CM Active EC       [EC#1]
CM Next EC         [EC#1]
BIOS Active EC     [EC#0]
BIOS Next EC       [EC#0]
CM EXP Active EC   [EC#1]
CM EXP Next EC     [EC#1]

```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

```
CE#0 CM#1 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
Memory#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
Memory#0 Parts Number []
Memory#0 Serial Number []
Memory#0 Hard Revision []
Memory#1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#1 Parts Number []
Memory#1 Serial Number []
Memory#1 Hard Revision []
Memory#2 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#2 Parts Number []
Memory#2 Serial Number []
Memory#2 Hard Revision []
Memory#3 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#3 Parts Number []
Memory#3 Serial Number []
Memory#3 Hard Revision []
Memory#4 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#4 Parts Number []
Memory#4 Serial Number []
Memory#4 Hard Revision []
Memory#5 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Memory#5 Parts Number []
Memory#5 Serial Number []
Memory#5 Hard Revision []
BUD#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
BUD#0 Parts Number []
BUD#0 Serial Number []
BUD#0 Hard Revision []
BUD#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
BUD#1 Parts Number []
BUD#1 Serial Number []
BUD#1 Hard Revision []
CM FAN [Normal / 0xE001/ 0xE001]
CA#0 Parts Number []
CA#0 Serial Number []
CA#0 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#0-0 [Normal / 0xE001]
CA Slot#0-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#1 Parts Number []
CA#1 Serial Number []
CA#1 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#1-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#1-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#2 Parts Number []
CA#2 Serial Number []
CA#2 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#2-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#2-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA#3 Parts Number []
CA#3 Serial Number []
CA#3 Hard Revision []
CA Slot#3-0 [Undefined / 0x0000]
CA Slot#3-1 [Undefined / 0x0000]
Frontend Cable(FRT#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#2) [Normal / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#3) [Normal / 0xE001]
BIOS#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
BIOS#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM EXP [Normal / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#2 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#3 [Normal / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#0(OUT) [Normal / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#1(OUT) [Undefined / 0xE000]
SAS Cable#2(OUT) [Undefined / 0xE000]
SAS Cable#3(OUT) [Undefined / 0xE000]
Management Cable(SVC#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(SVC#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
CM RTC [Normal / 0xE001]
CM NVRAM [Normal / 0xE001]
CM FPGA [Normal / 0xE001]
Storage Acceleration Engine [Normal / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#2 [Normal / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#0 [Normal / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#1 [Normal / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

```
DI#1 Port#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type           [FC]
Port Mode            [CA]
Status/Status Code  [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC        [EC#0]
CA Next EC          [EC#0]
Connection          [Fabric]
Loop ID              [-]
Transfer Rate       [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status          [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN             [500000E0DA800030]
Node WWN             [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity        [Enable]
Host Response        [-]
SFP Type             [SFP+(MMF)]
SFP Information
Present   Warning(Low/High)   Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature [0.00C] [0.00C/0.00C] [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage    [0.00V] [0.00V/0.00V] [0.00V/0.00V]
Current    [0.00mA] [0.00mA/0.00mA] [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power   [0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power   [0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW]
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 Information
Port Type           [FC]
Port Mode            [CA]
Status/Status Code  [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC        [EC#0]
CA Next EC          [EC#0]
Connection          [Fabric]
Loop ID              [-]
Transfer Rate       [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status          [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN             [500000E0DA800031]
Node WWN             [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity        [Enable]
Host Response        [-]
SFP Type             [SFP+(MMF)]
SFP Information
Present   Warning(Low/High)   Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature [0.00C] [0.00C/0.00C] [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage    [0.00V] [0.00V/0.00V] [0.00V/0.00V]
Current    [0.00mA] [0.00mA/0.00mA] [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power   [0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power   [0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW] [0.00mW/0.00mW]
BCU/BTU Information
BCU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BTU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#0 ChargeRate      [100%]
BCU#0 Expires          [2099-12]
BCU#0 Parts Number     []
BCU#0 Serial Number    []
BCU#0 Hard Revision    []
BCU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BTU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#1 ChargeRate      [100%]
BCU#1 Expires          [2099-12]
BCU#1 Parts Number     []
BCU#1 Serial Number    []
BCU#1 Hard Revision    []
CE#0 PSU#0 Information
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
CE#0 PSU#1 Information
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

The following example displays each status and detail of controller enclosure #0 and control module #0 (For the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show fru-ce -type ce0cm0
CE#0 CM#0 Information
CPU Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
Memory Size                 [8.0GB]
Parts Number                []
Serial Number               []
Hard Revision               []
CPU Clock                  [0.04GHz]
CM Active EC                [EC#1]
CM Next EC                  [EC#1]
BIOS Active EC              [EC#0]
BIOS Next EC                [EC#0]
CM EXP Active EC            [EC#1]
CM EXP Next EC              [EC#1]
CE#0 CM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
Memory#0                    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Memory#0 Parts Number       []
Memory#0 Serial Number      []
Memory#0 Hard Revision     []
Memory#1                    [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#1 Parts Number       []
Memory#1 Serial Number      []
Memory#1 Hard Revision     []
Memory#2                    [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#2 Parts Number       []
Memory#2 Serial Number      []
Memory#2 Hard Revision     []
Memory#3                    [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#3 Parts Number       []
Memory#3 Serial Number      []
Memory#3 Hard Revision     []
Memory#4                    [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#4 Parts Number       []
Memory#4 Serial Number      []
Memory#4 Hard Revision     []
Memory#5                    [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Memory#5 Parts Number       []
Memory#5 Serial Number      []
Memory#5 Hard Revision     []
BUD#0                      [Normal      / 0xE001]
BUD#0 Parts Number          []
BUD#0 Serial Number          []
BUD#0 Hard Revision          []
BUD#1                      [Normal      / 0xE001]
BUD#1 Parts Number          []
BUD#1 Serial Number          []
BUD#1 Hard Revision          []
CM FAN                      [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA#0 Parts Number           []
CA#0 Serial Number           []
CA#0 Hard Revision           []
CA Slot#0-0                  [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Slot#0-1                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA#1 Parts Number           []
CA#1 Serial Number           []
CA#1 Hard Revision           []
CA Slot#1-0                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA Slot#1-1                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA#2 Parts Number           []
CA#2 Serial Number           []
CA#2 Hard Revision           []
CA Slot#2-0                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA Slot#2-1                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA#3 Parts Number           []
CA#3 Serial Number           []
CA#3 Hard Revision           []
CA Slot#3-0                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
CA Slot#3-1                  [Undefined   / 0x0000]
Frontend Cable(FRT#0)        [Normal      / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#1)        [Normal      / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#2)        [Normal      / 0xE001]
Frontend Cable(FRT#3)        [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

```

BIOS#0           [Normal      / 0xE001]
BIOS#1           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#0 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#1 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#2 [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM EXP InPort#3 [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#0(OUT) [Normal      / 0xE001]
SAS Cable#1(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
SAS Cable#2(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
SAS Cable#3(OUT) [Undefined   / 0x6000]
Management Cable(SVC#0) [Normal      / 0xE001]
Management Cable(SVC#1) [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM RTC           [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM NVRAM         [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM FPGA          [Normal      / 0xE001]
Storage Acceleration Engine [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#0   [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#1   [Normal      / 0xE001]
CM LAN Port#2   [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#0     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#0 Port#1     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#0     [Normal      / 0xE001]
DI#1 Port#1     [Normal      / 0xE001]

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type        [FC]
Port Mode         [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC    [EC#0]
CA Next EC      [EC#0]
Connection       [Fabric]
Loop ID          [-]
Transfer Rate    [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status      [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN          [500000E0DA800020]
Node WWN          [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity    [Enable]
Host Response    [-]
SFP Type          [SFP+ (MMF)]
SFP Information
Present          Warning(Low/High)      Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature      [0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage          [0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]
Current          [0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 Information
Port Type        [FC]
Port Mode         [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
CA Active EC    [EC#0]
CA Next EC      [EC#0]
Connection       [Fabric]
Loop ID          [-]
Transfer Rate    [Auto Negotiation]
Link Status      [8Gbit/s Link Up]
Port WWN          [500000E0DA800021]
Node WWN          [500000E0DA800000]
Host Affinity    [Enable]
Host Response    [-]
SFP Type          [SFP+ (MMF)]
SFP Information
Present          Warning(Low/High)      Alarm(Low/High)
Temperature      [0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]      [0.00C/0.00C]
Voltage          [0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]      [0.00V/0.00V]
Current          [0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]     [0.00mA/0.00mA]
TX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]
RX Power          [0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]     [0.00mW/0.00mW]

BCU/BTU Information
BCU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#0 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#0 ChargeRate    [100%]
BCU#0 Expires       [2099-12]
BCU#0 Parts Number  []
BCU#0 Serial Number []
BCU#0 Hard Revision []
BCU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BTU#1 Status/Status Code [Normal      / 0xE001]
BCU#1 ChargeRate    [100%]

BCU#1 Expires       [2099-12]
BCU#1 Parts Number  []
BCU#1 Serial Number []
BCU#1 Hard Revision []

```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

For iSCSI, the following information is displayed:

```
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type [iSCSI]
Port Mode [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Multi IP Address [Enable]
Number of IP Address [16]
CA Active EC [EC#0]
CA Next EC [EC#0]
Transfer Rate [1Gbps/Auto]
Link Status [Link Down]
iSCSI Name [iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dxl:00000000]
iSCSI Alias Name []
Host Affinity [Enable]
Host Response [-]
iSNS Server Port No [0x0000]
TCP Port No [0x0000]
TCP Window Size [0x00]
VLAN ID [-]
Header Digest [OFF]
Data Digest [OFF]
Bandwidth Limit [-]
Target Portal Group No [0x0000]
CmdSN Count [Unlimited]
Err Recovery Lvl [0x00]
Task Retain Time [-]
Reconnection Wait Time [-]
SFP Type [SFP+]
SFP Information
Temperature Present Warning(Low/High) Alarm(Low/High)
[40.11C] [-15.00C/100.00C] [-30.00C/128.00C]
Voltage [4.24V] [3.00V/5.00V] [2.00V/7.00V]
Current [10.25mA] [5.00mA/12.00mA] [2.00mA/15.00mA]
TX Power [1.35mW] [0.50mW/1.50mW] [0.00mW/1.80mW]
RX Power [1.35mW] [0.50mW/1.50mW] [0.00mW/1.80mW]
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 Information
Port Type [iSCSI]
Port Mode [CA]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Multi IP Address [Disable]
Number of IP Address [1]
CA Active EC [EC#0]
CA Next EC [EC#0]
Transfer Rate [1Gbps/Auto]
Link Status [Link Down]
iSCSI Name [iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dxl:00000000]
iSCSI Alias Name []
Host Affinity [Enable]
Host Response [-]
iSNS Server Port No [0x0000]
TCP Port No [0x0000]
TCP Window Size [0x00]
VLAN ID [-]
Header Digest [OFF]
Data Digest [OFF]
Bandwidth Limit [-]
Target Portal Group No [0x0000]
CmdSN Count [Unlimited]
Err Recovery Lvl [0x00]
Task Retain Time [-]
Reconnection Wait Time []
SFP Type [SFP+]
SFP Information
Temperature Present Warning(Low/High) Alarm(Low/High)
[40.11C] [-15.00C/100.00C] [-30.00C/128.00C]
Voltage [4.24V] [3.00V/5.00V] [2.00V/7.00V]
Current [10.25mA] [5.00mA/12.00mA] [2.00mA/15.00mA]
TX Power [1.35mW] [0.50mW/1.50mW] [0.00mW/1.80mW]
RX Power [1.35mW] [0.50mW/1.50mW] [0.00mW/1.80mW]
```

For FCLINK and RFCF-RA, the following information is displayed:

```
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Information
Port Type [FCLINK]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 Information
Port Type [FC]
Port Mode [RFCF-RA]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-ce

The following example displays the status of PSU#0:

```
CLI> show fru-ce -type psu0
CE PSU#0 Information
  Status/Status Code [Normal] / 0xE001
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

### show fru-fe

This command displays the status of the components (or Field Replaceable Units: FRU) in the frontend enclosures.

#### Caution

This command is only supported in the DX8900 S4.

#### Syntax

```
show fru-fe [-type {svc0 | svc1 | frt0 | frt1 | frt2 | frt3 | psu0 | psu1 | psu2 | psu3}]
```

#### Parameter

- type      Optional. This parameter specifies the target component (FRU) name. However, only one parameter can be specified. If omitted, all the FRUs are displayed.
- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| svc $X$ | Details and status of Service Controller (SVC) #X                    |
| frt $X$ | Details and status of FRT#X of the frontend enclosure                |
| psu $X$ | Details and status of Power Supply Unit #X of the frontend enclosure |

#### Output

Item name	Description
<b>FRT#X Information</b>	<b>(X: Front End Router [FRT] number)</b>
Status/Status Code	FRT status and the status code
Parts Number	FRT part number
Serial Number	FRT serial number
Hard Revision	FRT hardware version
<b>FRT#X Internal Parts Information</b>	<b>(X: FRT number)</b>
<b>Frontend Cable (CE#W CM#X) Information</b>	<b>(W: The controller enclosure number, X: The controller module number)</b>
Type	Frontend cable type (Cu: Copper, AOC: Active Optical Cable, and "-": Unknown)
Status/Status Code	Frontend cable status and the status code
Parts Number	Frontend cable part number
Serial Number	Frontend cable serial number
Hard Revision	Frontend cable hardware version
<b>SVC#X Information</b>	<b>(X: Service Controller [SVC] number)</b>
Status/Status Code	SVC status and the status code
Parts Number	SVC part number
Serial Number	SVC serial number
Hard Revision	SVC hardware version
LAN Control	SVC LAN Control (master or slave)
Active EC	Active firmware (or the currently running firmware) EC number
Next EC	Standby firmware EC number (or the next firmware generation number after a reboot)
Firmware Version	SVC firmware version

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

Item name	Description
<b>SVC#X Internal Parts Information</b>	<b>(X: SVC number)</b>
Management Cable (CE#w CM#x)	Management Cable status and the status code
<b>SCCI#X Information or PPC#X Information</b>	<b>(X: SCCI number or PPC number)</b>
Status/Status Code	SCCI or PPC status and the status code
<b>FANU#X Information</b>	<b>(X: FAN Unit [FANU] number)</b>
Status/Status Code	FANU status and the status code
Parts Number	FANU part number
Serial Number	FANU serial number
Hard Revision	FANU hardware version
<b>OPNL Information</b>	
Status/Status Code	Operation panel (OPNL) status and the status code
Parts Number	OPNL part number
Serial Number	OPNL serial number
Hard Revision	OPNL hardware version
<b>FE PSU#X Information</b>	<b>(X: The frontend enclosure PSU number)</b>
Status/Status Code	Frontend enclosure PSU status and the status code

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of the frontend enclosure components (or the maintenance part units):

```
CLI> show fru-fe
FRT#0 Information
Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number           []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

FRT#0 Internal Parts Information
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#0) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#1) Information
Type                  [AOC]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#0) Information
Type                  [-]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#1) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#0) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#1) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#0) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#1) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []

FRT#1 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number       []
Serial Number       []
Hard Revision       []

FRT#1 Internal Parts Information
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#0) Information
Type                  [Cu]
Status/Status Code    [Normal      / 0xE001]
Parts Number          []
Serial Number          []
Hard Revision          []
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

```
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#1) Information
Type [AOC]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#0) Information
Type [-]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FRT#2 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FRT#2 Internal Parts Information
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#1) Information
Type [AOC]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#0) Information
Type [-]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

```
Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FRT#3 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FRT#3 Internal Parts Information
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#1) Information
Type [AOC]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#0) Information
Type [-]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#0) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#1) Information
Type [Cu]
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

```
SVC#0 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []
LAN Control [Master]
Active EC [EC#1]
Next EC [EC#2]
Firmware Version [V11L00-0000]

SVC#0 Internal Parts Information
Management Cable(CE#0 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#0 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#1 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#1 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#2 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#2 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#3 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#3 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]

SVC#1 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []
LAN Control [Master]
Active EC [EC#1]
Next EC [EC#2]
Firmware Version [V11L10-0000]

SVC#1 Internal Parts Information
Management Cable(CE#0 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#0 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#1 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#1 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#2 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#2 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#3 CM#0) [Normal / 0xE001]
Management Cable(CE#3 CM#1) [Normal / 0xE001]

SCCI#0 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]

SCCI#1 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]

FANU#0 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FANU#1 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FANU#2 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FANU#3 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

OPNL Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
Parts Number []
Serial Number []
Hard Revision []

FE PSU#0 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]

FE PSU#1 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]

FE PSU#2 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]

FE PSU#3 Information
Status/Status Code [Normal / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

The following example displays the status of SVC#0:

```
CLI> show fru-fe -type svc0
SVC#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number           []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
  LAN Control            [Master]
  Active EC              [EC#1]
  Next EC                [EC#2]
  Firmware Version       [V11L10-0000]
SVC#0 Internal Parts Information
  Management Cable(CE#0 CM#0)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#0 CM#1)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#1 CM#0)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#1 CM#1)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#2 CM#0)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#2 CM#1)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#3 CM#0)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  Management Cable(CE#3 CM#1)  [Normal / 0xE001]
```

The following example displays the status of FRT#0:

```
CLI> show fru-fe -type frt0
FRT#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number           []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
FRT#0 Internal Parts Information
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#0) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#0 CM#1) Information
  Type                  [AOC]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#0) Information
  Type                  [-]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#1 CM#1) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#0) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#2 CM#1) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#0) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
Frontend Cable(CE#3 CM#1) Information
  Type                  [Cu]
  Status/Status Code    [Normal / 0xE001]
  Parts Number          []
  Serial Number          []
  Hard Revision          []
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-fe

The following example displays the status of PSU#0 of the frontend enclosure:

```
CLI> show fru-fe -type psu0
FE PSU#0 Information
  Status/Status Code          [Normal / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show pfm

### show pfm

This command displays information of PCIe Flash Modules (PFM).

#### Caution

This command is only supported in the DX8900 S4.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show pfm [-list | -detail] [-pfm-number pfm_numbers] [-owner {ce_numbers | none}]  
[-ce ce_numbers]
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -list or -detail

Optional. This parameter specifies the display format. If omitted, a summary of the PFM is displayed in the table format.

list      Displays a summary of the PFM in the table format.

detail     Displays the details of the PFM.

##### -pfm-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the PFM to be displayed. Multiple parameters can be specified. If omitted, the information of all the PFMs is displayed.

*pfm\_numbers*      PFM number

For details, refer to ["PFM Syntax" \(page 26\)](#).

##### -owner

Optional. This parameter displays all the PFMs used as Extreme Cache by the specified controller enclosure. Multiple parameters can be specified. If omitted, information of all PFMs is displayed. If "none" is specified, information of all PFMs that are not used as Extreme Cache is displayed.

*ce\_numbers*      Controller enclosure number

For details, refer to ["Controller Enclosure Syntax" \(page 25\)](#).

none      Information of all the PFMs not used as Extreme Cache

##### -ce

Optional. This parameter specifies the controller enclosure for displaying all the installed PFMs. Multiple parameters can be specified. If omitted, information of all PFMs is displayed.

*ce\_numbers*      Controller enclosure number

For details, refer to ["Controller Enclosure Syntax" \(page 25\)](#).

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show pfm

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Location	PFM installation location. Displays in "CE#X-PFM#Y". X is the CE number (0 - b), Y is the PFM slot number (0 -7)
Status	PFM status
Status Code	PFM status code
Error Code	PFM error code
Capacity(GB)	PFM capacity
Owner	The installation location of the controller enclosure that uses the PFM as Extreme Cache (EXC). A hyphen (-) is displayed for PFMs that are not used as EXC.
Health(%)	Remaining usable capacity (operating life) of the PFM. If this item is 5% or less, Warning is displayed in Status and if 0%, Error is displayed.
Part Number	PFM part number
Serial Number	PFM serial number
Hardware Revision	PFM hardware version
Firmware Version	PFM firmware version

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show pfm

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of the PFM in the table format:

```
CLI> show pfm
Location  Status      Health(%) Capacity(GB) Owner
-----  -----
CE#0-PFM#0 Normal          80        1600 CE#0
CE#0-PFM#1 Normal          80        1600 -
```

The following example displays the detail of CE#0 PFM#0:

```
CLI> show pfm -pfm-number 00 -detail
Location          [CE#0-PFM#0]
Status            [Normal]
Status Code       [0xE001]
Error Code        [0x0000]
Capacity (GB)    [1600]
Owner             [CE#0]
Health (%)        [80]
Part Number      [CA07555-D052]
Serial Number    [PP132400W2]
Hardware Revision [A1]
Firmware Version [V11L10-0000]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-de

### show fru-de

This command displays the status of the components (or Field Replaceable Units: FRU) in the drive enclosures.

#### Syntax

```
show fru-de [-de enclosure_number] [-type {iom0 | iom1 | fem0 | fem1 | psu0 | psu1 | psu2 | psu3}]
```

#### Parameter

**-de**      Optional. This parameter specifies the drive enclosure number. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to "[Drive Enclosure Syntax \(page 25\)](#)". If omitted, all of the drive enclosures are displayed. Controller enclosures cannot be specified for this parameter even if they are installed with drives.

Example: -de 1  
(Only drive enclosure #1)

**-type**      Optional. This parameter specifies the target component (FRU) name. Only one parameter can be specified. If omitted, all the FRUs are displayed.

iom0	Details and status of the I/O module #0
iom1	Details and status of the I/O module #1
fem0	Details and status of the Fan Expander Module #0 (only for high-density drive enclosures)
fem1	Details and status of the Fan Expander Module #1 (only for high-density drive enclosures)
psu0	Details and status of the Power Supply Unit #0
psu1	Details and status of the Power Supply Unit #1
psu2	Details and status of the Power Supply Unit #2 (only for high-density drive enclosures)
psu3	Details and status of the Power Supply Unit #3 (only for high-density drive enclosures)

#### Output

The following table shows the output information for the IOM.

Item name	Description
<b>DE#n IOM#m Information</b>	<b>n: The drive enclosure number, m: The IOM number</b>
Status/Status Code	IOM#n status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in the expander. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".
WWN	World Wide Name (for FEM#1, a hyphen [-] is shown.)
Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (current operating firmware)
Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (the generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
Firmware Version	Version of the active firmware (current operating firmware)
<b>DE#n IOM#m Internal Parts Status/Status Code</b>	<b>n: The drive enclosure number, m: The IOM number</b>
SAS Cable (IOM Port) #0(IN)	SAS Cable #0(IN)(IOM port #0) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in port#0. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-de

Item name	Description
SAS Cable (IOM Port #1(OUT))	SAS Cable #1(OUT)(IOM port #1) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in the above port#1.
IOM FEM Port#0	IOM FEM port#0 status and the status code (only for high-density drive enclosures) The connection destination of this port is the FEM#1 EXP#0 port.
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in the above port#0 (only for high-density drive enclosures).
IOM FEM Port#1	IOM FEM port#1 status and the status code (only for high-density drive enclosures) The connection destination of this port is the FEM#1 EXP#1 port.
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in the above port#1 (only for high-density drive enclosures).

The following table shows the output information for the Fan Expander Modules.

Item name	Description
<b>DE#n FEM#m Information</b>	<b>n: The drive enclosure number, m: The FEM number</b> (Information on FEM#1 appears regardless of the number of controller modules)
Status/Status Code	FEM (FEM#n) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that occurred in a Fan Expander Module. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".
<b>DE#n FEM#m Internal Parts Status/Status Code</b>	<b>n: The drive enclosure number, m: The FEM number</b> (Information on FEM#1 appears regardless of the number of controller modules)
FEM EXP#0 Port	FEM (EXP#0) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that occurred in the above port#0. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".
FEM EXP#1 Port	FEM (EXP#1) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that occurred in the above port#1. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".
<b>DE#n FEM#m EXP#l Information</b>	<b>n: The drive enclosure number, m: The FEM number, l: The EXP number</b> (Information on FEM#1 appears regardless of the number of controller modules)
Status/Status Code	EXP (EXP#l) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in the expander of a Fan Expander Module. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".
WWN	World Wide Name
Active EC	EC number of the active firmware (the current operating firmware)
Next EC	EC number of the stand-by firmware (the generation number of the firmware after the next reboot)
Firmware Version	Version of the active firmware (the current operating firmware)
<b>PSU</b>	<b>Power Supply Unit</b>
Status/Status Code	Power supply unit (PSU#n) status and the status code
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in a power supply unit. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Normal" or "Undefined".

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show fru-de

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of Expander #0 in drive enclosure #1:

```
CLI> show fru-de -de 1 -type iom0
DE#1 IOM#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
  WWN                   [500000E0D060C4FF]
  Active EC              [EC#1]
  Next EC                [EC#1]
  Firmware Version       [V11L10-0000]
DE#1 IOM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
  SAS Cable(IOM Port)#0(IN)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  SAS Cable(IOM Port)#1(OUT) [Normal / - ]
```

The following example displays the status of Expander #0 in drive enclosure #1 (high-density drive enclosure):

```
CLI> show fru-de -de 1 -type iom0
DE#1 IOM#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
  WWN                   [500000E0D060C4FF]
  Active EC              [EC#1]
  Next EC                [EC#2]
  Firmware Version       [V11L10-0000]
DE#1 IOM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
  SAS Cable(IOM Port)#0(IN)  [Normal / 0xE001]
  SAS Cable(IOM Port)#1(OUT) [Normal / 0xE001]
  IOM FEM Port#0          [Normal      / 0xE001]
  IOM FEM Port#1          [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

The following example displays the status of the Fan Expander Module in drive enclosure #1:

```
CLI> show fru-de -de 1 -type fem0
DE#1 FEM#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
DE#1 FEM#0 Internal Parts Status/Status Code
  FEM EXP#0 Port          [Normal      / 0xE001]
  FEM EXP#1 Port          [Normal      / 0xE001]
DE#1 FEM#0 EXP#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
  WWN                   [500000E0D060C4FF]
  Active EC              [EC#1]
  Next EC                [EC#2]
  Firmware Version       [V11L10-0000]
DE#1 FEM#0 EXP#1 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
  WWN                   [500000E0D060C4FF]
  Active EC              [EC#1]
  Next EC                [EC#2]
  Firmware Version       [V11L10-0000]
```

The following example displays the status of PSU#0 in drive enclosure #2:

```
CLI> show fru-de -de 2 -type psu0
DE#2 PSU#0 Information
  Status/Status Code      [Normal      / 0xE001]
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show disks

### show disks

This command displays the details and status of the drive. As an option, an enclosure (all drives contained in the specified enclosure), specific drives, or all the undefined drives can be specified.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show disks [-type {undefined | ce [-ce enclosure_number] | de -de enclosure_number} |  
-disks {disks | all | productid} | -csv ]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-type	Optional. This parameter specifies which drive information will be displayed. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-disks" parameter. If all of the parameters are omitted, all drives registered in the system will be displayed.
undefined	All the undefined drives
ce	All drives in the controller enclosure (only for the DX8100 S4 [AC 200V] and the DX8900 S4) When using this parameter for the DX8900 S4, make sure to specify the "-ce" parameter and the controller enclosure number.
de	All drives in the specified drive enclosure When using this parameter, make sure to specify the "-de" parameter and the drive enclosure number.
-ce	Optional. This parameter specifies the number of the controller enclosure for which details are to be obtained. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Controller Enclosure Syntax (page 25)</a> ". This parameter cannot be used for other category types.
-de	Optional. This parameter specifies the number of the drive enclosure for which details are to be obtained. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Drive Enclosure Syntax (page 25)</a> ". This parameter cannot be used for other category types.
-disks	Optional. This parameter specifies which drive number to display the detailed information of the drive for. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Drive Syntax (page 25)</a> ". Specifying "all" will display the details of all drives. When using the "productid" parameter, the product ID list of all drives is displayed. This function is useful when updating disk firmware.
all	Details of all drives
productid	The Product ID list of all drives
-csv	Optional. This parameter is used to show the details and status of the drives in a CSV format.

#### Note

- This parameter cannot be specified simultaneously with other parameters.
- Information that was output in the CSV format cannot be specified for setup commands (or command names that start with "create" or "set").

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show disks

### ■ Output

For summary, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
Location	Drive slot number
Status	Drive status
Size	Drive capacity The drive capacity that is displayed for the "SSD-L" type differs from the product's actual capacity. For example, the drive capacity of a 1.92TB SSD-L is displayed as "2TB".
Type	Drive type The following information is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive size 2.5" or 3.5"</li> <li>• Drive classification Online, Nearline, SSD For Self-Encrypting Drives, "SED" is displayed. In addition, for drives that support Advanced Format, "AF" is displayed.</li> <li>• SSD type SSD: SSDs with an interface speed of 6Gbit/s SSD-M: SSDs with an interface speed of 12Gbit/s SSD-L: SSDs with an interface speed of 12Gbit/s</li> </ul>
Speed	Rotating speed (unit: rpm)
Usage	Drive usage Example: Data, Spare, etc.
Health	Remaining usable capacity (operating life) of the SSD (unit: %)

For details, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
Location	Drive slot number
Status	Drive status
Error Code	Error code for identifying the error events that have occurred in a drive. This information is only displayed when the Status is not "Available".
Size	Drive capacity The drive capacity that is displayed for the "SSD-L" type differs from the product's actual capacity. For example, the drive capacity of a 1.92TB SSD-L is displayed as "2TB".
Type	Drive type The following information is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive size 2.5" or 3.5"</li> <li>• Drive classification Online, Nearline, SSD For Self-Encrypting Drives, "SED" is displayed. In addition, for drives that support Advanced Format, "AF" is displayed.</li> <li>• SSD type SSD: SSDs with an interface speed of 6Gbit/s SSD-M: SSDs with an interface speed of 12Gbit/s SSD-L: SSDs with an interface speed of 12Gbit/s</li> </ul>
Speed	Rotating speed (unit: rpm)
Usage	Drive usage Example: Data, Spare, etc.
Health	Remaining usable capacity (operating life) of the SSD (unit: %)
RAID Group	RAID group to which this drive belongs
Motor Status	Drive motor status by ECO functions

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show disks

Item name	Description
Rebuild/Copy back Progress	Progress status of Rebuild and Copy back
Vendor ID	Vendor ID
Product ID	Product ID
Serial Number	Serial number
WWN	World Wide Name
Firmware Revision	Drive firmware version
Total completed passes	Total number of disk patrols
Progress with current pass	Progress rate of the current disk patrol
Completed passes since last Power On	Total number of disk patrols that were performed since the ETERNUS DX was last turned on

For the product ID list, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
Product ID	Product ID
Revision	Drive firmware version

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the drives:

```
CLI> show disks
Location      Status          Size    Type        Speed(rpm) Usage     Health(%)
-----        -----
CE#0-Disk#0   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-H   7200  System    100
CE#0-Disk#1   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-M   7200  System    0
CE#0-Disk#2   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-L   7200  System    0
CE#0-Disk#3   Available      4TB    3.5 Nearline SED AF 7200  System    0
```

The following example displays a summary of all the drives in a CSV format by specifying "-csv":

```
CLI> show disks -csv
[Location],[Status],[Size],[Type],[Speed],[Usage],[Health]
CE#0-Disk#0,Available,4TB,3.5,SSD-H,7200,System,100
CE#0-Disk#1,Available,4TB,3.5,SSD-M,7200,System,0
CE#0-Disk#2,Available,4TB,3.5,SSD-L,7200,System,0
CE#0-Disk#3,Available,4TB,3.5,Nearline SED AF,7200,System,0
```

The following example displays a summary of all the drives in the controller enclosure #0 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show disks -type ce -ce 0
Location      Status          Size    Type        Speed(rpm) Usage     Health(%)
-----        -----
CE#0-Disk#0   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-H   7200  System    100
CE#0-Disk#1   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-M   7200  System    0
CE#0-Disk#2   Available      4TB    3.5 SSD-L   7200  System    0
CE#0-Disk#3   Available      4TB    3.5 Nearline SED AF 7200  System    0
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show disks

The following example displays a summary of all the drives in drive enclosure #1:

Location	Status	Size	Type	Speed(rpm)	Usage	Health(%)
DE#01-Disk#0	Available(Predictive Failure)	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#1	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#2	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#3	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#4	-					
DE#01-Disk#5	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#6	-					
DE#01-Disk#7	-					
DE#01-Disk#8	-					
DE#01-Disk#9	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Data	100
DE#01-Disk#10	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Global Hot Spare	0
DE#01-Disk#11	Available	4TB	3.5 Online	7200	Dedicated Hot Spare	0

The following example displays the details of drive #100 (drive #00 in drive enclosure #1):

```
CLI> show disks -disks 100
Drive Enclosure #01 Disk #0 Information
Location          [DE#01-Disk#0]
Status            [Error] (Error Code : 0x0010)
Size              [4TB]
Type              [3.5 Nearline SED AF]
Speed             [7200rpm]
Usage              [Data]
Health             [100%]
RAID Group        [1000 : RGP001]
Motor Status      [Active]
Rebuild/Copyback Progress [-]
Vendor ID         [FUJITSU]
Product ID        [FT373207C-K]
Serial Number     [1234567890]
WWN               [1111111111111111]
Firmware Revision [12CD]
<Disk Patrol Information>
Total completed passes      [64565Cycle]
Progress with current pass  [79%]
Completed passes since last Power On [30737Cycle]
```

The following example displays the product ID list:

```
CLI> show disks -disks productid
Product ID      Revision
----- -----
ST373455SS      12CD
ST99999999      3456
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show hardware-information

### show hardware-information

This command displays the hardware information for each enclosure and sub-component.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show hardware-information
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

For each enclosure, the following items are displayed. All possible drive enclosures are displayed, irrespective of whether or not they are currently installed. Drive enclosures that do not exist are indicated by hyphens.

Item name	Description
Serial No.	Serial number embedded in the enclosure
Other Information	Individual identifier embedded in the controlling Fujitsu enclosure.

For each component, the following items are displayed. For single controller models, both controller module #1 and expander module #1 are indicated by hyphens. Information is not displayed for drive enclosures that do not exist.

Item name	Description
Part No.	Part number embedded in the component
Serial No.	Serial number embedded in the component
Version	Hardware revision of the component

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays hardware information (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show hardware-information
Enclosure          Serial No.      Other Information
Controller Enclosure STCE000012    CE000012
Drive Enclosure#01  ST35DE000009    ST35DE000009
Drive Enclosure#02  -
Drive Enclosure#03  -
Drive Enclosure#04  -
Drive Enclosure#05  -
Drive Enclosure#06  -
Drive Enclosure#07  -
Drive Enclosure#08  -
Drive Enclosure#09  -
Drive Enclosure#0a  -
Component          Part No.       Serial No.      Version
CM#0               CA07111-C631   PP09280285    AA
CM#1               CA07111-C631 P  P0928028A    AA
PSU#0              CA05954-0860   FA09060095    06A
PSU#1              CA05954-0860   FA09060095    06A
DE#01-IOM#0        CA05967-1610+A0  JWXBM13020322  AA
DE#01-IOM#1        CA05967-1610+A0  JWXBM13130128  AA
DE#01-PSU#0         CA05967-1651    BBZT1317000233  01A/S1F
DE#01-PSU#1         CA05967-1651    BBZT1317000236  01A/S1F
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show hardware-information

The following example displays hardware information (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show hardware-information
Enclosure          Serial No.      Other Information
Controller Enclosure#0 STCE000012 CE000012
Controller Enclosure#1 -
Controller Enclosure#2 -
Controller Enclosure#3 -
Controller Enclosure#4 -
Controller Enclosure#5 -
Controller Enclosure#6 -
Controller Enclosure#7 -
Controller Enclosure#8 -
Controller Enclosure#9 -
Controller Enclosure#a -
Controller Enclosure#b -
Drive Enclosure#00 JWXMP13470044 35DE_12G
Drive Enclosure#01 -
Drive Enclosure#02 -
Drive Enclosure#03 -
Drive Enclosure#04 -
Drive Enclosure#05 -
Drive Enclosure#06 -
Drive Enclosure#07 -
Drive Enclosure#08 -
Drive Enclosure#09 -
Drive Enclosure#0a -
Drive Enclosure#0b -
Drive Enclosure#0c -
Drive Enclosure#0d -
Drive Enclosure#0e -
Drive Enclosure#0f -
Component          Part No.       Serial No.      Version
CE#0-CM#0          CA07111-C631 PP09280285 AA
CE#0-CM#1          CA07111-C631 P P0928028A AA
CE#0-CM#0-PFM#0   CA07555-D052 PP132400W2 A1
CE#0-CM#0-PFM#1   CA07555-D053 PP132411W4 A0
CE#0-CM#1-PFM#0   CA07555-D052 PP132440W2 A1
CE#0-CM#1-PFM#1   CA07555-D053 PP132451W4 A0
CE#0-PSU#0          CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
CE#0-PSU#1          CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
SVC#0              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
SVC#1              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
FRT#0              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
FRT#1              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
FRT#2              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
FRT#3              CA07111-C661 PP085102T0 06A
FE-PSU#0           CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
FE-PSU#1           CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
FE-PSU#2           CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
FE-PSU#3           CA05954-0860 FA09060095 06A
DE#00-IOM#0         CA05967-1610+A0 JWXB13020322 AA
DE#00-IOM#1         CA05967-1610+A0 JWXB13130128 AA
DE#00-PSU#0          CA05967-1651 BBZT1317000233 01A/S1F
DE#00-PSU#1          CA05967-1651 BBZT1317000236 01A/S1F
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show power-consumption

### show power-consumption

This command displays the power consumption of the storage system.

This command ends without displaying information if the power consumption information of the system is being updated. If this occurs, wait for a while and try again.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show power-consumption [-csv]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-csv      Optional. This parameter displays the power consumption information in the CSV format.

##### Note

Information that was output in the CSV format cannot be specified for setup commands (or command names that start with "create" or "set").

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Location	Target devices whose power consumption is to be displayed For the DX8100 S4, the storage system, CE, and DE#xx are displayed. For the DX8900 S4, the storage system, CE#x, FE, and DE#xx are displayed.
1-min avg.	Average power consumption for the last minute (unit: W)
1-hour avg.	Average power consumption for the last hour (unit: W)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows information when parameters are omitted (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show power-consumption
Location 1-min avg.(W) 1-hour avg.(W)
-----
System      460      520
CE          255      310
DE#01       105      110
```

The following example shows information when parameters are omitted (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show power-consumption
Location 1-min avg.(W) 1-hour avg.(W)
-----
System      460      520
CE#0        255      310
CE#1        256      309
FE          300      350
DE#04       105      110
DE#08       250      320
```

## 2. Status Display

Storage System Status > show power-consumption

The following example shows the output when "-csv" is specified (for the DX8100 S4):

The values for [Location], [1-min avg.(W)], and [1-hour avg.(W)] are displayed in the CSV format.

```
CLI> show power-consumption -csv
[Location],[1-min avg.(W)],[1-hour avg.(W)]
System,460,520
CE,255,310
DE#00,105,110
```

The following example shows the output when "-csv" is specified (for the DX8900 S4):

The values for [Location], [1-min avg.(W)], and [1-hour avg.(W)] are displayed in the CSV format.

```
CLI> show power-consumption -csv
[Location],[1-min avg.(W)],[1-hour avg.(W)]
System,460,520
CE#0,255,310
CE#1,256,309
FB,300,350
DE#00,105,110
DE#10,250,320
```

# 3. Configuration Settings and Display

---

This chapter explains the commands used for basic settings of the storage system. These settings include RAID group management, volume management, Thin Provisioning Pool management, Flexible Tier management, and host interface management.

## RAID Group Management

---

This section explains the commands used for the following settings:

- RAID group settings
- Hot spares settings
- Eco-mode settings

For information about how to operate External RAID Groups, refer to ["create external-drive" \(page 583\)](#).

### RAID Group

---

This section explains the commands used for RAID group management.  
All drives contained in a RAID group must be the same drive type.

The functions to control RAID groups are as follows:

- Creating a RAID group
- Changing an existing RAID group
- Deleting RAID groups
- LDE, Logical Device Expansion (expanding a RAID group)

## show raid-groups

This command displays a summary list of all the RAID groups or the details of a specified RAID group(s).

### Syntax

```
show raid-groups [-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names | -csv]
```

### Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies RAID group identifiers. One or more RAID groups can be specified. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" (page 29). If the RAID group identifier is omitted, a summary list of all the RAID groups is displayed.

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

-csv Optional. This parameter shows a summary list of all the RAID groups in a CSV format.

#### Note

- This parameter cannot be specified with other parameters.
- Information that was output in the CSV format cannot be specified for setup commands (or command names that start with "create" or "set").

### Output

Item name	Description
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
RAID Level	RAID level
Consist of Fast Recovery	Drives configured for the Fast Recovery RAID Group. (This information is displayed for RAID groups with RAID6-FR RAID level. A hyphen [-] is displayed for other RAID levels.) The drive configuration, the number of configurations, and the number of hot spares for RAID6 are displayed.  Example: (3D+2P)x2+1HS
Assigned CM	Assigned CM number (CM number to control a RAID group)
Status	RAID group status
Total Capacity (MB)	Total capacity (Unit: MB)
Free Capacity (MB)	Free capacity (Unit: MB)
Stripe Depth (Unit: KB)	Stripe Depth (Unit: KB) (Only when viewing details)
Key Group	Usage status of the key group (Only when viewing details)
Disk List	List of drives that belong to a RAID group (only when viewing details)
Disk	Location of the drives that belong to a RAID group
Status	Status of the drives that belong to a RAID group

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

RAID Group Management > show raid-groups

Item name	Description
Usage	Usage of the drives that belong to a RAID group
Mirroring	Pair drive information in case of RAID1 or RAID1+0
Fast Recovery Disk	Fast Recovery drive. When the RAID level is RAID6-FR, if the hot spare area is being used, the drive that failed is displayed.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary list of all the drives registered in the system:

```
CLI> show raid-groups
RAID Group          RAID      Assigned   Status           Total     Free
No.  Name           Level     CM          Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB)
----- -----
1  RAIDGROUP001    RAID1+0   CM#0       Spare in Use      134656   132535
2  RAIDGROUP002    RAID5     CM#1       Available        134656   132532
3  RAIDGROUP003    RAID5     CM#1       SED Locked       134656   132532
```

The following example displays a summary list of all the drives registered in the system (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show raid-groups
RAID Group          RAID      Assigned   Status           Total     Free
No.  Name           Level     CM          Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB)
----- -----
1  RAIDGROUP001    RAID1+0   CE#1 CM#0   Spare in Use      134656   132535
2  RAIDGROUP002    RAID5     CE#3 CM#1   Available        134656   132532
3  RAIDGROUP003    RAID5     CE#3 CM#1   SED Locked       134656   132532
```

The following example displays a summary of the RAID groups in a CSV format by specifying "-csv":

```
CLI> show raid-groups -csv
[RAID Group No.],[RAID Group Name],[RAID Level],[Assigned CM],[Status],[Total Capacity(MB)],[Free Capacity(MB)]
1,RAIDGROUP001,RAID1+0,CM#0,Spare in Use,134656,132535
2,RAIDGROUP002,RAID5,CM#1,Available,134656,132532
3,RAIDGROUP003,RAID5,CM#1,SED Locked,134656,132532
```

The following example displays details of the RAID5(4+1) RAID group named "R1". In this example, two drives have failed and two hot spares are in use. These hot spares have also failed. When multiple drives fail, the drive in "Failed Usable" status indicates the last drive that has failed:

```
CLI>show raid-groups -rg-name R1
RAID Group          RAID      Consist of   Assigned   Status           Total     Free     Stripe   Key     Fast Recovery
No.  Name           Level     Fast Recovery CM          Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB) Depth(KB) Group   Disk
----- -----
0  R1              RAID5     -           CM#0       Broken          1116160  1116136   64  Enable -
<Disk List>
Disk               Status      Usage       Mirroring
CE-Disk#0          Available   Data
CE-Disk#1          Available   Data
CE-Disk#2          Available   Data
CE-Disk#3          Broken
CE-Disk#4          Broken
CE-Disk#5          Broken
CE-Disk#6          Failed Usable Global Hot Spare
```

The following example displays the details of RAID group #0. When the RAID level is RAID1 or RAID1+0, the mirroring information is also displayed:

```
CLI> show raid-groups -rg-number 0
RAID Group          RAID      Consist of   Assigned   Status           Total     Free     Stripe   Key     Fast Recovery
No.  Name           Level     Fast Recovery CM          Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB) Depth(KB) Group   Disk
----- -----
0  RAIDGROUP1      RAID1+0   -           CM#0       Spare in Use      560128   60104   64  Disable -
<Disk List>
Disk               Status      Usage       Mirroring
CE-Disk#2          Broken
CE-Disk#3          Available   Data
CE-Disk#4          Available   Data
CE-Disk#5          Available   Data
CE-Disk#7          Available   Global Hot Spare  CE-Disk#4
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

RAID Group Management > show raid-groups

The following example displays the details of RAID Group #0 when the RAID level is RAID6-FR:

```
CLI> show raid-groups -rg-number 0
RAID Group      RAID      Consist of      Assigned      Status          Total      Free      Stripe      Key      Fast Recovery
No.  Name       Level     Fast Recovery   CM           Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB) Depth(KB) Group    Disk
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
0  R1          RAID6-FR  (3D+2P)x2+1HS  CM#0        Broken        1116160    1116136    64  Enable  DE#01-Disk#5
<Disk List>
Disk          Status      Usage      Mirroring
-----  -----  -----  -----
DE#01-Disk#0  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#1  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#2  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#3  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#4  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#5  Broken
DE#01-Disk#6  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#7  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#8  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#9  Available  Data
DE#01-Disk#10 Available  Data
```

## show raid-group-progress

This command displays the progress of the Rebuild/Copyback process and the expansion process of all RAID groups (Logical Device Expansion). Individual RAID groups can also be specified.

### Syntax

```
show raid-group-progress [-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names]
```

### Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies RAID group identifiers. If the RAID group identifier is omitted, a progress list of all the RAID groups is displayed. For details, refer to "["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#)".

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

### Output

Item name	Description
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Status	RAID group status
Rebuild/Copyback	Information on the recovery progress
Progress	Progress (0 – 100%)
Estimated time left	Estimated remaining recovery time
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
calculating	The remaining time is being calculated.
30days or more	The remaining time is 30 days or more.
Xday Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 30 days but 1 day or more.
Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 day but 1 hour or more.
Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 hour but 1 minute or more.
Less than 1min	The remaining time is less than 1 minute.
Remaining size	Remaining capacity of recovery
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
XMB	Remaining capacity (rounded up to the nearest whole number) X: decimal number
Expanding Progress	Progress status of expanding RAID groups (Logical Device Expansion)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

RAID Group Management > show raid-group-progress

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a progress list of all the RAID groups:

```
CLI> show raid-group-progress
RAID Group          Status           Rebuild/Copyback
No.   Name           Progress        Estimated time left Remaining size Expanding
                                              Progress
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  0  RAIDGROUP001    Copyback       87% 12h 59min      1024MB      -
  1  RAIDGROUP012    Available     -          -            -          19%
  2  RAIDGROUP013    Available     87% Less than 1min 16MB      -
  3  RAIDGROUP014    SED Locked   0%  30days or more 134217728MB      -
```

The following example displays only the progress status of the RAID group #1:

```
CLI> show raid-group-progress -rg-number 1
RAID Group          Status           Rebuild/Copyback
No.   Name           Progress        Estimated time left Remaining size Expanding
                                              Progress
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  1  RAIDGROUP012    Available     -          -            -          19%
```

The following example displays the progress status of the RAID group named "RAIDGROUP001" and "RAIDGROUP012":

```
CLI> show raid-group-progress -rg-name RAIDGROUP001,RAIDGROUP012
RAID Group          Status           Rebuild/Copyback
No.   Name           Progress        Estimated time left Remaining size Expanding
                                              Progress
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  0  RAIDGROUP001    Copyback       87% 12h 59min      1024MB      -
  1  RAIDGROUP012    Available     -          -            -          19%
```

## create raid-group

This command creates a RAID group with the specified RAID group name, RAID level, and drives. When registering a hot spare, refer to the "["set global-spare"](#)" or the "["set dedicated-spare"](#)" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
create raid-group -name alias_name {-disks disks [-fr-consist (3D+2P)x2+1HS | (4D+2P)x2+1HS |  
(6D+2P)x2+1HS | (9D+2P)x2+1HS | (12D+2P)x2+1HS | (5D+2P)x4+1HS | (13D+2P)x2+1HS | (8D+2P)x3+1HS |  
(4D+2P)x5+1HS | (3D+2P)x6+1HS] | }  
-level {0 | 1 | 5 | 6 | 10 | 50 | 6fr}  
[-assigned-cm {0 | 1 | 00 | 01 | 10 | 11 | 20 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 40 | 41 | 50 | 51 | 60 | 61 | 70 | 71 | 80 | 81 | 90 | 91 | a0 |  
a1 | b0 | b1 | auto}]  
[-stripe-depth { 64kb | 128kb | 256kb | 512kb | 1024kb }]}
```

### ■ Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies the alias name of a RAID group. Only one name can be specified. For details, refer to "["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#)".

*alias\_name* RAID group name

**-disks** This parameter specifies which drives will form the RAID group. For details, refer to "["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#)".

*disks* Drive

**-level** This parameter specifies the RAID level.

0	RAID0
1	RAID1
5	RAID5
6	RAID6
10	RAID1+0
50	RAID5+0
6fr	RAID6-FR (Fast Recovery)

**-assigned-cm**

Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned controller (CM number) of the specified RAID group. If "auto" is specified, the fixed controller, which is calculated automatically by the system, is assigned. If this parameter is omitted, the process is performed as if "auto" was set.

0	CM#0 (DX8100 S4 only)
1	CM#1 (DX8100 S4 only)
<i>wx</i>	CE# <i>w</i> -CM# <i>x</i> (DX8900 S4 only)

"*w*" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "*x*" is the controller module (CM) number.  
Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

*auto* Automatically (default)

-stripe-depth

Optional. This parameter specifies the stripe depth for the RAID group that is to be created. If omitted, then it is handled as if "64kb" is selected. The available values vary depending on the RAID level and the number of drives.

The available values for each RAID level are shown below.

RAID level	Configurable Stripe Depth
RAID1	-
RAID1+0, RAID0	64KB, 128KB, 256KB, 512KB, 1,024KB
RAID5(2+1) - RAID5(4+1)	64KB, 128KB, 256KB, 512KB
RAID5(5+1) - RAID5(8+1)	64KB, 128KB, 256KB
RAID5(9+1) - RAID5(15+1)	64KB, 128KB
RAID5+0	64KB
RAID6	64KB
RAID6-FR	64KB

■ Example(s)

The following example creates a RAID group named "RGP001". RAID1 level is assigned using drives #003 and #004:

```
CLI> create raid-group -name RGP001 -level 1 -disks 003,004
```

## set raid-group

This command changes the information of an existing RAID group.

### ■ Syntax

```
set raid-group {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name} [-name name]  
[-assigned-cm {0 | 1 | 00 | 01 | 10 | 11 | 20 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 40 | 41 | 50 | 51 | 60 | 61 | 70 | 71 | 80 | 81 | 90 | 91 | a0 |  
a1 | b0 | b1 | auto}]  
[-key-group {enable | disable}]
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies RAID group identifiers.

Only one RAID group identifier can be specified when changing a RAID group alias name. One or more RAID group identifiers can be specified when changing the assigned CM. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax \(page 29\)](#)".

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the new RAID group name. If this parameter is omitted, the name is not changed. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax \(page 26\)](#)".

*name* RAID group name

#### -assigned-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned controller module number of the RAID group. If "auto" is specified, the fixed controller, which is calculated automatically by the system, is assigned. If this parameter is omitted, the assigned CM is not changed.

0 CM#0 (DX8100 S4 only)

1 CM#1 (DX8100 S4 only)

*wx* CE#*w*-CM#*x* (DX8900 S4 only)

"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "x" is the controller module (CM) number.

Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

auto Automatically (default)

#### -key-group

Optional. The Security Setting policy is required. This parameter specifies whether to use the key group. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable The key group is used (the SED authentication key that is managed by the key server is used).

disable The key group is not used (the common key in the ETERNUS DX is used).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the RAID group named "RGP001". The new name is "RAID002":

```
CLI> set raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -name RAID002
```

The following example changes the CM number that is associated with RAID group "RGP001" (for the DX8100 S4). The new CM number is "CM#1":

```
CLI> set raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -assigned-cm 1
```

The following example changes the CM number that is associated with RAID groups #2 and #4 (for the DX8100 S4). The new CM number is "CM#1":

```
CLI> set raid-group -rg-number 2,4 -assigned-cm 1
```

The following example changes the CM number that is associated with RAID groups #2 and #4 (for the DX8900 S4). The new CM number is "CE#3 CM#1":

```
CLI> set raid-group -rg-number 2,4 -assigned-cm 31
```

The following example sets a key group for RAID groups #2 and #4:

```
CLI> set raid-group -rg-number 2,4 -key-group enable
```

## delete raid-group

This command deletes an existing RAID group(s). A RAID group cannot be deleted if one or more volumes exist in the RAID group.

### Caution

- The following RAID groups cannot be deleted:
  - RAID groups where the volumes are registered
  - RAID groups are being expanded
  - RAID groups that are registered in a TPP or an FTRP
  - RAID groups that are registered as REC disk buffers

### Syntax

```
delete raid-group {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### Parameter

*-rg-number* or *-rg-name*

This parameter specifies RAID group identifiers. One or more RAID group identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" (page 29).

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

### Example(s)

The following example deletes the RAID group named "R1":

```
CLI> delete raid-group -rg-name R1
```

The following example deletes consecutive RAID groups #1 - #8:

```
CLI> delete raid-group -rg-number 1-8
```

## expand raid-group

This command expands a RAID group (Logical Device Expansion). The capacity of an existing RAID group is expanded by adding new drives to the RAID group. A new RAID level can also be specified. Any volumes in the existing RAID group are relocated to the new RAID group.

### Caution

- RAID5+0 and RAID6-FR are not supported, not even for pure capacity expansion operations.
- Expanding a RAID level other than RAID0 to RAID0 is not supported.
- When RAID group capacity is expanded without changing the RAID level, specify only the new drives to be added for the "-disks" parameter.
- If the RAID level is changed with RAID group expansion, at least one drive that is already configured in an expansion source RAID group and all the new drives that are to be added must be specified for the "-disks" parameter.

## ■ Syntax

```
expand raid-group {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name}  
-disks disks [-level {0 | 5 | 6 | 10}] [-name name]
```

## ■ Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies a RAID group identifier. However, only one RAID group identifier can be specified at a time. For details, refer to "["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#)".

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

-disks This parameter specifies the drives to add to a RAID group. One or more parameters can be specified. This parameter specifies the drive numbers for the drives that configure the RAID group before expansion and the numbers for the drives that are to be added. For details, refer to "["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#)".

*disks* Drive

-level Optional. This parameter specifies the new RAID level of the expanded RAID group. RAID5+0 level is not supported.

0 RAID0

5 RAID5

6 RAID6

10 RAID1+0

-name Optional. This parameter specifies the new RAID group name to be used for the expanded RAID group. For details, refer to "["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#)".

*names* RAID group name

## ■ Example(s)

The following example expands the RAID group named "RGP001" using six drives (#101-#103, #201-#203), and changes the RAID level to RAID5:

```
CLI> expand raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -disks 101-103,201-203 -level 5
```

## Hot Spares

---

This section explains the commands that are related to hot spares.

Hot spares are used for rebuilds, copyback operations, or redundant copy operations. If a drive failure occurs, a data copy (rebuild) to the hot spare is automatically started. If preventive maintenance of a drive is required, the Redundant Copy function integrates a hot spare and disconnects the replacement target drive.

There are two types of hot spares:

- **Global Hot Spare (Global HS)**

A hot spare that can be used by all RAID groups.

When multiple hot spares are installed, the most appropriate drive is automatically selected and incorporated into a RAID group.

- **Dedicated Hot Spare (Dedicated HS/DHS)**

A hot spare that is only available to the specified RAID group (one RAID group).

The Dedicated Hot Spare cannot be registered in a RAID group that is registered in TPPs, FTRPs, or REC disk buffers.

If the Dedicated Hot Spare has not been assigned (or if unavailable), the Global Hot Spare will be used.

After the drive that is targeted for replacement due to a failure or for preventive purposes is replaced, the data is automatically copied back from the hot spare to the new drive. If copybackless (\*1) is disabled, and the replacement target drive is replaced with a normal drive, the data is copied to the replacement drive. The hot spare returns as a spare drive for when failure occurs or preventive maintenance of a drive is required. If copybackless is enabled, the drive that was replaced can be used as a hot spare.

\*1: Copybackless is a function that makes copyback unnecessary by assigning the original hot spare to RAID groups as is, and the drive after the replacement as a hot spare.

---

### Note

Register dedicated hot spares in a RAID group that is used for saving important data so that the hot spares are prioritized for use.

### Caution

Hot spares must be of the same drive type as the drives in the RAID group. Also, the hot spares must have the same or larger capacity as the drives in the RAID group. If a RAID group is configured with drives that have different rotational speeds, the performance of all of the drives in the RAID group is reduced to that of the drive with the lowest rotational speed.

A list of registered hot spares can be displayed by using the "show disks" command.

---

## set global-spare

This command assigns a drive as a Global Hot Spare.

A Global Hot Spare is shared by all of the RAID groups. A list of registered hot spares can be displayed by using the "show disks" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
set global-spare -disks disks
```

### ■ Parameter

-disks      This parameter specifies the drives to be registered as Global Hot Spares. One or more drives can be specified. For details, refer to ["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#).

*disks*      Drive

### ■ Example(s)

The following example registers drives #101 and #102 as Global Hot Spares:

```
CLI> set global-spare -disks 101,102
```

The following example assigns drives #101 and #102 as Global Hot Spares and drive #103 as a Global Hot Spare. Adding additional Global Hot Spares does not remove any hot spares that are previously set:

```
CLI> set global-spare -disks 101,102
CLI> set global-spare -disks 103
```

## release global-spare

This command releases Global Hot Spare(s). The drive will then have an unassigned (present) status.

### ■ Syntax

```
release global-spare -disks disks
```

### ■ Parameter

-disks      This parameter specifies the drives to be released from the Global Hot Spare. One or more drives can be specified. For details, refer to "[Drive Syntax](#)" (page 25).

*disks*      Drive

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases drive #011 from the Global Hot Spares:

```
CLI> release global-spare -disks 011
```

The following example releases drives #101 to #105 from the Global Hot Spares:

```
CLI> release global-spare -disks 101-105
```

## set dedicated-spare

This command assigns a drive as a Dedicated Hot Spare.

A dedicated hot spare can only be assigned to a single RAID group. However, one RAID group can have one or more dedicated hot spares. A list of registered hot spares can be displayed by using the "show disks" command.

### Syntax

```
set dedicated-spare -disks disks {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### Parameter

-disks This parameter specifies the drives to be registered as Dedicated Hot Spares. One or more drives can be specified. If two or more parameters are specified, they must be specified in the same order as the associated RAID group identifier parameters. For details, refer to ["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#).

*disks* Drive

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifiers to which the Dedicated Hot Spares will be assigned. One or more RAID group identifiers can be specified. If two or more RAID group identifiers are specified, they must be specified in the same order as the associated drive parameters. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

### Example(s)

The example assigns drive #110 as a dedicated hot spare to the RAID group "R1":

```
CLI> set dedicated-spare -disks 110 -rg-name R1
```

The following example assigns drives #110 and #111 as dedicated hot spares to the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> set dedicated-spare -disks 110,111 -rg-name RGP001
```

The following example assigns two different drives to two different RAID groups. Drive #110 is assigned as a Dedicated Hot Spare to the RAID group named "RGP1". Drive #111 is assigned as a Dedicated Hot Spare to the RAID group named "RGP2":

```
CLI> set dedicated-spare -disks 110,111 -rg-name RGP1,RGP2
```

The following example first assigns drive #101 as a Dedicated Hot Spare and then adds drive #102 as a Dedicated Hot Spare to the same RAID group. Adding additional Dedicated Hot Spares does not remove any hot spares that are previously set:

```
CLI> set dedicated-spare -disks 101 -rg-name RGP1
CLI> set dedicated-spare -disks 102 -rg-name RGP1
```

## release dedicated-spare

This command releases a dedicated hot spare(s). The drive will then have an unassigned (present) status.

### ■ Syntax

```
release dedicated-spare -disks disks
```

### ■ Parameter

-disks      This parameter specifies the drives that are registered as Dedicated Hot Spares. One or more drives can be specified. For details, refer to "[Drive Syntax \(page 25\)](#)".

*disks*      Drive

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases Dedicated Hot Spare #110:

```
CLI> release dedicated-spare -disks 110
```

The following example releases Dedicated Hot Spares #110 and #111:

```
CLI> release dedicated-spare -disks 110,111
```

## Eco-mode Management

---

This section explains the commands that are related to the Eco-mode functions. They are only applicable when the Eco-mode is enabled using the "set eco-mode" command.

The functions that are related to Eco-mode management are as follows:

- Setting/Releasing the Eco-mode
- Creating the Eco-mode schedule
- Changing the Eco-mode schedule
- Deleting the Eco-mode schedule
- Setting the RAID group association
- Releasing the RAID group association

The three steps involved in enabling the Eco-mode functions are as follows:

### Procedure ►► —————

- 1** Enable the Eco-mode.
  - 2** Create an Eco-mode schedule.
  - 3** Assign the Eco-mode schedule to RAID groups.
- 
- 

## show eco-mode

This command displays the current Eco-mode status and parameter settings.

### ■ Syntax

```
show eco-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Mode	Indicates whether the Eco-mode function is enabled.
Host I/O Monitoring Time	Monitoring interval time of the host I/O
Disk Motor Control Limit Count	Number of times that a disk motor will power off and on in one day

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the current Eco-mode settings:

```
CLI> show eco-mode
Mode [Enable]
Host I/O Monitoring Time [60 min.]
Disk Motor Control Limit Count [5]
```

## set eco-mode

This command enables or disables the Eco-mode. The Eco-mode is a function that turns off the disk motor when the disks are not being accessed. The Eco-mode function cannot be used unless the Eco-mode is enabled.

### ■ Syntax

```
set eco-mode [-mode {enable | disable}]
```

### ■ Parameter

- mode      Optional. This parameter specifies if the Eco-mode is enabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - enable      Eco-mode is enabled.
  - disable      Eco-mode is disabled.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the Eco-mode:

```
CLI> set eco-mode -mode enable
```

The following example disables the Eco-mode:

```
CLI> set eco-mode -mode disable
```

## show eco-schedule

This command displays a summary of the Eco-mode schedules and the Eco-mode schedule events.

### Syntax

```
show eco-schedule [-schedule-number schedule_numbers | -schedule-name schedule_names]
```

### Parameter

-schedule-number or -schedule-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule identifier to display details. One or more Eco-mode schedule identifiers can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, all the Eco-mode schedules are displayed. For details, refer to ["Eco-mode Schedule Syntax" \(page 35\)](#).

*schedule\_numbers* Eco-mode schedule number

*schedule\_names* Eco-mode schedule name

### Output

Item name	Description
ECO Schedule	Eco-mode schedule identifiers
No.	Eco-mode schedule number
Name	Eco-mode schedule name
Event	Eco-mode schedule event identifiers
No.	Eco-mode schedule event number
Type	Eco-mode schedule event type
Details	Explanation for the Eco-mode schedule event type
Time	Starting time and ending time of the Eco-mode schedule

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the registered Eco-mode schedules:

```
CLI> show eco-schedule
ECO Schedule
No. Name
-----
0 SC001
1 SC002
2 SC003_TEMP
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

RAID Group Management > show eco-schedule

The following example displays the schedule information of the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001":

```
CLI> show eco-schedule -schedule-name SC001
ECO Schedule
No. Name
-----
0 SC001
Event
No. Type      Details          Time
----- -----
1 Every-day
2 Every-week   Monday-Friday
3 Specific-day 6days from December 13
4 Specific-week December 1st week Monday-Friday
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
```

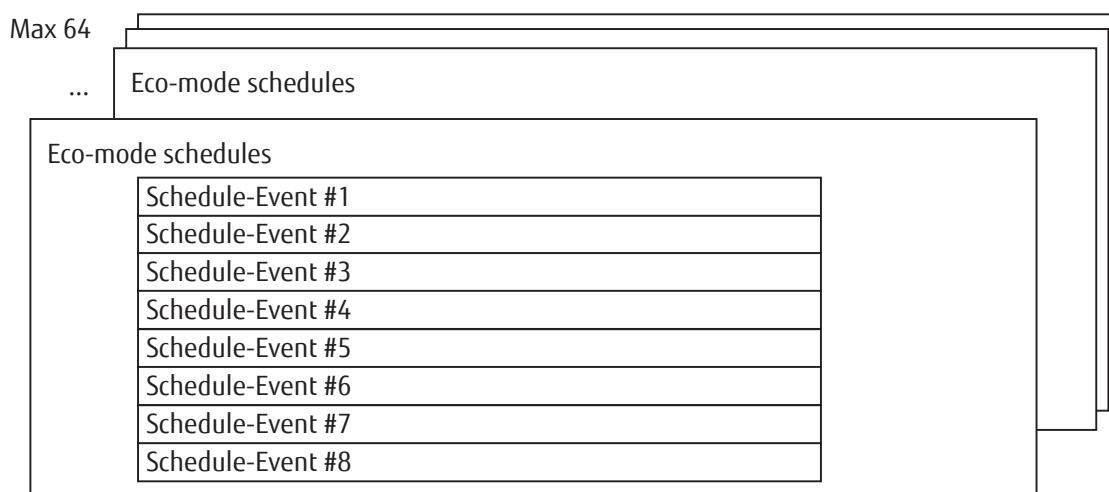
The following example displays the schedule information of the Eco-mode schedules named "SC002" and "SC003\_TEMP" at the same time:

```
CLI> show eco-schedule -schedule-name SC002,SC003_TEMP
ECO Schedule
No. Name
-----
2 SC002
Event
No. Type      Details          Time
----- -----
1 Every-day
2 Every-week   Monday-Friday
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]

ECO Schedule
No. Name
-----
3 SC003_TEMP
Event
No. Type      Details          Time
----- -----
1 Specific-day 6days from December 13
2 Specific-week December 1st week Monday-Friday
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
                                         from [06:00] to [18:00]
```

## create eco-schedule

An Eco-mode schedule is a schedule that applies Eco-mode functions. The Eco-mode schedule specifies the time that a disk motor is rotated (it does NOT specify when the motor will be turned off). A maximum of 64 Eco-mode schedules can be created. One Eco-mode schedule consists of a maximum of 8 Eco-mode schedule events (at least one Eco-mode schedule event is required in one Eco-mode schedule). This command can create one Eco-mode schedule and only one Eco-mode schedule event. If two or more Eco-mode schedule events are created and defined, use the "set eco-schedule" command. Refer to the following:



### Syntax

```
create eco-schedule -name schedule_name -event-type {every-day |  
every-week,{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun} | specific-day,MMDD,R |  
specific-week,MM,{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat |  
sun}}  
-event-from hhmm  
-event-to hhmm
```

### Parameter

- name      This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule name. Only one Eco-mode schedule name can be specified. For details, refer to ["Eco-mode Schedule Syntax" \(page 35\)](#).
- schedule\_name*    Eco-mode schedule name
- event-type    This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule event type.
- every-day    The Eco-mode schedule is applied to every day. A suboperand is not required.  
Example: -event-type every-day
- every-week    The Eco-mode schedule is applied to every week. This format is "every-week,STA,END". The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: Correct -> -event-type every-week,mon,fri  
(from Monday to Friday is OK)

Example: Incorrect -> -event-type every-week,fri,tue  
(from Friday to Tuesday is not OK)

Example: Correct -> -event-type every-week,mon,mon  
(only Monday is OK)

mon Monday  
tue Tuesday  
wed Wednesday  
thu Thursday  
fri Friday  
sat Saturday  
sun Sunday

**specific-day** The Eco-mode schedule is applied to a specific day. This format is "specific-day,MMDD,R". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific day DD (01 – 31) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). When the last day of the month is required, specify "99" instead of 01 – 31. The number of days that the schedule will apply is specified as R, and a value between 1 – 7 can be set.

Example: -event-type specific-day,0501,3  
(For three days, from May 1st to May 3rd)

Example: -event-type specific-day,0630,2  
(For two days, from June 30th to July 1st)

#### specific-week

The Eco-mode schedule is applied to a specific week. This format is "specific-week,MM,W,STA,END". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific week W (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, or last) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,mon,wed  
(From the 3rd Monday to the 3rd Wednesday in May)

Example: -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,wed,mon  
(From the 3rd Wednesday to the 3rd Monday in May)  
(When May 1st is a Monday)

mon Monday  
tue Tuesday  
wed Wednesday  
thu Thursday  
fri Friday  
sat Saturday  
sun Sunday

**-event-from** This parameter specifies that the Eco-mode schedule will start at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the starting hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the starting minute (00 or 30). A disk motor will power ON at the time specified by this parameter.

-event-to This parameter specifies that the Eco-mode schedule will end at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the ending hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the ending minute (00 or 30).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates an Eco-mode schedule. The Eco-mode schedule name is "SC001". The Eco-mode schedule will apply every day from 06:00 to 18:00:

```
CLI> create eco-schedule -name SC001 -event-type every-day -event-from 0600 -event-to 1800
```

## set eco-schedule

This command is used to add Eco-mode schedule events or make changes to the specified Eco-mode schedule.

### Syntax

```
set eco-schedule {-schedule-number schedule_number | -schedule-name schedule_name}  
[-name schedule_name] [-event-number {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8}]  
[-event-type {every-day | every-week,{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun} |  
specific-day,MMDD,R | specific-week,MM,{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},  
{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun}}] [-event-from hhmm] [-event-to hhmm]
```

### Parameter

#### -schedule-number or -schedule-name

This parameter specifies an Eco-mode schedule identifier. Only one Eco-mode schedule identifier can be specified. For details, refer to "[Eco-mode Schedule Syntax](#) (page 35).

*schedule\_number* Schedule number

*schedule\_name* Schedule name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies a new Eco-mode schedule name. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#) (page 26).

*schedule\_name* Schedule name

#### -event-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule event number to change or to add the Eco-mode schedule event to the Eco-mode schedule. The Eco-mode schedule event number is a value from 1 to 8. Only one number can be specified. The Eco-mode schedule event number can be displayed by using the "show eco-schedule" command. If omitted, the Eco-mode schedule event specified by this parameter value is not changed.

1 – 8 Schedule event number

#### -event-type

Optional. This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule event type. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

**every-day** The Eco-mode schedule is applied to every day. A suboperand is not required.

Example: -event-type every-day

**every-week** The Eco-mode schedule is applied to every week. This format is "every-week,STA,END". The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: Correct -> -event-type every-week,mon,fri  
(from Monday to Friday is OK)

Example: Incorrect -> -event-type every-week,fri,tue  
(from Friday to Tuesday is not OK)

Example: Correct -> -event-type every-week,mon,mon  
(only Monday is OK)

mon	Monday
tue	Tuesday
wed	Wednesday
thu	Thursday
fri	Friday
sat	Saturday
sun	Sunday

**specific-day** The Eco-mode schedule is applied to a specific day. This format is "specific-day,MMDD,R". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific day DD (01 – 31) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). When the last day of the month is required, specify "99" instead of 01 – 31. The number of days that the schedule will apply is specified as R, and a value between 1 – 7 can be set.

Example: -event-type specific-day,0501,3  
(For three days, from May 1st to May 3rd)

Example: -event-type specific-day,0630,2  
(For two days, from June 30th to July 1st)

**specific-week** The Eco-mode schedule is applied to a specific week. This format is "specific-week,MM,W,STA,END". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific week W (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, or last) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: Correct -> -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,mon,wed  
(from the 3rd Monday to the 3rd Wednesday in May is OK)

Example: Incorrect -> -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,wed,mon  
(from the 3rd Wednesday to the 3rd Monday in May is not OK)  
(When May 1st is a Monday)

mon	Monday
tue	Tuesday
wed	Wednesday
thu	Thursday
fri	Friday
sat	Saturday
sun	Sunday

**-event-from** Optional. This parameter specifies that the Eco-mode schedule will start at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the starting hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the starting minute (00 or 30). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

A disk motor will power ON at the time specified by this parameter.

**-event-to** Optional. This parameter specifies that the Eco-mode schedule will end at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the ending hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the ending minute (00 or 30). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example adds Eco-mode schedule event #2 in the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001":

```
CLI> set eco-schedule -schedule-name SC001 -event-number 2 -event-type every-day -event-from 0600 -event-to 1800
```

The following example changes the Eco-mode schedule name. The new Eco-mode schedule name is "SC002\_NEW":

```
CLI> set eco-schedule -schedule-name SC001 -name SC002_NEW
```

## delete eco-schedule

This command deletes an Eco-mode schedule(s) or a single Eco-mode schedule event. One or more Eco-mode schedules can be deleted at the same time. Only one Eco-mode schedule event can be deleted at the same time.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete eco-schedule {-schedule-number schedule_numbers | -schedule-name schedule_names}  
[-event-number {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8}]
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -schedule-number or -schedule-name

This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule identifier. One or more parameters can be specified. However, if one or more parameters are specified, the "-event-number" parameter cannot be specified. For details, refer to "["Eco-mode Schedule Syntax" \(page 35\)](#)".

*schedule\_numbers* Schedule number

*schedule\_names* Schedule name

#### -event-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the Eco-mode schedule event number to be deleted. The Eco-mode schedule event number is a value from 1 to 8 and can be displayed by using the "show eco-schedule" command. Only one event number can be specified. If the event-number is omitted, the Eco-mode schedule is deleted.

1 – 8 Schedule event number

### ■ Example(s)

The following example will delete the Eco-mode schedule named "SC002":

```
CLI> delete eco-schedule -schedule-name SC002
```

The following example will delete Eco-mode schedule event #2 in the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001":

```
CLI> delete eco-schedule -schedule-name SC001 -event-number 2
```

The following example will delete both the Eco-mode schedules named "SC002" and "SC003" at the same time:

```
CLI> delete eco-schedule -schedule-name SC002,SC003
```

## show eco-raid-group

This command displays a list of the RAID groups that have an Eco-mode schedule associated with them.

### Syntax

```
show eco-raid-group
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Level	RAID level
Status	RAID group status
Assigned CM	Controller module to be assigned to the target RAID group
Capacity (MB)	RAID group capacity
ECO Schedule	Eco-mode schedule identifiers
Action	Eco-mode schedule action. It means whether the Eco-mode schedule is associated.
No.	Eco-mode schedule number (In the case of a schedule by a cooperative software, "128" is displayed.)
Name	Eco-mode schedule name (In the case of a schedule by a cooperative software, "External" is displayed.)
Motor Status	Current status of the disk motors
Control Status	Control status by a control command

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the RAID groups that are associated with the Eco-mode schedule:

CLI> show eco-raid-group	RAID Group No.	Level	Status	Assigned CM	Capacity (MB)	ECO Schedule Action	No. Name	Motor Status	Control Status
	28 RGP028	RAID1	Available	CE#3 CM#0	53647	Drive power off	1 SC001	Active	[OFF]
	29 RGP029	RAID1+0	Available	CE#3 CM#0	60000	Drive motor off	1 SC001	Active	[OFF]
	30 RGP030	RAIDS5	Available	CE#3 CM#1	89654	Drive always on	128 External	Active	[OFF]
	31 RGP031	RAID0	Present	CE#3 CM#1	22301	Drive always on	2 SC002	Active	[OFF]

## set eco-raid-group

This command is used to associate an Eco-mode schedule with a specified RAID group(s).

### Caution

- The RAID group where the SDPV is registered does not become the target of the motor stoppage due to Eco-mode.
- The RAID group where the ODX buffer volume is registered does not become the target of the motor stoppage due to Eco-mode.
- When software that detects abnormalities in hardware regularly accesses the ETERNUS DX, even if Eco-mode is enabled, there are situations where the disk motor does not stop (\*1).  
\*1: This not only affects the motor stoppage, but includes the cutting of the drives power as well.
- Set the same Eco-mode schedule to all the RAID groups that configure WSVs.

## ■ Syntax

```
set eco-raid-group {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}  
[-schedule-number schedule_number | -schedule-name schedule_name]  
-action {enable | power-enable | disable}
```

## ■ Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies a RAID group identifier. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

### Caution

- RAID groups in which there are no volumes cannot be specified.
- Eco-mode cannot be used for RAID groups that contain SSDs.
- RAID groups that are registered as REC disk buffers cannot be specified.

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

-schedule-number or -schedule-name

Optional. This parameter specifies an Eco-mode schedule identifier. Only one Eco-mode schedule number can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to ["Eco-mode Schedule Syntax" \(page 35\)](#).

To set software linkage, specify "128" for "-schedule-number". In this case, "External" is automatically set as the schedule name.

*schedule\_number* Schedule number

*schedule\_name* Schedule name

-action	This parameter specifies whether the associated definition is enabled.
enable	The motor is suspended (the specified Eco-mode schedule is enabled, and the drive motor is suspended except during the specified scheduled time period).
power-enable	The drives power is cut (the specified Eco-mode schedule is enabled, and power for the drive is cut except during the specified scheduled time period).
disable	The drive always operates (the specified Eco-mode schedule is disabled, and the drive operates continuously regardless of the specified schedule).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example associates the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001" with the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> set eco-raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -schedule-name SC001 -action enable
```

The following example associates the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001" with the RAID groups #1- #10 at the same time:

```
CLI> set eco-raid-group -rg-number 1-10 -schedule-name SC001 -action enable
```

The following example disables the Eco-mode function of the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> set eco-raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -action disable
```

The following example associates Eco-mode schedule #1 with the RAID group named "RGP001". The second command associates the Eco-mode schedule #2 with the same RAID group. These executions result in Eco-mode schedule #1 being released:

```
CLI> set eco-raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -schedule-number 1 -action enable
CLI> set eco-raid-group -rg-name RGP001 -schedule-number 2 -action enable
```

## release eco-raid-group

This command releases the Eco-mode schedule that is associated with a specific RAID group(s).

### ■ Syntax

```
release eco-raid-group {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies a RAID group identifier. One or more parameters can be specified.  
For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" (page 29).

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases an Eco-mode schedule associated with the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> release eco-raid-group -rg-name RGP001
```

The following example releases an Eco-mode schedule associated with RAID groups #1 – #10 at the same time:

```
CLI> release eco-raid-group -rg-number 1-10
```

## Volume Management

---

This section explains the commands related to the management of volumes.

For details on the commands relating to volumes (Flexible Tier Volumes [FTVs]) that are assigned to Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs), refer to ["Flexible Tier Volumes" \(page 180\)](#).

For information about External Volumes, refer to ["create external-drive" \(page 583\)](#).

### Volume

---

This section explains the details of the commands that are related to the management of volumes.

- Creating volumes
- Changing existing volume information
- Deleting volumes
- Formatting volumes
- LUN concatenation (expanding volumes)
- RAID Migration (moving volumes)
- Balancing TPVs
- Starting/stopping Zero Reclamation
- QoS performance settings of the volume

## show volumes

This command lists the summary or details of all the existing volumes or specified volumes.

### Note

- If both the "-csv" and "-detail" parameters are specified, this command displays the details of the volumes in the Comma Separated Value (CSV) format.
- Multiple parameters can be combined. For example, if the "-rg-number" and "-ftrp-number" parameters are specified, this command displays the information of the volumes that belong to the specified RAID group and FTRP.

## Syntax

```
show volumes
[-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_name]
[-external-rg-number external_rg_numbers | -external-rg-name external_rg_name]
[-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_name]
[-ftrp-number ftrp_numbers | -ftrp-name ftrp_name]
[-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_name]
[-filter {standard | sdv | sdpv | tpv | ftv | wsv | tfo | compression | vvol | odx | migration}]
[-list] [-csv] [-detail]
```

## Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies RAID group identifiers. The information of the volumes that belong to the specified RAID group will be displayed. One or more RAID group numbers can be specified. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#) (page 29).

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

-external-rg-number or -external-rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies External RAID Group identifiers. The information of the volumes that belong to the specified External RAID Group will be displayed. One or more External RAID Group numbers can be specified. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#) (page 29).

*external\_rg\_numbers* External RAID Group number

*external\_rg\_name* External RAID Group name

-pool-number or -pool-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. The details of the volumes on a Thin Provisioning Pool will be displayed. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool numbers can be specified. If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, this parameter cannot be specified. For details, refer to "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax](#) (page 27).

*pool\_numbers* Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name* Thin Provisioning Pool name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

---

-ftp-number or -ftp-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP) identifiers. The details of the volumes on an FTRP will be displayed. One or more FTRP numbers can be specified. For details, refer to "[Flexible Tier Pool Syntax](#)" (page 28).

*ftp\_numbers*      FTRP number  
*ftp\_name*      FTRP name

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. One or more volume numbers can be specified. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax](#)" (page 30).

*volume\_numbers*      Volume number  
*volume\_name*      Volume name

-filter      Optional. This parameter specifies a filter that limits the volume type to display. If omitted, information for all the volume types is displayed.

---

#### Caution

Only one parameter can be specified.

---

standard	Normal/open volumes (Standard)
sdv	Snap Data Volumes (SDVs) for Advanced Copy functions
sdpv	Snap Data Pool Volumes (SDPVs) for Advanced Copy functions
tpv	Thin Provisioning Volumes (TPVs) "tpv" cannot be specified if the Thin Provisioning function is disabled.
ftv	Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs)
tfo	Volumes belonging to a TFO group
compression	Volumes enabled with Compression
vvol	Virtual Volumes (VVOL)
odx	ODX buffer volumes
wsv	Wide Striping Volumes (WSVs)
migration	External Volumes used for non-disruptive storage migration

-list      Optional. This parameter is specified to display a summary of the volumes. It cannot be specified with the "-detail" or "-csv" parameter.

-csv      Optional. This parameter is specified to display the volume information in the CSV format. It cannot be specified with the "-list" parameter.

---

#### Note

Information that was output in the CSV format cannot be specified for setup commands (or command names that start with "create" or "set").

---

-detail      Optional. This parameter is specified to display the details of the volumes. It cannot be specified with the "-list" parameter.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
<b>Volume Information</b>	Volume identification information
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Status	Volume status
Type	Volume type. Volume usage is also displayed for the following volumes. VVOLs: "FTV(VVOL)" Volumes enabled with Compression: "TPV(Comp)" DATA_CNTNR volumes: TPV(System) VVol Metadata FTVs: FTV(System)
RG or TPP or FTRP	RAID group identifiers, External RAID Group identifiers, Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers, or Flexible Tier Pool identifiers
No.	RAID group number, External RAID Group number, Thin Provisioning Pool number, or Flexible Tier Pool number
Name	RAID group name, External RAID Group name, Thin Provisioning Pool name, or Flexible Tier Pool name
Size(MB)	Volume size. For SDVs, Virtual-size is displayed.
<b>Volume Additional Information</b>	Volumes details. This information is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified, except when the target volume type to display is "MLU" and the "-csv" parameter is omitted.
External LU Info	Whether External LU Information is inherited or not
Inherited	External LU Information is inherited.
-	External LU Information is not inherited, the volume is not an External Volume, or the Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is not registered.
UID	Universal Identifier of the volume
UID Mode	State of the UID setting
Default	Initial UID of the volume
Custom	The UID changed due to a TFO Pair or some other setting.
External	UID that is inherited from an External LU
-	The volume is the DATA_CNTNR volume.
Copy Protection	Copy protection status
Enable	Copy protection is enabled.
Disable	Copy protection is disabled.
DLM	Dynamic LUN Mirroring is enabled for the target volume.
ODX	The target volume is an ODX buffer volume.
Encryption	Encryption status
CM	Encryption by CMs is enabled.
-	The encryption function is disabled.
SED	Encryption is performed using SEDs.
Encrypting	The encryption flag is switching from OFF to ON.
Decrypting	The encryption flag is switching from ON to OFF.
Unknown	The encryption status information cannot be obtained (due to a NIM error or other causes).

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Volume Management > show volumes

Item name	Description
TFOG	Identification information of TFO groups. If the identification information is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed for TFOG No. and Name.
No.	TFO group number
Name	TFO group name
Data Integrity	Data protection function
Default	Standard data block guard
T10-DIF	T10-DIF
Reserved Deletion	Status of the deletion function reserved only for SDPVs
Yes	An SDPV deletion is reserved.
No	An SDPV deletion is not reserved.
-	The volume is not targeted for an SDPV deletion.
EXC	Indicates whether the Extreme Cache (EXC) function is enabled for each volume.
Enable	The Extreme Cache function is enabled.
Disable	The Extreme Cache function is disabled.
-	The Extreme Cache function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX or the volume type does not support the EXC function.
ALUA	Status of the Asymmetric Logical Unit Access function for the target volume
ACTIVE/ACTIVE	Active/Active response
ACTIVE-ACTIVE / PREFERRED_PATH	Active/Active-Preferred response
Follow Host Response	The ALUA function follows the host response setting.
-	The ALUA function is disabled or the target volume is a DATA_CNTNR volume.
Wide Stripe Size	Only for WSVs. Size of the blocks divided in the SLUs that configure the target LU.
Normal	Standard WSV Size (16MB)
Small	Tuned WSV Size (2MB)
-	The volume is not a WSV.
<b>Concatenation Information</b>	Indicates the consecutive number of displayed concatenated volumes (left side of the slash "/") and the total number of concatenated volumes (right side of the slash "/"). This information is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified, except when the target volume type to display is "MLU" and the "-csv" parameter is omitted.
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	Number of the RAID group that the concatenated volumes belongs to
Name	Name of the RAID group that the concatenated volumes belongs to
Size on RAID Group	Actual capacity that the volume uses in the relevant RAID group
<b>Provisioning Information</b>	This information is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified and the target volume type to display is "TPV" or "FTV", except when the "-csv" parameter is also specified.
Used Status	Usage status for a TPV or an FTV
Normal	The threshold is not exceeded.
Attention	The attention threshold of the TPVs or the FTVs has been exceeded.
-	The status is unknown or the ETERNUS DX is in the error state.
Used Capacity	Used capacity for a TPV or an FTV. A hyphen (-) is displayed for volumes enabled with Compression.
Original Data Size	The amount of data written to the volume. For volumes enabled with Compression, this amount is the amount of uncompressed data. For VVOL metadata exclusive FTVs and the DATA_CNTNR Volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Used Rate	Usage ratio of the volume capacity

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Volume Management > show volumes

Item name	Description
Attention	Attention level for a TPV or an FTV. A hyphen (-) is displayed for the DATA_CNTNR Volume.
Compression	Indicates whether the Compression function is enabled for the volume.
Enable	The Compression function is enabled.
Disable	The Compression function is disabled.
-	The Compression function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX or the volume is an FTV or DATA_CNTNR Volume.
Measurements	Measured value used to determine whether the TPV size exceeds the threshold
Allocation	Allocation type
Thin	Volumes of which the Allocation method is "thin" (normal TPV), volumes that are enabled with Compression, or the DATA_CNTNR Volume
Thick	Volumes of which the Allocation method is "thick" (volumes that ensure the physical capacity is the same as the logical capacity)
Priority	FTRP number to which the FTV is preferentially allocated. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the volume type is not FTV or if an FTRP number to which the data is preferentially allocated is not specified.
Balancing Level	Balancing level for TPVs
High	The physically used capacity is balanced.
Medium	The physically used capacity of some RAID groups is slightly larger than other RAID groups.
Low	The physically used capacity of some RAID groups is much larger than other RAID groups.
-	The ETERNUS DX is in the error state.
Data Reduction Processing CM	The number of the CM that processes the data reduction. A hyphen (-) is displayed for volumes that are not enabled with Compression.
<b>Flexible Tier Sub Pool Information</b>	Indicates the consecutive number of displayed FTSPs (left side of the slash "/") and the total number of FTSPs (right side of the slash "/"). This information is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified and the target volume type to display is "FTV", except when the "-csv" parameter is also specified. FTSPs are displayed in the following order: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SSD SED</li> <li>• SSD</li> <li>• Online SED</li> <li>• Online</li> <li>• Nearline SED</li> <li>• Nearline</li> </ul>
FTSP	Flexible Tier Sub Pool identifiers
No.	Flexible Tier Sub Pool number
Name	Flexible Tier Sub Pool name
Disk Attribute	Drive type (SSD SED, SSD, Online SED, Online, Nearline SED, or Nearline)
RAID Level	RAID level (RAID0, RAID1, RAID1+0, RAID5, RAID6, or RAID6-FR)
Status	Status of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool
Used Capacity	Actual used capacity of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool
Volume Used Capacity	Flexible Tier Sub Pool capacity used by FTVs
Usage Rate	Capacity ratio used by FTVs

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

Item name	Description
<b>WSV Information</b>	Indicates the consecutive number of displayed member RAID groups of the WSV (left side of the slash "/") and the total number of RAID groups that configure the WSV (right side of the slash "/"). This information is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified and the target volume type to display is "WSV", except when the "-csv" parameter is also specified.
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Size on RAID Group	Actual capacity that the volume uses in the RAID group

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary list of all the volumes in the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> show volumes
Volume          Status      Type      RG/TPP/FTRP      Size
No.   Name
-----
6  TPV#0        Available   TPV       1  TPP#1        1023.99 GB
7  TPV#1        Available   TPV       1  TPP#1        1.20 TB
9  VVOL#0       Available   FTV (VVOL) 2  FTRP#0       10.22 TB
20 VOL020      Available   Standard   5  RAID_#0      100.00 GB
22 EVOL#0       Available   Migration  0  VLU#0        256.00 GB
```

The following example specifies the "-csv" parameter to display a summary of the volumes in a CSV format:

```
CLI> show volumes -csv
[Volume No.],[Volume Name],[Status],[Type],[RG or TPP or FTRP No.],[RG or TPP or FTRP Name],[Size(MB)], [Copy Protection]
0,OLU#0,Available,Standard,0,RLU#0,256,Disable
1,OLU#1,Available,Standard,0,RLU#0,256,Disable
2,OLU#2,Available,Standard,0,RLU#0,256,Disable
3,OLU#3,Available,Standard,0,RLU#0,256,Disable
4,OLU#4,Available,Standard,1,RLU#1,256,Disable
5,OLU#5,Available,Standard,1,RLU#1,256,Disable
6,TPV#0,Available,TPV,1,TPP#1,256,Disable
7,TPV#1,Available,TPV,1,TPP#1,256,Disable
8,TPV#2,Available,TPV,1,TPP#1,256,Disable
```

The following example displays a summary of the specified volume:

```
CLI> show volumes -volume-number 20
Volume          Status      Type      RG/TPP/FTRP      Size
No.   Name
-----
20 VOL020      Available   Standard   5  RAID_#0      1023.99 GB
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays the details of the specified concatenated standard volume:

```
CLI> show volumes -volume-number 20 -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [20]
Volume Name [VOL020]
Status [Available]
Type [Standard]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [5]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RAID_#0]
Size [1023.99 GB(1048569 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D3100000031000000140000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Disable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
<Concatenation Information 1/2>
RAID Group No. [0]
RAID Group Name [RLU#0]
Size on RAID Group [1.00 GB(1024 MB)]
<Concatenation Information 2/2>
RAID Group No. [1]
RAID Group Name [RLU#1]
Size on RAID Group [1.00 GB(1024 MB)]
```

The following example displays a summary of the volumes in RAID group "RAID\_#0":

Volume No.	Name	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Name	Size
20	VOL020	Available	Standard	5	RAID_#0	100.00 GB
21	VOL021	Available	Standard	5	RAID_#0	100.00 GB

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays the details of the volumes in RAID group "RAID\_#0":

```
CLI> show volumes -rg-name RAID_#0 -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [20]
Volume Name [VOL020]
Status [Available]
Type [Standard]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [5]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RAID_#0]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D3100000031000000140000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [21]
Volume Name [VOL021]
Status [Available]
Type [Standard]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [5]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RAID_#0]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D3100000031000000150000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
```

The following example shows a case when the Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is registered. This example displays the details of the volumes in External RAID Group "VLU#0":

```
CLI> show volumes -external-rg-name VLU#0 -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [20]
Volume Name [VOL020]
Status [Available]
Type [Migration]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [5]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [VLU#0]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [Inherited]
UID [12345678901234567890123456789012]
UID Mode [External]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [No]
EXC [-]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays a summary of the mainframe volumes in RAID group "RAID\_#11":

Volume No.	Name	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Name	Size
--	--	Available	MLU	11	RAID_#11	-
--	--	Available	MLU	11	RAID_#11	-

The following example displays the details of the mainframe volumes in RAID group "RAID\_#11":

CLI> show volumes -rg-number 11 -detail	
<Volume Information>	
Volume No.	[ - ]
Volume Name	[ - ]
Status	[Available]
Type	[MLU]
RG/TPP/FTRP No.	[11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name	[RAID_#11]
Size	[ - ]
<Volume Information>	
Volume No.	[ - ]
Volume Name	[ - ]
Status	[Available]
Type	[MLU]
RG/TPP/FTRP No.	[11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name	[RAID_#11]
Size	[ - ]

The following example displays a summary of the SDV:

Volume No.	Name	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Name	Size
12	SDV12	Available	SDV	11	RAID_#11	100.00 GB

The following example displays the details of the SDV:

CLI> show volumes -filter sdv -detail	
<Volume Information>	
Volume No.	[12]
Volume Name	[SDV12]
Status	[Available]
Type	[SDV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No.	[11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name	[RAID_#11]
Size	[100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >	
External LU Info	[ - ]
UID	[600000E00D310000031000000C0000]
UID Mode	[Default]
Copy Protection	[Disable]
Encryption	[OFF]
TFOG No.	[ - ]
TFOG Name	[ - ]
Data Integrity	[Default]
Reserved Deletion	[ - ]
EXC	[ - ]
ALUA	[ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size	[ - ]

The following example displays a summary of the SDPV:

Volume No.	Name	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Name	Size
13	SDPV13	Available	SDPV	11	RAID_#11	100.00 GB

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays the details of the SDPV:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter sdpv -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [13]
Volume Name [SDPV13]
Status [Available]
Type [SDPV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RAID_#11]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D31000000310000000D0000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [No]
EXC [-]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
```

The following example displays a summary of the TPVs:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter tpv -list
Volume Status Type RG/TPP/FTRP Size
No. Name
-----
5 $DATA_CNTNR1 Available TPV(System) 1 TPP#1 32.00 TB
6 TPV#0 Available TPV(Comp) 1 TPP#1 200.00 GB
7 TPV#1 Available TPV 1 TPP#1 1.00 TB
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays the details of the TPVs:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter tpv -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [5]
Volume Name [$DATA_CNTNR1]
Status [Available]
Type [TPV(System)]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [1]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [TPP#1]
Size [32.00 TB(33554432 MB)]

<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D31000003100000050000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [-]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [-]
Compression [-]
Measurements [100]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [CE#0 CM#0]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [6]
Volume Name [TPV#0]
Status [Available]
Type [TPV(Comp)]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [1]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [TPP#1]
Size [200.00 GB(204800 MB)]

<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D31000003100000060000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [-]
Original Data Size [10.00 GB(10240 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [5]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [Enable]
Measurements [100]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [CE#0 CM#0]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [7]
Volume Name [TPV#1]
Status [Available]
Type [TPV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [1]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [TPP#1]
Size [1.00 TB(1048576 MB)]

<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D31000003100000070000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [Disable]
Measurements [100]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [-]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays a summary of the FTVs:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
Name			Name	
14 FTV014	Available	FTV	0 FTRP#0	25.10 GB
15 FTV015	Available	FTV	0 FTRP#0	25.10 GB

The following example displays the details of the FTVs:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter ftv -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [14]
Volume Name [FTV014]
Status [Available]
Type [FTV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [0]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [FTRP#0]
Size [25.10 GB(25702 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D310000031000000E0000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [0]
TFOG Name [TFOG0000]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [-]
Measurements [1]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [-]
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool Information 1/1>
FTSP No. [0]
FTSP Name [FTSP#0]
Disk Attribute [Nearline SED]
RAID Level [RAID0]
Status [Available]
Total Capacity [2.00 TB(2097152 MB)]
Used Capacity [0.00 MB(0 MB)]
Volume Used Capacity [50.20 GB(51404 MB)]
Usage Rate [0%]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [15]
Volume Name [FTV015]
Status [Available]
Type [FTV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [0]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [FTRP#0]
Size [25.10 GB(25702 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D310000031000000F0000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [0]
TFOG Name [TFOG0000]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [-]
Measurements [1]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [-]
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool Information 1/1>
FTSP No. [0]
FTSP Name [FTSP#0]
Disk Attribute [Nearline SED]
RAID Level [RAID0]
Status [Available]
Total Capacity [2.00 TB(2097152 MB)]
Used Capacity [0.00 MB(0 MB)]
Volume Used Capacity [50.20 GB(51404 MB)]
Usage Rate [0%]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays a summary of the WSV:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
No.	Name		Name	
8	WSV008	Available	WSV	0 RLU#0 1.00 GB

The following example displays the details of the WSV:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter wsv -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [8]
Volume Name [WSV008]
Status [Available]
Type [WSV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [0]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RLU#0]
Size [2.00 GB(2048 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information >
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000E00D310000003100000080000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [0]
TFOG Name [TFOG0000]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [Normal]
<WSV Information 1/2>
RAID Group No. [1]
RAID Group Name [RLU#1]
Size on RAID Group [1.00 GB(1024 MB)]
<WSV Information 2/2>
RAID Group No. [2]
RAID Group Name [RLU#2]
Size on RAID Group [1.00 GB(1024 MB)]
```

The following example displays a summary of the VVOLs and VVOL metadata exclusive FTVs:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
Name			Name	
26	Available	FTV (VVOL)	0 FTRP#0	200.00 GB
65531 \$VVOL_META	Available	FTV (System)	0 FTRP#0	4.00 GB

The following example shows a case when the Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is registered. This example displays a list of all the volumes in the ETERNUS DX:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
Name			Name	
0 OLU#_0	Available	Standard	0 RLU#0	200.00 GB
6 \$DATA_CNTNR1	Available	TPV (System)	1 TPP#1	256.00 MB
9 Comp_#1	Available	TPV (Comp)	1 TPP#1	256.00 MB
10 EVOL#0	Available	Migration	0 VLU#0	256.00 MB
11 OLU#3	Available	Standard	1 RLU#1	256.00 MB

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays a summary of the volumes that belong to a RAID group and FTRP:

Volume No.	Name	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Name	Size
6	VOL006	Available	Standard	11	RAID_#11	200.00 GB
7	FTV#7	Available	FTV	0	FTRP#0	1.20 TB
9	FTV#9	Available	FTV	0	FTRP#0	10.22 TB
20	VOL020	Available	Standard	11	RAID_#11	100.00 GB

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays the details of the volumes that belong to a RAID group and FTRP:

```
CLI> show volumes -rg-number 11 -ftrp-name FTRP#0 -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [1]
Volume Name [VOL006]
Status [Available]
Type [Standard]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [FTRP#0]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information>
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000800D310000003100000060000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [Default]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [7]
Volume Name [PTV#7]
Status [Available]
Type [PTV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [0]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [FTRP#0]
Size [25.10 GB(25702 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information>
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000800D310000003100000070000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [0]
TFOG Name [TFOG0000]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [-]
Measurements [1]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [-]
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool Information 1/1>
<PTSP No. [0]>
PTSP Name [PTSP#0]
Disk Attribute [Nearline SED]
RAID Level [RAIDO]
Status [Available]
Total Capacity [2.00 TB(2097152 MB)]
Used Capacity [0.00 MB(0 MB)]
Volume Used Capacity [50.20 GB(51404 MB)]
Usage Rate [0%]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [9]
Volume Name [PTV#9]
Status [Available]
Type [PTV]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [0]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [FTRP#0]
Size [25.10 GB(25702 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information>
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000800D310000003100000090000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [0]
TFOG Name [TFOG0000]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]

<Provisioning Information>
Used Status [Normal]
Used Capacity [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Original Data Size [0.00 GB(0 MB)]
Used Rate(%) [0]
Attention(%) [80]
Compression [-]
Measurements [1]
Allocation [Thin]
Priority [-]
Balancing Level [High]
Data Reduction Processing CM [-]
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool Information 1/1>
<PTSP No. [0]>
PTSP Name [PTSP#0]
Disk Attribute [Nearline SED]
RAID Level [RAIDO]
Status [Available]
Total Capacity [2.00 TB(2097152 MB)]
Used Capacity [0.00 MB(0 MB)]
Volume Used Capacity [50.20 GB(51404 MB)]
Usage Rate [0%]

<Volume Information>
Volume No. [20]
Volume Name [VOL020]
Status [Available]
Type [Standard]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [11]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [RAID #11]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information>
External LU Info [-]
UID [600000800D310000003100000140000]
UID Mode [Default]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [Default]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [Enable]
ALUA [ACTIVE / ACTIVE]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volumes

The following example displays a summary of the standard volumes with a volume number between 300 and 400, that belong to RAID group #0:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
301 VOL301	Available	Standard	0 RAID_#0	100.00 GB
399 VOL399	Available	Standard	0 RAID_#0	100.00 GB

The following example shows a case when the Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is registered. This example displays a summary of the External Volume:

Volume No.	Status	Type	RG/TPP/FTRP No.	Size
10 EVOL#0	Available	Migration	0 VLU#0	256.00 MB

The following example shows a case when the Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is registered. This example displays the details of the External Volume:

```
CLI> show volumes -filter migration -detail
<Volume Information>
Volume No. [20]
Volume Name [VOL020]
Status [Available]
Type [Migration]
RG/TPP/FTRP No. [5]
RG/TPP/FTRP Name [VLU#0]
Size [100.00 GB(102400 MB)]
<Volume Additional Information>
External LU Info [Inherited]
UID [12345678901234567890123456789012]
UID Mode [External]
Copy Protection [Disable]
Encryption [OFF]
TFOG No. [-]
TFOG Name [-]
Data Integrity [Default]
Reserved Deletion [-]
EXC [-]
ALUA [-]
Wide Stripe Size [-]
```

The following example specifies the "-csv" and "-detail" parameters to display the details of the volumes.

```
CLI> show volumes -csv -detail
[Volume No.],[Volume Name],[Status],[Type],[RG or TPP or FTRP No.],[RG or TPP or FTRP Name],[Size(MB)],[External LU Info],[UID],[UID Mode],[Copy Protection],[Encryption],[TFOG No.],[TFOG Name],[Data Integrity],[Reserved Deletion],[EXC],[ALUA],[Wide Stripe Size],[Used Status],[Used Capacity(MB)],[Original Data Size(MB)],[Used Rate($)],[Attention(%)],[Compression],[Measurements],[Allocation],[Priority],[Balancing Level],[Data Reduction Processing CM#0]
1,VOL001,Available,Standard,5,RAID#0,1048569,,60000E00D31000003100000010000,Default,Disable,OFF,,Default,,Disable,ACTIVE / ACTIVE,,,
2,VOL002,Available,Standard,5,RAID#0,1048569,,60000E00D31000003100000020000,Default,Disable,OFF,,Default,,Disable,ACTIVE / ACTIVE,,,
3,PTV003,Available,PTV,0,FTRP#0,25702,,60000E00D31000003100000030000,Default,Disable,OFF,0,TFOG000,Default,,Enable,ACTIVE / ACTIVE,,Normal,0,0,0.80,,1,Thin,,High,,,
4,TPV#0,Available,TPV(System),1,TPP#1,33554432,,60000E00D31000003100000040000,Default,Disable,OFF,,Default,,Disable,,Normal,0,0,,100,Thin,,High,CE#0 CM#0
5,TPV#1,Available,TPV(System),1,TPP#1,33554432,,60000E00D31000003100000050000,Default,Disable,OFF,,Default,,Disable,,Normal,0,0,,100,Thin,,High,CE#0 CM#0
```

## show volume-progress

This command displays the progress of formatting, migration (RAID Migration), encryption, balancing, and Zero Reclamation for volumes.

This command is also used to display the progress of Flexible Tier Volume (FTV) processes.

### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

### Syntax

```
show volume-progress [-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names | -csv]
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. If the volume identifier is omitted, the progress status of all the volumes is displayed. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

-csv    Optional. This parameter shows the volume progress information in a CSV format.

### Caution

- This parameter cannot be specified with other parameters.
- If this parameter is specified, the progress information for encryption and decryption is not displayed.
- Information that was output in the CSV format cannot be specified for setup commands (or command names that start with "create" or "set").

### Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Alias name of volume
Status	Volume status
Formatting	Information on the formatting progress
Progress	Progress A value from 0% to 99% or "-" is displayed. ("-" indicates that formatting is not performed or is complete)
Estimated time left	Estimated remaining formatting time
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
calculating	The remaining time is being calculated.
30days or more	The remaining time is 30 days or more.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volume-progress

Item name	Description
Xday Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 30 days but 1 day or more.
Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 day but 1 hour or more.
Zmin	The remaining time is less than an hour but 1 minute or more.
Less than 1min	The remaining time is less than a minute.
Remaining size	Remaining capacity for formatting
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
XMB	Remaining capacity (rounded up to the nearest whole number) X: decimal number
Migrating Progress	Progress status of migrating (RAID Migration)
Encrypting Progress	Progress status of encrypting
Balancing Progress	Progress status of balancing
Zero Reclamation Progress	Progress status of Zero Reclamation

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the progress status of volume #1:

```
CLI> show volume-progress -volume-number 1
Volume          Status      Formatting           Migrating   Encrypting   Balancing   Zero Reclamation
No.  Name       Available  Progress  Estimated time left Remaining size Progress  Progress  Progress  Progress
  1 VOL001      Available  99%     Less than 1min    Less than 1MB  -      -      -      -
```

The following example displays the progress status of the volumes named "VOL001" and "VOL012":

```
CLI> show volume-progress -volume-name VOL001,VOL012
Volume          Status      Formatting           Migrating   Encrypting   Balancing   Zero Reclamation
No.  Name       Available  Progress  Estimated time left Remaining size Progress  Progress  Progress  Progress
  1 VOL001      Available  80%    30days or more  134217728MB  -      -      -      -
  12 VOL012     Rebuild   80%    Olday 23h 59min  128MB   -      -      -      -
```

The following example displays the progress status of all the volumes:

```
CLI> show volume-progress
Volume          Status      Formatting           Migrating   Encrypting   Balancing   Zero Reclamation
No.  Name       Available  Progress  Estimated time left Remaining size Progress  Progress  Progress  Progress
  1 VOL001      Available  80%    0lh 00min    128MB   -      -      -      -
  2 VOL002      Available  -      -      -      -      10%   -      -      -
  3 TPV003      Rebuild   -      -      -      -      -      80%   -      -
  4 VOL004      Rebuild   90%    01min      Less than 1MB  -      -      -      60%
  10 VOL010     Available  80%    calculating  1MB    40%   -      -      -      -
```

The following example displays the progress information of the volumes in a CSV format by specifying "-csv":

```
CLI> show volume-progress -csv
[Volume No.],[Volume Name],[Status],[Formatting Progress],[Estimated time left],[Remaining size],[Migrating Progress],[Balancing Progress],[Zero Reclamation Progress]
1,VOL001,Available,80%,0lh 00min,128MB,--,-
3,TPV003,Rebuild,--,-,80%,-
4,VOL004,Rebuild,90%,01min,Less than 1MB,--,-,60%
10,VOL010,Available,80%,calculating,1MB,40%,-,-
```

## show volume-mapping

This command displays the LUNs (Logical Unit Numbers) that are mapped to volumes.

### Syntax

```
show volume-mapping  
[-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names] [-mode {all | host-lun | default}]
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. If the volume identifier is omitted, a list of all the volumes is displayed. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax \(page 30\)](#)".

*volume\_numbers* Volume number

*volume\_names* Volume name

-mode Optional. This parameter toggles the extended output mode. If the mode is omitted, "default" is set.

all In addition to the normal display items, the information of the LUNs that can be accessed from the host of each connected CA port is also displayed.

host-lun Only the information of the LUNs that can be accessed from the host of each connected CA port is displayed.

default A list of all of the volumes is displayed.

### Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Type	Volume type
UID	Volume UID (Universally Unique Identifier)
LUN	LUN
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers
No.	LUN group number
Name	LUN group name
Port	CA port number
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volume-mapping

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the LUNs that are mapped to volume #0 (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard  600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Mapping>
LUN  LUN Group    Port
No.  Name
-----
10   0 AG001      -
0    - -           CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
```

The following example displays the LUNs that are mapped to volume #0 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard  600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Mapping>
LUN  LUN Group    Port
No.  Name
-----
10   0 AG001      -
0    - -           CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
```

The following example displays the information of only the LUNs for volume #0 that can be accessed from the host (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -mode host-lun -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard  600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Host LUN>
LUN  Port        Host      LUN Group
No.  Name
-----
0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  - -    - -
0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0  - -    - -
0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  - -    - -
```

The following example displays the information of only the LUNs for volume #0 that can be accessed from the host (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -mode host-lun -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard  600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Host LUN>
LUN  Port        Host      LUN Group
No.  Name
-----
0 CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  - -    - -
0 CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0  - -    - -
0 CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  - -    - -
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show volume-mapping

The following example displays the information of all the LUNs for volume #0 (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -mode all -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard 60000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Mapping>
LUN  LUN Group    Port
No.  Name
-----
10   0 AG001      -
0    - -           CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
<Host LUN>
LUN  Port          Host      LUN Group
No.  Name
-----
0  CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  - -      - -
0  CM#1 CA#0 Port#0  - -      - -
0  CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  - -      - -
```

The following example displays the information of all the LUNs for volume #0 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show volume-mapping -mode all -volume-number 0
Volume          Type      UID
No.  Name
-----
0 OLU#0          Standard 60000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
<Mapping>
LUN  LUN Group    Port
No.  Name
-----
10   0 AG001      -
0    - -           CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
0    - -           CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
<Host LUN>
LUN  Port          Host      LUN Group
No.  Name
-----
0  CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  - -      - -
0  CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0  - -      - -
0  CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  - -      - -
```

## create volume

This command creates volumes in the specified RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool. The created volumes are formatted automatically. For External Volumes, a format is not performed and the stored data is inherited.

To create Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs), use the "create flexible-tier-volume" command.

### Note

The maximum total capacity of TPVs that can be created at once is 2PB.

## Syntax

```
create volume
-name name
-type {open | standard | sdv | sdpv | tpv | wsv}
[-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names]
[-external-rg-number {external_rg_numbers | all} | -external-rg-name external_rg_name]
[-pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name]
[-size {volume_size | max}]
[-virtual-size sdv_virtual_size]
[-count volume_count]
[-copy-protection {enable | disable}]
[-attention attention_level]
[-encryption {enable | disable}]
[-wide-stripe-size {normal | small}]
[-concatenation-order {auto | manual}]
[-volume-number volume_number]
[-exc {enable | disable}]
[-data-integrity {default | t10-dif}]
[-allocation {thin | thick}]
[-data-reduction-disable {yes | no}]
```

## Parameter

-name This parameter specifies a volume name. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

### Caution

In a VMware Virtual Volumes (VVOL) operating environment, when attempting to create a volume with a name "VVOL#X" while a VVOL creation process is running in the background, the VVOL volume names may conflict and cause VVOL related operations to terminate abnormally.

*name* Volume name

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies a RAID group identifier to create new volumes. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#). Multiple RAID groups can be specified when "-type wsv" is set. This parameter cannot be specified when "tpv" is specified for the "-type" parameter.

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

-external-rg-number or -external-rg-name

This parameter specifies an External RAID Group identifier to create new External Volumes. For the specified External RAID Group, an External Volume is created. An External RAID Group specified with "Migration" for "Usage" can be specified.

This parameter cannot be specified when a type other than "open" or "standard" is specified for "-type". Note that multiple External RAID Group numbers can be specified. If "all" is specified, an External Volume is created for all External RAID Groups that have "Migration" specified for "Usage" but have no allocated External Volumes.

For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

When multiple External Volumes are created, some of the volumes may be created even if the command fails. In this case, a message stating that some volumes cannot be created is displayed. Then, check the volumes that have been created using the "show volumes" command.

*external\_rg\_numbers*      External RAID Group number

*external\_rg\_name*      External RAID Group name

*all*      All External RAID Groups specified with "Migration" for "Usage"

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies a Thin Provisioning Pool identifier to create new volumes. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#). If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, this parameter cannot be specified. This parameter can be specified when "tpv" is specified for the "-type" parameter.

*pool\_number*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

-type

This parameter specifies the volume type.

*open*      A Standard volume. A created "open" type volume is displayed as a "standard" volume.

*standard*      A normal/open volume (Standard)

*sdv*      A Snap Data Volume (SDV) for Advanced Copy functions

*sdpv*      A Snap Data Pool Volume (SDPV) for Advanced Copy functions

*tpv*      A Thin Provisioning Volume

*wsv*      A Wide Striping Volume (WSV)

**Caution**

- If the level of the RAID group is RAID6-FR, standard volumes can be specified.
- If the capacity of the TPP is depleted while a TPV is being created, an error occurs. Perform a volume creation after expanding the TPP.
- Take the following notes into consideration when specifying a TPV.
  - If Compression Volumes larger than the logical capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume are deleted or formatted repeatedly, creation of the Compression Volume may fail due to a temporary capacity shortage.
  - The total capacity of the Compression Volume within the specified pool cannot be specified if it exceeds 10 times the capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume.

-size      Optional. This parameter specifies the volume size.

**Note**

- If a Standard volume or a TPV is selected, the volume capacity can be specified (from 24MB to 128TB).
- If a SDV is selected, this parameter cannot be specified.
- If SDPV is selected, a pool volume size that is smaller than (or equal to) 2TB can be specified.
- SDPV must be specified in units of GB.
- If a TPV is created, the upper limit value of the total logical capacity of all TPVs and FTVs must be checked.
- In a TPP, the total capacity of the volumes that can be created with Compression enabled is less than 10 times the capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume.
- In an ETERNUS DX, the total capacity of the TPVs (excluding volumes enabled with Compression) and FTVs cannot exceed the maximum pool capacity.
- If "max" is specified for this parameter, volumes are created using the entire capacity of the maximum free area of the specified RAID group.
  - The target volume types are Standard (Open), SDPV, and WSV.
  - If multiple free areas exist within the specified RAID group, the volume is created using only the largest free area.
  - If two or more volumes are specified for the "-count" parameter, the specified number of volumes are created in units of MB by dividing the maximum capacity of the free area by the specified number.
  - If SDPV is specified with the "-type" parameter, several GB of an unused area may remain. This is because the SDPV capacity must be in multiples of SDPE resolution.
  - For WSVs, among the maximum free areas of the concatenated RAID groups, a volume is created using the maximum free area of each RAID group based on the smallest maximum free capacity. If WSVs are created by specifying multiple RAID groups in which the maximum capacity of each free area differs, unused areas may remain in the RAID groups with large maximum free areas.
- This parameter cannot be specified when the "-external-rg-number" or the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified as the capacity of the imported External Drive is inherited.

*size*      Volume capacity  
Select whether terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) are used for the capacity.  
Example: 1tb, 120gb, 512mb

*max*      Volumes are created using the entire capacity of the maximum free area of the specified RAID group.

-virtual-size

Optional. This parameter can specify the volume size when selecting an SDV type. This parameter cannot be specified when selecting a type other than SDV.

*virtual\_size*    Volume size

-count      Optional. This parameter specifies the number of volumes to be created. If omitted, a single volume is created with the name determined by the "-name" parameter. Requesting two or more volumes results in the creation of volumes with names determined by the "-name" parameter with a trailing index number, starting from "0".  
Only "1" can be specified when "-concatenation-order manual" is specified.

Example: For "-count 3 -name abc", the volumes named "abc0", "abc1", and "abc2" are created. If these volumes already exist, the names of the created volumes use incrementing index numbers.  
This parameter cannot be specified when the "-external-rg-number" parameter or the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified.

*count*      Number of volumes

-copy-protection

Optional. This parameter protects a volume from being specified for the copy destination. It is possible to set it even when there is already a copy session. The copy license is necessary for this setting. If this parameter is omitted, "disable" is set.

enable      Volume is protected at the copy destination.

disable      Volume is not protected at the copy destination.

-attention    Optional. This parameter specifies the attention level of the Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV). This parameter can be specified when "tpv" is specified for the "-type" parameter. The settable range is 1 – 100%. If this parameter is omitted, the default value (80%) is set.

*attention*    Attention level of the Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV)

-encryption

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the encryption by a CM is performed. When "enable" is selected, the specified volume data is encrypted. If this parameter is omitted, "disable" is set.  
This parameter cannot be specified when "tpv" is specified for the "-type" parameter.

This parameter cannot be specified when the "-external-rg-number" or the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified.

enable      The volume data is encrypted.

disable      The volume data is not encrypted.

-wide-stripe-size

Optional. This parameter specifies the Wide Stripe Size for the WSV that is to be created. This parameter can only be specified when the "-type wsv" parameter is set. If omitted, then it is handled as if "normal" is selected.

normal      The Wide Stripe Size for the WSV is set to 16MB.

small      The Wide Stripe Size for the WSV is set to 2MB. Note that if the Stripe Size of the RAID group exceeds 2MB, the actual Stripe Size of the RAID group is used for the WSV that is to be created.

-concatenation-order

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to manually set the concatenation order for the RAID groups of a WSV that is to be created. This parameter can only be specified when the "-type wsv" parameter is set.  
If omitted, then it is handled as if "auto" is selected.

auto      The concatenation order for the RAID groups is automatically set.

manual      The RAID groups are concatenated in the order specified by the "rg-number" or "-rg-name" parameter.

-volume-number

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the volume number is assigned automatically or manually. Only one volume number can be specified. If omitted, the volume number is automatically assigned. This parameter cannot be specified when a value that is "2" or more is set for the "-count" parameter. If an existing volume number is set, an error occurs.

**Caution**

In a VVOL operating environment, when specifying the same volume number as the VVOL scheduled for creation while a VVOL creation process is running in the background, the VVOL creation process may terminate abnormally.

*volume\_number*    Volume number

**-exc**    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the Extreme Cache (EXC) function is enabled for the volume that is to be created. This parameter cannot be specified if the volume creation destination is specified as a RAID group or pool that is configured with SSDs.

---

**Caution**

- The EXC function cannot be used regardless of the setting of each volume when the EXC function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX.
- The EXC function is available for Open volumes, Standard volumes, WSVs, and TPVs.
- This parameter is not available for models that do not support the EXC function.
- This parameter cannot be specified when the "-external-rg-number" parameter or the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified.
- For volumes enabled with Compression, this parameter cannot be specified with "enable". To use the EXC function for volumes enabled with Compression, enable the EXC function for the DATA\_CNTNR Volume. To create a volume with EXC in a pool enabled with Compression, specify "yes" for the "-data-reduction-disable" parameter to disable the Compression function for the volume.

**enable**    The EXC function is enabled.  
(Default value for Open volumes, Standard volumes, WSVs, and TPVs)

**disable**    The EXC function is disabled.

**-data-integrity**

Optional. This parameter sets the method for ensuring data integrity.

**default**    Ensures data integrity in the whole storage system with a normal data block guard.

**t10-dif**    Ensures end-to-end data integrity by using T10-DIF.  
This option can only be specified if "open" or "standard" is specified in the "-type" parameter.  
This option cannot be specified when the "-external-rg-number" or the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified.  
To use T10-DIF, the host must also support T10-DIF such as by installing T10-DIF supported HBAs.

**-allocation**    Optional. If omitted, "thin" is set. During normal operations, the value of this parameter does not need to be changed from the default value ("thin"). When "thick" is specified, the same logical capacity is allocated to the physical capacity when the volume is created.

This parameter can be specified for TPVs. This parameter cannot be specified if a pool enabled with Compression is specified and "yes" is not specified for the "-data-reduction-disable" parameter.

**thin**    A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os (default).

**thick**    A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated when volumes are created.

-data-reduction-disable

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the Compression function is disabled for the volume. If this parameter is specified with "yes", the Compression function is disabled for the volume. If this parameter is omitted and a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression is specified, the Compression function is enabled for the volume.

**Caution**

- This parameter cannot be specified if the Compression mode setting is disabled for the ETERNUS DX.
- This parameter cannot be specified if the volume creation destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool not enabled with Compression.
- This parameter can be specified only when the "-type" parameter is specified with "tpv".

---

yes	The Compression function is disabled for the volume.
no	The Compression function is enabled for the volume (default).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates a volume named "VOL001" in the RAID group named "RGP001". The volume type is Standard. The volume size is 2TB:

```
CLI> create volume -name VOL001 -rg-name RGP001 -type standard -size 2tb
```

The following example creates consecutive Standard volumes named "VOL0" – "VOL9" in the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> create volume -name VOL -count 10 -rg-name RGP001 -type standard -size 20gb
```

The following example creates a volume named "SDV1" in the RAID group named "RGP002". The volume type is SDV, the physical size is 20GB, and the logical size is 100GB:

```
CLI> create volume -name SDV1 -rg-name RGP002 -type sdv -size 20gb -virtual-size 100gb
```

The following example creates a Thin Provisioning Volume named "TPV1" in Thin Provisioning Pool #01. The volume type is tpv, and the attention level threshold is 80%:

```
CLI> create volume -name TPV1 -pool-number 1 -type tpv -size 20gb -attention 80
```

The following example creates a volume that is not enabled with Compression in Thin Provisioning Pool #01 that is enabled with Compression:

```
CLI> create volume -name TPV1 -pool-number 1 -type tpv -size 20gb -data-reduction-disable yes
```

The following example creates an External Volume in External RAID Groups #01 and #02:

```
CLI> create volume -name EVOL -external-rg-number 1,2 -type standard
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > create volume

The following example created External Volumes in all External RAID Groups and failed to create some of the volumes:

```
CLI> create volume -name EVOL -external-rg-number all -type standard
Partially failed. Some volumes were successfully created. Please check the created volumes using "show volumes".
Error: ED002 Internal command retry timeout.
[0301-c143]
```

The following example expanded capacity, but a Warning message is displayed because there is TPP/FTRP in overprovisioning that cannot be solved:

```
CLI > create volume -name TPV1 -pool-number 1 -type tpv -size 20gb -attention 80
Warning: There are one or more TPPs or FTRPs that are in overprovisioning status but cannot be resolved by adding new drives.
Please review the Thin Provisioning configuration and the current setting of the maximum pool capacity.
```

## set volume

This command changes the registered volume information.

The "set flexible-tier-volume" command is used to change a Flexible Tier Volume (FTV).

### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

### Syntax

```
set volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name} [-name name]  
[-copy-protection {enable | disable}] [-attention attention] [-encryption {enable | disable}]  
[-uid uid | default | original] [-alua {follow-host-response | active | passive}]
```

### Parameter

#### -volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier to be changed. Only one volume can be specified at the same time. This parameter cannot be specified for the DATA\_CNTNR Volume. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the new volume name. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*name*      Volume name

#### -copy-protection

Optional. This parameter protects a volume from being specified for the copy destination. It is possible to set it even when there is already a copy session. The copy license is necessary for this setting. If TFOV is set for the specified volume, "enable" cannot be specified. If this parameter is omitted, "disable" is set.

*enable*      Volume is protected at the copy destination.

*disable*      Volume is not protected at the copy destination.

#### -attention

Optional. This parameter specifies the attention level of the Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV). This parameter can be specified when the volume type is TPV. The settable range is 1 – 100%. If this parameter is omitted, attention level is not changed.

*attention*      Attention level of the Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV)

-encryption

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the encryption by a CM is performed. When "enable" is selected, the specified volume data is encrypted. If omitted, then it is handled as if "disable" is selected. This does not mean that the volume data is decrypted when "disable" is selected. If the specified volume is "TPV", this parameter cannot be specified.

This parameter cannot be specified for External Volumes.

enable      The volume data is encrypted.

disable      No operation.

-uid      Optional. This parameter specifies the UID of the target volume. Thirty-two-digit hexadecimal numbers ("0" to "9", "A" to "F", and "a" to "f") can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the specified volume has a UID (or LUN ID) that is inherited from an External LU or an External Volume, this parameter cannot be specified.

*uid*      UID of the target volume

default or original      The UID, serial number, and product ID are reverted to the default setting for the target volume.

-alua      Optional. This parameter specifies the ALUA setting for the target volume. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

follow-host-response      The ALUA setting follows the host response setting (default).

active      The ACTIVE / ACTIVE setting takes priority regardless of the host response setting.

passive      The ACTIVE-ACTIVE / PREFERRED\_PATH setting takes priority regardless of the host response setting.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the volume named "VOL003". The new name is "VOLUME003":

```
CLI> set volume -volume-name VOL003 -name VOLUME003
```

The following example changes the volume named "VOL003" to "VOLUME003", enables copy protection, and changes the attention level to 80:

```
CLI> set volume -volume-name VOL003 -name VOLUME003 -copy-protection enable -attention 80
```

## delete volume

This command deletes existing volumes. Snap Data Pool Volumes (SDPV) and FTVs cannot be deleted using this command.

- All mappings associated with the host must be released before a specified volume is deleted.
- All migrating volumes (RAID Migration) must be stopped before a specified volume is deleted.
- Advanced Copy sessions to be deleted must be stopped before a specified volume is deleted.

To delete SDPVs, use the "delete snap-data-pool-volume" command. The "delete flexible-tier-volume" command is used to delete Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs).

### ■ Syntax

```
delete volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to be deleted. One or more identifiers can be specified at the same time. The DATA\_CNTNR Volume cannot be specified. The DATA\_CNTNR Volume is automatically deleted when the Compression setting of the corresponding TPV is changed to disable. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number  
*volume\_names*    Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes both the volume named "VOL001" and "VOL002" at the same time:

```
CLI> delete volume -volume-name VOL001,VOL002
```

## delete all-volumes

This command deletes all volumes from the specified RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool.

If the specified RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool contains a Snap Data Pool Volume (SDPV), all of the non-SDPV volumes are deleted.

If the specified RAID group contains an expansion source volume of the LUN Concatenation, the expansion destination volume and the corresponding expansion source volume are both deleted.

If the specified RAID group contains an expansion destination volume and a corresponding expansion source volume does not exist, the volumes are not deleted. If this occurs, delete the expansion source volume and try again.

The Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV) cannot be deleted with the "-rg-number" or the "-rg-name" parameter. For the Thin Provisioning Volume, the "-pool-number" or the "-pool-name" parameter is used.

The "delete all-flexible-tier-volumes" command is used to delete all of the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) in a Flexible Tier Pool (FTP).

### Syntax

```
delete all-volumes {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name | -pool-number pool_number |  
-pool-name pool_name}
```

### Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name  
-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifiers or Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers to delete all the volumes contained in the RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool. Only one RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool can be specified at the same time. RAID groups that include the DATA\_CNTNR Volume cannot be specified. The DATA\_CNTNR Volume is automatically deleted if the Compression setting of the corresponding TPP is changed to disable. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax \(page 29\)](#)" or "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax \(page 27\)](#)".

<i>rg_number</i>	RAID group number
<i>rg_name</i>	RAID group name
<i>pool_number</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool number
<i>pool_name</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool name

### Example(s)

The following example deletes all the volumes contained in the RAID group named "RGP001":

```
CLI> delete all-volumes -rg-name RGP001
```

The following example deletes all the volumes contained in the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP001":

```
CLI> delete all-volumes -pool-name TPP001
```

## format volume

This command formats volumes.

To format Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs), use the "format flexible-tier-volume" command.

### Caution

- The DATA\_CNTNR Volume cannot be formatted for the following cases.
  - If a volume enabled with Compression is in the same pool and is used for a copy session.
  - If a volume enabled with Compression is in the same pool as the source or destination of an in-progress data migration.
- If Compression Volumes larger than the logical capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume are deleted or formatted repeatedly, creation of the Compression Volume may fail due to a temporary capacity shortage.
- If the "ED500" error message is displayed, a format may be running for a Compression Volume that belongs to a Thin Provisioning Pool (TPP) in which the capacity is depleted. Perform a format after expanding the capacity of the TPP. In addition, if the "ED500" error message is displayed while the capacity is depleted, the data and the physically allocated area that is being used is released.

### Note

- When formatting the TPV where the allocation method is "thin", the physical allocation area used by the TPV is released.
- When formatting the TPV where the allocation method is "thick", the physical allocation area used by the TPV is not released. To release the physical allocation area, delete the TPV.

## Syntax

```
format volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

## Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to be formatted. One or more volumes can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

### Caution

This parameter cannot be specified for External Volumes.

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

## Example(s)

The following example only formats the volume named "VOL001":

```
CLI> format volume -volume-name VOL001
```

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
Volume Management > format volume

The following example formats \$DATA\_CNTNR1:

```
CLI> format volume -volume-name $DATA_CNTNR1
```

The following example formats consecutive volumes #80 - #99 at the same time:

```
CLI> format volume -volume-number 80-99
```

## expand volume

This command executes volume expansion (LUN concatenation). It adds free space to expand the capacity of a currently registered volume, allowing free space to be assigned efficiently. In addition, this command can also expand the capacity of Thin Provisioning Volumes and the DATA\_CNTNR Volume.

The "expand flexible-tier-volume" command is used to expand Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs).

### Caution

- Volumes cannot be expanded for the following cases.
  - If the specified volume is an External Volume.
  - If the specified volume is a Compression Volume and the total capacity of the Compression Volumes within the Thin Provisioning Pool (TPP) exceeds 10 times the capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume.
  - If a snapshot setting has been performed in the specified volume.
  - If T10-DIF has been set in the specified volume.
  - If TFO pairs exist in the specified volume.
  - If the specified volume size exceeds the maximum volume size.
  - If Storage Migration is running in the specified volume.
  - If OPC/EC/REC is being performed in the specified volume.
  - If ODX is being performed in the specified volume.
  - If LDE is running in the RAID group that includes the specified volume or LDE is running in the specified RAID group.
  - If the specified volume is enabled with the Compression function and the DATA\_CNTNR Volume of the same Thin Provisioning Pool is in the error state.
- When expanding the Compression Volume, stop or suspend the Advanced Copy session.
- When expanding the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, stop or suspend all Advanced Copy sessions of the Compression Volume in the Thin Provisioning Pool (TPP) to which the DATA\_CNTNR Volume belongs.

## ■ Syntax

```
expand volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}  
[-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names] -size size{tb | gb | mb}
```

## ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier to be expanded. Only one volume can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax](#)" (page 30).

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

-rg-number or -rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the RAID group identifiers to which the volume will belong after expansion. One or more RAID groups can be specified at the same time (up to a maximum of 15). If two or more RAID groups are specified, they must be specified in the same order as the expansion size parameter. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" (page 29).

**Caution**

- This parameter cannot be specified if the volume type is Thin Provisioning Volume. If the volume type is not Thin Provisioning Volume, this parameter must be specified.
- The following RAID groups cannot be specified:
  - RAID groups that operate as Thin Provisioning Pools
  - RAID groups that operate as Flexible Tier Sub Pools

---

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

**-size** This parameter specifies the capacity that is to be added when expanding a volume. When expanding a TPV, specify the capacity that is required after expansion is performed. Terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) can be specified. For volume expansion, concatenated source volumes and volumes that are to be concatenated must be 1GB or more. Multiple parameters can be specified, but these parameters must match the equivalent RAID group identifiers that are specified in the previous parameter.  
A volume with a maximum capacity of 128TB can be created (for the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, the maximum is 48PB. For an ODX buffer volume, the maximum is 1TB).

Example: 1tb, 120gb, 512mb

---

**Caution**

- If the specified volume is a TPV, the upper limit value of the total logical capacity of all TPVs and FTVs must be checked.
- For Compression Volumes, an upper limit check of the total logical capacity of all TPVs and FTVs is not supported.

---

**size** Capacity of the volume after it is expanded (in TB, GB, or MB)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example expands the volume named "VOL001" as a new 800GB area in RAID group #5:

```
CLI > expand volume -volume-name VOL001 -rg-number 5 -size 800gb
```

The following example expands the volume named "VOL001" as a new 800GB area in RAID group #5 and a new 400GB area in RAID group #6:

```
CLI > expand volume -volume-name VOL001 -rg-number 5,6 -size 800gb,400gb
```

The following example expands the Thin Provisioning Volume named "TPV001" as a new 800GB area:

```
CLI > expand volume -volume-name TPV001 -size 800gb
```

The following example expands \$DATA\_CNTNR1 as a new 8TB area:

```
CLI > expand volume -volume-name $DATA_CNTNR1 -size 8tb
```

The following example expands the Thin Provisioning Volume named "TPV001", but a Warning message is displayed because the relevant Thin Provisioning Pool is in the "overprovisioning" state:

```
CLI > expand volume -volume-name TPV001 -size 900gb
Warning: The relevant TPP is in overprovisioning status. Please be sure to add new disks to the TPP before it runs out of space.
```

## set volume-parameters

This command changes various settings for the volumes. Unlike the "set volume" command or the "set flexible-tier-volume" command, this command can change multiple volume settings at the same time.

### Note

- To change volume settings other than this parameter, use the "set volume" command or the "set flexible-tier-volume" command.
- If all of the parameters that are required for changing the settings are omitted, the command terminates with an error.

## Syntax

```
set volume-parameters
{ -volume-number { volume_numbers | all } | -volume-name volume_name }
[ -allocation { thin | thick } ] [ -delete-external-lu-info { yes | no } ]
[ -data-reduction-processing-cm {auto | cm_number}]
```

## Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the volume that is being configured. Multiple volumes can be specified simultaneously only if the "-volume-number" parameter is specified. If the "-allocation" parameter is specified, "all" cannot be specified. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax \(page 30\)](#)".

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_name*    Volume name

*all*               All volumes of configurable devices

-allocation    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the same physical capacity as the logical capacity is allocated to the specified volume (when the allocation method for the volume is "thick") or not (when the allocation method for the volume is "thin"). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The types of volumes where the settings can be changed are TPV and VVOL.

### Caution

- This parameter cannot be specified for the following cases.
  - If a TPV enabled with Compression or the DATA\_CNTNR Volume is specified.
  - If the "-data-reduction-processing-cm" parameter is specified.
- If the Allocation method of the volume is "thin", an I/O error may occur due to a capacity depletion. Also, when the value of the parameter is changed from "thick" to "thin", operations may be affected. Be careful when changing this setting.
- After the Allocation method of the volume is changed from "thick" to "thin", by using the "start zero-reclamation" command to perform an optimization of the capacity, the area that was allocated to "thick" is released and becomes usable. When the capacity is not optimized, the usable capacity does not change even after the Allocation method of the volume is changed to "thin".
- If "thin" is changed to "thick", since the physical area is secured, be careful of pool capacity depletion. If the capacity is insufficient, an error (termination) will occur.

thin	A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os. (default)
thick	A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated when volumes are created.

-delete-external-lu-info

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to delete the External LU information. If an External Volume (including a volume that is in the middle of a Non-disruptive Storage Migration) is specified, this parameter cannot be specified. This parameter cannot be specified for a volume without a UID (or LUN ID) that is inherited from an External LU. If omitted, the External LU information is not deleted.

**Caution**

This parameter cannot be specified if the "-data-reduction-processing-cm" parameter is specified.

yes	The External LU information of the target volume is deleted.
no	The External LU information of the target volume is not changed.

-data-reduction-processing-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the controller module (CM) that executes the processes related to the Compression function (or data reduction processes). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

**Caution**

- This parameter cannot be specified if the Compression function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX.
- This parameter cannot be specified if the "-allocation" parameter or the "-delete-external-lu-info" parameter is specified.
- Only TPVs enabled with Compression can be specified.
- To specify the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, the Maintenance policy is required.
- When the "-volume-number" parameter is specified with "all", the value applies to the setting for the data reduction processing CM of all the volumes enabled with Compression in the ETERNUS DX except for the DATA\_CNTNR Volume.

wx	CE# <i>w</i> -CM# <i>x</i> "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "x" is the controller module (CM) number. Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1. For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex). For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.
auto	A CM is automatically selected.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the Allocation method to "thin" for the volume named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> set volume-parameters -volume-name FTV0001 -allocation thin
```

The following example sets the Allocation method to "thin" for volumes #80 to #82:

```
CLI> set volume-parameters -volume-number 80-82 -allocation thin
```

The following example deletes the External LU information of volume #80:

```
CLI> set volume-parameters -volume-number 80 -delete-external-lu-info yes
```

The following example deletes the External LU information of all volumes that satisfy the configurable requirements in the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> set volume-parameters -volume-number all -delete-external-lu-info yes
```

## show migration

This command displays a list of the migrating volumes that are undergoing migration.  
This command is also used for RAID Migration in which the destination is a Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP).

### ■ Syntax

```
show migration
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Migration Source Volume	Migration source volume identifiers
No.	Migration source volume number
Name	Migration source volume name
Migration Status	Volume migration status Reserved The RAID migration is reserved Active The RAID migration is operating normally Error The RAID migration stopped due to errors Hyphen (-) A status other than the ones listed above
Progress	Volume migration progress rate (%) A hyphen (-) is displayed if there is no currently operating process or if the migration status is "Reserved".
Error Code	Volume migration error code (For details, refer to " <a href="#">Copy Session Error Codes (page 907)</a> .)
Work Volume No.	Working volume number (In order to be used as a migration destination)
Data Synchronization After Migration	This item displays whether the data synchronization to the External Volumes continues after the migration is completed if the External Volumes are migrated to the Thin Provisioning Pools or the RAID groups in the local storage system. This item is not displayed if the data migration license is not registered.
Auto Stop	The data synchronization to the External Volumes automatically stops after the migration is completed.
Manual Stop	The data synchronization to the External Volumes continues even after the migration is completed.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show migration

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all migrating volumes:

No.	Name	Migration Status	Progress	Error Code	Work Volume No.
-	-	Reserve	-	-	-
1	Volume-Number#01	Error	20%	0x16	5
2	Volume-Number#02	Suspend	10%	0x1c	6
3	Volume-Number#03	Active	90%	0x00	4

The following example displays a list of all migrating volumes if the data migration license is registered:

No.	Name	Migration Status	Progress	Error Code	Work Volume No.	Data Synchronization After Migration
-	-	Reserve	-	-	-	-
1	Volume-Number#01	Error	20%	0x16	5	Auto Stop
2	Volume-Number#02	Suspend	10%	0x1c	6	Auto Stop
3	Volume-Number#03	Active	90%	0x00	4	Manual Stop

## start migration

This command starts the RAID Migration function or the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function. These functions move the currently registered volumes to another RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool (TPP). The capacity of a volume can also be expanded at the same time. In addition, the Compression setting of a volume can be enabled or disabled.

The "start flexible-tier-migration" command is used to perform RAID Migration in which the destination is a Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP).

### Caution

If the capacity of the migration destination TPP is depleted, an error occurs. Perform a migration after expanding the capacity of the TPP.

## ■ Syntax

```
start migration {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}  
{-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name | -pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name}  
[-size size{tb | gb | mb}] [-encryption {enable | disable}]  
[-wide-stripe-size {normal | small}] [-concatenation-order {auto | manual}]  
[-zero-reclamation {enable | disable}]  
[-data-integrity {default | t10-dif}] [-allocation {thin | thick}]  
[-data-reduction-disable {yes | no}]  
[-data-sync-after-migration {auto-stop | manual-stop}]
```

## ■ Parameter

### -volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier to be moved. Only one volume can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). FTVs that are used exclusively for VVOL metadata cannot be specified. In addition, for the TPVs/FTVs that are used as the copy destination volume of SnapOPC/SnapOPC+, only TPP/FTRP can be specified for the migration destination.

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

### -rg-number or -rg-name

### -pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies a RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool as the volume migration destination. Only one Thin Provisioning Pool can be specified at the same time.

Use the "-rg-number" or the "-rg-name" parameter to specify the RAID group as the migration destination. Note that when multiple RAID groups are specified, the migration destination becomes a Wide Stripe Volume.

Use the "-pool-number" or the "-pool-name" parameter to specify the Thin Provisioning Pool as the migration destination.

For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#) or ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#).

*rg\_number*      RAID group number

*rg\_name*      RAID group name

*pool\_number*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

-size	Optional. This parameter specifies the volume size of the migration destination. A different volume size from the source size can only be specified for the destination when performing migration between RAID groups with a volume size that is larger than the source size. If the volume size that is specified for the destination is smaller than the source size, a parameter error occurs. If omitted, the same size as the source volume is set. Select whether terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) are used for the capacity.  Example: 1tb, 120gb, 512mb
	<i>size</i> Volume capacity (in TB, GB, or MB)
-encryption	Optional. The Security Setting policy is required. This parameter specifies whether the encryption by a CM is performed. When "enable" is selected, the specified volume data is encrypted. If omitted, the encryption setting of the migration source volume is inherited.  enable      The volume data is encrypted. disable      The volume data is not encrypted.
-wide-stripe-size	Optional. This parameter specifies the Wide Stripe Size of a migration destination WSV. This parameter can only be specified when the migration destination is a WSV. If omitted, then it is handled as if "normal" is selected.  normal      The Wide Stripe Size for the WSV is set to 16MB. small      The Wide Stripe Size for the WSV is set to 2MB. Note that if the Stripe Size of the RAID group exceeds 2MB, the actual Stripe Size of the RAID group is used for the WSV that is to be created.
-concatenation-order	Optional. This parameter specifies whether to manually set the concatenation order for the RAID groups of a migration destination WSV. This parameter can only be set when the migration destination is a WSV. If omitted, then it is handled as if "auto" is selected.  auto      The concatenation order for the RAID groups is automatically set. manual      The RAID groups are concatenated in the order specified by the "rg-number" or "-rg-name" parameter.
-zero-reclamation	Optional. This parameter specifies whether Zero Reclamation is performed after migration is complete. If omitted, then it is handled as if "disable" is selected. This parameter cannot be set when the migration destination is a RAID group. "enable" cannot be specified while Zero Reclamation is being performed for a migration source volume. In addition, "enable" cannot be specified if the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Volume enabled with Compression and the "-data-reduction-disable" parameter is not specified with "yes".  enable      Zero Reclamation is started after migration is complete. disable      Zero Reclamation is not started after migration is complete.
-data-integrity	Optional. This parameter sets the data integrity method. If omitted, the setting for the target volume is retained.

**Caution**

To change the data integrity method during a migration, stop the host access.

default	The default data block guard is used to ensure data integrity in the whole storage system. This parameter must be specified when a T10-DIF-specified volume is migrated to volumes for which the T10-DIF cannot be set, such as non-Open and non-Standard volumes.
t10-dif	By using T10-DIF, end-to-end data integrity is ensured. However, if the specified volume has a UID (or LUN ID) that is inherited from an External LU or an External Volume, this parameter cannot be specified. This option can only be specified if "open" or "standard" is specified in "-type". To use T10-DIF, support for T10-DIF is required, such as by HBAs as well as the host.
-allocation	Optional. If omitted, the setting value of the migration source volume is inherited. However, if the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression and the "-data-reduction-disable" parameter is not specified with "yes", the setting value of the migration destination volume is "thin" regardless of the attribute of the migration source volume. When "thick" is specified, the same physical capacity as the logical capacity is allocated to the migration destination TPV. When "thick" is specified, although errors during operation caused by a pool capacity depletion rarely occurs, the usable capacity of the pool is reduced. This parameter can only be specified when "-pool-number" or "-pool-name" is specified and when a migration to TPVs is performed. When a Thick Provisioning Volume is being created in the migration destination, the "-zero-reclamation" parameter cannot be specified with "enable". If the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression and the "-data-reduction-disable" parameter is not specified with "yes", this parameter cannot be specified.
thin	A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os.
thick	A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated to the migration destination TPV.

#### -data-reduction-disable

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to disable the Compression function for the migration destination volume. If omitted, the activation status of the Compression function varies as follows: the Compression function is enabled regardless of the attribute of the migration source volume when the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with the Compression function, and the Compression function is disabled when the migration destination is not a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with the Compression function.

#### Caution

- This parameter cannot be specified if the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool not enabled with Compression.
- If this parameter is not specified with "yes" and the migration destination is a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression, the "-allocation" parameter cannot be specified and the Allocation method of the migration destination volume is "thin" regardless of the attribute of the migration source volume.
- The migration destination can be the same as the migration source Thin Provisioning Pool only if the activation state of the Compression function is toggled for the migration source.
- The Compression function cannot be enabled if the migration source is an ODX buffer volume or an SDV (copy destination volume for SnapOPC/SnapOPC+). To migrate these types of volumes to a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression, use this parameter to disable the Compression function.

enable	The Compression function of the migration destination volume is enabled.
disable	The Compression function of the migration destination volume is disabled.

-data-sync-after-migration

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the data synchronization to the External Volumes continues after the migration is completed if the External Volumes are migrated to the Thin Provisioning Pools or the RAID groups in the local storage system. This parameter can only be specified to migration sessions for Non-disruptive Storage Migrations. If omitted, External Volumes are disconnected after the migration is completed.

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| auto-stop   | The data synchronization to the External Volumes is automatically stopped after the migration is completed.  |
| manual-stop | The data synchronization to the External Volumes continues even after the migration is completed. The synchronization must be manually stopped with the "stop external-volume-data-synchronization" command. |

## ■ Example(s)

The following example moves the volume named "VOL003" to the RAID group named "RGP004". The new volume size is 512GB:

```
CLI> start migration -volume-name VOL003 -rg-name RGP004 -size 512gb
```

The following example moves the volume named "VOL003" to the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP001". The Compression function of the migration destination volume is enabled:

```
CLI> start migration -volume-name VOL003 -pool-name TPP01 -data-reduction-disable no
```

The following example moves the volume named "VOL001" to the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP002", but a Warning message is displayed because "TPP002" is in the "overprovisioning" state:

```
CLI> start migration -volume-name VOL001 -pool-name TPP002
Warning: The relevant TPP is in overprovisioning status. Please be sure to add new disks to the TPP before it runs out of space.
```

The following example displays a warning message because there is a TPP or an FTRP in the overprovisioning state that cannot be solved by an expansion:

```
CLI > start migration -volume-name VOL001 -pool-name TPP002
Warning: There are one or more TPPs or FTRPs that are in overprovisioning status but cannot be resolved by adding new drives.
Please review the Thin Provisioning configuration and the current setting of the maximum pool capacity.
```

## stop migration

This command can be used to stop the RAID Migration progress if it has commenced. The migration source/destination volumes cannot be deleted unless the RAID Migration has been stopped or has completed.

This command is also used for RAID Migration in which the destination is a Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP).

### Caution

- This command is used to stop the currently operating RAID migration. The data synchronization of External Volumes cannot be stopped.
- To stop the data synchronization of External Volumes, use the "stop external-volume-data-synchronization" command.

## ■ Syntax

```
stop migration {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

## ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the migration source volume numbers or names corresponding to an already started migration. Details can be displayed using the "show migration" command. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number  
*volume\_names*    Volume name

## ■ Example(s)

The following example stops the RAID Migration of volume #1:

```
CLI> stop migration -volume-number 1
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > stop external-volume-data-synchronization

## stop external-volume-data-synchronization

This command stops the data synchronization of External Volumes.

### Caution

To stop the currently operating RAID migration, use the "stop migration" command.

### Note

Execute this command after the migration process is completed.

If [100%] is displayed for [Progress] and [Active] is displayed for [Migration Status] after the "show migration" command is executed, the migration process is completed.

## ■ Syntax

```
stop external-volume-data-synchronization  
{-volume-number {volume_numbers | all} | -volume-name volume_name}
```

## ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the External Volume identifiers to stop the data synchronization.

Multiple parameters can only be specified with the "-volume-number" parameter. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

### Note

Up to 32 volume numbers can be specified at a time.

*volume\_numbers*    External Volume number

*volume\_name*      External Volume name

*all*                All External Volumes whose data are currently being synchronized

## ■ Example(s)

The following example shows how to manually stop the data synchronization of External Volume "ESV0001":

```
CLI> stop external-volume-data-synchronization -volume-name ESV0001
```

## show balancing-thin-pro-volumes

This command displays information such as the status and progress of TPV balancing. If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, this command cannot be used.

### ■ Syntax

```
show balancing-thin-pro-volumes [-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name]
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies a volume number or a volume name that is to be displayed. Only one volume can be specified. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#)".

Example: -volume-number 1

An error occurs when a volume other than a TPV is specified.

If omitted, only the balancing progress information of the volume that is being balanced is displayed. If a balancing is executed for a volume that does not exist, nothing is displayed.

When specifying a volume, the balancing progress information and the usage capacity of each raid group for the target volume is displayed regardless of whether a volume is being balanced. If the specified volume is not being balanced, a hyphen (-) is displayed for those other than "Volume" and "Balancing Level" in the balancing progress information.

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Balancing Level	Balancing level
Balancing Process	Balancing process
Status	Balancing process status
Progress(%)	Balancing process progress
Work Volume No.	Working volume number
Error code	Error code
Elapsed Time	Elapsed time
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers (Only when specifying Volume)
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Used Capacity(MB)	Used capacity (Unit : MB) (Only when specifying Volume)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Volume Management > show balancing-thin-pro-volumes

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays all the volumes where the balancing process is being executed:

```
CLI> show balancing-thin-pro-volumes
Volume          Balancing    Balancing    Process   Work Volume Error Elapsed
No.   Name       Level       Status      Progress(%) No.        code Time
-----
0   TPV00        High        Active     99         1023  0x00 02h34min50sec
1   TPV01        Medium      Active     50         2047  0x00 01h23min45sec
2   TPV02        Low         Error      30         4095  0x73 00h30min30sec
```

The following example displays the specified volume (if a balancing process has been executed in the specified volume):

```
CLI> show balancing-thin-pro-volumes -volume-number 1
Volume          Balancing    Balancing    Process   Work Volume Error Elapsed
No.   Name       Level       Status      Progress(%) No.        code Time
-----
1   TPV01        Medium      Active     50         2047  0x00 01h23min45sec
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group      Used
No.   Name       Capacity(MB)
-----
1   RAIDGROUP001 1344
2   RAIDGROUP002 2688
```

The following example displays the specified volume (if a balancing process has not been executed in the specified volume):

```
CLI> show balancing-thin-pro-volumes -volume-number 1
Volume          Balancing    Balancing    Process   Work Volume Error Elapsed
No.   Name       Level       Status      Progress(%) No.        code Time
-----
1   TPV01        Medium      -          -          -          -          -
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group      Used
No.   Name       Capacity(MB)
-----
1   RAIDGROUP001 1344
2   RAIDGROUP002 2688
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > start balancing-thin-pro-volume

## start balancing-thin-pro-volume

This command starts evenly relocating the Thin Provisioning Volumes (TPVs) among RAID groups. If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, this command cannot be used.

### ■ Syntax

```
start balancing-thin-pro-volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the TPV to start balancing. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

#### Caution

Compression Volumes (tpv) and the Data Container Volume (DATA\_CNTNR Volume) cannot be specified.

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example starts balancing TPV01:

```
CLI> start balancing-thin-pro-volume -volume-name TPV01
```

## stop balancing-thin-pro-volume

This command stops evenly relocating the TPVs among RAID groups. Specify the TPV that is being balanced. If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, this command cannot be used.

### ■ Syntax

```
stop balancing-thin-pro-volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the TPV to stop balancing. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example stops balancing TPV01 and TPV02:

```
CLI> stop balancing-thin-pro-volume -volume-name TPV01,TPV02
```

## start zero-reclamation

This command starts Zero Reclamation. Zero Reclamation affects Thin Provisioning and Flexible Tier Pools (FTRP) by releasing physical allocations in consecutive 21MB 0 data blocks in TPVs and FTVs as unused areas. To stop or display the progress of a Zero Reclamation process that is started by this command, use the "stop zero-reclamation" and "show volume-progress" commands.

### Syntax

```
start zero-reclamation {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier for which Zero Reclamation is to be started. Multiple volumes can be specified in a single command. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

#### Caution

- TPVs enabled with Compression and the DATA\_CNTNR Volume (tpv) cannot be specified.
- Zero Reclamation cannot be executed for TPVs or FTVs with an Allocation method of "thick". If the Allocation method is changed to "thin", Zero Reclamation can be executed.

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

### Example(s)

The following example starts Zero Reclamation for an FTV that is named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> start zero-reclamation -volume-name FTV0001
```

The following example starts Zero Reclamation for volumes #80 – #99:

```
CLI> start zero-reclamation -volume-number 80-99
```

## stop zero-reclamation

This command stops Zero Reclamation. To display the progress of a Zero Reclamation process that is stopped by this command, use the "show volume-progress" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
stop zero-reclamation {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier for which Zero Reclamation is to be stopped. Multiple volumes can be set in a single command. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Volume number  
*volume\_name*      Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example stops Zero Reclamation for a TFV that is named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> stop zero-reclamation -volume-name FTV0001
```

The following example stops Zero Reclamation for volumes #80 – #99:

```
CLI> stop zero-reclamation -volume-number 80-99
```

## show volume-qos

This command displays the performance setting for the Volume QoS.

### Syntax

```
show volume-qos [-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names | -all]
```

### Parameter

-volume-number, -volume-name, or -all

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifier for the target volume to display the QoS performance. Multiple volumes can be specified for "-volume-number" and "-volume-name". For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If the "-all" parameter is specified, the QoS performance setting is displayed for all volumes including volumes with a bandwidth limit of "0" (no upper limit). If this parameter is omitted, the QoS performance setting is displayed for volumes that have a bandwidth limit other than "0" (no upper limit).

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

-all                  All Volumes including volumes with a bandwidth limit of "0" (no upper limit).

### Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Bandwidth Limit	QoS performance bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) configured in the volume

### Example(s)

The following example shows information when parameters are omitted:

```
CLI> show volume-qos
Volume                                  Bandwidth Limit
No.   Name
-----
1 VOL00001                          1
10 VOL00010                        3
100 VOL00100                      9
1000 VOL01000                    12
10000 VOL10000                  15
```

The following example displays the QoS performance setting for volume #1:

```
CLI> show volume-qos -volume-number 1
Volume                                  Bandwidth Limit
No.   Name
-----
1 VOL00001                          0
```

## set volume-qos

This command configures the performance setting for the Volume QoS.

### Syntax

```
set volume-qos {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}  
-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limit
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier for the target volume to configure the QoS performance. Multiple volumes can only be specified with the "-volume-number" parameter. The DATA\_CNTNR Volume cannot be specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

-bandwidth-limit

This parameter specifies the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) configured in the volume. The range that can be set is 0 (unlimited) to 15. The default values that are assigned to 0 to 15 can be changed with the "set qos-bandwidth-limit" command.

The initial value of the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) is described in the ["set qos-bandwidth-limit"](#) command.

Example: -volume-number 1 -bandwidth-limit 1

Multiple bandwidth limits can be specified simultaneously. When configuring different values, this parameter must be set with the same amount of numbers that are specified for the "-volume-number" parameter or the "-volume-name" parameter.

Example: -volume-number 1,2 -bandwidth-limit 1,2

The same "-bandwidth-limit" parameter can be specified to multiple "-volume" parameters.

Example: -volume-number 1,2,4 -bandwidth-limit 1

*bandwidth\_limit*    Bandwidth limit pattern (upper limit performance value) for the volume (0 - 15)

### Example(s)

The following example configures the QoS performance setting for the volume named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> set volume-qos -volume-name FTV0001 -bandwidth-limit 0
```

The following example configures the QoS performance setting for volume #80 – #82:

```
CLI> set volume-qos -volume-number 80-82 -bandwidth-limit 13,14,15
```

## Flexible Tier Volumes

This section explains the details of the commands that are related to the management of volumes that is used by the Flexible Tier function (or the Automated Storage Tiering function).

In the same way as normal volumes, use the "show volumes" command to display a list of the Flexible Tier Volumes and the "show volume-progress" command to display the formatting progress of Flexible Tier Volumes.

In the same way as RAID Migration, use the "stop migration" command to stop Flexible Tier Migration and the "show migration" command to display a list of the migrating volumes for Flexible Tier Migration.

For details, refer to ["Flexible Tier Management" \(page 250\)](#).

### Note

Perform Flexible Tier (or Automated Storage Tiering) operations with ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser. For information about operating Automated Storage Tiering, refer to "FUJITSU Storage ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide for Optimization Function".

If a Flexible Tier Volume is configured (created/modified/deleted) using CLI, status updates must be operated from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser.

Functions to control Flexible Tier Volumes are as follows:

- Creating volumes
- Changing an existing volume information
- Formatting volumes
- Expanding volumes
- Deleting volumes
- Flexible Tier migration (migrating volumes)

The commands that are used for normal volumes and FTVs are shown below.

Function	Command used for normal volumes	Command used for FTVs
Creating volumes	create volume	create flexible-tier-volume
Changing volume settings	set volume	set flexible-tier-volume
Formatting volumes	format volume	format flexible-tier-volume
Expanding volumes	expand volume	expand flexible-tier-volume
Expanding volumes	show volumes	
Displaying the progress of volume processes	show volume-progress	
Deleting volumes	delete volume	delete flexible-tier-volume delete all-flexible-tier-volume
Starting RAID Migration	start migration	start flexible-tier-migration
Stopping RAID Migration	stop migration	
Displaying a list of volumes undergoing RAID Migration	show migration	

## create flexible-tier-volume

This command creates a volume (Flexible Tier Volume [FTV]) in the specified Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP). Multiple FTVs can be created in the same FTRP by using the "-count" parameter. This command has the same function as the "create volume" command, except that an FTV is created in an FTRP.

### Note

The maximum total capacity of FTVs that can be created at once is 2PB.

## Syntax

```
create flexible-tier-volume -name alias_name {-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name}  
-size size {tb | gb | mb} [-priority {ftsp_number | auto}] [-count count] [-attention attention]  
[-copy-protection {enable | disable}] [-volume-number volume_number]  
[-allocation {thin | thick}] [-type {default | vvol-metadata}]
```

## Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies the FTV name. Only one name can be specified. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax \(page 30\)](#)".

### Caution

In a VMware Virtual Volumes (VVOL) operating environment, when attempting to create a volume with a name "VVOL#X" while a VVOL creation process is running in the background, the VVOL volume names may conflict and cause VVOL related operations to terminate abnormally.

*alias\_name*    FTV name

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP identifier to which the FTV that is to be created is allocated. For details, refer to "[Flexible Tier Pool Syntax \(page 28\)](#)".

*ftrp\_number*      FTRP number

*ftrp\_name*      FTRP name

-size      This parameter specifies the FTV size. Select whether terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) are used for the capacity.

Example: 1tb, 120gb, 512mb

*size*      FTV capacity (in TB, GB, or MB)

-priority      Optional. This parameter specifies the FTSP number of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) to which the FTV that is to be created is preferentially allocated. If this parameter is omitted or "auto" is specified for this parameter, the allocated FTSP is determined automatically.

*ftsp\_number*    FTSP number

*auto*      The allocated FTSP is determined automatically.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Volume Management > create flexible-tier-volume

**-count**      Optional. This parameter specifies the number of FTVs that are to be created. If omitted, only one FTV is created with the name that is specified by the "-name" parameter.

When two or more is specified for the "-count" parameter, a sequential number starting from 0, such as 0, 1, and 2, is added after the FTV name that is specified by the "-name" parameter.

Example: When "-name abc -count 3" is specified, FTVs "abc0", "abc1", and "abc2" are created. If these volumes already exist, the names of the created volumes use incrementing index numbers.

*count*      Number of FTVs

**-attention**      Optional. This parameter specifies the threshold (Attention) for the FTV. A value between 1% and 100% can be set. If omitted, the default value (80%) is set.

*attention*      Threshold (Attention) for the FTV

#### -copy-protection

Optional. This parameter prevents the FTV from being specified as the copy destination. When "enable" is specified, the FTV cannot be specified as the copy destination. If this parameter is omitted or "auto" is specified for this parameter, the FTV can be specified as the copy destination.

*enable*      The FTV is protected.

*disable*      The FTV is not protected.

#### -volume-number

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the volume number is assigned automatically or manually. Only one volume number can be specified. If omitted, the volume number is automatically assigned. This parameter cannot be specified when a value that is "2" or more is set for the "-count" parameter. If an existing volume number is set, an error occurs.

#### Caution

In a VVOL operating environment, when specifying the same volume number as the VVOL scheduled for creation while a VVOL creation process is running in the background, the VVOL creation process may terminate abnormally.

*volume\_number*      Volume number

**-allocation**      Optional. If omitted, "thin" is set. During normal operations, the value of this parameter does not need to be changed from the default value ("thin"). When "thick" is specified, the same logical capacity is allocated to the physical capacity when the volume is created.

*thin*      A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os (default).

*thick*      A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated when volumes are created.

**-type**      Optional. This parameter specifies the type of FTV (normal FTV or VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV) to create. Backups of VVOL management Metadata for ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser are stored in the created VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs.

Normally, VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs are created automatically during the creation of a VVOL. However, this parameter can recreate VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs if they were deleted.

Only one VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV can be created for each ETERNUS DX. The capacity is 1,040MB.

VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs are fixed to "thick". If "vvol-metadata" is specified, "-name", "-size", and "-allocation" cannot be specified. In addition, if the VVOL function is disabled, this parameter cannot be specified.

If omitted, "default" is set.

default	Normal FTVs are created (default).
vvol-metadata	VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs are created.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates an FTV that is named "FTV0002". FTRP#0 is set for the FTRP to which the FTV is preferentially allocated, 80% is set for the Attention level threshold, and the copy destination volume protection function is enabled:

```
CLI> create flexible-tier-volume -name FTV0002 -ftrp-number 0 -attention 80 -copy-protection enable
```

## set flexible-tier-volume

This command modifies the information for the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

### Syntax

```
set flexible-tier-volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}  
[-name name] [-priority {ftsp_number | auto}] [-attention attention] [-copy-protection {enable | disable}]  
[-uid uid | default | original] [-alua {follow-host-response | active | passive}]
```

### Parameter

#### -volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the FTV identifier for which the settings are to be changed. Only one parameter can be specified in a single command. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax \(page 30\)](#)".

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the new name of the target FTV. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax \(page 30\)](#)". If omitted, the alias name of the target FTV remains unchanged.

*name*      FTV name

#### -priority

Optional. This parameter specifies the FTSP number of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) to which the target FTV is preferentially allocated.

If "auto" is specified for this parameter, the allocated FTSP is determined automatically. If omitted, this parameter is not changed.

*ftsp\_number*      FTSP number

auto      The allocated FTSP is determined automatically.

#### -attention

Optional. This parameter specifies the threshold (Attention) for the target FTV. A value between 1% and 100% can be set. If omitted, this parameter is not changed.

*attention*      Threshold (Attention) for the target FTV

#### -copy-protection

Optional. This parameter prevents the FTV from being specified as the copy destination. When "enable" is specified, the target FTV cannot be specified as the copy destination. When "disable" is specified, the target FTV can be specified as the copy destination. If omitted, the setting remains unchanged.

enable      The FTV is protected.

disable      The FTV is not protected.

#### -uid

Optional. This parameter specifies the UID of the target volume. Thirty-two-digit hexadecimal ("0" to "9", "A" to "F", and "a" to "f") numbers can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

*uid*      UID of the target volume

default or original      The UID, serial number, and product ID are reverted to the default setting for the target volume.

-alua	Optional. This parameter specifies the ALUA setting for the target volume. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.
follow-host-response	The ALUA setting follows the host response setting (default).
active	The ACTIVE / ACTIVE setting takes priority regardless of the host response setting.
passive	The ACTIVE-ACTIVE / PREFERRED_PATH setting takes priority regardless of the host response setting.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example renames an FTV named "FTV0003" to "FTV\_0003":

```
CLI> set flexible-tier-volume -volume-name FTV0003 -name FTV_0003
```

The following example changes the FTSP to which the target FTV is preferentially allocated to volume#03, sets the Attention level threshold to 60%, and enables the copy destination volume protection function for volume#02 (FTV):

```
CLI> set flexible-tier-volume -volume-number 2 -priority 3 -attention 60 -copy-protection enable
```

## format flexible-tier-volume

This command formats the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

### Syntax

```
format flexible-tier-volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names} [-force]
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the FTV identifiers that are to be formatted. Multiple FTVs can be formatted in a single command. This command results in an error response if a non-FTV volume is specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

-force    Optional. This parameter forcefully formats FTVs that should not be formatted.  
If this parameter is specified, VMware Virtual Volumes (VVOL) Metadata exclusive FTVs can be formatted.

### Example(s)

The following example formats an FTV named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> format flexible-tier-volume -volume-name FTV0001
```

The following example formats consecutive volumes #80 – #99 at the same time:

```
CLI> format flexible-tier-volume -volume-number 80-99
```

## expand flexible-tier-volume

This command expands the capacity of the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

### Note

The maximum total capacity of FTVs that can be expanded at once is 2PB.

### Syntax

```
expand flexible-tier-volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name} -size size{tb | gb | mb}
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the FTV identifier for which the capacity is to be expanded. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

-size      Optional. This parameter specifies the volume size after capacity expansion. Select whether terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) are used for the capacity.

Example: 1tb, 120gb, 512mb

*size*      FTV capacity (in TB, GB, or MB)

### Example(s)

The following example expands the FTV named "FTV0001" as a new 800GB area:

```
CLI > expand flexible-tier-volume -volume-name FTV0001 -size 800gb
```

## delete flexible-tier-volume

This command deletes the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

- All mappings associated with the host must be released before specified FTVs are deleted.
- All migrating FTVs (Flexible Tier migration) must be stopped before specified FTVs are deleted.
- Advanced Copy sessions to be deleted must be stopped before specified FTVs are deleted.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete flexible-tier-volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names} [-force]
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the FTV identifiers that are to be deleted. Multiple FTVs can be deleted in a single command. This command results in an error response if a non-FTV volume is specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

-force    Optional. This parameter forcefully deletes FTVs that should not be deleted.  
If this parameter is specified, VMware Virtual Volumes (VVOL) and VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs can be deleted.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes an FTV named "FTV0001":

```
CLI> delete flexible-tier-volume -volume-name FTV0001
```

The following example deletes consecutive volumes #80 – #99 at the same time:

```
CLI> delete flexible-tier-volume -volume-number 80-99
```

The following example forcefully deletes a VVOL:

```
CLI> delete flexible-tier-volume -volume-number 1 -force
```

## delete all-flexible-tier-volumes

This command collectively deletes the Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) for which the specified Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP) is allocated and that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

- All mappings associated with the host must be released before specified FTVs are deleted.
- All migrating FTVs (Flexible Tier migration) must be stopped before specified FTVs are deleted.
- Advanced Copy sessions to be deleted must be stopped before specified FTVs are deleted.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete all-flexible-tier-volumes {-ftrp-number ftrp_numbers | -ftrp-name ftrp_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP identifier that is allocated to the FTVs that are to be deleted. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to ["Flexible Tier Pool Syntax" \(page 28\)](#).

<i>ftrp_numbers</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_names</i>	FTRP name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes all the FTVs for which an FTRP that is named "FTRP001" is allocated.

```
CLI> delete all-flexible-tier-volumes -ftrp-name FTRP001
```

## start flexible-tier-migration

This command starts Flexible Tier Migration.

Flexible Tier Migration is RAID Migration in which the migration destination is a Flexible Tier Pool (FTRP).

In the same way as RAID Migration, use the "stop migration" command to stop Flexible Tier Migration that is started by executing this command and the "show migration" command to show a list of the migrating volumes for Flexible Tier Migration that is started by executing this command.

The "start migration" command is used for normal RAID Migration in which the migration destination is not an FTRP.

### Caution

- The capacity of volumes cannot be changed during Flexible Tier Migration.
- The migrated volume type is changed to FTV.

### Syntax

```
start flexible-tier-migration {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}  
{-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name} [-priority {ftsp_number | auto}]  
[-zero-reclamation {enable | disable}] [-data-integrity default]  
[-allocation {thin | thick}]  
[-data-sync-after-migration {auto-stop | manual-stop}]
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the migration source volume. Only one parameter can be specified at a time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP identifier for the volume migration destination. Only one parameter can be specified. For details, refer to ["Flexible Tier Pool Syntax" \(page 28\)](#).

*ftrp\_number*      FTRP number

*ftrp\_name*      FTRP name

-priority      Optional. This parameter specifies the FTSP number of the Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) to which the migrated FTV is preferentially allocated.

If this parameter is omitted or "auto" is specified for this parameter, the allocated FTSP is determined automatically by the ETERNUS DX.

*ftsp\_number*      FTSP number

*auto*      The allocated FTSP is determined automatically.

-zero-reclamation

This parameter specifies whether Zero Reclamation is performed after migration is complete. If omitted, then it is handled as if "disable" is selected. "enable" cannot be specified while Zero Reclamation is being performed for a migration source volume.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > start flexible-tier-migration

enable      Zero Reclamation is started after migration is complete.

disable      Zero Reclamation is not started after migration is complete.

#### -data-integrity

This parameter sets the method for ensuring data integrity.

default      The default data block guard is used to ensure data integrity in the whole storage system. This option must be specified when a T10-DIF-enabled volume is migrated.

-allocation    Optional. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. When "thick" is specified, the same physical capacity as the logical capacity of the migration destination FTV is allocated in advance.

thin           A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os.

thick          A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated to the migration destination FTV.

#### -data-sync-after-migration

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the data synchronization to the External Volumes continues after the migration is completed if the External Volumes are migrated to the FTRPs in the local storage system.

This parameter can only be specified to migration sessions for Non-disruptive Storage Migrations. If omitted, External Volumes are disconnected after the migration is completed.

auto-stop      The data synchronization to the External Volumes is automatically stopped after the migration is completed.

manual-stop    The data synchronization to the External Volumes continues even after the migration is completed. The synchronization must be manually stopped with the "stop external-volume-data-synchronization" command.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example migrates an FTV named "FTV0003" to an FTRP named "FTRP000". (The volume type of the FTV that is named "FTV0003" remains FTV:)

```
CLI> start flexible-tier-migration -volume-name FTV0003 -ftrp-name FTRP000
```

The following example migrates Volume#5 to FTRP#3 and the migrated volume is preferentially allocated to FTSP#4. (The volume type of Volume#5 is changed to FTV:)

```
CLI> start flexible-tier-migration -volume-number 5 -ftrp-number 3 -priority 4
```

The following example migrates Volume TPV00A to FTRP#4 and the migrated volumes is preferentially allocated automatically to an FTSP. (The volume type of the FTV that is named "TPV00A" remains FTV. The name of the volume remains unchanged.)

```
CLI> start flexible-tier-migration -volume-name TPV000A -ftrp-number 4 -priority auto
```

## ODX Buffer Volume

---

This section describes the commands that are related to the management of volumes for the backup area that is used for Offloaded Data Transfer (ODX).

The functions to control ODX Buffer volumes are as follows:

- Setting the ODX mode
- Creating an ODX Buffer volume
- Setting an ODX Buffer volume
- Deleting an ODX Buffer volume

The commands that are used for ODX Buffer volumes are shown below.

Function	Command
Creating volumes	create odx-buffer-volume
Changing volume settings	set odx-buffer-volume
Formatting volumes	format volume
Expanding volumes	expand volume
Displaying a list of volumes	show volumes
Displaying the progress of volume processes	show volume-progress
Deleting volumes	delete odx-buffer-volume
Starting RAID Migration	start migration
Stopping RAID Migration	stop migration
Displaying a list of volumes undergoing RAID Migration	show migration

## show odx-mode

This command displays the operation mode for the Offloaded Data Transfer function.

### ■ Syntax

```
show odx-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Offloaded Data Transfer Mode	Operation mode for the Offloaded Data Transfer function (Disable: disabled, Enable: enabled)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the operation mode for the Offloaded Data Transfer function:

```
CLI> show odx-mode
Offloaded Data Transfer Mode [Enable]
```

## set odx-mode

This command specifies the operation mode for the Offloaded Data Transfer function.

### ■ Syntax

```
set odx-mode -mode {enable | disable}
```

### ■ Parameter

- mode      This parameters specifies whether to enable or disable the Offloaded Data Transfer function.
  - enable      The Offloaded Data Transfer function is enabled.
  - disable      The Offloaded Data Transfer function is disabled.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the Offloaded Data Transfer function:

```
CLI> set odx-mode -mode enable
```

The following example disables the Offloaded Data Transfer function:

```
CLI> set odx-mode -mode disable
```

## create odx-buffer-volume

This command creates the ODX Buffer volume. The ODX mode setting must be enabled. Only one ODX Buffer volume can be registered for an ETERNUS DX (multiple ODX Buffer volumes cannot be created).

### Caution

The Compression function of an ODX buffer volume is not enabled even if the volume is created in a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression.

### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

## Syntax

```
create odx-buffer-volume -name name {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name |  
-pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name | -ftp-number ftp_number | -ftp-name ftp_name}  
-type {open | standard | tpv | ftv} -size {size{tb | gb | mb} | max} [-priority {ftsp_number | auto}]  
[-attention attention] [-encryption {enable | disable}]  
[-allocation {thin | thick}]
```

## Parameter

-name This parameter specifies the name for the ODX Buffer volume. Only one name can be specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*name* ODX Buffer volume name

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the RAID group in which the ODX Buffer volume is to be created. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#). This parameter can be set when "open" or "standard" are set for the "-type" parameter.

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the TPP in which the ODX Buffer volume is to be created. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#). This parameter can be specified when "tpv" is set for the "-type" parameter.

*pool\_number* Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name* Thin Provisioning Pool name

-ftp-number or -ftp-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the FTRP in which the ODX Buffer volume is to be created. For details, refer to ["Flexible Tier Sub Pool Syntax" \(page 28\)](#). This parameter can be specified when "ftv" is set for the "-type" parameter.

*ftp\_number* FTRP number

*ftp\_name* FTRP name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Volume Management > create odx-buffer-volume

-type	This parameter specifies the volume type of the ODX Buffer volume.
open	Standard volume (Standard). "open" type volumes that are created are displayed as standard volumes.
standard	Normal open volumes (Standard)
tpv	Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV)
ftv	Flexible Tier Volume (FTV)
-size	This parameter specifies the size of the ODX Buffer volume. Select whether terabytes (TB), gigabytes (GB), or megabytes (MB) are used for the capacity. From 1GB to 1TB can be specified. Example: 1tb (1TB), 120gb (120GB), 1024mb (1024MB)
size	ODX Buffer volume capacity (in TB, GB, or MB)
max	An ODX Buffer volume is created using the entire capacity of the maximum free area of the specified RAID group. This option can be specified only when the volume type is Standard (Open). If multiple free areas exist in the specified RAID group, the volume is created by using only the largest of the free areas.
-priority	Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the volume type of the ODX Buffer volume is FTV. Specify the FTSP number to set the priority for allocating a Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) to the FTV that is to be created. If this parameter is omitted or "auto" is specified, the FTSP is automatically allocated.
ftsp_number	FTSP number
auto	The FTSP is automatically allocated.
-attention	Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the volume type of the ODX Buffer volume is TPV or FTV. Specify the threshold (attention level) for the TPV or FTV. From 1% to 100% can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the default value (80%) is set.
attention	Threshold (attention level) for the TPV or FTV
-encryption	Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the volume type of the ODX Buffer volume is Open (Standard). Specify this parameter to encrypt a volume. If "enable" is specified, the volume data that is specified is encrypted. If this parameter is omitted, "disable" is specified.
enable	The volume data is encrypted.
disable	No operation.
-allocation	Optional. If omitted, "thin" is set. During normal operations, the value of this parameter does not need to be changed from the default value ("thin"). When "thick" is specified, the same logical capacity is allocated to the physical capacity when the volume is created. The specifiable volume type is TPV.
thin	A physical volume is allocated to an area when the area accepts write I/Os (default).
thick	A physical volume with the same size as the logical capacity is allocated when volumes are created.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates the ODX Buffer volume that is named "VOL001" in a RAID group that is named "RGP001". The volume type is Standard. The volume size is 1GB:

```
CLI> create odx-buffer-volume -name VOL001 -rg-name RGP001 -type standard -size 1gb
```

The following example creates an encrypted ODX Buffer volume:

```
CLI> create odx-buffer-volume -name VOL001 -rg-name RGP001 -type standard -size 1tb -encryption enable
```

The following example creates the ODX Buffer volume called TPV1 in TPP#01. The volume type of the ODX Buffer volume is TPV and the attention level is 80%:

```
CLI> create odx-buffer-volume -name TPV1 -pool-number 01 -type tpv -size 100gb -attention 80
```

The following example adds the ODX Buffer volume called TPV1 in TPP#01, but a Warning message is displayed because "TPP#01" is in the "overprovisioning" state:

```
CLI> create odx-buffer-volume -name TPV1 -pool-number 1 -type tpv -size 800gb
Warning: The relevant TPP is in overprovisioning status. Please be sure to add new disks to the TPP before it runs out of space.
```

The following example creates the ODX Buffer volume that is called FTV0002 and allocates the ODX Buffer volume to FTRP#0. The volume type of the ODX Buffer volume is FTV and the attention level being set to 80%:

```
CLI> create odx-buffer-volume -type ftv -name FTV0002 -ftrp-number 0 -size 500gb -attention 80
```

## set odx-buffer-volume

This command changes the information of the ODX Buffer volume that is registered in the ETERNUS DX.  
This command only changes the settings of the specified parameters. For unspecified parameters, the existing settings remain unchanged.

### ■ Syntax

```
set odx-buffer-volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}  
[-name name] [-priority {ftsp_number | auto}] [-attention attention] [-encryption {enable | disable}]
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the ODX Buffer volume for which the settings are to be changed.  
Only one volume can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#)".

*volume\_number*      ODX Buffer volume number

*volume\_name*      ODX Buffer volume name

-name      Optional. This parameter specifies the new name for the ODX Buffer volume. For details about the contents that can be entered, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#)". If omitted, the alias name of the target volume is not changed.

*name*      ODX Buffer volume name

-priority      Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the type of the ODX Buffer volume is FTV. Specify the FTSP number to set the priority for allocating a Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) to the target FTV.  
If "auto" is input, the FTSP is automatically allocated. If omitted, the FTSP is not changed.

*ftsp\_number*      FTSP number

auto      The FTSP is automatically allocated.

-attention      Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the type of the ODX Buffer volume is TPV or FTV. Specify the threshold (attention level) for the TPV or FTV. From 1% to 100% can be specified. If omitted, the threshold value is not changed.

*attention*      Threshold (attention level) for the TPV or FTV

-encryption      Optional. This parameter is only enabled when the type of the ODX Buffer volume is Open (Standard). Specify this parameter to encrypt a volume. If "enable" is specified, the data of the specified ODX Buffer volume is encrypted. If this parameter is omitted, "disable" is specified.

enable      The data of the ODX Buffer volume is encrypted.

disable      No operation.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the ODX Buffer volume name from "FTV0003" to "FTV\_0003":

```
CLI> set odx-buffer-volume -volume-name FTV0003 -name FTV_0003
```

The following example changes the attention to "60%" and the priority for FTSP allocation for the ODX Buffer volume #02 (FTV) to FTSP #3:

```
CLI> set odx-buffer-volume -volume-number 2 -priority 3 -attention 60
```

## delete odx-buffer-volume

This command deletes an ODX Buffer volume that is registered in the ETERNUS DX.

- If the deletion target ODX Buffer volume is being used for a running RAID Migration process or TPV balancing process, that RAID Migration or TPV balancing process must be stopped.
- Copy sessions for the ODX Buffer volume must be stopped.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete odx-buffer-volume {-volume-number volume_number | -volume-name volume_name}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the ODX Buffer volume that is to be deleted. Only one volume can be specified. If a volume other than the ODX Buffer volume is specified, an error occurs. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax](#)" (page 30).

*volume\_number*      Volume number  
*volume\_name*      Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes an ODX Buffer volume that is named "ODTV001".

```
CLI> delete odx-buffer-volume -volume-name ODTV001
```

## Extreme Cache

This section explains the commands that are related to the Extreme Cache function.

This function improves read performance by using flash memory (PCIe Flash Module (PFM)) as the secondary cache. PFMs are used as the secondary cache.

### Caution

- The Extreme Cache function is not available for the following ETERNUS DX storage systems:
  - DX8100 S4
  - ETERNUS DX storage systems not equipped with a PFM

To use the Extreme Cache function, enable the function and then set the cache capacity and control function. The commands that are used for the Extreme Cache function are shown below.

Function	Command used
Sets the Extreme Cache function for the ETERNUS DX (enable/disable)	set extreme-cache
Sets the PFM memory size to use as cache	
Sets the cache control function	
Stops the use of PFMs as EXC	release extreme-cache
Displays the setting information of the Extreme Cache function	show extreme-cache
Sets the Extreme Cache function for a volume unit during a volume creation (enable/disable)	create volume [-exc]
Sets the Extreme Cache function for the existing volume (enable/disable)	set volume-exc
Displays the Extreme Cache function in the volume unit (enable/disable)	show volumes -detail

The Extreme Cache function for Flexible Tier Volumes (FTVs) is controlled by a software application.

## show extreme-cache

This command displays whether the Extreme Cache (EXC) function is enabled. This command also displays the currently-specified capacity, and the maximum capacity of the PCIe Flash Modules (PFMs) that is used as secondary cache for each ETERNUS DX.

### Caution

This command is not supported in the DX8100 S4.

### Syntax

```
show extreme-cache
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Mode	Displays whether the EXC function is enabled/disabled.
Usage	EXC usage
Read-Only Cache	EXC is used as read cache.
-	The EXC function is disabled.
Initial Caching Threshold	Initial cache threshold. Initial cache threshold is the number of data access counts taken until the data is stored in the PFM as cached data for the first time. The initial cache threshold value is enabled when the ETERNUS DX is powered on or when the EXC function is enabled until all the space in the PFM is used up for the first time.
Caching Threshold	Cache threshold. The cache threshold is the number of data access counts taken until the data is stored as cached data in the PFM. The caching threshold value is enabled when the ETERNUS DX is powered on or when the EXC function is enabled and after all the space in the PFM is used up for the first time. This item is displayed as "Disable" if data disposal is prohibited.
Monitoring I/O	Indicates whether the cache pages that are used for read I/O and write I/O are counted up as the monitoring target.
Caching Priority	The priority when staging the information on the drive to PFM. Setting a larger value reduces the time until staging but there is a possibility that the host I/O will be impacted.
Owner	Installation location of the PFM
Status	Status of the EXC used in each CE
Available	Normal state
Broken	The EXC is broken.
-	No EXC is assigned to the target CE.
Capacity(GB)	Total capacity of PFMs used as EXC. If an EXC is not set, "0" is displayed. If the EXC function is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the result of a command execution when the EXC function is enabled:

```
CLI> show extreme-cache
Mode           [Enable]
Usage          [Read-Only Cache]
Initial Caching Threshold [1]
Caching Threshold [5]
Monitoring I/O   [Read]
Caching Priority [10]
<EXC Detailed Information>
  Owner Status Capacity(GB)
  ----- -----
CE#0  Available    12800
CE#1  Available    12800
```

The following example displays the result of a command execution when the EXC function is disabled:

```
CLI> show extreme-cache
Mode           [Disable]
Usage          [-]
Initial Caching Threshold [1]
Caching Threshold [5]
Monitoring I/O   [Read]
Caching Priority [10]
<EXC Detailed Information>
  Owner Status Capacity(GB)
  ----- -----
CE#0  -          -
CE#1  -          -
```

## set extreme-cache

This command enables or disables the Extreme Cache (EXC) function for the ETERNUS DX. When the EXC function is enabled, this command can set the threshold, the monitoring target, and the controller enclosure where PCIe Flash Modules (PFMs) are used as EXC. The EXC function is disabled by default.

### Caution

- This command is not supported in the DX8100 S4.
- To enable or disable the EXC function for each volume, use the "set volume-exc" command.
- To delete Extreme Cache, use the "release extreme-cache" command.
- Before disabling the EXC function, delete all the Extreme Cache in the ETERNUS DX.
- When starting to use EXC or after adding a PFM, execute this command by specifying the controller enclosure where the PFM is used as EXC. This allows the use of the PFM as EXC.

## Syntax

```
set extreme-cache [-mode {read-only | disable}]\n[-owner ce_number] [-pfm-number {pfm_numbers | all}]\n[-initial-caching-threshold initial_caching_threshold]\n[-caching-threshold {disable | caching_threshold}]\n[-monitoring-io {read | read-write}]
```

## Parameter

**-mode**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the EXC function is enabled for the ETERNUS DX. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <i>read-only</i> | The EXC function is enabled. EXC is only used as read cache. |
| <i>disable</i>   | The EXC function is disabled.                                |

**-owner**      Optional. This parameter specifies the controller enclosure where EXC is used. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

*ce\_number*      Controller enclosure number. For details, refer to "[Controller Enclosure Syntax \(page 25\)](#)".

### Note

- This parameter must be specified with the "-pfm-number" parameter.
- This parameter cannot be specified if the "-pfm-number" parameter is specified with "all".
- This parameter cannot be specified if the EXC function is disabled.

**-pfm-number**

Optional. This parameter specifies the PFM to be used for the EXC function. One or more PFMs can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged. If this parameter is specified with "all", all the PFMs in the ETERNUS DX not used as Extreme Cache are set as Extreme Cache for the controller where the PFM is installed.

*pfm\_numbers*      PFM number. For details, refer to "[PFM Syntax \(page 26\)](#)".

*all*      All the PFMs in the ETERNUS DX that are not used as Extreme Cache are set as Extreme Cache for the controller where the PFM is installed.

-initial-caching-threshold

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of data access counts taken until the data is stored in the PFM as cached data for the first time. The initial caching threshold value is enabled when the ETERNUS DX is powered on or when the EXC function is enabled until all the space in the PFM is used up for the first time. Staging data in the PFM becomes more frequent during a Random Read when this value is smaller. The settable range is 1 to 16. The default value is "1". If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

**Caution**

- Setting a value smaller than the Caching Threshold is recommended.
- This parameter cannot be specified if the EXC function is disabled.

*initial\_caching\_threshold* Initial caching threshold (1 - 16)

-caching-threshold

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of data access counts taken until the data is stored as cached data in the PFM. The caching threshold value is enabled when the ETERNUS DX is powered on or when the EXC function is enabled and after all the space in the PFM is used up for the first time. Staging data in the PFM becomes more frequent when this value is smaller. The settable range is 1 to 16. The default value is "5". If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

**Caution**

- Setting a value larger than the Initial Caching Threshold is recommended.
- This parameter cannot be specified if the EXC function is disabled.

*caching\_threshold* Caching threshold (1 - 16)

disable Data disposal is prohibited. The cached data in the PFM cannot be rewritten.

-monitoring-io

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the cache pages in the PFM that is used for read I/O and write I/O are counted up as the monitoring target. The default value is "read".

read Only the cache pages that are used for read I/O are monitored.

read-write The cache pages that are used for read I/O and write I/O are monitored.

-caching-priority

Optional. This parameter specifies the priority when staging to the EXC function.

When staging the information on the drive to the EXC function, conflicts may occur with host I/Os.

If the set value is large, the time until staging becomes short but the load on the drive increases. Because of that, there is a possibility of delays to the host I/O in the pool where the selected drive belongs.

In addition, if the set value is small, the time until staging becomes long but the load on the drive decreases.

The specifiable range is 1 to 10. The default value is 10. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

*caching\_priority* The priority when staging to the EXC function (1 to 10)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the EXC function (Read Cache) for the ETERNUS DX and sets all the PFM in the ETERNUS DX as Extreme Cache:

```
CLI> set extreme-cache -mode read-only -pfm-number all
```

The following example sets CE#1 PFM#6 and CE#1 PFM#7 as the Extreme Cache of CE#1:

```
CLI> set extreme-cache -owner 1 -pfm-number 16,17
```

## release extreme-cache

This command releases PFM s that are used as Extreme Cache (EXC).

---

### Caution

This command is not supported in the DX8100 S4.

---

### ■ Syntax

```
release extreme-cache {-owner {ce_numbers | all}}
```

### ■ Parameter

-owner      Optional. This parameter specifies the controller enclosure where PFM s are released. For the specified controller enclosure, the PFM s are released and the EXC capacity becomes zero. One or more controller enclosures can be specified. If "all" is specified, all the PFM s in the ETERNUS DX that are used as EXC are released.

*ce\_number*      Controller enclosure number  
                  For details, refer to "[Controller Enclosure Syntax \(page 25\)](#)".

  all      All the PFM s that are used as EXC in the ETERNUS DX are released.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases all the PFM s that are used as EXC in the ETERNUS DX.

```
CLI> release extreme-cache -owner all
```

## set volume-exc

This command enables or disables the Extreme Cache (EXC) function for each volume.

### Caution

- This command is not supported in the DX8100 S4.
- The EXC function is not used regardless of the setting of each volume when the EXC function is disabled for the ETER-NUS DX. Whether the EXC function is enabled for a volume can be checked by using the "-detail" parameter of the "show volumes" command.
- The EXC function is disabled for volumes when the volumes are moved to a RAID group or a TPP that consists of SSDs by RAID Migration. When volumes are moved from a RAID group or a TPP that consists of SSDs to a RAID group or a TPP that consists of disks, the EXC function is enabled for the volumes. When volumes are moved between RAID groups or TPPs that consist of disks, whether the EXC function is enabled or disabled remains unchanged for the volumes.
- The EXC function for FTVs is controlled by a software application (the EXC function is available for the FTV even if an FTRP contains an FTSP that consists of SSDs).

## ■ Syntax

```
set volume-exc {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_name | -all}  
-mode {enable | disable}
```

## ■ Parameter

-volume-number, -volume-name, or -all

This parameter specifies the volume that the setting is changed for. When the "-all" parameter is specified, the settings are changed for all of the volumes that the EXC function is available for.

### Caution

The "-all" parameter applies the change in settings to all of the Open volumes, Standard volumes, WSVs, and TPVs (this is not applicable to volumes that belong to a RAID group or TPP that consists of SSDs, and to TPVs enabled with Compression).

This parameter allows multiple volume numbers and a range of volume numbers to be specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

This parameter allows only a single volume name to be specified.

This parameter can be used for Open volumes, Standard volumes, WSVs, TPVs (not enabled with Compression), and DATA\_CNTNR Volumes that do not belong to RAID groups or TPPs that consist of SSDs. If a volume that cannot be set is specified for a volume number or a volume name, this command results in an error.

*volume\_numbers*      Volume number

*volume\_name*      Volume name

-all      All volumes

-mode This parameter specifies whether to enable the EXC function for the volume.

**Caution**

- The EXC function cannot be used regardless of its activation state in each volume if it is disabled for the ETERNUS DX.
- The EXC function is unavailable for External Volumes.

enable The EXC function is enabled.

disable The EXC function is disabled.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the EXC function for all of the volumes that are registered in the ETERNUS DX and can be applied to the EXC function:

```
CLI> set volume-exc -mode enable -all
```

The following example disables the EXC function for volumes 0, 2, 5, 9, 10, and 11:

```
CLI> set volume-exc -volume-number 0,2,5,9-11 -mode disable
```

## VVOL

The ETERNUS DX supports Virtual Volumes (VVOL) that are VMware vSphere specific logical volumes. VVOL configuration and management is performed from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser. In addition, ETERNUS VASA Provider (software for coordinating vCenter Server with the ETERNUS DX) is required on the storage management server.

CLI supports the commands for switching the VVOL mode, the operational commands of the VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV, and the VVOL Task operational commands of the CLI asynchronous command.

This section explains the commands that are related to the VVOL of the ETERNUS DX.

### Caution

- To use the VVOL related functions, the VVOL mode must be enabled using the "set vvol-mode" command.
- VVOLs are created in FTRPs. The VVOL volume type is FTV.
- For VVOL, additional information called VVOL management information (Metadata) is required. VVOL Metadata is automatically created in the VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV during a VVOL creation.
- Perform changes to the VVOL settings from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser. For operations other than activation of the VVOL function, do not change the settings from CLI.
- Normally, the VVOL function is enabled when configuring the VVOL access path from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser. After creating an FTRP, if a chunk size modification of the ETERNUS DX is performed together with a settings modification for the Thin Provisioning maximum pool capacity, even if a VVOL setting is performed from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser afterwards, the VVOL function does not become enabled. Before modifying the VVOL setting, enable the VVOL function by executing the "set vvol-mode" from CLI. For details on the chunk size, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Management" \(page 217\)](#).

```
CLI> set vvol-mode -mode enable
Since the maximum pool capacity was changed, a different chunk size has been applied to the newly created Flexible Tier Pools.
Please do not register Flexible Tier Pools with different chunk size to the same VVOL Datastore.
Enter "y" to continue. Enter "n" to discard this command.
```

- If multiple FTRPs are registered to the storage container (VVOL datastore), do not mix FTRPs that have different chunk sizes within the same storage container.

The commands that are used for VVOL control functions are shown below.

Function	Command used
Setting the VVOL mode (enable / disable)	set vvol-mode
Displaying the VVOL mode	show vvol-mode
Displaying VVOL information (The VVOL volume type is FTV.)	show volumes
Forcefully deleting VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs	delete flexible-tier-volume
Recreating deleted VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs	create flexible-tier-volume
Forcefully formatting VVOL Metadata exclusive FTVs	format flexible-tier-volume
Referencing the progress information of the VVOL task	show vvol-task

## show vvol-mode

This command shows the VVOL mode of the ETERNUS DX.

### ■ Syntax

```
show vvol-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Mode	Displays whether the VVOL function is enabled or disabled (Enable/Disable)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows that the VVOL mode of the ETERNUS DX is enabled:

```
CLI> show vvol-mode
Mode [Enable]
```

The following example shows that the VVOL mode of the ETERNUS DX is disabled:

```
CLI> show vvol-mode
Mode [Disable]
```

## set vvol-mode

This command sets whether the VVOL function of the ETERNUS DX is enabled or disabled.  
VVOL functions are automatically enabled when VVOL related configurations are set from the software.

### Caution

- To enable the VVOL function, the Thin Provisioning function must be enabled.
- If the VVOL function is changed from enabled to disabled, the ETERNUS DX must be rebooted.

## ■ Syntax

```
set vvol-mode -mode {enable | disable}
```

## ■ Parameter

-mode      This parameter specifies whether to enable the VVOL function.

### Caution

- When disabling the VVOL function, the following requirements must all be fulfilled.
  - VVOL does not exist
  - VVOL task does not exist
- If a Flexible Tier Pool that is set with a smaller chunk size than the default chunk size set in the ETERNUS DX exists, a confirmation message is displayed when the VVOL function is enabled.

enable      The VVOL function is enabled.

disable      The VVOL function is disabled.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the VVOL function:

```
CLI> set vvol-mode -mode enable
```

The following example shows an output when an attempt is made to enable the VVOL function while a Flexible Tier Pool that is set with a chunk size smaller than the default chunk size that is set in the ETERNUS DX exists:

```
CLI> set vvol-mode -mode enable
Since the maximum pool capacity was changed, a different chunk size has been applied to the newly created Flexible Tier Pools.
Please do not register Flexible Tier Pools with different chunk size to the same VVOL Datastore.
Enter "y" to continue. Enter "n" to discard this command.
```

## show vvol-task

This command collects and shows the progress information of the VVOL task. In addition, If the VVOL task state is Success or Error, that VVOL task is deleted.

### Note

- Information that corresponds to the following API is output.
  - If the "-task-guid" parameter is omitted  
getCurrentTask(), activateProviderEx()
  - If the "-task-guid" parameter is specified  
get TaskUpdate()
- If the process of the API is synchronous and the process of CLI is asynchronous, VASA uses this command and continues to poll until the VVOL Task state becomes Success or Error.
- Required information is determined by each API as "Result". The "Result" output of CLI is classified by "Result Type". If VVOL GUID and Snapshot Info are reported, "Result" is displayed regardless of the VVOL Task state. Other than that, "Result" is displayed only if the VVOL Task state is Success.
- Once this command reports the VVOL task state as Success or Error for the VVOL task, the VVOL Task information is deleted. To delete the VVOL Task, this command must be executed with the "-task-guid" parameter specified. However, the VVOL Task is automatically deleted the moment the VVOL Task state changes to Success or Error only if the VVOLs are deleted via the software. Using this command to collect the progress information is not necessary.
- The normal output result of the CLI asynchronous command is the same as the normal output of this command if the "-task-guid" parameter is specified.

## Syntax

```
show vvol-task [{-task-guid task_guid}]
```

## Parameter

**-task-guid** Optional. This parameter specifies the VVOL Task GUID for displaying information. Specify the VVOL task GUID with a 32-digit (hex) numerical value that excludes the hyphen (-). Only one VVOL Task GUID can be specified.  
If the specified VVOL Task state is Success or Error, that VVOL Task will be deleted. If omitted, VVOL Task information for all the currently executing tasks is displayed.

*task\_guid* VVOL Task GUID

## Output

Item name	Description
GUID	VVOL Task GUID
API Name	API name of the VVOL Task creation source
State	VVOL Task state (Error/Queued/Running/SUCCESS) When Error or Success is displayed for the VVOL Task, that VVOL Task is deleted. If Error or Success is not reported, the moment the progress information is collected, VVOL Tasks are not deleted. However, the VVOL Task is automatically deleted the moment the VVOL Task state changes to Success or Error only if the VVOLs are deleted via the software.
Error	Error that occurred in the VVOL Task. The reason is displayed in the error code.
Queued	The VVOL task has been put in queue.
Running	The VVOL task is running. The progress rate is shown in Progress. (0 to 100%)

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Volume Management > show vvol-task

Item name	Description
Success	The VVOL task finished.
Cancelable	Displays whether the VVOL Task can be canceled. If cancelable, the VVOL Task can be canceled with the "delete vvol-task" command.
True	Can be canceled.
False	Cannot be canceled.
Cancelled	Displays whether the VVOL Task cancellation was initiated with the "delete vvol-task" command.
True	Cancellation was initiated.
False	Cancellation was not initiated.
<b>Note</b>	
When the cancellation process is complete, the State becomes Success. If the VVOL Task is checked with this command, that VVOL task is deleted.	
Progress Update	Indicates whether the progress information can be collected.
Available	The progress information can be collected.
Not Available	The progress information cannot be collected.
Start Time	Start time of the VVOL Task
Estimate Time To Complete	Estimated time to complete the VVOL Task
Error Code	Error Code For states other than Error, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Progress(%)	Progress rate of the VVOL Task (unit: %) For states other than Running, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Host GUID	Displays the GUID of the host that created the VVOL Task. Displayed only if the VVOL Task was created by a policy other than Software Control. A hyphen (-) is displayed for the Software Control policy.
Volume Number	Volume number of the created volume. When API Name is "updateStorageProfileForVirtualVolume", this volume number is to be specified.
Volume GUID	GUID of the created volume. When API Name is "updateStorageProfileForVirtualVolume", this GUID is to be specified.
Chunk Size(KB)	Chunk size (unit: KB)
Unshared Chunks Count	Number of unshared chunks
Scanned Chunks	Number of scanned chunks
Snapshot Volume Number	Volume number of the volume created as the Snapshot destination
Snapshot Volume GUID	GUID of the volume created as the Snapshot destination
Parent Volume Number	Volume number of the Snapshot source volume
Parent Volume GUID	GUID of the Snapshot source volume

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show vvol-task

## ■ Example(s)

The following example shows VVOL Task information of the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> show vvol-task
<VVOL Task Information>
GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3301]
API Name [createVirtualVolume]
State [Running]
Cancelable [True]
Cancelled [False]
Progress Update [Available]
Start Time [2012-04-11 11:59:00]
Estimate Time To Complete [2012-04-11 12:00:00]
Error Code [-]
Progress(%) [60]
Host GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c213e]
<Result>
  Volume Number [2]
  Volume GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c330a]

<VVOL Task Information>
GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3302]
API Name [createVirtualVolume]
State [Success]
Cancelable [False]
Cancelled [False]
Progress Update [Available]
Start Time [2012-04-11 12:01:00]
Estimate Time To Complete [2012-04-11 12:01:30]
Error Code [-]
Progress(%) [-]
Host GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c213e]
<Result>
  Volume Number [3]
  Volume GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3309]

<VVOL Task Information>
GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3303]
API Name [createVirtualVolume]
State [Error]
Cancelable [False]
Cancelled [False]
Progress Update [Available]
Start Time [2012-04-11 12:00:00]
Estimate Time To Complete [2012-04-11 12:00:30]
Error Code [XXXX]
Progress(%) [-]
Host GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c213e]
<Result>
  Volume Number [4]
  Volume GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c330c]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Volume Management > show vvol-task

```
<VVOL Task Information>
GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3304]
API Name [unsharedChunksVirtualVolume]
State [Success]
Cancelable [True]
Cancelled [False]
Progress Update [Available]
Start Time [2012-04-11 12:01:00]
Estimate Time To Complete [2012-04-11 12:01:30]
Error Code [-]
Progress(%) [-]
Host GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c213e]
<Result>
    Chunk Size(KB) [102400]
    Unshared Chunks Count [26214400]
    Scanned Chunks [300]

<VVOL Task Information>
GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c1231]
API Name [prepareToSnapshotVirtualVolume]
State [Queued]
Cancelable [True]
Cancelled [False]
Progress Update [Available]
Start Time [2012-04-11 12:01:15]
Estimate Time To Complete [2012-04-11 12:10:00]
Error Code [-]
Progress(%) [-]
Host GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c213e]
<Result>
    Snapshot Volume Number [3]
    Snapshot Volume GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3303]
    Parent Volume Number [1]
    Parent Volume GUID [3f2504e04f8911d39a0c0305e82c3301]
```

## Thin Provisioning Pool Management

---

This section explains the commands used for the following settings:

- Thin Provisioning Pool settings
- Eco-mode settings

### Thin Provisioning Pool

---

This section explains the commands used for Thin Provisioning Pool management.

- Setting/releasing Thin Provisioning Pools
- Creating a Thin Provisioning Pool
- Changing an existing Thin Provisioning Pool
- Deleting Thin Provisioning Pools
- Expanding a Thin Provisioning Pool
- Formatting a Thin Provisioning Pool

#### ■ Overview of the Thin Provisioning Pool settings

The procedure for the Thin Provisioning Pool (TPP) settings is as follows:

#### Procedure ►►►

---

##### 1 Configuration settings

Before creating TPPs, the Thin Provisioning function should be enable to the system. Use the "set thin-provisioning" command to enable the function and use the "show thin-provisioning" command to confirm it.

###### Note

- When the Thin Provisioning function and Flexible Tier function are not being used, the Thin Provisioning function can be disabled. Use the "set thin-provisioning" command to disable the Thin Provisioning function.
- While VMware Virtual Volume (VVOL) is running, if the chunk size is changed at the same time the maximum pool capacity setting is changed, the following warning message related to VVOL is displayed. Check the content of the message and consider whether or not to continue the process.

```
CLI> set thin-provisioning -thin-pro enable -max-pool-capacity 128pb
By this setting change, a new chunk size will be applied to the newly created Flexible Tier Pools.
Please do not register Flexible Tier Pools with different chunk size to the same VVOL Datastore.
Enter "y" to continue. Enter "n" to discard this command.
```

## 2 TPP management

Use the "create thin-pro-pool" command to create a TPP.

Use the "show thin-pro-pools" command to confirm the creation of a TPP. After a TPP is created, use the "set thin-pro-pool" command to change the settings of a created TPP.

### Note

- A TPP can be deleted by using the "delete thin-pro-pool" command.
- The maximum number of pools is 256. However, a limit is applied by the maximum number of installed drives divided by two.
- The maximum number of pools is the maximum total number of TPPs and FTSPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX.

## 3 Expanding TPP

Use the "expand thin-pro-pool" command to expand a TPP area.

## 4 Thin Provisioning Volume (TPV) management

Prepare a TPP and a TPV. A TPV can be created from a TPP. A TPV can be created in the same way as a normal volume is created by using the "create volume" command.

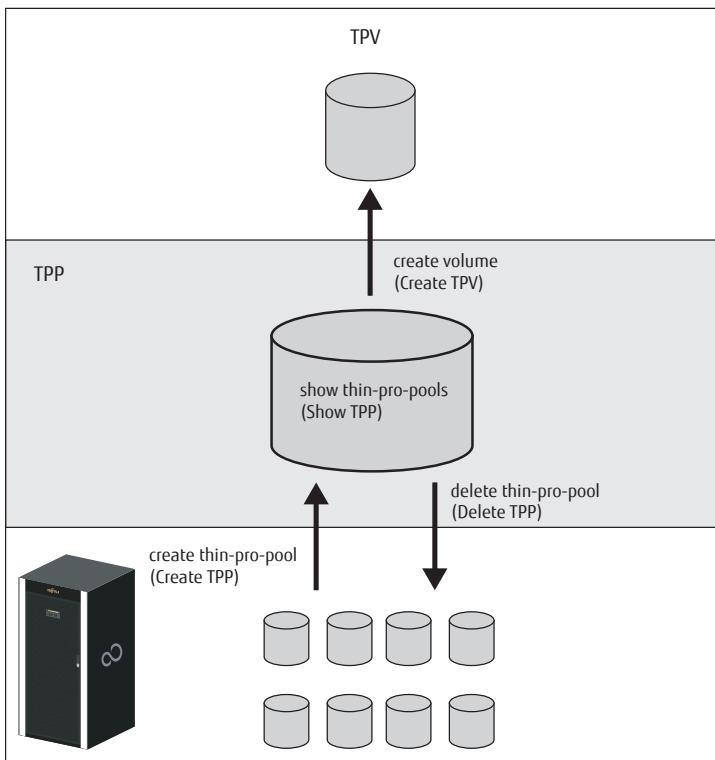
### Note

- The total logical capacity of the TPVs in all the TPPs must not exceed the maximum pool capacity of the ETERNUS DX.
- A TPV can be deleted by using the "delete volume" command.
- A TPV can be expanded by using the "expand volume" command.
- A TPV can be balanced by using the "start balancing-thin-pro-volume" command. If a TPV balancing is performed, a work volume that has the same capacity as the target TPV is temporarily created in the TPP to which the target TPV belongs. If the total logical capacity of the TPVs in all the TPPs, which includes this work volume, exceeds the maximum pool capacity, a TPV balancing cannot be performed. The work volume is deleted after the TPV balancing is complete.
- A volume can be migrated by using the "start migration" command.
- Different TPV management operations cannot be performed simultaneously for a single TPV.



The following figure shows the relationship between TPPs and TPVs:

Figure 1 Relationship between TPPs and TPVs



## ■ Chunk size

A physical capacity unit that is assigned to the logical volume that was created in the TPP and the FTRP the moment a Write I/O is accepted from the host.

The available chunk sizes are 21 MB, 42 MB, 84 MB, 168 MB, and 336 MB.

The chunk size is set according to the chunk size that is set in the ETERNUS DX when TPPs and FTRPs are created. If the Thin Provisioning function is enabled with the "set thin-provisioning" command, the chunk size of the ETERNUS DX is automatically determined according to the capacity specified for the "-max-pool-capacity" parameter (or the total capacity of the TPPs or FTSPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX).

If TPPs and FTRPs are created after the total capacity of TPPs and FTSPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX is expanded with the "set thin-provisioning" command, the chunk size may be different from the TPPs and FTRPs that were created before the expansion. As a result of that, TPPs and FTRPs with different chunk sizes are mixed within the ETERNUS DX.

The chunk size of a created TPP cannot be changed.

If TPPs and FTRPs that have different chunk sizes are mixed, creating TPPs and FTSPs with the same capacity as the total capacity of TPPs and FTSPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX is not possible.

The maximum capacity, the maximum number, and the chunk size of the TPP that can be registered in the ETERNUS DX are shown in the following table.

Details	Model
	DX8900 S4
TPP maximum pool capacity (*1) (Unit: PB)	128
Maximum number of TPPs (*2)	256
Chunk size of the TPP	21MB, 42MB, 84MB, 168MB, or 336MB

\*1: The maximum value of the total capacity of TPPs and FTRPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX.

\*2: The sum of the TPPs and FTSPs that can be created in the ETERNUS DX.

## ■ Pool capacities that can be created

Table 4 Maximum number and capacity of pools

Item	DX8900 S4
Maximum number of pools	256 (*1)
Maximum pool capacity	128PB (*2)

\*1: Total maximum number of TPPs and FTSPs.

\*2: Total maximum capacity of TPPs and FTSPs.

The following table shows the pool chunk size determined when TPPs are created.

Table 5 Chunk size based on the maximum pool capacity

Maximum pool capacity	Chunk size (*1)	
	Compression disabled	Compression enabled
8PB or less	21MB	21MB
128PB or less (*2)	336MB	21MB

\*1: Size into which data is divided. The chunk size is automatically determined based on the maximum pool capacity.

\*2: If the maximum pool capacity is set to 128PB, the chunk size can be manually set for new pools.

If the maximum pool capacity is set to 128PB and the chunk size is set to a size smaller than 336MB, the available capacity for new pools is decreased.

$$\text{Available capacity for new pools} = 128\text{PB} \times (\text{chunk size of pools} \div 336\text{MB})$$

Note that the maximum capacity of each pool is 48PB. For example, a pool capacity of 128PB is created with two 48PB pools and one 32PB pool, or any other combination of multiple pools.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-provisioning

## show thin-provisioning

This command displays information on whether the Thin Provisioning function is enabled and displays the maximum capacity of the pools that can be created in the ETERNUS DX.

### ■ Syntax

```
show thin-provisioning
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Thin provisioning	Displays the setting of the Thin Provisioning function (Enable or Disable).
Maximum pool capacity	Maximum pool capacity (Example: 512 TB, 128 PB) (If the Thin Provisioning function is disabled, a hyphen [-] is displayed.)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the case when the Thin Provisioning function is enabled:

```
CLI> show thin-provisioning
Thin provisioning      [Enable]
Maximum pool capacity [128 PB]
```

The following example displays the case when the Thin Provisioning function is disabled:

```
CLI> show thin-provisioning
Thin provisioning      [Disable]
Maximum pool capacity [-]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set thin-provisioning

## set thin-provisioning

This command enables or disables the Thin Provisioning function and sets the maximum capacity for pools that can be created in the ETERNUS DX.

### Caution

- A maximum pool capacity that exceeds the maximum physical capacity can be set. However, the upper limit of the physical capacity that is actually assigned is the maximum physical capacity of each model.
- Setting the maximum pool capacity to 2PB or more results in an error if drives are installed in a way in which backup area cannot be secured.
- The FTRP capacity that can be used for VMware Virtual Volume (VWOL) is different from the maximum pool capacity of Thin Provisioning.

### Syntax

```
set thin-provisioning [-thin-pro {enable | disable}]  
[-max-pool-capacity { 512tb | 1pb | 2pb | 4pb | 8pb | 128pb }]
```

### Parameter

**-thin-pro** Optional. This parameter specifies whether the Thin Provisioning function is enabled. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

### Caution

When the Thin Provisioning function or the Flexible Tier function is used, the "disable" option cannot be specified.

**enable** The Thin Provisioning function is used.

**disable** The Thin Provisioning function is not used.

**-max-pool-capacity**

Optional. However, if the "-thin-pro" parameter is changed from disable to enable, this parameter becomes required. This parameter specifies the maximum capacity of the pools (the total capacity of the TPPs and the FTSPs) that can be created in the ETERNUS DX. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

### Caution

- This parameter can only be specified when the Thin Provisioning function is used.
- The maximum capacity can only be expanded from the current maximum capacity.

**512tb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 512TB.

**1pb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 1PB.

**2pb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 2PB.

**4pb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 4PB.

**8pb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 8PB.

**128pb** The maximum pool capacity is set to 128PB.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set thin-provisioning

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the maximum pool capacity to 128PB:

```
CLI> set thin-provisioning -thin-pro enable -max-pool-capacity 128pb
```

The following example expands the maximum pool capacity which changes the current default chunk size of the ETERNUS DX with the VVOL mode enabled and the FTRP already created (and to prevent FTRPs with different chunk sizes from being registered in the same storage container (VVOL Datastore), a warning message is output):

```
CLI> set thin-provisioning -thin-pro enable -max-pool-capacity 128pb
By this setting change, a new default chunk size will be applied to the newly created Flexible Tier Pools if not specify the chunk size
explicitly. Please do not register Flexible Tier Pools with different chunk size to the same VVOL Datastore.
Enter "y" to continue. Enter "n" to discard this command.
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pools

## show thin-pro-pools

This command displays a summary list of all the Thin Provisioning Pools or the details of the specified Thin Provisioning Pool(s). If all the parameters are omitted, this command displays a summary of all the Thin Provisioning Pools. If both the "-sort" and "-order" parameters are omitted, this command displays the Thin Provisioning Pool information in ascending order of the Thin Provisioning Pool number.

### Syntax

```
show thin-pro-pools  
[-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_name] [-list | -detail | -csv]  
[-sort {pool-number | used-status | used-capacity | total-capacity | provisioned-rate}]  
[-order {ascending | descending}]
```

### Parameter

#### -pool-number or -pool-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#). If this parameter is omitted, a summary of all the Thin Provisioning Pools is displayed.

<i>pool_numbers</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool number
<i>pool_names</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool name

#### -list, -detail, or -csv

Optional. These parameters specify the output type. If omitted, a summary of the Thin Provisioning Pools is displayed.

-list	A summary is displayed.
-detail	The details are displayed.
-csv	The details are displayed in the csv format (excluding the RAID group list).

#### -sort

Optional. This parameter specifies the sorting method. If omitted, sorting is by the Thin Provisioning Pool number.

pool-number	Sorting is by the "Thin Pro No." value.
used-status	Sorting is by the "Used Status" value. For sorts in ascending order, the sorting is in the order of Warning, Attention, and Normal. For sorts in descending order, the sorting is in the order of Normal, Attention, and Warning.
used-capacity	Sorting is by the "Used Capacity" value.
total-capacity	Sorting is by the "Total Capacity" value.
provisioned-rate	Sorting is by the "Provisioned Rate" value.

#### -order

Optional. This parameter specifies the sorting order. If omitted, the sorting is in ascending order.

ascending	Sorting is performed in ascending order.
descending	Sorting is performed in descending order.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
<b>Pool Information</b>	Thin Provisioning Pool information
Thin Pro	Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers
No.	Thin Provisioning Pool number
Name	Thin Provisioning Pool name
Status	Thin Provisioning Pool status
Used status	Usage status of the Thin Provisioning Pool
Normal	The usage rate is below the Attention threshold.
Attention	The usage rate is greater than or equal to the Attention threshold and is below the Warning threshold.
Warning	The usage rate is greater than or equal to the Warning threshold.
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool
Used Rate(%)	Usage rate of the Thin Provisioning Pool (the ratio [%] of the capacity used in the TPP to the total capacity of the TPP)
Provisioned Capacity	Provisioning capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool (total logical capacity of the TPV that belongs to the TPP)
Provisioned Rate(%)	Provisioning rate of the Thin Provisioning Pool (ratio [%] of the total logical capacity of the TPVs that exist in the TPP to the total capacity of the TPP) (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the Compression setting of the Thin Provisioning Pool is enabled.)
Warning(%)	The warning level threshold (%) and the capacity to which the threshold is converted
Attention(%)	The attention level threshold (%) and the capacity to which the threshold is converted (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the monitoring is disabled for the attention level threshold [or the attention level threshold is 0].)
Compression	Status of the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool
Enable	The Compression function is enabled.
Disable	The Compression function is disabled.
Error	<p>The Compression function is enabled, but part of the function cannot be used.                      This item is displayed if the Compression setting cannot be changed or the DATA_CNTNR Volume cannot be formatted due to a hardware failure and the following Compression functions become unusable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "create", "delete", "expand", and "format" a volume enabled with Compression</li> <li>• Capacity expansion of the DATA_CNTNR Volume</li> <li>• Diagnosis of the DATA_CNTNR volume</li> </ul> <p>Check the status of the ETERNUS DX, resolve the cause of the failure, and then try again. If the Compression function fails to activate for the Thin Provisioning Pool, disable the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool and try again.</p>
-	The Compression mode setting is disabled for the ETERNUS DX.
Data Size Before Reduction	<p>Pre-reduction data size                      The size is displayed as the total pre-reduction data size of the volumes enabled with Compression that belong to the relevant Thin Provisioning Pool. It is displayed in two ways: the size in MB and the size rounded to the appropriate unit.                      (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled or "Error".)</p>
Data Size After Reduction	<p>Post-reduction data size                      The size is displayed as the total post-reduction data size of the volumes enabled with Compression that belong to the relevant Thin Provisioning Pool. It is displayed in two ways: the size in MB and the size rounded to the appropriate unit.                      (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled or "Error".)</p>

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pools

Item name	Description
Data Reduction Rate(%)	Size reduction rate (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled or "Error".)
GC Speed(MB/s)	Operating speed of the garbage collection (A hyphen [-] is displayed if the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled or "Error".)
Number of Volumes	Number of volumes that belong to the Thin Provisioning Pool
Encryption	Encryption state of the Thin Provisioning Pool
Enable	The encryption function is enabled.
Disable	The encryption function is disabled.
Disk attribute	Drive attribute that composes the Thin Provisioning Pool
Online	Online disk
Nearline	Nearline disk
SSD	SSD
Online SED	Online SED
Nearline SED	Nearline SED
SSD SED	Self-encrypting SSD
RAID Level	RAID level
RAID0	RAID0
RAID1	RAID1
RAID1+0	RAID1+0
RAID5	RAID5
RAID6	RAID6
RAID6-FR	RAID6-FR (Fast Recovery)
<b>RAID Group List</b>	List of RAID groups that comprises the Thin Provisioning Pool. This item is displayed when the "-detail" parameter is specified.
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Assigned CM	Assigned CM of the RAID group
Status	RAID group status
Total Capacity	Total capacity of RAID group
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the RAID group

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the Thin Provisioning Pools registered in the system:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools
Thin Pro Status Used Capacity Provisioned Compre- Number of
No. Name Status Status Total Used Rate(%) ssion Volumes
----- -----
0 TPP01 Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB 12 Disable 8
1 TPP02 Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
2 TPP03 Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
3 TPP04 Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pools

The following example displays the details of Thin Provisioning Pool #0:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools -detail -pool-number 0
<Pool Information>
Pool No. [0]
Pool Name [TPP001]
Status [Available]
Used Status [Normal]
Total Capacity [400.00 GB]
Used Capacity [10.00 GB]
Used Rate(%) [4]
Provisioned Capacity [32.00 GB]
Provisioned Rate(%) [-]
Warning(%) [90(245.24 GB)]
Attention(%) [75(204.37 GB)]
Compression [Enable]
Data Size Before Reduction [1.03 GB]
Data Size After Reduction [952.00 MB]
Data Reduction Rate(%) [10]
GC Speed(MB/s) [0]
Number of Volumes [8]
Encryption [Disable]
Chunk Size(MB) [21]
Disk Attribute [Online]
RAID Level [RAID1]
<RAID Group List>
  RAID Group      Assigned Status          Capacity
  No.   Name        CM           Status    Total(MB)  Used(MB)
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  0    TPP_0       CM#0       Available     279029      0
```

The following example displays a summary of all the Thin Provisioning Pools in descending order of the "Used Status" value:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools -sort used-status -order descending
Thin Pro Status Used Capacity Provisioned Compre- Number of
No. Name      Status Status Total Used Rate(%) ssion Volumes
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  9 TPP09     Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB 12 Disable 8
  3 TPP03     Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
  1 TPP01     Available Attention 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
  4 TPP04     Available Warning 400 GB 300.00 MB - Enable 8
```

The following example displays a summary of Thin Provisioning Pools #1, #2, and #4 in ascending order of the "Used Capacity" value:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools -pool-number 1,2,4 -sort used-capacity -order ascending
Thin Pro Status Used Capacity Provisioned Compre- Number of
No. Name      Status Status Total Used Rate(%) ssion Volumes
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  1 TPP01     Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB 29 Disable 8
  4 TPP04     Available Normal 400 GB 300.00 MB 29 Disable 8
  2 TPP02     Available Normal 400 GB 600.00 MB 57 Disable 8
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pools

The following example displays the details of Thin Provisioning Pools #0 and #5 in ascending order of the "Total Capacity" value:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools -detail -pool-number 0,5 -sort total-capacity
<Pool Information>
Pool No. [5]
Pool Name [TPP005]
Status [Available]
Used Status [Normal]
Total Capacity [400.00 GB]
Used Capacity [10.00 GB]
Used Rate(%) [4]
Provisioned Capacity [32.00 GB]
Provisioned Rate(%) [-]
Warning(%) [90(245.24 GB)]
Attention(%) [75(204.37 GB)]
Compression [Enable]
Data Size Before Reduction [1.03 GB]
Data Size After Reduction [952.00 MB]
Data Reduction Rate(%) [10]
GC Speed(MB/s) [0]
Number of Volumes [8]
Encryption [Disable]
Chunk Size(MB) [21]
Disk Attribute [Online]
RAID Level [RAID1]
<RAID Group List>
  RAID Group Assigned Status Capacity
  No.     Name      CM          Total (MB) Used (MB)
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
    0 TPP_0   CM#0    Available  279029       0

<Pool Information>
Pool No. [0]
Pool Name [TPP000]
Status [Available]
Used Status [Normal]
Total Capacity [500.00 GB]
Used Capacity [10.00 GB]
Used Rate(%) [2]
Provisioned Capacity [32.00 GB]
Provisioned Rate(%) [7]
Warning(%) [90(450.00 GB)]
Attention(%) [75(375.00 GB)]
Compression [Disable]
Data Size Before Reduction [-]
Data Size After Reduction [-]
Data Reduction Rate(%) [-]
GC Speed(MB/s) [-]
Number of Volumes [8]
Encryption [Disable]
Chunk Size(MB) [21]
Disk Attribute [Online]
RAID Level [RAID10]
<RAID Group List>
  RAID Group Assigned Status Capacity
  No.     Name      CM          Total (MB) Used (MB)
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
    4 TPP_4   CM#0    Available  512000       0
```

The following example specifies the "-csv" parameter to display the details (excluding the RAID group information) of Thin Provisioning Pools #1, #2, and #4 in ascending order of the "Used Capacity" value:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pools -pool-number 1,2,4 -sort used-capacity -order ascending -csv
[Pool No], [Pool Name], [Status], [Used Status], [Total Capacity(MB)], [Used Capacity(MB)], [Used Rate(%)], [Provisioned Capacity(MB)], [Provisioned Rate(%)], [Warning(%)], [Attention(%)], [Compression], [Data Size Before Reduction(MB)], [Data Size After Reduction(MB)], [Data Reduction Rate(%)], [GC Speed(MB/s)], [Number of Volumes], [Encryption], [Chunk Size(MB)], [Disk Attribute], [RAID Level]
1,TPP01,Available,Normal,279029,12000,5,139000,-,90,75,Enable,1058,952,10,0,8,Disable,21,Online,RAID1
4,TPP04,Available,Normal,279029,12000,5,139000,-,90,75,Enable,1058,952,10,0,8,Disable,21,Online,RAID1
2,TPP02,Available,Normal,279029,102400,37,139000,49,90,75,Disable,-,-,-,8,Disable,21,Online,RAID1
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pool-progress

## show thin-pro-pool-progress

This command displays the formatting progress of the Thin Provisioning Pool.

### Syntax

```
show thin-pro-pool-progress [-pool-number pool_numbers] [-pool-name pool_names]
```

### Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#). If the Thin Provisioning Pool identifier is omitted, a progress list of all the Thin Provisioning Pools is displayed.

*pool\_numbers*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_names*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

### Output

Item name	Description
Thin Pro	Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers
No	Thin Provisioning Pool number
Name	Thin Provisioning Pool name
Status	Thin Provisioning Pool status
Format	Information on the formatting progress
Progress	Progress status (0 – 100%)
Estimated time left	Estimated remaining formatting time
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
calculating	The remaining time is being calculated.
30days or more	The remaining time is 30 days or more.
Xday Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 30 days but 1 day or more.
Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 day but an hour or more.
Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 hour but 1 minute or more.
Less than 1min	The remaining time is less than a minute.
Remaining size	Remaining capacity for formatting
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
XMB	Remaining capacity (rounded up to the nearest whole number) X: decimal number

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show thin-pro-pool-progress

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the formatting progress for all the Thin Provisioning Pools:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pool-progress
Thin Pro      Status          Format
No. Name
----- -----
0 TPP001     Available       Progress 30% 30days or more
1 TPP002     Available       Progress 50% calculating
2 TPP003     Available       Progress 80% 01h 00min
                                         Estimated time left Remaining size
```

The following example displays only the progress status of Thin Provisioning Pool#1:

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pool-progress -pool-number 1
Thin Pro      Status          Format
No. Name
----- -----
0 TPP001     Available       Progress 30% 30days or more
                                         Estimated time left Remaining size
```

The following example displays the progress status of the Thin Provisioning Pools named "TPP001" and "TPP002":

```
CLI> show thin-pro-pool-progress -rg-name TPP001,TPP002
Thin Pro      Status          Format
No. Name
----- -----
0 TPP001     Available       Progress 30% 30days or more
1 TPP002     Available       Progress 50% calculating
                                         Estimated time left Remaining size
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > create thin-pro-pool

## create thin-pro-pool

This command creates a Thin Provisioning Pool with the specified Thin Provisioning Pool name, drive attribute, reliability, encryption, and a RAID group. The Compression function can also be enabled/disabled. The Thin Provisioning Pool is formatted automatically after it is created. When registering a hot spare, refer to the "["set global-spare"](#)" or the "["set dedicated-spare"](#)" command.

### Note

To expand the Thin Provisioning Pool that is created with this command, use the "expand thin-pro-pool" command.

## Syntax

```
create thin-pro-pool -name alias_name
-attribute {online | nearline | ssd | sed | online-sed | nearline-sed | ssd-sed}
-level {0 | 1 | 5 | 6 | 10 | 6fr} -rg-mode {auto | manual}
[-warning warning] [-attention attention]
[-capacity capacity] [-disks disks]
[-assigned-cm {cm_number | auto}]
[-encryption {enable | disable}] [-stripe-depth {64kb | 128kb | 256kb | 512kb | 1024kb}]
[-fr-consist {(4D+2P)x2+1HS | (6D+2P)x2+1HS | (8D+2P)x3+1HS | (4D+2P)x5+1HS}]
[-fr-mode {less-disks | prior-fr}] [-compression {enable | disable}]
[-chunk-size {21mb | 42mb | 84mb | 168mb | 336mb}]
```

## Parameter

-name This parameter specifies the alias name of a Thin Provisioning Pool. Only one name can be specified. For details, refer to "["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#)".

*alias\_name* Thin Provisioning Pool name

-attribute This parameter specifies the drive attribute of a Thin Provisioning Pool.

online Online disks

nearline Nearline disks

ssd SSDs  
The SSD type (SSD classification) cannot be specified.

sed SEDs

online-sed Online SEDs

nearline-sed Nearline SEDs

ssd-sed Self-encrypting SSDs  
The SSD type (SSD classification) cannot be specified.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Thin Provisioning Pool Management > create thin-pro-pool

-level	This parameter specifies the RAID level for the Thin Provisioning Pools that are created.
0	RAID0
1	RAID1
5	RAID5
6	RAID6
10	RAID1+0
6fr	RAID6-FR (Fast Recovery)
-rg-mode	This parameter specifies the method of selecting the drive when creating the new RAID group.
auto	The drive is automatically allocated. The capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool must be specified with the "-capacity" parameter.
manual	The drive is manually allocated. The drive is specified with the "-disks" parameter.
-warning	Optional. This parameter specifies the warning level of the Thin Provisioning Pool. The settable range is 5 – 99%. If this parameter is omitted, the default value (90%) is set. The warning level range should be equal to or higher than the "-attention" setting range.
warning	Warning level of the Thin Provisioning Pool
-attention	Optional. This parameter specifies the attention level of the Thin Provisioning Pool. The settable range is 0% or 5 – 80%. If "0" is specified, the monitoring function for the attention level is disabled. If this parameter is omitted, the default value (75%) is set. The attention level range should be equal to or lower than the "-warning" setting range.
attention	Attention level of the Thin Provisioning Pool
-capacity	Optional. This parameter specifies the capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool to be created. This parameter must be specified if "-rg-mode auto" is selected.
capacity	Thin Provisioning Pool capacity Example: 1tb, 900gb, and 900mb
-disks	Optional. This parameter specifies which drives are used to configure the RAID group. This parameter can only be specified when "-rg-mode manual" is selected. One or more drives can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to <a href="#">"Drive Syntax" (page 25)</a> .
disks	Drive
-assigned-cm	Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned controller for the specified RAID group. This parameter can only be specified when "-rg-mode manual" is selected. If "auto" is specified, the fixed controller, which is calculated automatically by the system, is assigned. If this parameter is omitted, "auto" mode is selected.
wx	CE#w-CM#x "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "x" is the controller module (CM) number. Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1 For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex). For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.
auto	Automatically (default)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > create thin-pro-pool

#### -encryption

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the encryption by a CM is performed. When "enable" is selected, the specified pool volume data is encrypted. If omitted, then it is handled as if "disable" is selected.

enable      The pool volume data is encrypted.

disable      The pool volume data is not encrypted.

#### -stripe-depth

Optional. This parameter specifies the stripe depth for the Thin Provisioning Pool that is to be created. If omitted, then it is handled as if "64kb" is selected. The available values vary depending on the RAID level and the number of drives. When "auto" is specified for the "-rg-mode" parameter, only "64kb" can be specified.

The available values for each RAID level are shown below.

RAID level	Configurable Stripe Depth
RAID1	-
RAID1+0, RAID0	64KB, 128KB, 256KB, 512KB, 1,024KB
RAID5(2+1) - RAID5(4+1)	64KB, 128KB, 256KB, 512KB
RAID5(5+1) - RAID5(8+1)	64KB, 128KB, 256KB
RAID5(12+1)	64KB, 128KB
RAID6	64KB
RAID6-FR	64KB

**-fr-consist** This parameter specifies the drive configuration of the Fast Recovery RAID group. This parameter must be specified when "6fr" is specified for the "-level" parameter and "manual" is specified for the "-rg-mode" parameter.

(4D+2P)x2+1HS      RAID6(4+2) × 2, HS × 1 (configured with 13 drives)

(6D+2P)x2+1HS      RAID6(6+2) × 2, HS × 1 (configured with 17 drives)

(8D+2P)x3+1HS      RAID6(8+2) × 3, HS × 1 (configured with 31 drives)

(4D+2P)x5+1HS      RAID6(4+2) × 5, HS × 1 (configured with 31 drives)

**-fr-mode** This parameter is specified for determining the Fast Recovery RAID group configuration by the ETERNUS DX. This parameter must be specified when "6fr" is specified for the "-level" parameter and "auto" is specified for the "-rg-mode" parameter.

less-disks      Priority is given to reducing the number of drives.

prior-fr      Priority is given to the Fast Recovery rebuild speed.

#### -compression

Optional. This parameter is specified to enable the Compression function for the Thin Provisioning Pool. When the Compression function is enabled for a Thin Provisioning Pool, volumes enabled with Compression can be created in that Thin Provisioning Pool. If this parameter is omitted, the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled.

This parameter can only be specified if the Compression mode setting is enabled.

If the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is enabled, the DATA\_CNTNR Volume is created in the specified Thin Provisioning Pool. For details on the Compression function, refer to "[Compression](#)" (page 246).

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > create thin-pro-pool

enable	A Thin Provisioning Pool is created with the Compression setting enabled.
disable	A Thin Provisioning Pool is created with the Compression setting disabled.
-chunk-size	Optional. This parameter specifies the chunk size of the Thin Provisioning Pool that is to be created. This parameter can be specified if the maximum pool capacity is set to "128PB". However, this parameter does not need to be specified for normal operations. If omitted, the recommended chunk size is set.
21mb	A Thin Provisioning Pool with a chunk size of 21MB is created. (Default for Thin Provisioning Pools created with a maximum pool capacity other than 128PB or Thin Provisioning Pools created with Compression enabled and a maximum pool capacity of 128PB)
42mb	A Thin Provisioning Pool with a chunk size of 42MB is created.
84mb	A Thin Provisioning Pool with a chunk size of 84MB is created.
168mb	A Thin Provisioning Pool with a chunk size of 168MB is created.
336mb	A Thin Provisioning Pool with a chunk size of 336MB is created. (Default for Thin Provisioning Pools created with Compression disabled and a maximum pool capacity of 128PB)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates a Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP001" that uses four online disks (#003 to #006):

```
CLI> create thin-pro-pool -name TPP001 -attribute online -encryption enable -level 0 -warning 90 -attention 80 -rg-mode manual -disks 003-006 -assigned-cm 00
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set thin-pro-pool

## set thin-pro-pool

This command changes the information of an existing Thin Provisioning Pool.

### Syntax

```
set thin-pro-pool { -pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name }
[-name name] [-warning warning] [-attention attention]
[-compression {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

#### -pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifier. Only one Thin Provisioning Pool identifier can be specified.

*pool\_number* Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name* Thin Provisioning Pool name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the new Thin Provisioning Pool name. If this parameter is omitted, the name is not changed. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26).

*name* Thin Provisioning Pool name

#### -warning

Optional. This parameter specifies the warning level of the Thin Provisioning Pool. The settable range is 5 – 99%. If this parameter is omitted, the warning level is not changed. The warning level range should be equal to or higher than the "-attention" setting range.

*warning* Warning level of the Thin Provisioning Pool

#### -attention

Optional. This parameter specifies the attention level of the Thin Provisioning Pool. The settable range is 5 – 80%. If "0" is specified, the monitoring function for the attention level is disabled. If this parameter is omitted, the attention level is not changed. The attention level range should be equal to or lower than the "-warning" setting range.

*attention* Attention level of the Thin Provisioning Pool

#### -compression

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool. If the Compression function is enabled, volumes enabled with Compression can be created in the Thin Provisioning Pool. If this parameter is omitted, the current setting of the Thin Provisioning Pool is not changed.

This parameter cannot be specified if the Compression mode setting is disabled.

If the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is enabled, the DATA\_CNTNR Volume is automatically created.

If the Compression function of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled, the DATA\_CNTNR Volume is automatically deleted.

*enable* The Compression setting of the Thin Provisioning Pool is enabled.

*disable* The Compression setting of the Thin Provisioning Pool is disabled.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set thin-pro-pool

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the Thin Provisioning Pool name from "TPP0001" to "TPP0010":

```
CLI> set thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP0001 -name TPP0010
```

The following example changes the attention to 60% and the warning to 80% for Thin Provisioning Pool #02:

```
CLI> set thin-pro-pool -pool-number 2 -attention 60 -warning 80
```

The following example enables the Compression setting of Thin Provisioning Pool #02:

```
CLI> set thin-pro-pool -pool-number 2 -compression enable
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > delete thin-pro-pool

## delete thin-pro-pool

This command deletes an existing Thin Provisioning Pool(s). A Thin Provisioning Pool cannot be deleted if one or more volumes exist in the pool. All volumes in the specified Thin Provisioning Pool must be deleted before the Thin Provisioning Pool is deleted. The DATA\_CNTNR Volume in a Thin Provisioning Pool enabled with Compression is deleted by disabling the Compression function for that Thin Provisioning Pool.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete thin-pro-pool {-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#).

<i>pool_numbers</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool number
<i>pool_names</i>	Thin Provisioning Pool name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes Thin Provisioning Pool #01:

```
CLI> delete thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01
```

The following example deletes the Thin Provisioning Pool named TPP05:

```
CLI> delete thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP05
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > expand thin-pro-pool

## expand thin-pro-pool

This command expands the capacity of an existing Thin Provisioning Pool with the specified drives and assigned CM. A Thin Provisioning Pool can be expanded by adding a new RAID group.

### Syntax

```
expand thin-pro-pool {-pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name} -rg-mode {auto|manual} [-disks disks]  
[-capacity capacity]  
[-assigned-cm {00 | 01 | 10 | 11 | 20 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 40 | 41 | 50 | 51 | 60 | 61 | 70 | 71 | 80 | 81 | 90 | 91 | a0 | a1 | b0  
| b1 | auto}]
```

### Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers.

Only one Thin Provisioning Pool identifier can be specified. For details, refer to "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax \(page 27\)](#)".

*pool\_number*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

-rg-mode This parameter specifies the method of selecting the drive when creating the new RAID group.

auto      The drive is automatically allocated. The capacity of the drive is specified with the "-capacity" parameter.

manual      The drive is manually allocated. The drive is specified with the "-disks" parameter.

-disks Optional. This parameter specifies which drives are used to configure the RAID group. This parameter can only be specified when "-rg-mode manual" is selected. One or more drives can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Drive Syntax \(page 25\)](#)". When "-disks" is specified, "-capacity" cannot be specified.

*disks*      Drive

-capacity Optional. This parameter specifies the capacity of the Thin Provisioning Pool to be expanded. This parameter can only be specified when "-rg-mode auto" is specified. The drive that corresponds to the capacity is automatically set. When "-capacity" is specified, "-disks" cannot be specified.

*capacity*      Thin Provisioning Pool capacity

Example: 1tb, 900gb, and 900mb

-assigned-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned controller (CM number) of the specified RAID group. This parameter can only be specified when "-rg-mode manual" is specified. If "auto" is specified, the fixed controller, which is calculated automatically by the system, is assigned. If omitted, the "auto" mode is set.

*wx*      CE#*w*-CM#*x* (DX8900 S4 only)

"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "x" is the controller module (CM) number.

Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

auto      Automatically (default)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > expand thin-pro-pool

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example expands Thin Provisioning Pool#01 by adding a RAID group (drives 001 to 004/CM#0):

```
CLI> expand thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01 -disks 001-004 -assigned-cm 01
```

The following example expands Thin Provisioning Pool#02 by adding a RAID group (capacity 900GB/CM#1):

```
CLI> expand thin-pro-pool -pool-number 02 -capacity 900gb -assigned-cm 11
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > format thin-pro-pool

## format thin-pro-pool

This command will format the Thin Provisioning Pool(s).

### Syntax

```
format thin-pro-pool {-pool-number pool_number | -pool-name pool_name} -mode {all | unformatted}
```

### Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax" \(page 27\)](#).

Example:

To format Thin Provisioning Pools #1 to #3, the pools can be specified as follows:

-pool-number 1,2,3

-pool-number 1-3

*pool\_number*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_name*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

-mode      This parameter specifies the range of the format.

all      All the areas are formatted (all of the data is deleted).

unformatted      Unformatted areas are formatted. When there are no unformatted areas, the command ends normally (no action from the command is performed).

#### Caution

When the "-mode all" parameter is specified to format all of the areas, all of the existing data is deleted. Normally, the "-mode unformatted" parameter is used to format only unformatted areas.

### Example(s)

The following example formats all the area of Thin Provisioning Pool#01:

```
CLI> format thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01 -mode all
```

The following example formats the unformatted area of the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP05":

```
CLI> format thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP05 -mode unformatted
```

## Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode Management

This section explains the commands that are related to the Eco-mode functions of a Thin Provisioning Pool. They are only applicable when the Eco-mode is enabled using the "set eco-mode" command.

The three steps involved in enabling the Eco-mode functions are as follows:

### Procedure ►►►

- 1 Enable the Eco-mode.
- 2 Create an Eco-mode schedule.
- 3 Assign the Eco-mode schedule to Thin Provisioning Pools.



For the Eco-mode and Eco-mode schedule settings, refer to ["Eco-mode Management" \(page 107\)](#).

### ■ Summary of Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode settings

Setting of the Thin Provisioning Pools (TPP) with Eco-mode is as follows:

### Procedure ►►►

- 1 Assign the Eco-mode to a TPP.

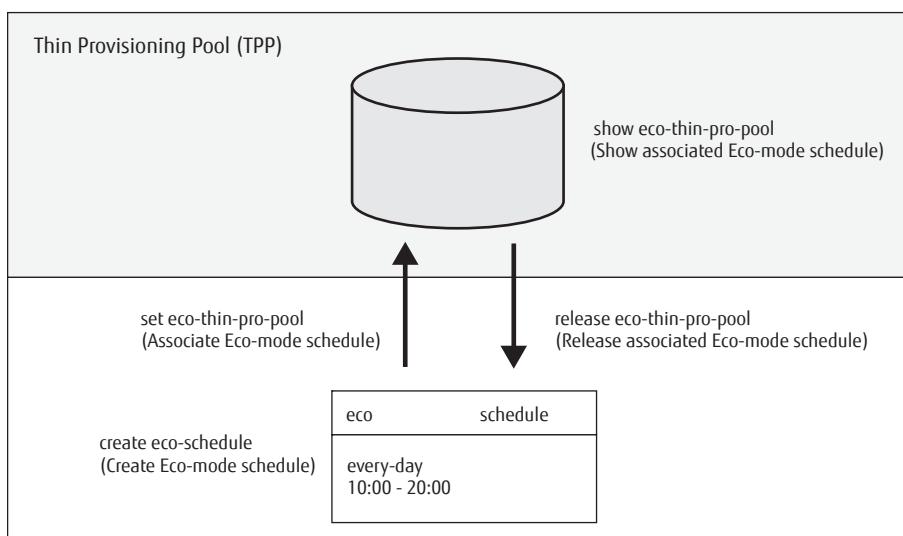
To assign an Eco-mode schedule to TPP, use the "set eco-thin-pro-pool" command.

To check the Eco-mode schedule, use the "show eco-thin-pro-pool" command. An Eco-mode schedule can be released from an assigned TPP by using the "release eco-thin-pro-pool" command.



The following figure shows Thin Provisioning Eco-mode setting management:

Figure 2 Overview of the Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode setting



### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > show eco-thin-pro-pool

## show eco-thin-pro-pool

This command displays the list of Eco-mode schedules that are associated with Thin Provisioning Pools.

### Syntax

```
show eco-thin-pro-pool
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Thin Pro	Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers
No.	Thin Provisioning Pool number
Name	Thin Provisioning Pool name
Disk attribute	Drive attribute that composes the Thin Provisioning Pool (Online / Nearline / Online SED / Nearline SED)
RAID Level	RAID level
Status	Thin Provisioning Pool status
ECO Schedule	Eco-mode schedule
Action	Eco-mode schedule action. This indicates whether the Eco-mode schedule has been associated.
No.	Eco-mode schedule number (In the case of a schedule by a cooperative software, [128] is displayed.)
Name	Eco-mode schedule name (In the case of a schedule by a cooperative software, [External] is displayed.)
Motor Status	Current status of drive motors
Control Status	Control status by a control command

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the Thin Provisioning Pools that have an Eco-mode schedule associated with them:

```
CLI> show eco-thin-pro-pool
Thin Pro      Disk          RAID       Status        ECO Schedule
No. Name      attribute    Level      Action        No. Name
----- ----- -----
 0 TPP        Nearline     RAID1     Available   Drive motor off  0 hoge
                                         Active
                                         [OFF]
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set eco-thin-pro-pool

## set eco-thin-pro-pool

This command is used to associate an Eco-mode schedule with a specified Thin Provisioning Pool(s). When registering an Eco-mode schedule, refer to the "[create eco-schedule](#)" command. Eco-mode cannot be used for Thin Provisioning Pool(s) that contain SSDs.

### ■ Syntax

```
set eco-thin-pro-pool {-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_names}  
[-schedule-number schedule_number | -schedule-name schedule_name]  
-action {enable | power-enable | disable}
```

### ■ Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. A Thin Provisioning Pool without any volumes cannot be specified. For details, refer to "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax](#)" (page 27).

*pool\_numbers*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_names*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

-schedule-number or -schedule-name

Optional. This parameter specifies an Eco-mode schedule identifier. Only one Eco-mode schedule identifier can be specified.

If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to "[Eco-mode Schedule Syntax](#)" (page 35).

*schedule\_number*      Eco-mode schedule number

*schedule\_name*      Eco-mode schedule name

-action      This parameter specifies whether the Eco-mode function is enabled.

enable      The motor is stopped

(When Eco-mode operation is enabled, other than the specified scheduled time period, the drive motor is stopped)

power-enable      The drives power is turned off

(When Eco-mode operation is enabled, other than the specified scheduled time period, the drives power is cut)

disable      Allows normal operation

(When Eco-mode operation is disabled, normal operations are allowed at all times regardless of the specified schedule)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > set eco-thin-pro-pool

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example associates the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001" with Thin Provisioning Pool#01:

```
CLI> set eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01 -schedule-name SC001 -action enable
```

The following example associates the Eco-mode schedule named "SC001" with Thin Provisioning Pools #01 - #05 at the same time:

```
CLI> set eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01-05 -schedule-name SC001 -action enable
```

The following example disables the Eco-mode function of the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP01":

```
CLI> set eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP01 -action disable
```

The following example associates Eco-mode schedule #1 with the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP001". The second command associates the Eco-mode schedule #2 with the same Thin Provisioning Pool. These executions result in Eco-mode schedule #1 being released:

```
CLI> set eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP001 -schedule-number 1 -action enable
CLI> set eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP001 -schedule-number 2 -action enable
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Thin Provisioning Pool Management > release eco-thin-pro-pool

## release eco-thin-pro-pool

This command releases the Eco-mode schedule that is associated with a specific Thin Provisioning Pool(s).

### ■ Syntax

```
release eco-thin-pro-pool {-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers. One or more Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax](#)" (page 27).

*pool\_numbers*      Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_names*      Thin Provisioning Pool name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases an Eco-mode schedule associated with the Thin Provisioning Pool named "TPP001":

```
CLI>release eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-name TPP01
```

The following example releases an Eco-mode schedule associated with Thin Provisioning Pools #01- #05 at the same time:

```
CLI>release eco-thin-pro-pool -pool-number 01-05
```

## Compression

This section describes the setting of the Compression function.

The Compression function is a function that compresses data in the TPP. Each TPP can be enabled or disabled with compression.

To use the Compression function, enabling the Compression function for the ETERNUS DX and the TPP, and creating a Thin Provisioning Volume for Compression (or Compression Volume) in the TPP is required.

For details, refer to ["Setting the Compression function" \(page 247\)](#).

### Caution

- This function is supported in the DX8900 S4.
- If the Compression function is used, a system memory of 768GB or more is required per controller enclosure.
- If the Compression mode setting of the ETERNUS DX is changed from "enable" to "disable", the ETERNUS DX must be rebooted. If the setting is changed from "disable" to "enable", rebooting the ETERNUS DX is not required.
- The Maintenance Operation policy is required for changing the Compression mode setting to "disable".
- Compression of the data is performed by the synchronization with the I/O from the server. Depending on the I/O environment, if the Compression function is enabled, the performance may degrade.
- If the I/O load is high, changing the setting of the Compression function one TPP at a time is recommended.
- If Compression Volumes (tpv) exist in a TPP, the Compression mode setting cannot be disabled.

### Note

- Specify whether to enable the Compression function for each TPV. Mixing TPVs that have the Compression function enabled (or Compression Volumes) and TPVs that have it disabled in a single TPP is supported.
- Use the RAID Migration function when enabling the Compression function for existing volumes. The RAID Migration function is also used when Compression Volumes are converted to existing volumes.
- If the copy source is a Compression Volume, the copy process is performed after the data is extended. If the copy destination is a Compression Volume, a compression is performed for the data that is transferred from the copy source. Because of that, the copy performance is affected.
- Specifying Compression Volumes in different TPPs for the copy source Compression Volume and the copy destination Compression Volume is recommended when a local copy is performed.
- When a remote copy is performed, uncompressed data is transferred to the copy destination.

Volumes that are used with the Compression function are shown below.

- **Compression Volume**  
Virtual volumes that are recognized from the server
- **Data storage area and mapping table (DATA\_CNTNR Volume)**  
Area for storing compressed data and for storing control information such as the update log information (journal). In addition, it is used for storing the table used to map the logical data that can be recognized from the server and the compressed data that is stored in the TPP.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display Compression

The commands that are used for operating the volumes are shown below.

Function	Command to use	Compression Volume	DATA_CNTNR Volume
Create	create volume	x	Automatic creation
Delete	delete volume delete all-volumes	x	Automatic deletion
Show	show volumes	x	x
Name change	set volume	x	-
Format	format volume	x	x
Eco-mode (pool specification)	set eco-thin-pro-pool	-	-
TPV capacity expansion	expand volume	x	x
Change various volume settings	set volume-parameters	-	-
RAID Migration	start migration	x	-
Balancing	start balancing-thin-pro-volume	-	-
TPV/FTV capacity optimization	start zero-reclamation	-	x
Advanced Copy Function (local copy)	start advanced-copy	x	-
Performance information acquisition	show performance	x	-
QoS	set volume-qos	x	-
Create ODX buffer volume	create odx-buffer-volume	-	-
Extreme Cache	create volume set volume-exc	-	x

x: Available, -: Unavailable

## ■ Setting the Compression function

The following procedure explains how to set the Compression function.

For information on how to operate the Thin Provisioning Pool, refer to "["Thin Provisioning Pool Management" \(page 217\)](#).

### Procedure ►►

#### 1 Setting the Compression mode of the ETERNUS DX

To use the Compression function, the Compression mode setting must be enabled in advance.

Use the "set data-reduction" command to enable the Compression mode setting. Use the "show data-reduction" command to check the setting.

#### 2 Setting the Thin Provisioning function

The Thin Provisioning function must be enabled before creating TPPs.

Use the "set thin-provisioning" command to enable the Thin Provisioning function. Use the "show thin-provisioning" command to check the setting.

#### Note

The maximum capacity (-max-pool-capacity) of the pool that can be created in the ETERNUS DX is the maximum value set for each ETERNUS DX. This maximum capacity includes Data Container Volumes (DATA\_CNTNR Volumes) in [Step 3](#). Compression Volumes (tpv) are not included.

### 3 Creating TPPs and setting the Compression function

The following two methods are available to set the Compression function for TPPs.

- Perform the Compression setting during a TPP creation. (Recommended)
- Perform the Compression setting after a TPP creation.

#### ● When performing the Compression setting during a TPP creation (Recommended)

- 1 Create a TPP enabled with Compression using the "-compression enable" parameter of the "create thin-pro-pool" command.
- 2 Check the TPP state by using the "show thin-pro-pools" command.

#### ● When performing the Compression setting after a TPP creation

- 1 Create a TPP by using the "create thin-pro-pool" command.  
At this point, the number of RAID groups that configure the pool is one.
- 2 Enable the Compression function by using the "-compression enable" parameter of the "set thin-pro-pool" command.
- 3 Check the TPP state by using the "show thin-pro-pools" command.

---

#### Note

- The Data Container Volume (DATA\_CNTNR Volume) is automatically created in TPPs that are enabled with the Compression setting.
  - \$DATA\_CNTNR $X$  ( $X$  indicates a number)  
One DATA\_CNTNR Volume is created.
- If the Compression function is changed to disable using the "-compression" parameter of the "set thin-pro-pool" command, the DATA\_CNTNR Volume in the target TPP is deleted.
- For information about the capacities of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, and about the maximum number of TPPs that can have the Compression setting, refer to ["Specifications of the Compression function" \(page 249\)](#).

---

### 4 Capacity expansion of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume

Before creating the Compression Volume (tpv), expand the capacity of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume as required. The capacity of DATA\_CNTNR Volumes can be expanded to 48PB.

Use the "expand volume" command to expand the DATA\_CNTNR Volume area. Use the "show volumes" command to check the expansion.

---

#### Note

In order to prevent the capacity of the Compression Volume from exceeding the corresponding maximum capacity (48PB) of the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, migrate the Compression Volume in the TPP to a non-Compression Volume or to a separate TPP by using RAID Migration.

---

### 5 Compression Volume (tpv) creation

Create a Compression Volume (tpv) in the TPP where the Compression setting was enabled in [Step 3](#).

Create the Compression Volume (tpv) by using the "-type tpv" parameter of the "create volume" command. Use the "show volumes" command to check the created volume. Note that the Compression function cannot be changed to enable/disable with the "set volume" command.



## ■ Changing existing volumes to Compression Volumes

Non-target volumes (TPV) of the Compression function can be changed to target volumes (Compression Volume [tpv]). In addition, target volumes (tpv) can be changed to non-target volumes (TPV).

Change the non-target volume of the Compression function to a target volume (Compression Volume [tpv]) by using the "start migration" command.

## ■ Specifications of the Compression function

The specifications of the Compression function are shown below.

Model name	DX8900 S4	
Number of TPPs that can be created with the Compression function enabled (per storage system)	8	
Logical capacity of the DATA_CNTNR Volume (per pool)	default	32TB
	maximum	48PB

In the DATA\_CNTNR Volume, the control information is written separately from the compressed data. The physical capacity used for the control information is the sum of a fixed capacity up to 4GB and a variable capacity (1% to 15%) that is determined based on the amount of data written from the servers.

## Flexible Tier Management

---

This section describes the commands that are related to the Flexible Tier function.

---

### Note

Perform operations for Flexible Tier (or Automated Storage Tiering) with ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser. For information on how to operate automated storage tiering, refer to "FUJITSU Storage ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide for Optimization Function". If Flexible Tier is set (changed/deleted) with CLI, a status update operation from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser is required.

---

The Flexible Tier control functions are as follows:

- Deleting the FTRP
- Changing the existing FTSP
- Deleting the RAID group registered in the FTRP
- Checking the FTRPE migration (incomplete migration)
- Checking the Flexible Tier Pool balancing
- Starting the Flexible Tier Pool balancing (FTRP specification)
- Stopping the Flexible Tier Pool balancing

## Flexible Tier Pool

---

This section explains the commands that are related to the management of Flexible Tier Pools (FTRP).

- Deleting FTRPs
- Changing an existing Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP)

For details about Flexible Tier Volume (FTV) management, refer to ["Flexible Tier Volumes" \(page 180\)](#).

## show flexible-tier-mode

This command displays the setting status of the Flexible Tier function.

### ■ Syntax

```
show flexible-tier-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Mode	Indicates whether the Flexible Tier function is enabled (Enable/Disable).

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the setting status of the Flexible Tier function:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-mode
Flexible Tier Mode [Disable]

CLI> show flexible-tier-mode
Flexible Tier Mode [Enable]
```

## show flexible-tier-pools

This command displays an overview list of Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX and detailed information for a specified FTRP. When the FTRP number or the FTRP name is specified, information is displayed for the specified FTRP and the Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP) that are registered in the specified FTRP. When the FTRP number or the FTRP name is omitted, a list of the FTRPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

### Syntax

```
show flexible-tier-pools [-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name]
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the FTRP identifier to display detailed information for. Multiple parameters can be selected in a single command.

If omitted, a list of all the FTRPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

<i>ftrp_number</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_name</i>	FTRP name

### Output

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Pool	FTRP identifiers
No.	FTRP number
Name	FTRP name
Status	FTRP status
Used Status	Usage status of the FTRP
Normal	The usage rate is below the Attention threshold.
Attention	The usage rate is greater than or equal to the Attention threshold and is below the Warning threshold.
Warning	The usage rate is greater than or equal to the Warning threshold.
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the FTRP. If the parameter is omitted, the capacity is displayed to the hundredths place of the appropriate unit. If the parameter is specified, the capacity is displayed in MB.
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the FTRP. If the parameter is omitted, the capacity is displayed to the hundredths place of the appropriate unit. If the parameter is specified, the capacity is displayed in MB.
Used Rate	Usage rate of the FTRP
Provisioned Capacity	Provisioned capacity of the FTRP (total logical capacity of the FTVs that belong to the FTRP). If the parameter is omitted, the capacity is displayed to the hundredths place of the appropriate unit. If the parameter is specified, the capacity is displayed in MB.
Provisioned Rate	Provisioned rate of the FTRP

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-pools

The following items are displayed when the "-ftrp-number" parameter or the "-ftrp-name" parameter is specified.

Item name	Description
Warning(%)	The warning level threshold (%) and the capacity to which the threshold is converted
Attention(%)	The attention level threshold (%) and the capacity to which the threshold is converted
Encryption	Encryption status (Enable / Disable)
Chunk Size	Chunk size of the FTRP
Shrinking	Execution status of the FTRP shrinking
Executing	An FTRP shrinking is currently running
Error	Error during the FTRP shrinking If an "Error" occurs, stop the process of the FTRP shrinking using the "stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command.
-	An FTRP shrinking is not currently running
Flexible Tier Sub Pool	FTSP identifiers
No.	FTSP number
Name	FTSP name
Disk Attribute	Drive attribute that composes the FTSP (Online / Nearline / SSD / Online SED / Nearline SED / SSD SED)
RAID Level	RAID level that is used for creating the FTSP
RAID0	RAID0
RAID1	RAID1
RAID1+0	RAID1+0
RAID5	RAID5
RAID6	RAID6
RAID6-FR	RAID6-FR (Fast Recovery)
Status	FTSP status
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the FTSP The capacity is displayed in MB.
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the FTSP The capacity is displayed in MB.
Shrinking	Execution status of the FTRP shrinking
Executing	An FTRP shrinking is currently running
Error	Error during the FTRP shrinking If an "Error" occurs, stop the process of the FTRP shrinking using the "stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command.
-	An FTRP shrinking is not currently running

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-pools

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays an overview list of the FTRPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pools
Flexible Tier Pool    Status      Used      Total      Used      Provisioned
No. Name             Status      Capacity   Capacity   Rate(%)  Capacity   Rate(%)
----- ----- ----- ----- ----- -----
 0 FTRP_NAME#0     Available   Normal    20.02 GB  1.03 GB   20       4.02 GB   20
```

The following example displays the detailed information of an FTRP that is named "FTRP001":

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pools -ftrp-name FTRP001
Flexible Tier Pool    Status      Used      Total      Used      Provisioned      Warning(%)      Attention(%)      Encryp-      Chunk      Shrinking
No. Name             Status      Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB) Rate(%) Capacity(MB) Rate(%)          (%)           (%)          tion        Size(MB)
----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- -----
 1 FTRP001          Available   Normal    20480     4096     20       4096     20         90 (18.00 GB)  75 (15.00 GB) Disable      21 -
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Disk      RAID      Status      Capacity(MB)      Shrinking
No. Name             Attribute  Level      Total      Used
----- -----
 1 FTSP_NAME#1       Nearline  RAID1     Available   20480     4096 -
```

The following example displays detailed information for FTRP#00:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pools -ftrp-number 0
Flexible Tier Pool    Status      Used      Total      Used      Provisioned      Warning(%)      Attention(%)      Encryp-      Chunk      Shrinking
No. Name             Status      Capacity(MB) Capacity(MB) Rate(%) Capacity(MB) Rate(%)          (%)           (%)          tion        Size(MB)
----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- -----
 0 FTRP_NAME#0     Available   Normal    20480     4096     20       4096     20         90 (18.00 GB)  75 (15.00 GB) Disable      21 -
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Disk      RAID      Status      Capacity(MB)      Shrinking
No. Name             Attribute  Level      Total      Used
----- -----
 0 FTSP_NAME#0       Nearline  RAID1     Available   20480     4096 -
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-pool-progress

## show flexible-tier-pool-progress

This command displays the progress rate of formatting Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX. When the FTRP number or the FTRP name is specified, the progress rates for the specified FTRPs are displayed. Note that the progress rate is not displayed when a specified FTRP is not being formatted. When the FTRP number or the FTRP name is omitted, a list of the progress rates for the FTRPs being formatted that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

### Syntax

```
show flexible-tier-pool-progress [-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name]
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the FTRP identifier to display detailed information for. Multiple parameters can be selected in a single command.

If omitted, a list of all the FTRPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX and that are being formatted is displayed.

<i>ftrp_number</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_name</i>	FTRP name

### Output

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Pool No	FTRP identifier
No	FTRP number
Name	FTRP name
Status	FTRP status
Flexible Tier Sub Pool	FTSP identifier
No	FTSP number
Name	FTSP name
Status	FTSP status
Formatting	Information on the formatting progress
Progress	Progress status (0 – 100%)
Estimated time left	Estimated remaining formatting time
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
calculating	The remaining time is being calculated.
30days or more	The remaining time is 30 days or more.
Xday Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 30 days but 1 day or more.
Yh Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 day but 1 hour or more.
Zmin	The remaining time is less than 1 hour but 1 minute or more.
Less than 1min	The remaining time is less than 1 minute.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-pool-progress

Item name	Description
Remaining size	Remaining capacity of a formatting
-	Formatting is not performed or is complete.
XMB	Remaining capacity X: decimal number

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the Flexible Tier Pools that are being formatted:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pool-progress
Flexible Tier Pool      Status
No. Name
-----
0 FTRP000      Available
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status      Format
No. Name          Progress   Estimated time left  Remaining size
-----
0 FTSP0000      Available     84%    30min           1MB
1 FTSP0001      Available     20%    calculating      512MB

Flexible Tier Pool      Status
No. Name
-----
3 FTRP003      Available
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status      Format
No. Name          Progress   Estimated time left  Remaining size
-----
16 FTSP0016     Available     99%    Less than 1min  32MB
```

The following example displays the progress rate of formatting for an FTRP that is named "FTRP001":

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pool-progress -ftrp-name FTRP001
Flexible Tier Pool      Status
No. Name
-----
1 FTRP001      Available
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status      Format
No. Name          Progress   Estimated time left  Remaining size
-----
4 FTSP0004      Available     50%    calculating      512MB
```

The following example displays the progress rate of formatting for FTRP#00 and FTRP#02:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-pool-progress -ftrp-number 0,2
Flexible Tier Pool      Status
No. Name
-----
0 FTRP000      Available
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status      Format
No. Name          Progress   Estimated time left  Remaining size
-----
0 FTSP0000      Available     84%    01day 23h 59min  128MB
1 FTSP0001      Available     20%    23h 00min       1024MB

Flexible Tier Pool      Status
No. Name
-----
2 FTRP002      Available
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status      Format
No. Name          Progress   Estimated time left  Remaining size
-----
17 FTSP0017     Available     99%    05min           99MB
18 FTSP0018     Available     10%    01h 01min       256MB
19 FTSP0019     Available     0%    calculating      134217728MB
```

## delete flexible-tier-pool

This command deletes the Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX. All Flexible Tier Sub Pools (FTSPs) in the target FTRPs are also deleted. If a volume is registered in the specified FTRP, the FTRP cannot be deleted.

### Caution

Delete all volumes in the target FTRP before deleting the FTRP.

### Syntax

```
delete flexible-tier-pool {-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name}
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP identifiers that are to be deleted. Multiple FTRPs can be deleted in a single command.

<i>ftrp_number</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_name</i>	FTRP name

### Example(s)

The following example deletes FTRP#01:

```
CLI> delete flexible-tier-pool -ftrp-number 01
```

The following example deletes an FTRP that is named "FTRP05":

```
CLI> delete flexible-tier-pool -ftrp-name FTRP05
```

## show flexible-tier-sub-pools

This command displays an overview list of the Flexible Tier Sub Pools (FTSPs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX and detailed information for a specified FTSP. When the FTSP number or the FTSP name is specified, information on the specified FTSP and the RAID group (RLU) that are registered in the specified FTSP is displayed. When the FTSP number or the FTSP name is omitted, a list of the FTSPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

### Syntax

```
show flexible-tier-sub-pools [-ftsp-number ftsp_number] [-ftsp-name ftsp_name]
```

### Parameter

-ftsp-number or -ftsp-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the FTSP identifier to display detailed information for. Multiple parameters can be selected in a single command.

If omitted, a list of all the FTSPs that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

<i>ftsp_number</i>	FTSP number
<i>ftsp_name</i>	FTSP name

### Output

- When the parameter is omitted.

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Sub Pool	FTSP identifiers
No.	FTSP number
Name	FTSP name
Flexible Tier Pool	Assigned FTRP identifiers
No.	Assigned FTRP number
Name	Assigned FTRP name
Disk attribute	Drive attribute that composes the FTSP
Online	Online drive
Nearline	Nearline drive
SSD	SSD
Online SED	Self-encrypting Online drive
Nearline SED	Self-encrypting Nearline drive
SSD SED	Self-encrypting SSD
RAID Level	RAID level
RAID0	RAID0
RAID1	RAID1
RAID1+0	RAID1+0
RAID5	RAID5
RAID6	RAID6
RAID6-FR	RAID6-FR (Fast Recovery)
Status	FTSP status

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-sub-pools

Item name	Description
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the FTSP If both the "-ftsp-number" parameter and the "-ftsp-name" parameter are omitted, the capacity is displayed to the hundredths place of the appropriate unit. If the "-ftsp-number" parameter or the "-ftsp-name" parameter is specified, the capacity is displayed in MB.
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the FTSP If both the "-ftsp-number" parameter and the "-ftsp-name" parameter are omitted, the capacity is displayed to the hundredths place of the appropriate unit. If the "-ftsp-number" parameter or the "-ftsp-name" parameter is specified, the capacity is displayed in MB.
Shrinking	Execution status of the FTRP shrinking
Executing	An FTRP shrinking is currently running.
Error	Error during the FTRP shrinking If an "Error" occurs, stop the process of the FTRP shrinking using the "stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command.
-	An FTRP shrinking is not currently running.

- When the parameter is specified.

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Sub Pool	FTSP identifiers
No.	FTSP number
Name	FTSP name
Flexible Tier Pool	Assigned FTRP identifiers
No.	Assigned FTRP number
Name	Assigned FTRP name
Disk Attribute	Drive attribute that composes the FTSP (Online / Nearline / SSD / Online SED / Nearline SED / SSD SED)
RAID Level	RAID level
Status	FTSP status
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the FTSP
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the FTSP
Shrinking	Execution status of the FTRP shrinking
Executing	An FTRP shrinking is currently running.
Error	Error during the FTRP shrinking If an "Error" occurs, stop the process of the FTRP shrinking using the "stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command.
-	An FTRP shrinking is not currently running.
Raid Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
RAID Level	RAID level
Consist of Fast Recovery	Drive configuration of the Fast Recovery RAID group (This information is displayed when the RAID level is RAID6-FR. For other RAID levels, a hyphen [-] is displayed.) Shows the RAID6 drive configurations, number of units, and number of hot spares. Example: (4D+2P)x2+1HS
Assigned CM	Assigned CM
Status	RAID group status
Total Capacity	Total capacity of the RAID group

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-sub-pools

Item name	Description
Used Capacity	Used capacity of the RAID group
Stripe Depth	Stripe depth
Fast Recovery Disk	Fast Recovery drive
Deleting	Execution status of the RAID group deletion process due to the process of the FTRP shrinking
Executing	Deletion processing of a RAID group and an executing data migration due to the deletion process of the RAID group.
Error	Error during the deletion process of the RAID group If an "Error" occurs, stop the process of the FTRP shrinking using the "stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command.
-	A deletion process of the RAID group is not currently running.

## Example(s)

The following example displays an overview list of the Flexible Tier Sub Pools that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-sub-pools
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Flexible Tier Pool Disk RAID Status Total Used Shrinking
No. Name No. Name Attribute Level
----- -----
0 FTSP0000 0 FTRP000 Online RAID1+0 Available 1.25 GB 0.00 MB -
10 FTSP0010 0 FTRP000 Nearline RAID5 Available 250.00 GB 25.00 MB -
53 FTSP0053 0 FTRP000 SSD RAID6 Available 500.00 GB 64.00 MB -
55 FTSP0055 0 FTRP000 Nearline SED RAID6 Available 500.00 GB 64.00 MB Executing
```

The following example displays detailed information for an FTSP that is named "FTSP0000":

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-sub-pools -ftsp-name FTSP0000
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Flexible Tier Pool Disk RAID Status Capacity (MB) Shrinking
No. Name No. Name Attribute Level Total Used
----- -----
0 FTSP0000 0 FTRP_NAME#0 Nearline RAID1 Available 10240 5120 -
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group RAID Consist of Assigned Status Capacity (MB) Stripe Fast Recovery Deleting
No. Name Level Fast Recovery CM Total Used Depth Disk
----- -----
4 RG_NAME#0 RAID1 - CM#0 Available 102400 10240 - - -
```

The following example displays detailed information for an FTSP that is named "FTSP0000" (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-sub-pools -ftsp-name FTSP0000
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Flexible Tier Pool Disk RAID Status Capacity (MB) Shrinking
No. Name No. Name Attribute Level Total Used
----- -----
0 FTSP0000 0 FTRP_NAME#0 Nearline RAID1 Available 10240 5120 -
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group RAID Consist of Assigned Status Capacity (MB) Stripe Fast Recovery Deleting
No. Name Level Fast Recovery CM Total Used Depth Disk
----- -----
4 RG_NAME#0 RAID1 - CE#1 CM#0 Available 102400 10240 - - -
```

The following example displays detailed information for FTSP#10:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-sub-pools -ftsp-number 10
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Flexible Tier Pool Disk RAID Status Capacity (MB) Shrinking
No. Name No. Name Attribute Level Total Used
----- -----
10 FTSP0010 0 FTRP_NAME#0 Nearline RAID0 Available 10240 5120 -
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group RAID Consist of Assigned Status Capacity (MB) Stripe Fast Recovery Deleting
No. Name Level Fast Recovery CM Total Used Depth Disk
----- -----
4 RG_NAME#4 RAID1 - CM#0 Available 102400 10240 - - -
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show flexible-tier-sub-pools

The following example displays detailed information for a RAID6-FR RAID group:

```
CLI> show flexible-tier-sub-pools -ftsp-number 1
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Flexible Tier Pool Disk RAID Status Capacity(MB) Shrinking
No. Name No. Name Attribute Level Total Used
----- -----
1 FTSP0001 0 FTRP_NAME#0 Nearline RAID6-FR Available 10240 5120 Error
<RAID Group List>
RAID Group RAID Consist of Assigned Status Capacity(MB) Stripe Fast Recovery Deleting
No. Name Level Fast Recovery CM Total Used Depth Disk
----- -----
4 RG_NAME#4 RAID6-FR (3D+2P)x2+1HS CM#0 Partially Exposed Rebuild(Fast) 102400 10240 64 KB DE#01-Disk#5 Error
```

## set flexible-tier-sub-pool

This command changes the information for the Flexible Tier Sub Pools (FTSPs) that are already registered in the ETERNUS DX.

### Syntax

```
set flexible-tier-sub-pool {-ftsp-number ftsp_number | -ftsp-name ftsp_name}  
[-assigned-cm {0 | 1 | 00 | 01 | 10 | 11 | 20 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 40 | 41 | 50 | 51 | 60 | 61 | 70 | 71 | 80 | 81 | 90 | 91 | a0 |  
a1 | b0 | b1 | auto}]
```

### Parameter

#### -ftsp-number or -ftsp-name

This parameter specifies the FTSP identifier. Only one FTSP identifier can be specified in a single command.

<i>ftsp_number</i>	FTSP number
<i>ftsp_name</i>	FTSP name

#### -assigned-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned CM for the RAID group that is added to the target FTSP. When "auto" is specified, the assigned CM is automatically determined by the ETERNUS DX. If omitted, the assigned CM is not changed.

0	CM#0 (DX8100 S4 only)
1	CM#1 (DX8100 S4 only)
<i>wx</i>	CE# <i>w</i> -CM# <i>x</i> (DX8900 S4 only) " <i>w</i> " is the controller enclosure (CE) number and " <i>x</i> " is the controller module (CM) number. Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1 For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex). For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.
auto	Automatically (default)

### Example(s)

The following example automatically sets the assigned CM for FTSP0001:

```
CLI> set flexible-tier-sub-pool -ftsp-name FTSP0001 -assigned-cm auto
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool

## stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool

This command stops the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking that is started with the "start shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command. With this command, the deletion process of the RAID group that is scheduled for deletion with the "start shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command is stopped.

### Caution

The Maintenance Operation policy is required for executing the "start shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command. The "start shrinking-flexible-tier-pool" command is a function that deletes specific RAID groups selected from the RAID groups that are registered in the FTRP.

### Note

- If the FTSP is deleted or there is a change in the priority allocated FTSP of the FTV by executing Flexible Tier Pool shrinking, their respective processes are stopped.
- If executing Flexible Tier Pool shrinking causes an error during the deletion process of the RAID group, this command must be used to stop the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking.

## Syntax

```
stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name}
```

## Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifier to stop the deletion process. Only one RAID group identifier can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax \(page 29\)](#)".

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

## Example(s)

The following example stops the deletion process of RAID group #0 that makes up the FTRP:

```
CLI> stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool -rg-number 0
```

The following example stops the deletion process of RAID group RAID0 that makes up the FTRP:

```
CLI> stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool -rg-name RAID0
```

## FTRPE Migration

---

This section explains the commands that are related to FTRPE (Flexible Tier Pool Element) Migrations.

- Checking the FTRPE Migration (unfinished migration)
- 

### Caution

Only user accounts with the Software role can execute FTRPE Migration. User accounts without the Software role cannot use the FTRPE Migration function.

---

### Note

FTRPE migration sessions are shared with sessions for data migrations due to the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking.

---

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show ftrpe-migration

## show ftrpe-migration

This command displays information for the FTRPE Migration sessions that are not complete. Completed FTRPE Migration sessions cannot be displayed.

This command is only used to display information for migration sessions in which the destination is a Flexible Tier Sub Pool (FTSP).

### Syntax

```
show ftrpe-migration
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Source Volume	Migration source volume identifiers
No.	Migration source volume number
Name	Migration source volume name
FTRPE Offset	The migration source FTRPE offset
Destination Flexible Tier Sub Pool	Migration destination FTSP identifiers
No.	Migration destination FTSP number
Name	Migration destination FTSP name
Migration Status	Migration status (Idle, Reserve, Active, Error, Suspend, or -)
Progress	Migration progress
Error Code	Error code of a migration error (when no error occurs, 0x00)

### Example(s)

The following example displays FTRPE Migration session information:

```
CLI>show ftrpe-migration
Source          FTRPE      Destination        Migration Progress (%)  Error
Volume          Offset      Flexible Tier Sub Pool Status           Code
No.    Name      No.       Name
-----  -----
1   FTV_NAME#0  0x00000000  1   FTSP_NAME#0  Active            0  0x00
12345 FTV_NAME#1  0x00003000  2   FTSP_NAME#1  Error             0  0x01
```

## FTRP Balancing

---

This section explains the commands that are related to the balancing process for Flexible Tier Pools (FTRP). FTRP balancing is a function that performs a balancing process on a per FTV basis and equalizes the physical allocation capacity between RAID groups that configure the FTSP. By using this function, the ETERNUS DX determines the allocation for the biased Flexible Tier Volumes (FTV).

- Checking the Flexible Tier Pool balancing
  - Starting Flexible Tier Pool balancing (FTRP specification)
  - Stopping Flexible Tier Pool balancing
- 

### Note

FTRP balancing is executed by selecting the FTRP to balance.

If FTRP balancing is executed, the physical area in the FTSP is sorted. FTRP balancing does not migrate the physical area across FTSPs.

---

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show balancing-flexible-tier-pools

## show balancing-flexible-tier-pools

This command displays balancing information for the Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) that are registered in the ETERNUS DX. When an FTRP number or an FTRP name is specified, this command displays balancing information for the specified FTRP and the Flexible Tier Sub Pools (FTSPs) that are registered in this FTRP. When the FTRP number or the FTRP name is omitted, this command displays the balancing information of all the FTRPs that are registered in the ETERNUS DX.

### Syntax

```
show balancing-flexible-tier-pools [-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name]
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

Optional. This parameter specifies which FTRP to display the balancing information for. Only one FTRP can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the balancing information of all the FTRPs that are registered in the ETERNUS DX is displayed.

For details, refer to "[Flexible Tier Pool Syntax](#)" (page 28).

*ftrp\_number* FTRP number

*ftrp\_name* FTRP name

### Output

- When the parameter is omitted.

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Pool	FTRP identifiers
No.	FTRP number
Name	FTRP name
Balancing Level	Balancing level (High / Medium / Low / -) of each FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when an Not Ready error or a Subsystem Down error occurs in the ETERNUS DX)
Balancing Process	FTRP balancing progress
Status	Balancing status (Active/Error/-) for the FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when balancing is not being performed)
Progress(%)	Balancing progress for the FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when balancing is not being performed)
Error code	Error code of an FTRP balancing process status error. (If there are no error with the balancing process, "0x00" is displayed. A hyphen [-] is displayed if a balancing process is not running.)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > show balancing-flexible-tier-pools

- When an FTRP number or an FTRP name is specified.

Item name	Description
Flexible Tier Pool	FTRP identifiers
No.	FTRP number
Name	FTRP name
Balancing Level	Balancing level (High / Medium / Low / -) of each FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when an Not Ready error or a Subsystem Down error occurs in the ETERNUS DX)
Balancing Process	FTRP balancing progress
Status	Balancing status (Active/Error/-) for the FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when balancing is not being performed)
Progress(%)	Balancing progress for the FTRP (A hyphen [-] is displayed when balancing is not being performed)
Error code	Error code of an FTRP balancing process status error. (If there are no error with the balancing process, "0x00" is displayed. A hyphen [-] is displayed if a balancing process is not running)
Flexible Tier Sub Pool	FTRP identifiers (This item only appears when an FTRP is specified)
No.	FTSP number
Name	FTSP name
Balancing Level	Balancing level (High/Medium/Low/-) of each FTSP (This item only appears when an FTRP is specified)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the balancing information of all the FTRPs that are registered in the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> show balancing-flexible-tier-pools
Flexible Tier Pool      Balancing      Balancing Process   Error
No. Name                Level        Status Progress(%) code
1 FTRP_NAME001          Low          Active           70 0x00
2 FTRP_NAME002          Medium       Active           33 0x00
3 FTRP_NAME003          Low          Active           10 0x00
4 FTRP_NAME004          High         -               - -
```

The following example displays detailed balancing information for an FTRP that is named FTRP\_NAME#1:

```
CLI> show balancing-flexible-tier-pools -ftrp-name FTRP_NAME#1
Flexible Tier Pool      Balancing      Balancing Process   Error
No. Name                Level        Status Progress(%) code
1 FTRP_NAME#1           Low          Active           50 0x00
<Flexible Tier Sub Pool List>
Flexible Tier Sub Pool Balancing
No. Name                Level
0 FTSP000               Medium
1 FTSP001               Medium
2 FTSP002               Low
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > start balancing-flexible-tier-pool

## start balancing-flexible-tier-pool

This command starts evenly relocating the Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) among RAID groups. Specify the FTRP that is to be balanced.

### Syntax

```
start balancing-flexible-tier-pool {-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name}
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP to which the FTV to start balancing is allocated. For details, refer to "["Flexible Tier Pool Syntax" \(page 28\)](#).

<i>ftrp_number</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_name</i>	FTRP name

### Example(s)

The following example starts balancing FTRP01:

```
CLI> start balancing-flexible-tier-pool -ftrp-name FTRP01
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Flexible Tier Management > stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool

## stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool

This command stops evenly relocating the Flexible Tier Pools (FTRPs) among RAID groups. Specify the FTRP that is being balanced.

### Syntax

```
stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool {-ftrp-number ftrp_number | -ftrp-name ftrp_name}
```

### Parameter

-ftrp-number or -ftrp-name

This parameter specifies the FTRP to which the FTV to stop balancing is allocated. For details, refer to "["Flexible Tier Pool Syntax" \(page 28\)](#).

<i>ftrp_number</i>	FTRP number
<i>ftrp_name</i>	FTRP name

### Example(s)

The following example stops balancing FTRP01:

```
CLI> stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool -ftrp-name FTRP01
```

## Host Interface Management

---

This section explains the commands related to the management of the host interface.  
The functions to manage the host interface (SAN) are as follows:

- Host interface port parameters
- Host identifiers (Host Alias)
- Mapping (when using LUN groups)
- Mapping (When the host affinity mode is disabled)
- Host Groups
- Port Groups
- LUN Groups
- Host response
- Changing the host sense
- Reset group of the host interface port
- Ping command for iSCSI hosts
- Host LU QoS
- Login host display

### ■ Host interface type

There are three host interface types; FC, iSCSI, and FCLINK.

The speed for each type of host interface is as follows:

Host interface	Speed
Fibre Channel (FC)	32Gbit/s, 16Gbit/s, 8Gbit/s
Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI)	10Gbit/s, 1Gbit/s
FCLINK	8Gbit/s

The host interface types that are supported by each ETERNUS DX model are as follows.

Target model	Host interface type
DX8100 S4	FC, iSCSI, FCLINK
DX8900 S4	FC, iSCSI, FCLINK

For mainframe connections, FCLINK is used. FC and iSCSI are used for remote connections.

For UNIX/industry standard server connections, selecting from FC and iSCSI is possible.

For details on the host interface, refer to the "Overview" manual of the currently used ETERNUS DX.

### ■ Host affinity

Host affinity is a function that is used to control access permissions to the volumes.

### ■ Host affinity setting

The host affinity setting is an operation to associate hosts and ports, or host groups and port groups with LUN groups.

## ■ Host Affinity Mode

Host Affinity Mode is the volume access permission mode that is set for host interface ports. When the Host Affinity Mode is enabled, hosts or host groups can be associated with LUN mappings. When the Host Affinity Mode is disabled, host interface ports or port groups are associated with LUN mappings.

## ■ Host group

A host group is a group of hosts that are allowed access to a group of volumes (LUN group). Once a host group is created, the settings for LUN mapping or host response of all the hosts that belong to the host group can be changed at once.

## ■ Port group

A port group is a group of host interface ports that are allowed access to a group of volumes (LUN group). Once a port group is created, the settings for LUN mapping of all the host interface ports that belong to the port group can be changed at once. Port groups can be used to configure a multipath or host cluster.

## ■ LUN group

A LUN group is a group of volumes that are allowed access from hosts. Each member volume is assigned a LUN, which is an identifier for the hosts.

## ■ LUN mapping

LUN mapping is an association of volumes with LUN identifiers used for hosts.

Figure 3 Host affinity settings (association of host groups, port groups, and LUN groups)

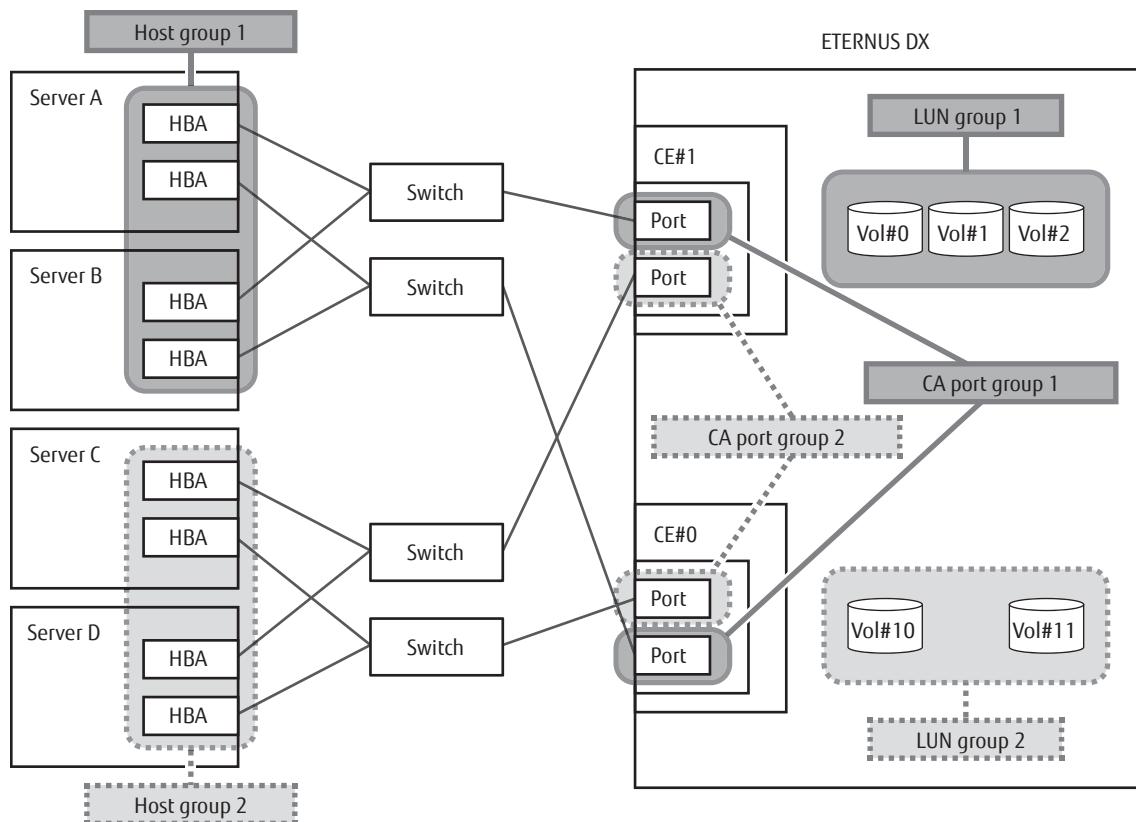
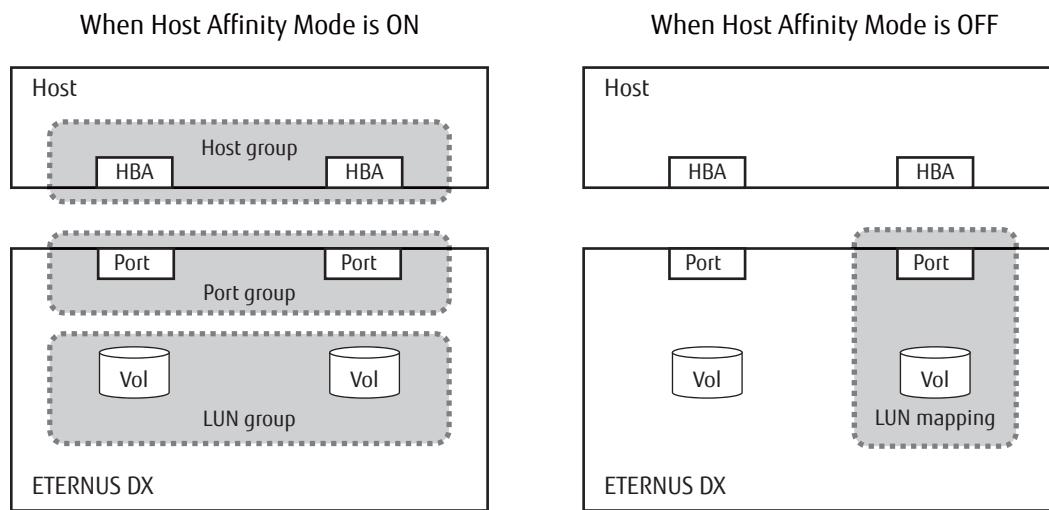


Figure 4 Host Affinity Mode concept



## ■ Access permission method

The following example uses host affinity to set a host with permission to access the volumes.

```
CLI> set fc-parameters -port 000 -host-affinity enable
CLI> create raid-group -name r1 -level 1 -disks 006,007
CLI> create volume -name v -count 3 -rg-name r1 -type standard -size 256mb
CLI> create lun-group -name a1 -volume-name v0,v1,v2 -lun 0-2
CLI> create host-wwn-name -name h1 -wwn a00000e0d0100000
CLI> set host-affinity -host-name h1 -lg-name a1 -port 000
```

## Procedure ►►► ——————

- 1 Enable Host Affinity Mode of host interface port 000. (FC)
  - 2 Create a RAID group named "r1".
  - 3 Create volumes named "v0", "v1" and "v2" in the RAID group named "r1".
  - 4 Create a LUN group named "a1", which maps volumes v0/v1/v2 to LUNs 0/1/2.
  - 5 Register a host WWN named "h1" (FC).
  - 6 Use host affinity to set a relationship between host identifier "h1", LUN group "a1", and host interface port 000.
- ◀◀◀

The following is an example when Host Affinity Mode is disabled:

```
CLI> set fc-parameters -port 000,001 -host-affinity disable
CLI> create raid-group -name r1 -level 1 -disks 006,007
CLI> create volume -name v -count 3 -rg-name r1 -type standard -size 256mb
CLI> set mapping -volume-name v0,v1,v2 -lun 0-2 -port 000,001
```

### Procedure ►► —————

- 1** Disable the Host Affinity Mode (FC).
- 2** Create a RAID group named "r1".
- 3** Create volumes named "v0", "v1" and "v2" in RAID group "r1".
- 4** For host interface ports 000 and 001, map volumes v0, v1, and v2 to LUNs 0, 1, and 2.



## Host Interface Port Parameters

---

This section explains the commands related to setting up parameters for each host interface.

## show fc-parameters

This command displays the parameters of each FC host interface port.

### Syntax

```
show fc-parameters
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Port	Each host interface port number
Port Mode	Port mode of each port
Connection	Connection of each FC port (fabric connection or loop connection [FC-AL])
Loop ID Assign	How to assign the loop ID (Loop ID is shown only when selecting manual.) (Either ascending order or descending order is shown when selecting automatic.)
Transfer Rate	Transfer rate of the relevant FC port (Auto Negotiation / 4Gbit/s / 8Gbit/s / 16Gbit/s / 32Gbit/s)
Frame Size	FC frame size (512bytes/1024bytes/2048bytes)
Host Affinity	Host affinity mode of each host interface port
Host Response No.	Host response number (A hyphen [-] is displayed when the host affinity mode is enabled.)
Host Response Name	Host response name (A hyphen [-] is displayed when the host affinity mode is enabled.)
Reset Scope	Range of reset action I_T_L (I: Initiator, T: Target, L: LUN) or T_L (T: Target, L: LUN)
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Indicates whether reservations are canceled or not when a host interface port is reset.
REC Line No.	REC line number (0 – 127) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Sync	Synchronous mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Stack	Asynchronous stack mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	Asynchronous consistency mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Through	Asynchronous through mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
TFO Transfer Mode	TFO transfer mode (transfer mode of the Storage Cluster) (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
WWN Mode	Indicates whether or not the WWPN/WWNN of each port was changed from the default setting.
Default	WWPN/WWNN has not changed (Default setting)
Custom	WWPN/WWNN has been changed
WWPN	The Port WWN that is set for each port

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show fc-parameters

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows the parameters displayed for each FC interface port (for the DX8100 S4). In this example, each CA has two ports and each CM has two CAs:

```
CLI> show fc-parameters
Port CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
Port Mode CA RA
Connection Fabric Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation 8Gbit/s
Frame Size 2048bytes -
Host Affinity Enable -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope I_T_L -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset Disable -
REC Line No. 127
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode Enable Disable
WWN Mode Custom Default
WWPN 6162636430303130 6162636430303131

Port CM#0 CA#1 Port#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1
Port Mode CA RA
Connection Fabric Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation 8Gbit/s
Frame Size 2048bytes -
Host Affinity Enable -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope I_T_L -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset Enable -
REC Line No. -
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode Enable Disable
WWN Mode Custom Default
WWPN 6162636430303130 6162636430303131

Port CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
Port Mode RA CA/RA
Connection Fabric Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation 8Gbit/s
Frame Size 2048bytes -
Host Affinity Enable -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope I_T_L -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset -
REC Line No. 0 1
REC Transfer Mode Sync Enable Enable
REC Transfer Mode Stack Enable Disable
REC Transfer Mode Consistency Disable Enable
REC Transfer Mode Through Enable Disable
TFO Transfer Mode Enable Disable
WWN Mode Custom Default
WWPN 6162636430303130 6162636430303131

Port CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1
Port Mode Initiator CA
Connection Fabric Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation 8Gbit/s
Frame Size 2048bytes -
Host Affinity Enable -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope I_T_L -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset -
REC Line No. -
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode Enable Disable
WWN Mode Custom Default
WWPN 6162636430303130 6162636430303131
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show fc-parameters

The following example shows the parameters displayed for each FC interface port (for the DX8900 S4). In this example, each CA has two ports and each CM has two CAs:

```
CLI> show fc-parameters
Port          CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
Port Mode      CA                   RA
Connection    Fabric               Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation   8Gbit/s
Frame Size    2048bytes           -
Host Affinity Enable              -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope    I_T_L              -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset    Disable
REC Line No.   -
REC Transfer Mode Sync          Enable
REC Transfer Mode Stack         Disable
REC Transfer Mode Consistency  Enable
REC Transfer Mode Through       Disable
TFO Transfer Mode               Enable
WWN Mode        Custom             Default
WWPN          6162636430303130  6162636430303131

Port          CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0  CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1
Port Mode      CA                   RA
Connection    Fabric               Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation   8Gbit/s
Frame Size    2048bytes           -
Host Affinity Enable              -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope    I_T_L              -
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset    Enable
REC Line No.   -
REC Transfer Mode Sync          -
REC Transfer Mode Stack         -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency  -
REC Transfer Mode Through       -
TFO Transfer Mode               Enable
WWN Mode        Custom             Default
WWPN          6162636430303130  6162636430303131

Port          CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0  CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
Port Mode      RA                  CA/RA
Connection    Fabric               Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation   8Gbit/s
Frame Size    -                  2048bytes
Host Affinity Enable              Enable
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope    -                  I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset    -
REC Line No.   0                  1
REC Transfer Mode Sync          Enable
REC Transfer Mode Stack         Enable
REC Transfer Mode Consistency  Disable
REC Transfer Mode Through       Enable
TFO Transfer Mode               Enable
WWN Mode        Custom             Default
WWPN          6162636430303130  6162636430303131

Port          CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0  CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1
Port Mode      Initiator          CA
Connection    Fabric               Fabric
Loop ID Assign -
Transfer Rate Auto Negotiation   8Gbit/s
Frame Size    -                  2048bytes
Host Affinity -
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope    -                  I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset    Enable
REC Line No.   -
REC Transfer Mode Sync          -
REC Transfer Mode Stack         -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency  -
REC Transfer Mode Through       -
TFO Transfer Mode               Enable
WWN Mode        Custom             Default
WWPN          6162636430303130  6162636430303131
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show fc-parameters

The following example shows the parameters displayed for each FC interface port (for the DX8100 S4). In this example, each CA has four ports and each CM has two CAs:

CLI> show fc-parameters				
Port	CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	CM#0 CA#0 Port#1	CM#0 CA#0 Port#2	CM#0 CA#0 Port#3
Port Mode	CA	CA	RA	RA
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-
Host Response Name				
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Disable	Disable	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	0	1
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	Enable	Enable
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	Enable	Disable
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	Disable	Enable
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	Enable	Disable
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-
WWN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133
Port	CM#0 CA#1 Port#0	CM#0 CA#1 Port#1	CM#0 CA#1 Port#2	CM#0 CA#1 Port#3
Port Mode	CA	CA	RA	RA
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-
Host Response Name				
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Enable	Enable	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-
WWN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133
Port	CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	CM#1 CA#0 Port#1	CM#1 CA#0 Port#2	CM#1 CA#0 Port#3
Port Mode	CA	CA	CA	CA
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	512bytes	512bytes
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	Disable	Disable
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-
Host Response Name				
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	I_T_L	I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Enable	Disable	Disable	Enable
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-
WWN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133
Port	CM#1 CA#1 Port#0	CM#1 CA#1 Port#1	CM#1 CA#1 Port#2	CM#1 CA#1 Port#3
Port Mode	CA	CA	Initiator	Initiator
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-
Host Response Name				
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Disable	Disable	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-
WWN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show fc-parameters

The following example shows the parameters displayed for each FC interface port (for the DX8900 S4). In this example, each CA has four ports and each CM has two CAs:

	Port	CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1	CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2	CE#3 CM#0 CA#0 Port#3
Port Mode	CA	CA	RA	RA	RA
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-	-
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-	-
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-	-
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-	-
Host Response Name					
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Disable	Disable	-	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	0	1	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	Enable	Enable	Enable
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	Enable	Disable	Disable
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	Disable	Enable	Enable
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	Enable	Disable	Disable
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-	-
WNN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133	6162636430303134
Port	CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0	CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1	CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#2	CE#3 CM#0 CA#1 Port#3	
Port Mode	CA	CA	RA	RA	
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-	
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-	
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-	
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-	
Host Response Name					
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Enable	Enable	-	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-	-
WNN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133	6162636430303134
Port	CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1	CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#2	CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#3	
Port Mode	CA	CA	CA	CA	
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-	
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	512bytes	512bytes	
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	Enable	Enable	
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-	
Host Response Name					
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	I_T_L	I_T_L	
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Enable	Disable	Disable	Enable	
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-	-
WNN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133	6162636430303134
Port	CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0	CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1	CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#2	CE#3 CM#1 CA#1 Port#3	
Port Mode	CA	CA	Initiator	Initiator	
Connection	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	Fabric	
Loop ID Assign	-	-	-	-	
Transfer Rate	Auto Negotiation	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	8Gbit/s	
Frame Size	2048bytes	512bytes	-	-	
Host Affinity	Enable	Enable	-	-	
Host Response No.	-	-	-	-	
Host Response Name					
Reset Scope	I_T_L	I_T_L	-	-	-
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Disable	Disable	-	-	-
REC Line No.	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Sync	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Stack	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	-	-	-	-	-
REC Transfer Mode Through	-	-	-	-	-
TFO Transfer Mode	-	-	-	-	-
WNN Mode	Custom	Default	Custom	Default	Default
WWPN	6162636430303130	6162636430303131	6162636430303132	6162636430303133	6162636430303134

## set fc-parameters

This command sets up the parameters to control each Fibre Channel (FC) host interface port. Host Affinity Mode can be changed by using this command.

For a change of host port mode, refer to the "set host-port-mode" command.

### Syntax

```
set fc-parameters -port {port_numbers | all}
[-host-affinity {enable | disable}] [-connect {loop | fabric}]
[-rate {auto | 4g | 8g | 16g | 32g}]
[-loop-id-assign {auto-ascending | auto-descending | manual}]
[-loop-id loop_id] [-frame-size {512 | 1024 | 2048}]
[-host-response-number host_response_number] [-host-response-name host_response_name]
[-reset-scope {initiator-lun | target-lun}] [-reserve-cancel {enable | disable}]
[-rec-line-no rec_line_no]
[-rec-transfer-sync {enable | disable}]
[-rec-transfer-stack {enable | disable}]
[-rec-transfer-consistency {enable | disable}]
[-rec-transfer-through {enable | disable}]
[-tfo-transfer-mode {enable | disable}]
[-revert-wwn]
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the FC host interface port number to be set up. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,110

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* FC host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the FC port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the FC port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

**all** All FC host interface ports

**-host-affinity**

Optional. This parameter specifies the Host Affinity Mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The host affinity is the security capability of the system against hosts. The access from hosts can be limited by enabling Host Affinity Mode. If the RA mode or Initiator mode is being set for the specified ports, this parameter cannot be specified.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed. If the setting is changed, the host mapping information that is related to that port is automatically released.

enable	Host Affinity Mode is enabled.
disable	Host Affinity Mode is disabled.
-connect	Optional. This parameter specifies the connection condition of the FC port. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

**Note**

Normally, "loop" is specified for direct connections with servers and "fabric" is specified for switch connections. Specify "fabric" for 16Gbit/s or faster direct connections.

loop	Loop connection (default)
fabric	Fabric connection
-rate	Optional. This parameter specifies the FC transfer rate. If the speed is 32 Gbit/s, the transfer rate cannot be set to 4 Gbit/s. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
auto	Auto negotiation
4g	4Gbit/s
8g	8Gbit/s
16g	16Gbit/s
32g	32Gbit/s

**-loop-id-assign**

Optional. This parameter specifies how to assign the loop ID. It is only applicable when "-connect loop" is specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

auto-ascending	It automatically assigns ascending order.
auto-descending	It automatically assigns descending order.
manual	It assigns manually.

-loop-id	Optional. This parameter specifies the loop ID (a hexadecimal number). This is only applicable when "-loop-id-assign manual" is specified. The range of values is between 0x00 and 0x7d (a hexadecimal number). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.
<i>loop_id</i>	Loop ID

**-frame-size**

Optional. This parameter specifies the FC frame size. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If the RA mode or Initiator mode is being set for the specified ports, this parameter cannot be specified.

512	512 bytes
1024	1,024 bytes
2048	2,048 bytes

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies a host response identifier. Only one host response identifier can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If the RA mode or Initiator mode is being set for the specified ports, this parameter cannot be specified. For details, refer to "["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.

<i>host_response_number</i>	Host response number
<i>host_response_name</i>	Host response name

-reset-scope

Optional. This parameter specifies the range of reset action. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If the RA mode or Initiator mode is set, this parameter cannot be specified.

initiator-lun	Resets (cancels) the command request from the host that sent the command reset request.
target-lun	Resets (cancels) the command request from all hosts that are connected to the port (regardless of whether the LUN is recognized).

-reserve-cancel

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not SCSI reservation (persistent reservation) is canceled when host interface ports are reset. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If the RA mode or Initiator mode is set for the specified port, this parameter cannot be specified.

enable	Reservations are canceled.
disable	Reservations are not canceled.

-rec-line-no

Optional. This parameter specifies the REC line number. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

<i>rec_line_no</i>	REC line number (0 – 127)
--------------------	---------------------------

-rec-transfer-sync

Optional. This parameter specifies the synchronous mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

enable	An REC in synchronous transfer mode is permitted for the target CA port.
disable	An REC in synchronous transfer mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

-rec-transfer-stack

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous stack mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

enable	An REC in asynchronous stack mode is permitted for the target CA port.
disable	An REC in asynchronous stack mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

-rec-transfer-consistency

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous consistency mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

enable	An REC in asynchronous consistency mode is permitted for the target CA port.
disable	An REC in asynchronous consistency mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

-rec-transfer-through

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous through mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

enable	An REC in asynchronous through mode is permitted for the target CA port.
disable	An REC in asynchronous through mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

-tfo-transfer-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the TFO transfer mode (transfer mode of the Storage Cluster). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Storage Cluster license has been registered and the port mode is the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.

enable	A Storage Cluster transfer is permitted for the target CA port.
disable	A Storage Cluster transfer is suppressed for the target CA port.

-revert-wwn

Optional. This parameter is specified when reverting WWPN/WWNN back to the default configuration state after it has been changed by the Storage Cluster. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the parameters to control CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 (FC interface).  
Host Affinity Mode is disabled:

```
CLI> set fc-parameters -port 110 -host-affinity disable
```

The following example sets up the parameters to control CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (FC interface).  
The FC port is a fabric connection:

```
CLI> set fc-parameters -port 001 -connect fabric
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show iscsi-parameters

## show iscsi-parameters

This command displays the parameters of each iSCSI host interface port.

### Syntax

```
show iscsi-parameters [-port {port_numbers | all}]
```

### Parameter

-port	Optional. This parameter specifies which iSCSI interface port on which information is to be displayed. Multiple comma-separated ports may be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the information on all the iSCSI ports (excluding the virtual ports of the iSCSI ports) is displayed. To display the information on the virtual ports, specify this parameter. For details, refer to <a href="#">"Host Interface Port Syntax" (page 33)</a> .
<i>port_numbers</i>	iSCSI host interface port  <i>xyz</i> "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8100 S4 only). Example: "110" indicates CM#1-CA#1-Port#0.  <i>wxyz</i> "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0120" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#0.
all	All iSCSI host interface ports

### Output

Item name	Description
CM# <i>x</i> CA# <i>y</i> Port# <i>z</i>	Port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE# <i>w</i> CM# <i>x</i> CA# <i>y</i> Port# <i>z</i>	Port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
Port Mode	Port mode that is set for each port (CA, RA, CA/RA, or a hyphen [-])
Type	Module type (1G iSCSI / 10G iSCSI / iSCSI-RA)
Host Affinity	Host affinity mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled)
iSCSI Name	iSCSI name
Alias Name	Alias to the iSCSI name
Host Response No.	Host response number
Host Response Name	Host response name
Reset Scope	Range of reset action I_T_L (I: Initiator, T: Target, L: LUN) or T_L (T: Target, L: LUN)
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset	Indicates whether reservations are canceled when a host interface port is reset (Enable: canceled, Disable: not canceled).
IPv4	Indicates whether an IPv4 address is used (Enable: used, Disable: not used).
IP Address	IP address
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask
Gateway Address	Gateway address
IPv6	Indicates whether an IPv6 address is used (Enable: used, Disable: not used).
Link Local IP Address	Link local IP address

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show iscsi-parameters

Item name	Description
Connect IP Address	Global address or unique local address
IPv6 Gateway Address	Gateway server address in IPv6 format
MAC Address	MAC address
TCP Port Number	TCP port number
TCP Window Scale	TCP window scale
iSNS Server	Indicates whether an iSNS server is used. (Enable: used, Disable: not used)
iSNS Server IP Address	IP address of an iSNS server
iSNS Server Port Number	iSNS server port number
CHAP	Indicates whether CHAP authentication is used. (Enable: used, Disable: not used)
CHAP User Name	User name for CHAP authentication
Header Digest	Indicates whether the header digest is used. (CRC32C: used, Off: not used)
Data Digest	Indicates whether the data digest is used. (CRC32C: used, Off: not used)
Jumbo Frame	Indicates whether jumbo frame can be specified. (Enable: jumbo frame can be specified, Disable: jumbo frame cannot be specified) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the CA mode)
Transfer Rate	Transfer speed of the iSCSI port
Link Status	Actual transfer speed and link status (including "Link Up" and "Link Down")
CmdSN Count	Upper limit for the number of commands
VLAN ID	Indicates whether VLAN connection is enabled. (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) When "Enabled" is displayed, the VLAN ID is also displayed.
MTU	MTU size (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
Limit Band width	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value)
REC Line No.	REC line number (0 – 127) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Sync	Synchronous mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Stack	Asynchronous stack mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Consistency	Asynchronous consistency mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
REC Transfer Mode Through	Asynchronous through mode for the REC transfer mode (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
TFO Transfer Mode	TFO transfer mode (transfer mode of the Storage Cluster) (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled) (A hyphen [-] is displayed in the field when the port mode is not the RA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.)
Multiple VLAN	Indicates whether the multiple VLAN setting is enabled (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled).
Available IP Address Information	Virtual port information for which the multiple VLAN setting is enabled

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show iscsi-parameters

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the result of performing a command when the "-port" parameter is not specified:

```
CLI> show iscsi-parameters
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
Type          1G iSCSI
Port Mode     CA
Host Affinity Enable
iSCSI Name    ign.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eterrus_dxl:000000
Alias Name   ALIAS00
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope   I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset Disable
IPv4          Enable
IP Address    192.168.2.64
Subnet Mask   255.255.255.0
Gateway Address 0.0.0.0
IPv6          Enable
Link Local IP Address fe80::290:ccff:fea4:3a49
Connect IP Address 2001:db8::8:800:200c:417a
IPv6 Gateway Address fe80::2aa:ff:fea9:21b8
MAC Address   01:02:03:04:05:06
TCP Port Number 3260
TCP Window Scale 0
iSNS Server   Disable
iSNS Server IP Address -
iSNS Server Port Number 3205
CHAP          Disable
CHAP User Name user00
Header Digest CRC32C
Data Digest   Off
Jumbo Frame   Enable
Transfer Rate 1Gbps/Full Duplex
Link Status    1Gbps Link Up
CmdSN Count   80
VLAN ID       Enable
                  4090
MTU           -
Limit Band width -
REC Line No.  -
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode -


. . . continue
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show iscsi-parameters

The following example displays the result of performing a command when the "-port" parameter is not specified (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show iscsi-parameters
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
Type          1G iSCSI
Port Mode     CA
Host Affinity Enable
iSCSI Name    iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus_dxl:000000
Alias Name   ALIAS00
Host Response No. -
Host Response Name
Reset Scope   I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset Disable
IPv4          Enable
IP Address    192.168.2.64
Subnet Mask   255.255.255.0
Gateway Address 0.0.0.0
IPv6          Enable
Link Local IP Address fe80::290:ccff:fea4:3a49
Connect IP Address 2001:db8::8:800:200c:417a
IPv6 Gateway Address fe80::2aa:ff:fea9:21b8
MAC Address   01:02:03:04:05:06
TCP Port Number 3260
TCP Window Scale 0
iSNS Server   Disable
iSNS Server IP Address -
iSNS Server Port Number 3205
CHAP          Disable
CHAP User Name user00
Header Digest CRC32C
Data Digest   Off
Jumbo Frame   Enable
Transfer Rate 1Gbps/Full Duplex
Link Status   1Gbps Link Up
CmdSN Count   80
VLAN ID      Enable
                  4090
MTU           -
Limit Band width -
REC Line No.  -
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode -


. . . continue
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show iscsi-parameters

The following example displays the result of performing a command when the "-port" parameter is specified and the multiple IP address setting is enabled for the port that is specified for the "-port" parameter:

```
CLI> show iscsi-parameters -port 000
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
Type 1G iSCSI
Port Mode CA
Host Affinity Enable
iSCSI Name iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus_dxl:000000
Alias Name ALIAS00
Host Response No.
Host Response Name
Reset Scope I_T_L
Reserve Cancel at Chip Reset Disable
IPv4 Enable
IP Address 192.168.2.64
Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0
Gateway Address 0.0.0.0
IPv6 Enable
Link Local IP Address fe80::290:ccff:fea4:3a49
Connect IP Address 2001:db8::8:800:200c:417a
IPv6 Gateway Address fe80::2aa:ff:fea9:21b8
MAC Address 01:02:03:04:05:06
TCP Port Number 3260
TCP Window Scale 0
iSNS Server Disable
iSNS Server IP Address -
iSNS Server Port Number 3205
CHAP Disable
CHAP User Name user00
Header Digest CRC32C
Data Digest Off
Jumbo Frame Enable
Transfer Rate 1Gbps/Full Duplex
Link Status 1Gbps Link Up
CmdSN Count 80
VLAN ID Enable
VLAN ID 4090
MTU -
Limit Band width -
REC Line No. -
REC Transfer Mode Sync -
REC Transfer Mode Stack -
REC Transfer Mode Consistency -
REC Transfer Mode Through -
TFO Transfer Mode -
Multiple VLAN Enable
Available IP Address Information #1
IPv4[1] Enable
IP Address[1] 192.168.2.65
Subnet Mask[1] 255.255.255.0
Gateway Address[1] 0.0.0.0
IPv6[1] Disable
Link Local IP Address[1] -
Connect IP Address[1] -
IPv6 Gateway Address[1] -
TCP Port Number[1] 3260
TCP Window Scale[1] 0
iSNS Server[1] Disable
iSNS Server IP Address[1] -
iSNS Server Port Number[1] 3205
Jumbo Frame[1] Disable
VLAN ID[1] Enable
VLAN ID[1] 4091
. . . continue
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

## set iscsi-parameters

This command sets up the parameters of each iSCSI host interface port. It can also be used to change Host Affinity Mode.

### Syntax

```
set iscsi-parameters -port {port_numbers | all} [-multiple-vlan {enable | disable}]  
[-additional-ip additional-ip] [-additional-ip-function {enable | disable}]  
[-host-affinity {enable | disable}]  
[-iscsi-name {iscsi_name | ""}]  
[-alias-name alias_name]  
[-host-response-number host_response_number] [-host-response-name host_response_name]  
[-reset-scope {initiator-lun | target-lun}] [-reserve-cancel {enable | disable}]  
[-ipv4-flag {enable | disable}] [-ip ip_address] [-netmask netmask] [-gateway gateway]  
[-ipv6-flag {enable | disable}] [-link-local-ip ip_address] [-connect-ip {ip_address | auto}]  
[-ipv6-gateway {gateway | auto}]  
[-tcp-port tcp_port_number] [-tcp-window-scale tcp_window_scale]  
[-isns-server-ip isns_server_ip] [-isns-server {enable | disable}]  
[-isns-server-port isns_server_port_number]  
[-chap {enable | disable}] [-chap-user {chap_user_name | ""}]  
[-header-digest {enable | disable}] [-data-digest {enable | disable}]  
[-jumbo-frame {enable | disable}]  
[-rate {auto | 1gauto | 10gauto | 1gfull | 100mfull}]  
[-cmdsn-count {unlimited | 20 | 40 | 80 | 120 | 180}]  
[-vlan-id {enable | disable}] [-vlan-id-value {0 - 4095}]  
[-mtu mtu_size] [-bandwidth bandwidth_limit]  
[-chap-ca {enable | disable}]  
[-chap-user-ca {chap_user_name-ca | ""}]  
[-chap-ra {enable | disable}]  
[-chap-user-ra {chap_user_name-ra | ""}]  
[-rec-line-no rec-line-no]  
[-rec-transfer-sync {enable | disable}] [-rec-transfer-stack {enable | disable}]  
[-rec-transfer-consistency {enable | disable}] [-rec-transfer-through {enable | disable}]  
[-tfo-transfer-mode {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies which iSCSI host interface port is to be set. Multiple comma-separated ports may be specified.

Example: -port 000,110

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* iSCSI host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "110" indicates CM#1-CA#1-Port#0.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0120" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#0.

**all** All iSCSI host interface ports

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

##### -multiple-vlan

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the multiple VLAN setting is enabled.

When this parameter is specified, multiple port numbers or the "-all" option cannot be specified for the "-port" parameter.

When "disabled" is specified, the virtual port information for the ports that are specified with the "-port" parameter is deleted.

When this parameter is specified, the "-additional-ip" parameter and the "-additional-ip-function" parameter cannot be specified.

This parameter can only be specified when the port mode of the ports that are specified with the "-port" parameter is the CA mode or the CA/RA auto mode.

When this parameter is specified, only the "-port" parameter can be specified.

enable            The multiple VLAN function is enabled.

disable          The multiple VLAN function is disabled.

##### -additional-ip

Optional. This parameter specifies the virtual port number that is set for the target port.

When this parameter is specified, multiple port numbers or the "-all" option cannot be specified for the "-port" parameter.

This parameter can only be specified when the port mode of the ports that are specified with the "-port" parameter is the CA mode or the CA/RA auto mode and the VLAN function is enabled.

When this parameter is specified, only the parameters that can be specified for the multiple IP address setting can be specified together.

*additional-ip*      Target virtual port number (1 – 15)

##### -additional-ip-function

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the target virtual port is enabled.

When "disable" is specified, the virtual port information of the port that is specified with the "-additional-ip" parameter is deleted.

When "disable" is specified, only the "-port" parameter and the "-additional-ip" parameter can be specified together.

This parameter can only be specified when the port mode for the ports that are specified with the "-port" parameter is the CA mode or the CA/RA auto mode, the multiple IP address setting is enabled, and the VLAN function is enabled.

enable            The target virtual port is enabled.

disable          The target virtual port is disabled.

##### -host-affinity

Optional. This parameter specifies the Host Affinity Mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Host affinity is a security mechanism used to restrict access by a given host to only a specific set of LUNs. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed. If the setting is changed, the host mapping information that is related to that port is all automatically released.

enable            Host Affinity Mode is enabled.

disable          Host Affinity Mode is disabled.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

**-iscsi-name** Optional. This parameter specifies the iSCSI name for the specified host interface port. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified for iSCSI-RA (host interfaces that are only used for connecting older models).

- Up to 223 alphanumerical characters including, hyphen minus (-), full stop (.), and colon (:), can be used to specify this parameter.
- "iqn." or "eui." must be added in front of the character string.
- Characters are not case-sensitive.

*iscsi\_name* iSCSI name

**-alias-name** Optional. This parameter specifies an alias to the iSCSI name that corresponds to the "-iscsi-name" parameter. A maximum of 31 alphanumeric characters can be used. The available characters are the ones that are shown in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#), except for a comma (,). To delete an alias name, specify a null character ("").

*alias\_name* Alias name

"" The alias name is deleted.

**-host-response-number** or **-host-response-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier. Only one identifier can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#). This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.

*host\_response\_number* Host response number

*host\_response\_name* Host response name

**-reset-scope**

Optional. This parameter specifies the range of reset action. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

**initiator-lun** Reset (Cancel) the command request from the server that sent the command reset request.

**target-lun** Reset (Cancel) the command request from all servers that are connected to the port (regardless of whether the LUN is recognized).

**-reserve-cancel**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not reservations are canceled when a host interface port is reset. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

**enable** Reservations are canceled.

**disable** Reservations are not canceled.

**-ipv4-flag** Optional. This parameter specifies whether to use an IPv4 address. "disable" cannot be specified for this parameter if "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-flag" parameter. This parameter can be specified for the multiple IP address setting.

**enable** An IPv4 address is used.

**disable** An IPv4 address is not used.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

-ip	Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address that is used to connect to an iSCSI network using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can be specified for the multiple IP address setting.  Example: -ip 192.168.1.1  <i>ip_address</i> IP address
-netmask	Optional. This parameter specifies the subnet mask that is used to connect to an iSCSI network using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can be specified for the multiple IP address setting.  Example: -netmask 255.255.255.0  <i>netmask</i> Subnet mask
-gateway	Optional. This parameter specifies the gateway server address using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.  Example: -gateway 10.1.0.250  <i>gateway</i> Gateway server address
-ipv6-flag	Optional. This parameter specifies whether to use an IPv6 address. "disable" cannot be specified for this parameter if "enable" is specified for the "-ipv4-flag" parameter. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.  enable An IPv6 address is used. disable An IPv6 address is not used.
-link-local-ip	Optional. This parameter specifies a link local address in IPv6 format. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If IPv6 addresses are used and a link local address is not set when this parameter is omitted, an IP address is automatically created and set based on the WWN of the ETERNUS DX. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.  When IPv6 is enabled and this parameter is specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting without a link local address, a link local address is not automatically created.  Example: -link-local-ip fe80::250  <i>ip_address</i> Link local address
-connect-ip	Optional. This parameter specifies a global address (including 6to4 addresses) or a unique local address in IPv6 format. To delete an IP address that is already set, specify ALL0 (an IP address with all zero bits). This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.  Example: -connect-ip 2000:100::10:1:0:250 Example: -connect-ip :: Example: -connect-ip auto  <i>ip_address</i> Global address or unique local address in IPv6 format auto The global address or the unique local address is automatically set in IPv6 format.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

##### -ipv6-gateway

Optional. This parameter specifies the gateway server address in IPv6 format. The types of IP addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. To delete an IP address that is already set, specify ALLO (an IP address with all zero bits). This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

Example: -ipv6-gateway 2000:100::10:1:0:250

Example: -ipv6-gateway 0::0

Example: -ipv6-gateway auto

*ip\_address* Global address

auto The gateway IP address is automatically set in IPv6 format.

##### -tcp-port

Optional. This parameter specifies TCP port number for iSCSI Target function. The default TCP port number value is 3260. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

*tcp\_port\_number* TCP port number (0 – 28671)

##### -tcp-window-scale

Optional. This parameter specifies the TCP window scale.

This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

This parameter cannot be specified for iSCSI-RA (host interfaces that are only used for connecting older models).

*tcp\_window\_scale* TCP window scale (0 – 14)

##### -isns-server-ip

Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address of an iSNS server (\*1) using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 format. The types of IP addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. IP addresses in IPv4 format can be specified when "enable" is specified for the "-ipv4-flag" parameter. IP addresses in IPv6 format can be specified when "enable" is specified for the "-ipv6-flag" parameter. The iSNS server must belong to the same iSCSI network as the one to which the iSCSI host interface port specified by the "-port" parameter belongs. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

\*1: iSNS server: Internet Storage Name Server

Example: -isns-server-ip 10.1.1.12

Example: -isns-server-ip fe80::250

*isns\_server\_ip* IP address of an iSNS server

##### -isns-server

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not an iSNS server is used. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

The iSNS server can be enabled for up to four ports, including the physical ports and the virtual ports in a single port.

enable An iSNS server is used.

disable An iSNS server is not used.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

#### -isns-server-port

Optional. This parameter specifies iSNS server port number. The default iSNS server port number value is 3205. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

*isns\_server\_port\_number* iSNS server port number (0 – 65535)

#### -chap

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not CHAP authentication is used. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable A CHAP authentication is used.

disable A CHAP authentication is not used.

#### -chap-user

Optional. This parameter specifies the user name for CHAP authentication. It is only applicable if CHAP authentication is used. Up to 255 alphanumerical characters and symbols for CA ports and up to 63 alphanumerical characters and symbols for RA ports can be used. If this parameter is specified, then the command displays a CHAP user password prompt. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. To delete a registered CHAP user name, specify a null character ("").

*chap\_user\_name* User name for CHAP authentication

"" The registered CHAP user name is deleted.

#### -header-digest

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not the PDU header's CRC32C checksum is validated. The initial value is set to disabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

enable PDU header is validated by CRC32C.

disable PDU header is not validated.

#### -data-digest

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not the PDU data's CRC32C checksum is validated. The initial value is set to disabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

enable PDU data is validated by CRC32C.

disable PDU data is not validated.

#### -jumbo-frame

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not jumbo frame can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to disabled.

This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

This parameter cannot be specified when the port is in RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

enable The jumbo frame is accepted.

disable The jumbo frame is not accepted.

#### Caution

To transfer data via Jumbo Frame, make sure the device that is to be connected to the iSCSI network supports Jumbo Frame.

#### -rate

Optional. This parameter specifies the connection speed of the iSCSI port.

If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is 10Gbit/s for 10Gbit/s iSCSI, 1Gbit/s for 1Gbit/s iSCSI and iSCSI-RA (for connecting older models), and Auto for 10Gbit/s Base-T iSCSI.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

1gauto	1Gbit/s Auto (1Gbit/s iSCSI CA/RA auto mode and 10Gbit/s Base-T iSCSI CA/RA auto mode only)
10gauto	10Gbit/s Auto (1Gbit/s iSCSI CA/RA auto mode and 10Gbit/s Base-T iSCSI CA/RA auto mode only)
1gfull	1Gbit/s Full Duplex (iSCSI-RA [for connecting older models] only)
100mfull	100Mbit/s Full Duplex (iSCSI-RA [for connecting older models] only)
auto	Auto negotiation (iSCSI-RA [for connecting older models] and 10Gbit/s Base-T iSCSI CA/RA auto mode only)

#### -cmdsn-count

Optional. For Advanced authority users, this parameter specifies the number of commands that are simultaneously acceptable from a host. The initial value is set to unlimited. This parameter cannot be specified when the port is set to the RA mode.

unlimited	The number of commands is not limited.
20	Limited to a maximum of 20 commands.
40	Limited to a maximum of 40 commands.
80	Limited to a maximum of 80 commands.
120	Limited to a maximum of 120 commands.
180	Limited to a maximum of 180 commands.

#### -vlan-id

Optional. This parameter specifies VLAN connection enable or disabled. When "enable" sets, must be set the "-vlan-id-value" parameter. To set "enable", the "-vlan-id-value" parameter must be set. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

enable	VLAN connection enabled.
disable	VLAN connection disabled.

#### -vlan-id-value

Optional. This parameter specifies the VLAN ID value for connect to VLAN. When "-vlan-id enable" is done, this parameter must be set. "-vlan-id" must be set to "enable" for this parameter. This parameter can be specified as a parameter for the multiple IP address setting.

0 – 4095      VLAN ID value (0 – 4095)

#### -mtu

Optional. This parameter specifies the MTU size. The specified value is only valid when the RA mode or CA/RA auto mode is used. The initial value is 1300. From 576 to 9000 can be specified when IPv6 is disabled and from 1280 to 9000 can be specified when IPv6 is enabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*mtu\_size*      MTU size (576 – 9000)

#### -bandwidth

Optional. This parameter specifies the bandwidth limit when iSCSI-RA (only for connecting older models) is used. The specified value is only valid for iSCSI-RA, which is only used for connecting older models. The initial value is 400Mbit/s. The allowed range is from 10 to 400. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*bandwidth\_limit*      Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) (10 – 400)

#### -chap-ca

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not CHAP authentication is used. If omitted, this setting is not changed. This parameter is used for the CA setting of CA/RA dual-purpose ports.

enable      A CHAP authentication is used.

disable      A CHAP authentication is not used.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

#### -chap-user-ca

Optional. This parameter specifies the user name for CHAP authentication. It is only applicable if CHAP authentication is used. If omitted, this setting is not changed. Up to 255 alphanumerical characters and symbols can be used. When this parameter is specified, a prompt that requires entering the CHAP user pass-word appears. To delete a registered CHAP user name, specify a null character (""). This parameter is used for the CA setting of CA/RA dual-purpose ports.

*chap\_user\_name-ca*      User name for CHAP authentication  
""                          The registered CHAP user name is deleted.

#### -chap-ra

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not CHAP authentication is used. this setting is not changed. This parameter is used for the RA setting of CA/RA dual-purpose ports.

enable      CHAP authentication is used.  
disable     CHAP authentication is not used.

#### -chap-user-ra

Optional. This parameter specifies the user name for CHAP authentication. It is only applicable if CHAP authentication is used. If omitted, this setting is not changed. Up to 63 alphanumerical characters and symbols can be used. When this parameter is specified, a prompt to require entering CHAP user password. To delete a registered CHAP user name, specify a null character (""). This parameter is used for the RA setting of CA/RA dual-purpose ports.

*chap\_user\_name-ra*      User name for CHAP authentication  
""                          The registered CHAP user name is deleted.

#### -rec-line-no

Optional. This parameter specifies the REC line number. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

*rec-line-no*    REC line number (0 – 127)

#### -rec-transfer-sync

Optional. This parameter specifies the synchronous mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

enable      An REC in synchronous transfer mode is permitted for the target CA port.  
disable     An REC in synchronous transfer mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

#### -rec-transfer-stack

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous stack mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

enable      An REC in asynchronous stack mode is permitted for the target CA port.  
disable     An REC in asynchronous stack mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

#### -rec-transfer-consistency

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous consistency mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

enable An REC in asynchronous consistency mode is permitted for the target CA port.

disable An REC in asynchronous consistency mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

#### -rec-transfer-through

Optional. This parameter specifies the asynchronous through mode for the copy transfer mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Advanced Copy license has been registered and the port mode is RA mode or CA/RA auto mode.

enable An REC in asynchronous through mode is permitted for the target CA port.

disable An REC in asynchronous through mode is suppressed for the target CA port.

#### -tfo-transfer-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the TFO transfer mode (transfer mode of the Storage Cluster).

If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified for the ports that both of the following conditions apply to: the Storage Cluster license has been registered and the port mode is RA or CA/RA auto mode.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the port whose setting is to be changed.

enable A Storage Cluster transfer is permitted for the target CA port.

disable A Storage Cluster transfer is suppressed for the target CA port.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the parameters to control CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 (iSCSI interface).

Host Affinity Mode is disabled:

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port 100 -host-affinity disable
```

The following example sets "192.168.1.1" for the IP address, "255.255.255.0" for the subnet mask, and "user01" for the CHAP user name of CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (iSCSI interface):

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port 001 -ip 192.168.1.1 -netmask 255.255.255.0 -chap-user user01  
Password :  
Confirm Password :
```

The following example enables the jumbo frame function on all iSCSI interface ports:

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port all -jumbo-frame enable
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set iscsi-parameters

The following example automatically sets the IP address and the gateway IP address to connect to CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (iSCSI interface):

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port 001 -connect-ip auto -ipv6-gateway auto
Connect Address List :
0. Cancel
1. 2001:1:2:3:4:5:6:7
2. 2002:1:2:3:4:5:6:7
3. 2003:1:2:3:4:5:6:7
4. 2004:1:2:3:4:5:6:7
5. 2005:1:2:3:4:5:6:7
Please specify the number of an address to set up from a Connect Address List.

Input the number (0/1-5)> 2

IPv6 Gateway Address List :
0. Cancel
1. 2001:1000:120::1234:0
2. 2001:1000:120::1234:1111
3. 2001:1000:120::1234:6000
Please specify the number of an address to set up from an IPv6 Gateway Address List.

Input the number (0/1-3)> 2
```

The following example enables the multiple IP address setting:

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port 001 -multi-ip enable
```

The following example enables the information on virtual port #1 of iSCSI port #001, for which the multiple IP address setting is enabled:

```
CLI> set iscsi-parameters -port 001 -additional-ip 1 -additional-ip-function enable -ipv4-flag enable -ip 192.168.1.1 -
netmask 255.255.255.0
```

## Host Identifiers

---

This section explains commands related to the definition of host identifiers.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-wwn-names

## show host-wwn-names

This command displays a list of all the existing FC host identifiers.

### ■ Syntax

```
show host-wwn-names
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host nickname
WWN	World wide name
Host Response	Assigned host response identifiers
No.	Assigned host response number
Name	Assigned host response name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the existing host identifiers:

```
CLI> show host-wwn-names
      Host          WWN           Host Response
      No.   Name      No.   Name
      -----  -----
      0 HBA1      40000000abc80e38    0 Default
      1 HBA2      40000000abc80e00    0 Default
      2 HBA3      40000000abc80e01    0 Default
      3 HBA4      40000000abc80e02    0 Default
      4 HBA5      40000000abc80e03    0 Default
```

## create host-wwn-name

This command registers the host nicknames that corresponds to the WWN (World Wide Name) that identifies FC type HBAs (Host Bus Adapters). Only one WWN can be registered at the same time. The maximum number of available definitions depends on the number of available host interface ports and the model type. This command is used to register the host identifiers used for volume mapping.

### Syntax

```
create host-wwn-name -wwn wwn-name name
[-host-response-number host_response_number] [-host-response-name host_response_name]
[-host-group-number host_group_number] [-host-group-name host_group_name]
[-new-host-group-name new_host_group_name]
```

### Parameter

**-wwn** This parameter specifies the HBA WWN to be registered. The WWN is a 16-byte hexadecimal number.

Example: -wwn 40000000abc80e38

*wwn* World Wide Name

**-name** This parameter specifies the host nickname. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#) (page 26).

*name* Nickname

**-host-response-number or -host-response-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier. Two or more parameters cannot be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Response Syntax](#) (page 32).

*host\_response\_number* Host response number

*host\_response\_name* Host response name

**-host-group-number or -host-group-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host group number or the host group name. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Group Syntax](#) (page 32).

*host\_group\_number* Host group number

*host\_group\_name* Host group name

**-new-host-group-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies a new host group name. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Group Syntax](#) (page 32).

*new\_host\_group\_name* New host group name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > create host-wwn-name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example registers host alias "HBA1". The WWN is "e000000000e0e000" and host response #1 is assigned:

```
CLI> create host-wwn-name -wwn e000000000e0e000 -name HBA1 -host-response-number 1
```

The following example registers host alias "HBA1". The WWN is "e000000000e0e000". The registered host alias is added to host group "HG1":

```
CLI> create host-wwn-name -wwn e000000000e0e000 -name HBA1 -host-group-name HG1
```

The following example registers host alias "HBA1". The WWN is "e000000000e0e000" and host response #1 is assigned. The registered host alias is added to host group "HG2", which is created in host response #1:

```
CLI> create host-wwn-name -wwn e000000000e0e000 -name HBA1 -host-response-number 1 -new-host-group-name HG2
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set host-wwn-name

## set host-wwn-name

This command changes an existing FC host identifier.

### Syntax

```
set host-wwn-name {-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name} [-wwn wwn]  
[-name name] [-host-response-number host_response_number |  
-host-response-name host_response_name]
```

### Parameter

#### -host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the FC host identifier to be changed. Only if the host response identifier is being set, then two or more FC host identifiers can be specified at the same time. If not, then only one can be specified. For details, refer to "["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#)".

*host\_number*      FC host number

*host\_name*      FC host name

#### -wwn

Optional. This parameter specifies a new WWN for the HBA. The WWN is a 16-byte hexadecimal number. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -wwn 40000000abc78856

*wwn*      World Wide Name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host nickname. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#)". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*name*      Nickname

#### -host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier to be changed. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#)". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the host interface port whose setting is to be changed.

*host\_response\_number*      Host response number

*host\_response\_name*      Host response name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set host-wwn-name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the host response definition of the host named "HBA1":

```
CLI> set host-wwn-name -host-name HBA1 -host-response-number 2
```

The following example changes the host response definition of the FC hosts with consecutively numbered identifiers #1 – #10 at the same time:

```
CLI> set host-wwn-name -host-number 1-10 -host-response-number 5
```

The following example changes the host named "HBA1". The new alias is "HBA123":

```
CLI> set host-wwn-name -host-name HBA1 -name HBA123
```

## delete host-wwn-name

This command deletes existing FC host identifier(s).

### ■ Syntax

```
delete host-wwn-name {-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the FC host identifiers to be deleted. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_numbers*      FC host number  
*host\_names*      FC host name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the FC hosts with consecutively numbered identifiers #1-#3:

```
CLI> delete host-wwn-name -host-number 1-3
```

The following example only deletes the host named "HBA2":

```
CLI> delete host-wwn-name -host-name HBA2
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > discover host-wwn-names

## discover host-wwn-names

This command displays a list of the host World Wide Names (WWNs) discovered from the specified FC host interface ports.

### Syntax

```
discover host-wwn-names [-port {port_numbers | all | all-fc}]
```

### Parameter

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies the FC host interface ports to discover host WWN names. Two or more ports can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). If omitted, all the FC host interface ports are selected.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      FC host interface ports

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: 110 (CM#1-CA#1-Port#0)

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: 0123 (CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3)

**all**      All the FC host interface ports (default)

**all-fc**      All the FC host interface ports

### Output

Item name	Description
CM#x CA#y Port#z	Port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z	Port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Discovered World Wide Names

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the host WWNs discovered from all the FC host interface ports on CM#0 (for FC 4 port models):

```
CLI> discover host-wwn-names -port 000,011
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (FC-CA)
aabbccddeeff0011
aabbccddeeff0012
fffefffffefffff03
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-iscsi-names

## show host-iscsi-names

This command displays a list of the iSCSI hosts registered in the system. When iSCSI host identifiers are specified, iSCSI host details of the specified iSCSI host identifiers are displayed.

### Syntax

```
show host-iscsi-names [-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names]
```

### Parameter

-host-number or -host-name

Optional. This parameter specifies which iSCSI host identifier(s) details are to be displayed. One or more identifiers can be specified at the same time. If omitted, a summary list is displayed. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_numbers*      iSCSI host number  
*host\_names*      iSCSI host name

### Output

When the iSCSI host identifier parameter is omitted, then an iSCSI host summary list for all the iSCSI host identifiers is displayed.

Item name	Description
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host nickname
Host Response	Assigned host response identifiers
No.	Assigned host response number
Name	Assigned host response name
IP Address	IP address which corresponds to an HBA. If the IP address is not specified, the * mark is displayed. When the IP address format is IPv4, "* (IPv4)" is displayed. When the IP address format is IPv6, "* (IPv6)" is displayed.
iSCSI Name	Host iSCSI name
CmdSN Count	Number of commands that can be executed at the same time

When the iSCSI host identifier parameter is specified, the detailed information of the specified iSCSI host identifier is displayed.

Item name	Description
Host No.	Host number
Host Name	Host nickname
iSCSI Name	Host iSCSI name
Alias Name	Alias name which corresponds to the host
IP Address	IP address which corresponds to an HBA. If the IP address is not specified, the * mark is displayed. When the IP address format is IPv4, "* (IPv4)" is displayed. When the IP address format is IPv6, "* (IPv6)" is displayed.
Chap User Name	CHAP user name
Host Response No.	Assigned host response number

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-iscsi-names

Item name	Description
Host Response Name	Assigned host response name
CmdSN Count	Number of commands that can be executed at the same time

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the iSCSI host summary list:

"\*\*" mark on IP Address stands for any IP addresses:

```
CLI> show host-iscsi-names
Host No.          Host Response No.      IP Address           iSCSI Name          CmdSN Count
No.   Name          No.   Name
-----  -----
1 HBA-ISCSCI-001  1 HP01      192.168.1.1    ign.1991-05.com.microsoft  20
2 HBA-ISCSCI-002  1 HP01      2001:DB8::8:800:200C:417A  ign.1993-05.com.microsoft  120
3 HBA-ISCSCI-003  1 HP01      *(IPv6)            ign.1993-05.com.microsoft  Unlimited
```

The following example displays the iSCSI host details of the host named "HBA1":

```
CLI> show host-iscsi-names -host-name HBA1
Host No.          1
Host Name         HBA1
iSCSI Name        ign.1991-05.com.microsoft
Alias Name        IQN-DXL
IP Address        10.1.1.1
Chap User Name    User01
Host Response No. 1
Host Response Name HP01
CmdSN Count       180
```

## create host-iscsi-name

This command registers a host alias for the iSCSI (internet Small Computer System Interface) name and the IP address used to identify an iSCSI-type HBA (Host Bus Adapter).

Only one iSCSI name can be specified at a time. The maximum number of available definitions depends on the number of available host interface ports and the model type. This command is used to register the host identifiers used for volume mapping.

The following three types of parameters are used for registering an iSCSI identifier:

1. -iscsi-name. This parameter is used to specify the name that corresponds to a HBA.
2. -alias-name. This parameter is used to specify an alias for the "-iscsi-name" parameter.
3. -name. This parameter is used to specify the nickname. A unique name can be used.

### Syntax

```
create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iscsi_name [-alias-name alias_name]
[-ip-version {ipv4 | ipv6}] [-ip ip_address] -name name [-chap-user chap_user]
[-host-response-number host_response_number] [-host-response-name host_response_name]
[-cmdsn-count {unlimited | 20 | 40 | 80 | 120 | 180}]
[-host-group-number host_group_number] [-host-group-name host_group_name]
[-new-host-group-name new_host_group_name]
```

### Parameter

#### -iscsi-name

This parameter specifies the iSCSI name that corresponds to a HBA.

- Between 4 and 223 alphanumerical characters, including hyphens (-), dots (.), and colons (:), can be used.
- "iqn." or "eui." must be added in front of the character string.
- Characters are not case-sensitive.

*iscsi\_name* iSCSI name

#### -alias-name

Optional. This parameter specifies an alias to the iSCSI name that corresponds to the "-iscsi-name" parameter. A maximum of 31 alphanumeric characters can be used. Usable characters are those given in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). Commas (,) cannot be used.

*alias\_name* Alias name of the iSCSI name

**-ip-version** Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address format for the host that is to be registered. If omitted, it is handled as if "ipv4" is specified.

ipv4	IPv4 format
ipv6	IPv6 format

**-ip** Optional. This parameter specifies an IP address for the corresponding HBA. Only IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) and IPv6 format are allowed for the character string. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > create host-iscsi-name

Example: -ip 192.168.1.10

Example: -ip fe80::223:4567:89ab:cdef

If omitted, any IP addresses are allowed. With the same iSCSI name designation, a specific IP address is distinguished from the omitted one.

*ip\_address* IP address for the corresponding HBA

-name This parameter specifies the iSCSI host nickname. For details, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#).

*name* iSCSI host nickname

-chap-user Optional. When using CHAP authentication, this parameter is used to specify a CHAP user name. Up to 255 alphanumerical characters and symbols can be used. If this parameter is specified, then the command displays a CHAP user password prompt.

*chap\_user* CHAP user name

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies a host response identifier. Only one identifier can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_response\_number* Host response number

*host\_response\_name* Host response name

-cmdsn-count

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of commands that can be executed at the same time.

unlimited Unlimited

20 20 commands

40 40 commands

80 80 commands

120 120 commands

180 180 commands

-host-group-number or -host-group-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host group identifier. The "-host-group-number" or the "-host-group-name" parameter must be specified. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_group\_number* Host group number

*host\_group\_name* Host group name

-new-host-group-name

Optional. This parameter specifies a new host group name. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*new\_host\_group\_name* New host group name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > create host-iscsi-name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example registers the nickname "HBA1" for the iSCSI host "iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft", and the iSCSI ip address "10.111.10.1". The host response number #1 is also assigned:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -ip 10.111.10.1 -name HBA1 -host-response-number 1
```

The following example registers an iSCSI host to both of the HBAs that are in a single server. The iSCSI name is the property of the server and is the same for both HBAs. Each HBA has a different IP address. The following commands register "HBA11" and "HBA12" as the respective nickname for each HBA. When two iSCSI HBAs are used, the iSCSI names will also be different:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -ip 10.1.0.1 -name HBA11  
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -ip 10.1.1.1 -name HBA12
```

The following example registers the nickname "HBA1" for the iSCSI host "iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft", and any IP addresses are allowed by omitting the "-ip" parameter:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -name HBA1
```

In addition to the above example, IP addresses with the same iSCSI name can be specified as a different nickname:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -name HBA1  
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -ip 10.1.0.1 -name HBA2
```

The following example registers the nickname "HBA1" for the iSCSI host "iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft". The registered host nickname is added to host group "HG1":

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -name HBA1 -host-group-name HG1
```

The following example registers the nickname "HBA1" for the iSCSI host "iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft". The registered host nickname is added to host group "HG2", which is created in host response #1:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv4 -name HBA1 -host-group-name HG1
```

The following example registers nickname "HBA1" for iSCSI host "iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft", and iSCSI IP address "fe80::223:4567:89ab:cdef", which is using standard IPv6 notation. Host response number #1 is also assigned:

```
CLI> create host-iscsi-name -iscsi-name iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft -ip-version ipv6 -ip fe80::223:4567:89ab:cdef -name HBA1 -host-response-number 1
```

## set host-iscsi-name

This command changes the details of an existing iSCSI host.

### Caution

If the iSCSI name is the same for the iSCSI host with an IP address setting as the iSCSI host without an IP address setting (any IP address), the setting for the relevant iSCSI name cannot be changed.

### Syntax

```
set host-iscsi-name {-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name} [-iscsi-name iscsi_name]  
[-alias-name alias_name] [-ip-version {ipv4 | ipv6}] [-ip ip_address] [-name name]  
[-chap-user {chap_user | ""}]  
[-host-response-number host_response_number] [-host-response-name host_response_name]  
[-cmdsn-count {unlimited | 20 | 40 | 80 | 120 | 180}]
```

### Parameter

#### -host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the host whose details are to be changed. If only the host response identifier is being set, then one or more identifiers can be specified at the same time. If not, then only one host identifier can be specified. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_number*      iSCSI host number

*host\_name*      iSCSI host name

**-iscsi-name**    Optional. This parameter specifies the iSCSI name that corresponds to an HBA. Between 4 and 223 alphanumeric characters, including hyphens (-), dots (.), and colons (:), can be used. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Only one name can be specified at the same time.

*iscsi\_name*    iSCSI name

**-alias-name**    Optional. This parameter specifies an alias to the iSCSI name that corresponds to the "-iscsi-name" parameter. A maximum of 31 alphanumeric characters can be used. Usable characters are those given in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). Commas (,) cannot be used. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Only one name can be specified at the same time.

*alias\_name*    Alias name which corresponds to the iSCSI name

**-ip-version**    Optional. This parameter specifies the format of the IP address after the setting change. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If this parameter is omitted and the "-ip" parameter is specified, a parameter value that corresponds to the format of the IP address that is specified for the "-ip" parameter is specified.

ipv4      IPv4 format

ipv6      IPv6 format

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

#### Host Interface Management > set host-iscsi-name

**-ip**      Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address for the HBA using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 format. This parameter can also change the IP address format to a different format, such as from IPv4 to IPv6. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Only one IP address can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -ip 192.168.1.10

Example: -ip fe80::223:4567:89ab:cdef

When changing the access from a specific IP address to any IP address, delete relevant host name using the "delete host-iscsi-name" command, and then create the same host name again using the "create host-iscsi-name" command (without specifying the "-ip" parameter).

*ip\_address*    IP address for the HBA

**-name**      Optional. This parameter specifies the new iSCSI host nickname. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" ([page 26](#)). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Only one name can be specified at the same time.

*name*        iSCSI host nickname

**-chap-user**    Optional. When using CHAP authentication, this parameter is used to specify a CHAP user name. Up to 255 alphanumerical characters and some symbols can be used. If this parameter is specified, then the command displays a CHAP user password prompt. To delete an existing CHAP user name, specify a NULL character (""). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Only one user can be specified at the same time.

*chap\_user*    CHAP user name

""                The existing CHAP user name is deleted.

**-host-response-number** or **-host-response-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier. One or more identifiers can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Response Syntax](#)" ([page 32](#)). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

To change the setting of this parameter, stop the host access that is connected to the host interface port whose setting is to be changed.

*host\_response\_number*    Host response number

*host\_response\_name*    Host response name

**-cmdsn-count**

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of commands that can be executed at the same time.

unlimited    Unlimited

20            20 commands

40            40 commands

80            80 commands

120          120 commands

180          180 commands

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set host-iscsi-name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the host named "HBA21", assigning it the new IP address "10.1.1.2" (the IP address format can also be changed to a different format, such as from IPv4 to IPv6):

```
CLI> set host-iscsi-name -host-name HBA21 -ip 10.1.1.2
```

The following example changes the host named "HBA21", assigning it host response number "2":

```
CLI> set host-iscsi-name -host-name HBA21 -host-response-number 2
```

The following example changes the host response definition of all the hosts with consecutively numbered identifiers #1-#10 at the same time:

```
CLI> set host-iscsi-name -host-number 1-10 -host-response-number 5
```

The following example changes the host named "HBA21". The new nickname is "HBA22" and the number of commands that can be accepted at the same time is 80.

```
CLI> set host-iscsi-name -host-name HBA21 -name HBA22 -cmdsn-count 80
```

The following example changes the format of the 0 (almighty) IP address for a host to IPv6 (IP address for HBA21 = 0.0.0.0):

```
CLI> set host-iscsi-name -host-name HBA21 -ip-version ipv6
```

## delete host-iscsi-name

This command deletes existing iSCSI host identifier(s).

### ■ Syntax

```
delete host-iscsi-name {-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the iSCSI host identifiers to be deleted. One or more identifiers can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

<i>host_numbers</i>	iSCSI host number
<i>host_names</i>	iSCSI host name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the iSCSI hosts with consecutively numbered identifiers #1 - #3:

```
CLI> delete host-iscsi-name -host-number 1-3
```

The following example only deletes the host named "HBA2":

```
CLI> delete host-iscsi-name -host-name HBA2
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > discover host-iscsi-names

## discover host-iscsi-names

This command displays a list of the iSCSI host names that have been discovered for the specified iSCSI port(s). The iSCSI parameters must be set up first using the "set iscsi-parameters" command.

### Caution

- An iSNS server definition must be set to use this command.
- Even if an iSNS server is defined, expected IP addresses may not be displayed.
  - If multiple hosts run one of the following host OSs, have an identical iSCSI name, and have different IP addresses, the IP address of only one of the hosts can be displayed.
    - Windows Server 2008 R2
    - Windows Server 2008
    - Solaris 10
  - Host information cannot be displayed if the host is running Solaris 11.

## Syntax

```
discover host-iscsi-names [-port {port_numbers | all}] [-additional-ip additional-ip]
```

## Parameter

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies the iSCSI interface port(s) to discover host iSCSI names. One or more host interface ports can be specified at the same time. If this parameter is omitted, the hosts that are discovered for all the iSCSI interface ports are displayed.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      iSCSI host interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "120" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#0

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0120" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#0

**all**      All the iSCSI host interface ports (default)

**-additional-ip**

Optional. This parameter specifies the virtual port information number that is set for the target port. Multiple numbers can be specified by inserting commas between them. This parameter requires the "-port" parameter to be specified. However, this parameter cannot be specified when multiple ports or the "all" option cannot be specified for the "-port" parameter.

If this parameter is omitted, "0" (this indicates the actual port) is set for the value of this parameter.

*additional-ip*      Virtual port information number (1 – 15)

**all**      All virtual port information numbers

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > discover host-iscsi-names

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
CM#x CA#y Port#z	The target host interface port (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z	The target host interface port (only for the DX8900 S4)
Alias	The alias of the iSCSI host discovered
iSCSI Name	The discovered iSCSI name
IP Address	The IP address of the discovered iSCSI host
Additional IP	The virtual port information number (1 – 15)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the iSCSI hosts that are discovered for the iSCSI host interface ports #0 and #1 on CM#0 CA#0:

```
CLI> discover host-iscsi-names -port 000,011
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
Alias          iSCSI Name           IP Address
-----
IQN-DXL1      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft 2001::123:1234:2309:0001

CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
Alias          iSCSI Name           IP Address
-----
IQN-DXL1      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft 10.17.31.234
IQN-DXL2      iqn.1993-05.com.microsoft 2001::123:1234:2309:0102
```

The following example displays when a virtual port information number is specified:

```
CLI> discover host-iscsi-names -port 000 -additional-ip 1
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
Alias          iSCSI Name           IP Address
-----
IQN-DXL1      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft 2001::123:1234:2309:0001

<Additional IP List>
Additional IP 1
Alias          iSCSI Name           IP Address
-----
IQN-DXL1      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft 10.17.31.234
IQN-DXL2      iqn.1993-05.com.microsoft 2001::123:1234:2309:0102
```

## Volume Access Permission Setting with the Host Affinity Setting

---

This section explains the commands used to set the volume access permission with the host affinity setting. To set the volume access permission mode for a host or host group, the Host Affinity Mode must be enabled for the host interface port. In addition, a LUN group must be created in advance. The target host can be specified with a host group and the target host interface port can be specified with a port group. For host interface ports that do not have the Host Affinity Mode enabled, a host or host group cannot be specified. Only host interface ports or port groups can be associated with LUN groups.

## show host-affinity

This command displays the details of the host affinity settings that have been created. The target host affinity settings can be displayed by specifying LUN groups, port groups, host groups, host identifiers or host interface ports.

### Syntax

```
show host-affinity [-port {port_numbers | all}]  
[-ag-number ag_numbers | -ag-name ag_names | -lg-number lg_numbers | -lg-name lg_names]  
[-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names]  
[-port-group-number port_group_number | -port-group-name port_group_name]  
[-host-group-number host_group_number | -host-group-name host_group_name]
```

### Parameter

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies the host interface ports to be narrowed down. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). If omitted, all the host interface ports are selected.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to "[Host Interface Port Syntax \(page 33\)](#)".

*port\_numbers*      Host interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

*all*      All the host interface ports (default)

**-ag-number or -ag-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the affinity group identifiers to be narrowed down. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[LUN Group Syntax \(page 34\)](#)". If omitted, this parameter is ignored.

#### Caution

Specifying this parameter is not recommended. Specify the "-lg-number" parameter or the "-lg-name" parameter instead.

*ag\_numbers*      Affinity group number

*ag\_names*      Affinity group name

**-lg-number or -lg-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the LUN group identifiers to be narrowed down. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[LUN Group Syntax \(page 34\)](#)". If omitted, this parameter is ignored.

*lg\_numbers*      LUN group number

*lg\_names*      LUN group name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-affinity

-host-number or -host-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host identifiers to be narrowed down. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#). If omitted, this parameter is ignored.

*host\_numbers*      Host number  
*host\_names*      Host group name

-port-group-number or -port-group-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the port group identifiers to be narrowed down. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Port Group Syntax" \(page 33\)](#). If omitted, this parameter is ignored.

*port\_group\_number*      Port group number  
*port\_group\_name*      Port group name

-host-group-number or -host-group-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host group identifiers to be narrowed down. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#). If omitted, this parameter is ignored.

*host\_group\_number*      Host group number  
*host\_group\_name*      Host group name

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
CM#x CA#y Port#z	Port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z	Port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers
No.	LUN group number
Name	LUN group name
LUN Overlap Volumes	Indicates whether the same volume identifier is defined between LUN groups or that a LUN mapping is set for the volume. If the same definitions exist, "Yes" is displayed for the target LUN groups. Otherwise, "No" is displayed.
LUN Mask Group No.	LUN mask group number If there is no association, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

- When a host affinity is set for the port group (Host Affinity Mode is enabled).

Item name	Description
Port Group	Port group identifiers
No.	Port group number
Name	Port group name

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Host Interface Management > show host-affinity

Item name	Description
Host Group	Host group identifiers
No.	Host group number
Name	Host group name
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers
No.	LUN group number
Name	LUN group name
LUN Overlap Volumes	Indicates whether the same volume identifier is defined between LUN groups or that a LUN mapping is set for the volume. If the same definitions exist, "Yes" is displayed for the target LUN groups. Otherwise, "No" is displayed.
LUN Mask Group No.	LUN mask group number If there is no association, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Connection List	List of connections
Port	Port number
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name

- When a host affinity is set for the port group (Host Affinity Mode is disabled).

Item name	Description
Port Group	Port group identifiers
No.	Port group number
Name	Port group name
Host Group	Host group identifiers
No.	Host group number
Name	Host group name
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers
No.	LUN group number
Name	LUN group name
LUN Overlap Volumes	Indicates whether the same volume identifier is defined between LUN groups or that a LUN mapping is set for the volume. If the same definitions exist, "Yes" is displayed for the target LUN groups. Otherwise, "No" is displayed.
Port List	List of ports
CM#x CA#y Port#z	Port number

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-affinity

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays all of the existing host affinity settings:

```
CLI> show host-affinity
Port Group          Host Group          LUN Group          LUN Overlap
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Volumes
----- -----
1 pg1              0 hg               0 lg1              No
<Connection List>
  Port             Host
    No.   Name
  -----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      -
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1      0 A
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1      1 B

Port Group          Host Group          LUN Group          LUN Overlap
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Volumes
----- -----
2 pg01             1 FC               1 lg2              No
<Connection List>
  Port             Host
    No.   Name
  -----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      -
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1      7 FC#2

Port Group          Host Response       LUN Group          LUN Mask
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Group No.
----- -----
4 pg04             0 Default          10 lg2             -
<Port List>
  CM#1 CA#1 Port#0
  CM#1 CA#1 Port#1

CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group          LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No. Name       No. Name           Volumes     Group No.
----- -----
8 FC#3          0 lg1              No          0

CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
CM#1 CA#1 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-affinity

The following example displays all of the existing host affinity settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-affinity
Port Group          Host Group          LUN Group          LUN Overlap
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Volumes
-----  

1 pg1              0 hg               0 lg1             No
<Connection List>
  Port            Host
    No.   Name
-----  

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  -
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1  0 A
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1  1 B

Port Group          Host Group          LUN Group          LUN Overlap
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Volumes
-----  

2 pg01             1 FC              1 lg2             No
<Connection List>
  Port            Host
    No.   Name
-----  

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  -
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1  7 FC#2

Port Group          Host Response      LUN Group          LUN Mask
No. Name           No. Name           No. Name           Group No.
-----  

4 pg04             0 Default         10 lg2            0
<Port List>
  CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0
  CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group          LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No. Name       No. Name           Volumes   Group No.
-----  

8 FC#3          0 lg1             No                 0

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
```

The following example displays all of the mappings that is set to host interface port CA#0 Port#1 on CM#0:

```
CLI> show host-affinity -port 001
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group          LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No. Name       No. Name           Volumes   Group No.
-----  

1 HBA1         4 LUN004          No                 0
```

The following example only displays the mapping that is set to LUN group #4:

```
CLI> show host-affinity -lg-number 4
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group          LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No. Name       No. Name           Volumes   Group No.
-----  

1 HBA1         4 LUN004          No                 0

Host          LUN Group          LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No. Name       No. Name           Volumes   Group No.
-----  

1 HBA1         4 LUN004          No                 0
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-affinity

The following example only displays the mapping that is set to the host named "HBA5":

```
CLI> show host-affinity -host-name HBA5
CM#1 CA#1 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group      LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No.  Name       No.  Name      Volumes    Group No.
-----  -----
5  HBA5        6  LUN006      No           0
```

The following is an example of LUN Overlap volumes. This means the same volume identifier in the "LUN001" LUN group is defined in the "LUN002" LUN group. In this case, "Yes" is displayed for both the "LUN001" and "LUN002" LUN groups. In other LUN groups, "No" is displayed:

```
CLI> show host-affinity -port 000
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)
Host          LUN Group      LUN Overlap LUN Mask
No.  Name       No.  Name      Volumes    Group No.
-----  -----
1  HBA1        1  LUN001      Yes          0
2  HBA2        2  LUN002      Yes          -
3  HBA3        3  LUN003      No           0
```

## set host-affinity

This command configures a host affinity setting. A host affinity setting allows control of the volume access permission for hosts. The maximum number of host affinity settings depends on the number of available host interface ports and the system model.

### Syntax

```
set host-affinity
{-ag-number ag_numbers | -ag-name ag_names | -lg-number lg_numbers | -lg-name lg_names}
[-port port_numbers]
[-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names]
[-port-group-number port_group_number | -port-group-name port_group_name]
[-host-group-number host_group_numbers | -host-group-name host_group_names | -host-response-number host_response_number | -host-response-name host_response_name]
```

### Parameter

#### -ag-number or -ag-name

This parameter specifies the affinity group identifiers that will be associated. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["LUN Group Syntax" \(page 34\)](#). If two or more affinity groups are specified, the associated host identifier parameters must be specified in the same order.

##### Caution

Specifying this parameter is not recommended. Specify the "-lg-number" parameter or the "-lg-name" parameter instead.

*ag\_numbers* Affinity group number

*ag\_names* Affinity group name

#### -lg-number or -lg-name

This parameter specifies the LUN group identifiers that will be associated. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["LUN Group Syntax" \(page 34\)](#). If two or more LUN groups are specified, the associated host identifier parameters must be specified in the same order.

*lg\_numbers* LUN group number

If the specified LUN group is assigned 512 or more LUNs, the number of hosts that can be connected to each CA port is decreased.

*lg\_names* LUN group name

**-port** This parameter specifies the host interface port to associate LUN groups and hosts with. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

**-host-number or -host-name**

This parameter specifies the host identifiers to be associated. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#). If two or more host identifiers are specified, the LUN group identifier parameters must be specified in the same order.

*host\_numbers* Host number

*host\_names* Host name

**-port-group-number or -port-group-name**

This parameter specifies the port group number or the port group name. Only one port group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Port Group Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_group\_number* Port group number

*port\_group\_name* Port group name

**-host-group-number, -host-group-name, -host-response-number, or -host-response-name**

This parameter specifies the host group identifier or the host response identifier. Only one host group or host response can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#) and ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_group\_numbers* Host group number

*host\_group\_names* Host group name

*host\_response\_number* Host response number

*host\_response\_name* Host response name

The available combinations for optional parameters are shown below.

Parameter	-port	-lg-number (-ag-number)	-lg-name (-ag-name)	-host-number	-host-name	-port-group-number	-port-group-name	-host-group-number	-host-group-name	-host-response-number	-host-response-name
-port	—	* (*1)		*	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
-lg-number (-ag-number)	R	—	No	*	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
-lg-name (-ag-name)	R	No	—	*	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
-host-number	R	* (*1)		—	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
-host-name	R	* (*1)		No	—	No	No	No	No	No	No
-port-group-number	No	*		No	No	—	No	*			
-port-group-name	No	*		No	No	No	—	*			
-host-group-number	No	*		No	No	*		—	No	No	No
-host-group-name	No	*		No	No	*		No	—	No	No
-host-response-number	No	* (*2)		No	No	*		No	No	—	No
-host-response-name	No	* (*2)		No	No	*		No	No	No	—

No: Not available, R: Required, Yes: Available (the options can be omitted), \*: Either one of these options must be specified

- \*1: Both of the parameter combinations can be omitted when a path is set in a host affinity that is already set with a port group. Therefore, an error occurs when a LUN group is not specified and the port group and the host group are not associated with the host affinity setting.
- \*2: The "-lg-number" parameter or the "-lg-name" parameter cannot be specified when LUN mapping is already set with a port group and the host response for LUN mapping will be changed. Therefore, a host response must be specified when a LUN group is not specified ("Default" must be specified to set the default host response).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the relationship between host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#0, LUN group #1, and host #1:

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 000 -lg-number 1 -host-number 1
```

The following example sets the relationship between host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CE#0 CM#0, LUN group #1, and host #1 (DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 0000 -lg-number 1 -host-number 1
```

The following example sets the relationship between host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#1, LUN groups #1 – #3, and hosts #1 – #3:

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 100 -lg-number 1-3 -host-number 1-3
```

The following example sets the relationship between the same LUN group #1 and both host #1 and #2:

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 000 -lg-number 1 -host-number 1,2
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set host-affinity

The following example sets the relationship between the host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#1 and CA#0 Port#1 on CM#1, the LUN group named "LUN001", and the host named "HBA001":

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 100,101 -lg-name LUN001 -host-name HBA001
```

(identical with the following)

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 100 -lg-name LUN001 -host-name HBA001
```

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port 101 -lg-name LUN001 -host-name HBA001
```

The following example sets the relationship between the port group named "PG001", the LUN group named "LUN001", and the host group named "HG001":

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port-group-name PG001 -lg-name LUN001 -host-group-name HG001
```

The following example sets the relationship between port group #1, all of the hosts, and LUN group #1. Host response #1 is assigned to port group #1:

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port-group-number 1 -lg-number 1 -host-response-number 1
```

The following example sets the relationship between port group #1, all of the hosts, and affinity group #1. Host response #1 is assigned to port group #1:

```
CLI> set host-affinity -port-group-number 1 -ag-number 1 -host-response-number 1
```

## copy host-affinity

This command copies the affinity setting from one specified host interface port to another port. This command cannot be used when Host Affinity Mode is disabled for the host interface port.

### Syntax

```
copy host-affinity -source-port source_port_number
                   -destination-port {destination_port_numbers | all}
```

### Parameter

#### -source-port

This parameter specifies the host interface port of the copy source. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time.

Example: source-port 000

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*source\_port\_number*      Host interface port of the copy source

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only)  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the control enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only)  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

#### -destination-port

This parameter specifies the host interface ports of the copy destination. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -destination-port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

If "all" is selected, all of the host interface ports will be changed.

*destination\_port\_number*      Host interface port of the copy destination

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only)  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the control enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only)  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*all*      All the ports with the same type as the port that is specified using the "-source-port" parameter.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example copies the host affinity definition from host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#0 to host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#1:

```
CLI> copy host-affinity -source-port 000 -destination-port 100
```

The following example copies the host affinity definition from host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CE#0 CM#0 to host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CE#0 CM#1 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> copy host-affinity -source-port 0000 -destination-port 0100
```

The following example copies the host affinity definition from host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#0 to all the host interface ports:

```
CLI> copy host-affinity -source-port 000 -destination-port all
```

## release host-affinity

This command releases the host affinity setting. This command cannot be used when Host Affinity Mode is disabled for the host interface port.

### Caution

To delete the settings of a currently operating host affinity, stop access from hosts that are associated with that host affinity.

### Syntax

```
release host-affinity
{-port {port_numbers [-host-number host_numbers] | -host-name host_names] | all} |
 {-port-group-number port_group_number} | -port-group-name port_group_name}
 {-host-group-number host_group_number} | -host-group-name host_group_name}
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the host interface ports to be released. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

If this parameter is specified together with the host identifier, only the mapping definition for the specified host identifiers is released.

*port\_numbers* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

**all** All the host interface ports.

The settings for all of the ports are released. When this parameter is specified, the "-host-number" or "-host-name" parameter cannot be specified.

**-host-number or -host-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host identifiers that are released from the host identifiers of the specified host interface port. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. If omitted, all definitions of the specified host interface ports are released.

*host\_numbers* Host number

*host\_names* Host name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > release host-affinity

-port-group-number or -port-group-name

This parameter specifies the port group number or the port group name. Only one port group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Port Group Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_group\_number*      Port group number

*port\_group\_name*      Port group name

-host-group-number or -host-group-name

This parameter specifies the host group number or the host group name. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_group\_number*      Host group number

*host\_group\_name*      Host group name

The available combinations for optional parameters are shown below.

Parameter	-port	port_numbers	-port	all	-host-number	-host-name	-port-group-number	-port-group-name	-host-group-number	-host-group-name
-port port_numbers	—	—	—	—	**	No	No	No	No	No
-port all	—	—	—	—	No	No	No	No	No	No
-host-number	R	No	—	—	No	No	No	No	No	No
-host-name	R	No	No	No	—	No	No	No	No	No
-port-group-number	No	No	No	No	No	—	No	—	**	**
-port-group-name	No	No	No	No	No	No	—	—	**	**
-host-group-number	No	No	No	No	No	—	—	—	—	No
-host-group-name	No	No	No	No	No	—	—	No	—	—

No: Not available, R: Required, Yes: Available (the options can be omitted), \*: Either one of these options must be specified,  
\*\*: Either one of these options is available

## ■ Example(s)

The following example releases all of the host affinity settings that have been made on host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#1:

```
CLI> release host-affinity -port 100
```

The following example only releases the host affinity settings of the host named "H1" on CA#0 Port#1 on CM#0:

```
CLI> release host-affinity -port 001 -host-name H1
```

The following example releases the host affinity settings of the host named "H1" on host interfaces CA#1 Port#0 and CA#1 Port#1 on CM#0:

```
CLI> release host-affinity -port 010,011 -host-name H1
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > release host-affinity

The following example respectively releases the host affinity settings of the host named "H1" and "H2" on CA#0 Port#0 and CA#0 Port#1 on CM#1:

```
CLI> release host-affinity -port 100,101 -host-name H1,H2
```

The following example respectively releases the host affinity settings of host #1 and #2 on the host interface CA#0 Port#0 on CM#0:

```
CLI> release host-affinity -port 000 -host-number 1,2
```

## Volume Access Permission Setting without the Host Affinity Setting

---

This section explains the commands used to set volume access permission without the host affinity setting. To set the volume access permission mode for a host interface port, the Host Affinity Mode must be disabled for the host interface port.

The volume access permission cannot be set for hosts or host groups.

In addition, host groups, port groups, and LUN groups are not specifiable.

## show mapping

This command displays the information on LUNs that are associated with host interface ports. Individual volumes or host interface ports can be specified to display the target information. This command cannot be used when Host Affinity Mode for the host interface port is enabled.

### Syntax

```
show mapping [-port {port_numbers | all}]  
[-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
```

### Parameter

-port      Optional. This parameter specifies the host interface ports. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). If omitted, all the host interface ports are displayed.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      Host interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

all      All the host interface ports (default)

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If omitted, all the volume identifiers are displayed.

*volume\_numbers*      Volume number

*volume\_names*      Volume name

### Output

Item name	Description
CM#x CA#y Port#z (Host Affinity Mode Disable)	Host interface port (with the Host Affinity Mode disabled) (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z (Host Affinity Mode Disable)	Host interface port (with the Host Affinity Mode disabled) (only for the DX8900 S4)
LUN	Logical unit number (LUN)
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show mapping

Item name	Description
Status	Volume status
Size(MB)	Volume size

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays all of the existing mappings:

```
CLI> show mapping
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status      Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0    0 OLU#0          Available   256
1    1 OLU#1          Available   256
2    2 OLU#2          Available   256
3    3 OLU#3          Available   256
4    4 OLU#4          Available   256
5    5 OLU#5          Available   256
6    6 OLU#6          Available   256
7    7 OLU#7          Available   256

CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)

CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status      Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0    0 OLU#0          Available   256
1    1 OLU#1          Available   256
2    2 OLU#2          Available   256
3    3 OLU#3          Available   256
4    4 OLU#4          Available   256
5    5 OLU#5          Available   256
6    6 OLU#6          Available   256
7    7 OLU#7          Available   256

CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status      Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0    0 OLU#0          Available   256
1    1 OLU#1          Available   256
2    2 OLU#2          Available   256
3    3 OLU#3          Available   256
4    4 OLU#4          Available   256
5    5 OLU#5          Available   256
6    6 OLU#6          Available   256
7    7 OLU#7          Available   256
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show mapping

The following example displays all of the existing mappings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show mapping
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256
1     1 OLU#1         Available        256
2     2 OLU#2         Available        256
3     3 OLU#3         Available        256
4     4 OLU#4         Available        256
5     5 OLU#5         Available        256
6     6 OLU#6         Available        256
7     7 OLU#7         Available        256

CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)

CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256
1     1 OLU#1         Available        256
2     2 OLU#2         Available        256
3     3 OLU#3         Available        256
4     4 OLU#4         Available        256
5     5 OLU#5         Available        256
6     6 OLU#6         Available        256
7     7 OLU#7         Available        256

CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256
1     1 OLU#1         Available        256
2     2 OLU#2         Available        256
3     3 OLU#3         Available        256
4     4 OLU#4         Available        256
5     5 OLU#5         Available        256
6     6 OLU#6         Available        256
7     7 OLU#7         Available        256
```

The following example only displays the mappings associated with the volume named "VOL001":

```
CLI> show mapping -volume-number 0
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256

CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Enable)

CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256

CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 (Host Affinity Mode Disable)
LUN  Volume          Status           Size(MB)
No.   Name
-----
0     0 OLU#0         Available        256
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show mapping

The following example displays the mappings associated with host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#0:

LUN	Volume No.	Name	Status	Size(MB)
0	0	OLU#0	Available	256
1	1	OLU#1	Available	256
2	2	OLU#2	Available	256
3	3	OLU#3	Available	256
4	4	OLU#4	Available	256
5	5	OLU#5	Available	256
6	6	OLU#6	Available	256
7	7	OLU#7	Available	256

## set mapping

This command sets the volume access permission without the host affinity setting. The specified volumes are associated with the host LUNs (logical unit number) via the specified host interface port. This command cannot be used when the Host Affinity Mode of the host interface port is enabled.

### ■ Syntax

```
set mapping -port {port_numbers}  
{-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names} -lun /luns
```

### ■ Parameter

-port      This parameter specifies the host interface ports to associate with volumes and host LUNs. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      Host interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies volumes identifiers to be associated. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If two or more host LUNs are specified, these parameters must be specified in the same order.

Example:

-volume-number 10-12 -lun 1-3

→ Volume #10 and LUN 1 are pairs.

→ Volume #11 and LUN 2 are pairs.

→ Volume #12 and LUN 3 are pairs.

-volume-name v1,v2 -lun 1-2

→ Volume "v1" and LUN 1 are pairs.

→ Volume "v2" and LUN 2 are pairs.

*volume\_numbers*      Volume number

*volume\_names*      Volume name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set mapping

**-lun** This parameter specifies the host LUNs to be associated. If two or more volumes are specified, these parameters must be specified in the same order. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,), a hyphen (-), or both.

Example: -lun 1,2 -lun 0-10 -lun 1,2-9

*luns* Host LUN

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the relationship between host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#1, the volume named "VOL001", and LUN #1:

```
CLI> set mapping -port 010 -volume-name VOL001 -lun 1
```

The following example sets the relationship between host interface port #0 and #1 on CM#0 CA#0, the volume named "VOL002", and LUN #2:

```
CLI> set mapping -port 000,001 -volume-name VOL002 -lun 2  
(identical with the following)  
CLI> set mapping -port 000 -volume-name VOL002 -lun 2  
CLI> set mapping -port 001 -volume-name VOL002 -lun 2
```

The following example sets the relationship between host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#0, volumes #0 – #9, and LUNs #0 – #9:

```
CLI> set mapping -port 000 -volume-number 0-9 -lun 0-9
```

The following example displays the results when the specified volumes #101 and #102 belong to different ports or groups:

```
CLI> set mapping -port 000 -volume-number 101-105 -lun 0-9  
Warning: The following volumes have been linked with other group(s) and/or port(s).  
Volume Number [101,102]
```

## copy mapping

This command copies the access permission setting that is set with the "set mapping" command from one host interface port to another host interface port.

This command cannot be used for any of the following cases.

- The Host Affinity Mode of the specified host interface port is enabled.
- The host interface port of the copy destination is set with host affinity or set with access permission using the "set mapping" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
copy mapping -source-port source_port_number-destination-port {destination_port_numbers | all}
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -source-port

This parameter specifies the host interface port of the copy source. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time.

Example: -source-port 000

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*source\_port\_number* Host interface port of the copy source

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only)  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the control enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only)  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

#### -destination-port

This parameter specifies the host interface ports to be released. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -destination-port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

If "all" is selected, all of the host interface ports will be changed.

*destination\_port\_number* Host interface port of the copy destination

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only)  
Example: "110" indicates CM#1-CA#1-Port#0.

*wxyz* "w" is the control enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only)  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*all* All the host interface port

## ■ Example(s)

The following example copies the mapping definition from host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#0 to host interface port #0 on CM#1 CA#0:

```
CLI> copy mapping -source-port 000 -destination-port 100
```

The following example copies the mapping definition from host interface port #0 on CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 to host interface port #0 on CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> copy mapping -source-port 0000 -destination-port 0100
```

The following example copies the mapping definition from host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#0 to host interface ports #0 and #1 on CM#1 CA#1:

```
CLI> copy mapping -source-port 000 -destination-port 110,111
```

## release mapping

This command releases the access permission setting that is set with the "set mapping" command. This command cannot be used when Host Affinity Mode for the host interface port is enabled.

### Caution

Stop the host access that is connected to the host interface port to be released.

### Syntax

```
release mapping -port {port_numbers | all} [-lun /luns]
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the host interface ports to be released. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

If the following LUN parameter is omitted, all mappings associated with the specified host interface port are released. If this parameter is specified together with a LUN parameter, then only the mapping definition of the host interface port and the specified LUN is released.

**port\_numbers** Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

**all** All the host interface ports

**-lun** Optional. This parameter specifies which specific LUN mappings will be released from the mapping associations. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,), a hyphen (-), or both. If omitted, all the definitions of the specified host interface port are deleted.

Example: -lun 1,2 -lun 1-3 -lun 1-3.5

*/luns* LUN

## ■ Example(s)

The following example releases all of the mapping that is set to host interface port #0 on CM#0 CA#0:

```
CLI> release mapping -port 000
```

The following example only releases the mapping definition of LUN #2 that is set to host interface port #1 on CM#1 CA#1:

```
CLI> release mapping -port 111 -lun 2
```

The following example releases all of the mappings that are set to host interface ports #0 and #1 on CM#1 CA#0:

```
CLI> release mapping -port 100,101
```

The following example releases all the registered mappings:

```
CLI> release mapping -port all
```

## Host Groups

---

This section explains the commands related to host groups. The host group is used to control multiple hosts as a group.

## show host-groups

This command displays the registered host groups.

### Syntax

```
show host-groups
[-host-group-number host_group_numbers | -host-group-name host_group_names | -all]
[-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names]
```

### Parameter

-host-group-number, -host-group-name, or -all

Optional. This parameter specifies the host group identifiers that will be displayed in detail. When -all is specified, the details of all the existing host groups are displayed.

One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#). If omitted, a summary of all the existing host groups will be displayed.

<i>host_group_numbers</i>	Host group number
<i>host_group_names</i>	Host group name
-all	All the existing host groups

-host-number or -host-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host that is included in the host group that is to be displayed in detail. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

<i>host_numbers</i>	Host number
<i>host_names</i>	Host name

### Output

When the parameter is omitted, a summary of all the existing host groups is displayed.

Item name	Description
Host Group	Host group identifiers
No.	Host group number
Name	Host group name
Host Response	Host response identifiers
No.	Host response number
Name	Host response name
Host Type	Host type

When the parameter is specified, the details of the specified host group are displayed.

Item name	Description
Host Group	Host group identifiers
No.	Host group number
Name	Host group name
Host Response	Host response identifiers

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-groups

Item name	Description
No.	Host response number
Name	Host response name
Host Type	Host type
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
WWN	Host WWN

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the existing host groups:

```
CLI> show host-groups
Host Group          Host Response      Host Type
No.  Name           No.  Name
-----  -----
0 hg              250 Solaris MPxIO   FC
1 FC              250 Solaris MPxIO   FC
2 iscsi           254 AIX Single Path iSCSI
```

The following example displays details of host group #0:

```
CLI> show host-groups -host-group-number 0
Host Group          Host Response      Host Type
No.  Name           No.  Name
-----  -----
0 hg              250 Solaris MPxIO   FC
<Host List>
  Host             WWN
  No.  Name
-----  -----
  0 A              aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa
  1 B              bbbbbbbbbbbbbbbb
```

The following example displays the details of all the host groups:

```
CLI> show host-groups -all
Host Group          Host Response      Host Type
No.  Name           No.  Name
-----  -----
0 hg              250 Solaris MPxIO   FC
<Host List>
  Host             WWN
  No.  Name
-----  -----
  0 A              aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa
  1 B              bbbbbbbbbbbbbbbb

Host Group          Host Response      Host Type
No.  Name           No.  Name
-----  -----
1 FC              250 Solaris MPxIO   FC
<Host List>
  Host             WWN
  No.  Name
-----  -----
7 FC#2            aaaaabbbccccc0002
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-groups

The following example displays details of host #0:

```
CLI> show host-groups -host-number 0
Host Group          Host Response      Host Type
No. Name           No. Name
-----
0 hg              250 Solaris MPxIO    FC
<Host List>
  Host            WWN
  No. Name
-----
  0 A             aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa
```

## create host-group

This command creates host groups.

### Note

- This command overwrites host responses that are set when the host is registered (when a host response is not specified, "Default" is set for the host response).
- For the DX8100 S4, up to eight hosts can be set for a single host group.  
For the DX8900 S4, up to 64 hosts can be set for a single host group.
- Hosts that belong to a host group must have the same host response settings as the host group. When the same hosts are registered in a new host group A and an existing host group B, the host response settings for host group B are changed to the host group A settings. In addition, if the same hosts are registered in host group B and another existing host group C, the host response settings for host group C are also changed to the host group B settings (and so forth).
- If an iSCSI host without an IP address setting (any IP address) has the same iSCSI name as the iSCSI host with an IP address setting, the relevant host cannot be set in the same host group.

## Syntax

```
create host-group
  -name host_group_name -host-type {fc | iscsi}
  [-host-response-number host_response_numbers | -host-response-name host_response_name]
  {-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names}
```

## Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies a name of the host group. Only one name can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26).

*host\_group\_name*    Host group name

-host-type    This parameter specifies the host type. Only one host type can be specified at the same time.

  fc            FC

  iscsi        iSCSI

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier that is to be used to set the host sense. Only one host response can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Response Syntax](#)" (page 32).

*host\_response\_numbers*    Host response number

*host\_response\_name*      Host response name

-host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the host identifiers to be associated. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Host Syntax](#)" (page 31).

*host\_numbers*        Host number

*host\_names*          Host name

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates a host group. FC is specified for the "host-type" parameter, 10 is specified for the "host-response-number" parameter, and 1 and numbers 3 to 5 are specified for the "host-number" parameter:

```
CLI> create host-group -name HG001 -host-type fc -host-response-number 10 -host-number 1,3-5
```

## set host-group

This command changes the host group name, adds hosts to a host group, and deletes hosts from a host group.

### Note

- A host can be added to or deleted from a host group for which mapping is set.
- Before executing the command, stop access from the host where host affinity is set.
- A host cannot be deleted from a host group when no hosts belong to the host group after the host is deleted.
- For the DX8100 S4, up to eight hosts can be set for a single host group.  
For the DX8900 S4, up to 64 hosts can be set for a single host group.
- Hosts that belong to a host group must have the same host response settings as the host group. When the same hosts are registered in a new host group A and an existing host group B, the host response settings for host group B are changed to the host group A settings. In addition, if the same hosts are registered in host group B and another existing host group C, the host response settings for host group C are also changed to host group B (and so forth).
- When a host that is added to the new host group A belongs to host group B, the host response settings for host group B are changed to the host group A settings. In addition, if the same hosts are registered in host group B and another existing host group C, the host response settings for host group C are also changed to the host group B settings (and so forth).

### Syntax

```
set host-group
{-host-group-number host_group_number | -host-group-name host_group_name}
[-host-response-number host_response_number | -host-response-name host_response_name]
[-name host_group_name]
[-add-host-number host_numbers | -add-host-name host_names |
 -release-host-number host_numbers | -release-host-name host_names]
```

### Parameter

-host-group-number or -host-group-name

This parameter specifies the host group identifier to be changed. Only one host group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

<i>host_group_number</i>	Host group number
<i>host_group_name</i>	Host group name

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier that is to be used to set the host sense. Only one host response can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

<i>host_response_number</i>	Host response number
<i>host_response_name</i>	Host response name

-name Optional. This parameter specifies the new host group name. Only one name can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

<i>host_group_name</i>	Host group name
------------------------	-----------------

-add-host-number, -add-host-name, -release-host-number, or -release-host-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host that is to be added or deleted. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -add-host-number 1,2

For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_numbers*      Numbers of the hosts that are to be added or deleted

*host\_names*      Names of the hosts that are to be added or deleted

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the host group named "HG001". The new name is "NEW\_HG002". The host response number is changed to 2:

```
CLI> set host-group -host-group-name HG001 -host-response-number 2 -name NEW_HG002
```

The first command will create the host group named "HG0001". Host numbers 1 and 2 belong to this host group. The second command will add other definitions to the host group. Host number 3 and host numbers 5 to 7 are specified for the host group:

```
CLI> create host-group -host-group-name HG0001 -host-number 1,2  
CLI> set host-group -host-group-name HG0001 -add-host-number 3,5-7
```

## delete host-group

This command deletes the specified host group(s).

### Note

- When "disable" is selected for the "-keep-host-mode" parameter, the host that belongs to the host group is also deleted.
- Host groups for which mapping is set cannot be deleted.

### Syntax

```
delete host-group {-host-group-number host_group_numbers | -host-group-name host_group_names}  
[-keep-host-mode {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

-host-group-number or -host-group-name

This parameter specifies the host group identifiers to be deleted. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Group Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

<i>host_group_numbers</i>	Host group number
<i>host_group_names</i>	Host group name

-keep-host-mode

This parameter specifies whether to delete the hosts that belong to the specified host group. If omitted, this parameter is handled as though "enable" is selected.

enable	Hosts are not deleted.
disable	Hosts are also deleted

### Example(s)

The following example only deletes host group #1:

```
CLI> delete host-group -host-group-number 1
```

The following example deletes host group # 1 and host groups #3 to #5:

```
CLI> delete host-group -host-group-number 1,3-5
```

## Port Groups

---

This section explains the commands related to port groups. The port group is used to control multiple ports as a group.

## show port-groups

This command displays the registered port groups.

### Syntax

```
show port-groups
[-port-group-number port_group_numbers | -port-group-name port_group_names | -all]
```

### Parameter

-port-group-number, -port-group-name, or -all

Optional. This parameter specifies the port group identifiers that will be displayed in detail. When the "-all" parameter is specified, the details of all the existing port groups are displayed. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to "[Port Group Syntax \(page 33\)](#)". If omitted, a summary of all the existing port groups will be displayed.

<i>port_group_numbers</i>	Port group number
<i>port_group_names</i>	Port group name
-all	All the existing port groups

### Output

When the parameter is omitted, a summary of all the existing port groups is displayed.

Item name	Description
Port Group	Port group identifiers
No.	Port group number
Name	Port group name
CA Type	CA type

When the parameter is specified, the details of the specified port group are displayed.

Item name	Description
Port Group	Port group identifiers
No.	Port group number
Name	Port group name
CA Type	CA type
CM#xCA#yPort#z	Port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#xCA#yPort#z	Port number (only for the DX8900 S4)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show port-groups

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the existing port groups:

```
CLI> show port-groups
Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
0 pg              FC
1 pgl             FC
```

The following example displays details of port group #0:

```
CLI> show port-group -port-group-number 0
Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
0 pg#0            FC
<Port List>
  CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
  CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
```

The following example displays the details of all the port groups:

```
CLI> show port-groups -all
Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
0 pg              FC
<Port List>
  CM#0 CA#0 Port#1

Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
1 pgl             FC
<Port List>
  CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
  CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
```

The following example displays the details of all the port groups (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show port-groups -all
Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
0 pg              FC
<Port List>
  CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1

Port Group          CA Type
No. Name
-----
1 pgl             FC
<Port List>
  CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0
  CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
```

## create port-group

This command creates port groups.

### Note

- A port group can be created even when the same ports that belong to an existing port group are to be specified for the port group.
- A port group can be created even when mapping is already set for all the specified ports that are in different groups.
- A port group can be created even when the specified port does not belong to a port group and the host affinity is already set for the port.
- Ports with host affinity "disabled" cannot belong to a port group.
- Up to eight ports can be set for a single port group.

### Syntax

```
create port-group -name name {-port port_numbers}
```

### Parameter

-name	This parameter specifies a name of the port group. Only one name can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to <a href="#">"Alias Name Syntax" (page 26)</a> .
	<i>name</i> Port group name
-port	This parameter specifies the host interface port. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).  Example: -port 000, 011 For details, refer to <a href="#">"Host Interface Port Syntax" (page 33)</a> .
	<i>port_numbers</i> Host interface port  <i>xyz</i> "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (for the DX8100 S4 only). Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3  <i>wxyz</i> "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (for the DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3

### Example(s)

The following example creates CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 and CM#0 CA#1 Port#1 as a port group named "PG0001":

```
CLI> create port-group -name PG0001 -port 001,011
```

## set port-group

This command changes the port group name, adds ports to port groups, and deletes ports from port groups.

### Note

- A port can be added to a port group even when this makes the ports that belong to this port group identical to the ports of another existing port group.
- A port can be added even when mapping is already set for the port in a different group.
- A port can be added to or deleted from a port group for which mapping is set.
- When a port is deleted from a port group, the host access permission setting for the port is deleted (the setting when the port belongs to the port group is not retained).
- A port cannot be deleted from a port group when no ports belong to the port group after the port is deleted.
- After a port is deleted from a port group, the port group might not have any logical paths. In this case, the mapping setting between port groups must be also deleted.
- Up to eight ports can be set for a single port group.

## ■ Syntax

```
set port-group {-port-group-number port_group_number | -port-group-name port_group_name}  
[-name port_group_name] [-add-port ports] [-release-port ports]
```

## ■ Parameter

-port-group-number or -port-group-name

This parameter specifies the port group identifier to be changed. Only one port group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Port Group Syntax](#) (page 33).

*port\_group\_number*      Port group number

*port\_group\_name*      Port group name

-name      Optional. This parameter specifies the new port group name. Only one name can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#) (page 26). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*name*      New port group name

-add-port or -release-port

Optional. This parameter specifies the host interface port that is to be added or deleted. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -add-port 000, 011

For details, refer to "[Host Interface Port Syntax](#) (page 33).

*ports*      Host interface ports

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0120" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#0.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the port group named "PG001". The new name is "NEW\_PG002":

```
CLI> set port-group -port-group-name PG001 -name NEW_PG002
```

The first command creates the port group named "PG0001".

This port group contains CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 and CM#0 CA#1 Port#1.

The second command adds CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 and CM#1 CA#1 Port#1 to the port group named "PG0001":

```
CLI> create port-group -port-group-name PG0001 -port 001,011  
CLI> set port-group -port-group-name PG0001 -add-port 101,111
```

The first command creates the port group named "PG0001" (for the DX8900 S4).

This port group contains CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 and CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1.

The second command adds CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1 and CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#1 to the port group named "PG0001":

```
CLI> create port-group -port-group-name PG0001 -port 0001,0011  
CLI> set port-group -port-group-name PG0001 -add-port 0101,0111
```

## delete port-group

This command deletes the specified port group(s).

### Note

Port groups for which mapping is set cannot be deleted.

### Syntax

```
delete port-group {-port-group-number port_group_numbers | -port-group-name port_group_names}
```

### Parameter

-port-group-number or -port-group-name

This parameter specifies the port group identifiers to be deleted. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Port Group Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

<i>port_group_numbers</i>	Port group number
<i>port_group_names</i>	Port group name

### Example(s)

The following example only deletes port group #1:

```
CLI> delete port-group -port-group-number 1
```

The following example deletes port group # 1 and port groups #3 to #5:

```
CLI> delete port-group -port-group-number 1,3-5
```

## LUN Groups

---

This section explains the commands used for LUN group control. A LUN group defines an association between the volumes and LUNs that are seen from the host.

---

**Note**

The definition of LUN groups is the same as affinity groups, except that the name is different.

---

## show lun-groups

This command displays a list of existing LUN groups. If no parameters are specified, a summary list of all the existing LUN groups is displayed. If LUN groups are specified, the details of the associated volumes and LUNs are displayed.

### Caution

The LUN Overlap volume information indicates whether the same volume is defined for multiple LUN groups or whether a volume is mapped to a LUN.

### Syntax

```
show lun-groups [-lg-number lg_numbers | -lg-name lg_names]
```

### Parameter

-lg-number or -lg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the LUN group identifiers that will be displayed in detail. One or more parameters can be specified. If omitted, a summary of all the existing LUN groups will be displayed.

*lg\_numbers* LUN group number

*lg\_names* LUN group name

### Output

When the parameter is omitted, a summary of all the existing LUN groups is displayed.

Item name	Description
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers
No.	LUN group number
Name	LUN group name
LUN Overlap Volumes	Indicates whether the same volume identifier is defined between LUN groups or that a LUN mapping is set for the volume. If the same definitions exist, "Yes" is displayed for the target LUN groups. Otherwise, "No" is displayed.

When the parameter is specified, the details of the specified LUN group are displayed.

Item name	Description
LUN Group No.	LUN group number
LUN Group Name	LUN group name
LUN	Logical unit number (LUN)
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Status	Volume status
Size(MB)	Volume size
LUN Overlap Volumes	Indicates whether the same volume identifier is defined between LUN groups or that a LUN mapping is set for the volume. If the same definitions exist, "Yes" is displayed for the target LUN groups. Otherwise, "No" is displayed.
UID	Identifier (device name) to identify a volume

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the existing LUN groups. In addition, the LUN Overlap volume information flag is displayed:

```
CLI> show lun-groups
LUN Group          LUN Overlap
No.   Name          Volumes
-----
4  LUN004          Yes
5  LUN005          No
6  LUN006          Yes
```

The following example displays details of LUN group #6:

```
CLI> show lun-groups -lg-number 6
LUN Group No.6
LUN Group Name AG006
LUN    Volume          Status           Size(MB) LUN Overlap UID
  No.   Name
-----
1     1 VOLUME_001    Available        32  No      600000E00D100000001000000000000
2     2 VOLUME_002    Available        32  No      600000E00D100000001000000010000
3     3 VOLUME_003    Available        32  No      600000E00D100000001000000020000
4095  5 VOLUME_005    Available        32  No      600000E00D100000001000000030000
```

## create lun-group

This command creates a LUN group.

The maximum number of LUN groups that can be created is 1,024 for the DX8100 S4, and 6,144 for the DX8900 S4.

### Syntax

```
create lun-group -name name
{ -volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names } -lun luns
```

### Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies a name of the LUN group. Only one LUN group name can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#).

*name* LUN group name

**-volume-number or -volume-name**

This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to associate volumes with LUNs. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If two or more LUNs are specified, these parameters must be specified in the same order.

Example:

-volume-number 10-12 -lun 1-3  
→ Volume #10 and LUN 1 are pairs.  
→ Volume #11 and LUN 2 are pairs.  
→ Volume #12 and LUN 3 are pairs.  
-volume-name v1,v2 -lun 1-2  
→ Volume "v1" and LUN 1 are pairs.  
→ Volume "v2" and LUN 2 are pairs.

*volume\_numbers* Volume number

*volume\_names* Volume name

**-lun** This parameter specifies the LUNs to associate volumes with. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,), a hyphen (-), or both. If two or more volumes are specified, these parameters must be specified in the same order.

Example: -lun 0,1 -lun 0-10 -lun 0,1-10

*luns* LUN (0 – 4095)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates the LUN group named "LUN001". It will associate volume #8 with LUN #10:

```
CLI> create lun-group -name LUN001 -volume-number 8 -lun 10
```

The following example creates the LUN group named "LUN001". It will associate consecutive volumes #0-#10 with LUNs #0 - #10:

```
CLI> create lun-group -name LUN001 -volume-number 0-10 -lun 0-10
```

## set lun-group

This command changes an existing LUN group and can also be used to add a definition to the LUN group.

### Syntax

```
set lun-group {-lg-number source_lg_number | -lg-name source_lg_name} [-name name]  
[{-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names} {-lun luns}]
```

### Parameter

#### -lg-number or -lg-name

This parameter specifies the LUN group identifier to be changed. Only one LUN group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["LUN Group Syntax" \(page 34\)](#)".

*source\_lg\_number* LUN group number

*source\_lg\_name* LUN group name

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the new LUN group name. Only one name can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*name* New LUN group name

#### -volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to add a definition to the specified LUN group, and is paired with the "-lun" parameter. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. For details, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#)". If two or more LUNs are specified, these parameters must also be specified in the same order as the associated volumes. Any already assigned definitions cannot be specified.

Example:

-volume-number 10-12 -lun 1-3

→ Volume #10 and LUN 1 are pairs.

→ Volume #11 and LUN 2 are pairs.

→ Volume #12 and LUN 3 are pairs.

-volume-name v1,v2 -lun 1-2

→ Volume "v1" and LUN 1 are pairs.

→ Volume "v2" and LUN 2 are pairs.

*volume\_numbers* Volume number

*volume\_names* Volume name

#### -lun

Optional. This parameter specifies LUNs to add a definition to the specified LUN group, and is paired with volume identifiers. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If two or more volume identifiers are specified, these parameters must be specified in the same order as the associated LUNs. Any already assigned definitions cannot be specified. LUNs that are defined in the specified LUN group cannot be specified. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,), a hyphen (-), or both.

Example: -lun 0,1 -lun 0-10 -lun 1,6-8

*luns* LUN (0 – 4095)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the LUN group named "LUN001". The new name is "NEW\_LUN002":

```
CLI> set lun-group -lg-name LUN001 -name NEW_LUN002
```

In the following example, the first command creates the LUN group named "LUN001". This LUN group will contain a definition of the association of consecutive volumes #0 – #10 and consecutive LUNs #0 – #10. The second command adds other definitions to the LUN group. Consecutive volumes #101 – #105 will be associated with LUNs #11 – #15. Existing definitions are retained after the second command is executed. Only the definitions specified in the second command are added:

```
CLI> create lun-group -name LUN001 -volume-number 0-10 -lun 0-10
CLI> set lun-group -lg-name LUN001 -volume-number 101-105 -lun 11-15
```

The following example displays the results when the specified volumes #101 and #102 belong to different ports or groups:

```
CLI> set lun-group -lg-name LUN001 -volume-number 101-105 -lun 11-15
Warning: The following volumes have been linked with other group(s) and/or port(s).
Volume Number      [101,102]
```

## copy lun-group

This command copies a LUN group.

### ■ Syntax

```
copy lun-group -name name
{-source-lg-number source_lg_number | -source-lg-name source_lg_name}
```

### ■ Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies the LUN group name of the target LUN group. Only one name can be specified at the same time.

*name*      New LUN group name

-source-lg-number or -source-lg-name

    This parameter specifies the LUN group identifier which is the source of the copy. Only one LUN group can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["LUN Group Syntax" \(page 34\)](#).

*source\_lg\_number*      LUN group number

*source\_lg\_name*      LUN group name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example copies the definitions contained in the LUN group named "LUN001", and creates a new LUN group named "LUN002" with those same definitions:

```
CLI> copy lun-group -name LUN002 -source-lg-name LUN001
```

## delete lun-group

This command deletes the specified LUN groups, or releases a definition from the specified LUN group.

### Syntax

```
delete lun-group {-lg-number lg_numbers | -lg-name lg_names} [-lun luns]
```

### Parameter

-lg-number or -lg-name

This parameter specifies the LUN group identifies to be deleted. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["LUN Group Syntax" \(page 34\)](#)". By specifying the "-lun" parameter, one or more definitions included in the LUN group can be deleted. In this case, the LUN group is not deleted.

*lg\_numbers* LUN group number

*lg\_names* LUN group name

-lun Optional. This parameter specifies the LUNs that will be removed from the LUN group definitions. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,), a hyphen (-), or both. If omitted, the specified LUN groups are deleted.

Example: -lun 1,2 -lun 1-3 -lun 1-3,5

*luns* LUN (0 - 4095)

### Example(s)

The following example only deletes LUN group #1:

```
CLI> delete lun-group -lg-number 1
```

The following example deletes LUN groups #1 and #2:

```
CLI> delete lun-group -lg-number 1,2
```

The following example only releases the definition of LUN #1 associated with the LUN group named "LUN001":

```
CLI> delete lun-group -lg-name LUN001 -lun 1
```

The following example only releases the definitions of LUN #1 and #2 associated with the LUN group named "LUN001":

```
CLI> delete lun-group -lg-name LUN001 -lun 1,2
```

The following example respectively releases the definitions of LUN #1 and #2 that are associated with the LUN groups named "LUN001" and "LUN002":

```
CLI> delete lun-group -lg-name LUN001,LUN002 -lun 1,2
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-path-state

## show host-path-state

This command displays the path status (access availability status from the target host) that is defined in the mapping of the associated host interface ports that are set.

### Syntax

```
show host-path-state [-port {port_numbers | all}]
```

### Parameter

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies the host interface port that is to be displayed. Multiple parameters can be set by separating each one by a comma (,). If omitted, the process is performed as if all of the host interface ports are selected.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      Host interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

**all**      All of the host interface ports (default)

### Output

Item name	Description
Port	Port number
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
Path State	Access availability status from the target host

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-path-state

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of all the paths for all the associated host interface ports (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-path-state
Port          Host           Path State
      No.    Name
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0 FC#0      Online
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      1 FC#1      Online
CM#1 CA#0 Port#1      0 FC#0      Online
CM#1 CA#0 Port#1      1 FC#1      Offline
```

The following example displays the status of all the paths for all the associated host interface ports (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-path-state
Port          Host           Path State
      No.    Name
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  0 FC#0      Online
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  1 FC#1      Online
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  0 FC#0      Online
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1  1 FC#1      Offline
```

The following example displays the status of all the paths associated with host interface port CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-path-state -port 000
Port          Host           Path State
      No.    Name
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0 FC#0      Online
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      1 FC#1      Online
```

The following example displays the status of all the paths associated with host interface port CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-path-state -port 0000
Port          Host           Path State
      No.    Name
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  0 FC#0      Online
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0  1 FC#1      Online
```

## set host-path-state

This command changes the access availability status from hosts that are associated to the specified host interface port that is defined in the mapping and changes the path access status.

### ■ Syntax

```
set host-path-state -port port_numbers {-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names}  
-state {offline | online}
```

### ■ Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the host interface port. Multiple parameters can be set by separating each one by a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

**-host-number or -host-name**

This parameter specifies the identifier of the related host. Multiple parameters can be set at the same time. For details on the contents that can be entered, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#). When multiple parameters are set, the parameters must be set to correspond to the order of the parameters that are specified for the "-port" parameter.

*host\_numbers* Host number

*host\_names* Host name

**-state** This parameter specifies whether to allow access from the target host.

**offline** Access is not allowed.

**online** Access is allowed.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example does not allow access for the host#0 of the host interface port CM#1 CA#0 Port#0:

```
CLI> set host-path-state -port 100 -host-number 0 -state offline
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

## show host-lu-qos-performance

This command displays the Host-LU QoS performance measurement information for each port, host, and LUN. To display this information, GUI or CLI must be used to obtain this information.

### Syntax

```
show host-lu-qos-performance [-port port_numbers  
[-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name]]
```

### Parameter

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies the port and the LUN or host that are associated with the port for which the Host-LU QoS performance measurement information is to be displayed. Multiple ports cannot be specified.

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      Port interface port

*xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3

*wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3

**-host-number or -host-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host or the LUNs that are associated with the host for which the Host-LU QoS performance measurement information is to be displayed. The "-port" parameter must be set to use this parameter. Multiple hosts cannot be specified. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_number*      Host number

*host\_name*      Host name

### Output

- When all of the parameters are omitted.

Item name	Description
Port	Port number
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a port
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a port
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a port
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a port
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a port (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a port
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a port
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a port
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

Item name	Description
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a port. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a port

- When the port number is specified (the host affinity mode is enabled).

Item name	Description
CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
Port Type	Port type
Host Affinity	Host affinity (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled)
Performance Monitoring	Measurement status (ON: performance is being measured, OFF: performance measuring is stopped)
Monitoring Start Time	Performance measurement start time
Monitoring Stop Time	Performance measurement stop time
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a port
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a port
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a port
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a port
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a port (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a port
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a port
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a port
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a port. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a port
Host	Host interface
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a host
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a host
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a host
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a host
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a host (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a host
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a host
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a host
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a host. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a host

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

- When the port number is specified (the host affinity mode is disabled).

Item name	Description
CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
Port Type	Port type
Host Affinity	Host affinity (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled)
Performance Monitoring	Measurement status (ON: performance is being measured, OFF: performance measuring is stopped)
Monitoring Start Time	Performance measurement start time
Monitoring Stop Time	Performance measurement stop time
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a port
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a port
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a port
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a port
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a port (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a port
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a port
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a port
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a port. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a port
LUN	LUN number
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a LUN (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a LUN
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a LUN
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a LUN
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a LUN. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a LUN

- When the port number and the host are specified (the host affinity mode is enabled).

Item name	Description
CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8100 S4)
CE#w CM#xCA#yPort#z	Host interface port number (only for the DX8900 S4)
Port Type	Port type
Host Affinity	Host affinity (Enable: enabled, Disable: disabled)
Performance Monitoring	Measurement status (ON: performance is being measured, OFF: performance measuring is stopped)
Monitoring Start Time	Performance measurement start time

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

Item name	Description
Monitoring Stop Time	Performance measurement stop time
Host No.	Host number
Host Name	Host name
WWN	Host WWN (when the port type is FC)
SAS Address	Host SAS address (when the port type is SAS)
iSCSI Name	Host iSCSI name (when the port type is iSCSI)
IP Address	Host IP address (when the port type is iSCSI)
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a host
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a host
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a host
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a host
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a host (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a host
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a host
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a host
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a host. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a host
LUN	LUN number
IOPS	Number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Ave	Average number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Min	Minimum number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Max	Maximum number of I/Os per second for a LUN
Throughput(MB/s)	Transfer amount per second for a LUN (in MB/s)
Ave	Average transfer amount per second for a LUN
Min	Minimum transfer amount per second for a LUN
Max	Maximum transfer amount per second for a LUN
Delay Time(ms)	Delay time (in milliseconds)
Total	Accumulated delay time for the start of a command due to the QoS control of a LUN. "Overflow" is displayed when a long time passes from the start of performance measurement to the end of performance measurement and the accumulated delay time exceeds the limit.
Ave	Average delay time for a single command due to the QoS control of a LUN

#### Note

When the port type that is described above is iSCSI and a host without an IP address is specified, performance measurement information is obtained from multiple IP address. When an IP address is not specified, "IP Address: host IP address" shows the actual IP address of the host that is logged in to the ETERNUS DX.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the performance measurement information when the parameters are omitted (for the DX8100 S4).

For CM#1 CA#0 Port#0, Delay Total Time exceeds the limit and "Overflow" is displayed:

Port	IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)		
	Ave	Min	Max	Ave	Min	Max	Total	Ave	
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	100	10	100	2	1	3	20	10	
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1	10	1	30	10	2	100	120	10	
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	10	1	30	10	2	100	Overflow	10	

The following example displays the performance measurement information when no parameters are set (for the DX8900 S4).

For CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0, Delay Total Time exceeds the limit and "Overflow" is displayed:

Port	IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)		
	Ave	Min	Max	Ave	Min	Max	Total	Ave	
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	100	10	100	2	1	3	20	10	
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1	10	1	30	10	2	100	120	10	
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	10	1	30	10	2	100	Overflow	10	

The following example displays the performance measurement information when a host interface port with the host affinity mode enabled is set:

CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 000									
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information									
Port Type FC									
Host Affinity Enable									
Performance Monitoring ON									
Monitoring Start Time 2012-04-11 12:00:00									
Monitoring Stop Time 2012-04-11 12:05:00									
IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)			
Ave			Ave			Total			
Port Total	100	1	100	2	1	100	1000	1	
IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)			
LUN Ave			Ave			Total			
0	100	10	120	2	1	5	Overflow	15	
1	1555	35	5820	3	1	8	120	10	

The following example displays the performance measurement information when a host interface port with the host affinity mode disabled is set:

CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 001									
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 Port Performance Information									
Port Type FC									
Host Affinity Disable									
Performance Monitoring OFF									
Monitoring Start Time 2012-04-11 12:00:00									
Monitoring Stop Time 2012-04-11 12:05:00									
IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)			
Ave			Ave			Total			
Port Total	100	1	100	2	1	100	1000	1	
IOPS			Throughput (MB/s)			Delay Time (ms)			
LUN Ave			Ave			Total			
0	100	10	120	2	1	5	1000	15	

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

The following example displays the performance measurement information when a host interface port with the host affinity mode enabled and a host (the port type is FC) are set:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 000 -host-number 0
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information
  Port Type          FC
  Host Affinity      Enable
  Performance Monitoring ON
  Monitoring Start Time 2012-04-11 12:00:00
  Monitoring Stop Time   2012-04-11 12:05:00

  Host Performance Information
    Host No.          0
    Host Name         HOST#0
    WWN              aabbccddeeff0011

    IOPS
      Ave     Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
      Ave     Min     Max      Delay Time (ms)
      Ave     Min     Max      Total    Ave
    -----
    Host Total    100000  80000  120000      24        9       34    Overflow      56

    LUN
      IOPS
      Ave     Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
      Ave     Min     Max      Delay Time (ms)
      Ave     Min     Max      Total    Ave
    -----
      0        100     10     120      2        1       5    Overflow      15
      1      1555    35    5820      3        1       8      120      10
```

The following example displays the performance measurement information when a host interface port with the host affinity mode enabled and a host (the port type is iSCSI and the host IP address is set) are set:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 000 -host-number 0
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information
  Port Type          iSCSI
  Host Affinity      Enable
  Performance Monitoring ON
  Monitoring Start Time 2012-04-11 12:00:00
  Monitoring Stop Time   2012-04-11 12:05:00

  Host Performance Information
    Host No.          0
    Host Name         HOST#0
    iSCSI Name        ign.1991-05.com.microsoft
    IP Address        192.168.43.1

    IOPS
      Ave     Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
      Ave     Min     Max      Delay Time (ms)
      Ave     Min     Max      Total    Ave
    -----
    Host Total    2000     25    5000      24        9       34    555      12

    LUN
      IOPS
      Ave     Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
      Ave     Min     Max      Delay Time (ms)
      Ave     Min     Max      Total    Ave
    -----
      0        100     10     120      2        1       5      420      15
      1      1555    35    5820      3        1       8      120      10
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos-performance

The following example displays the performance measurement information when a host interface port with the host affinity mode enabled and a host (the port type is iSCSI and the host IP address is not set) are set:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 000 -host-number 0
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information
  Port Type           ISCSI
  Host Affinity       Enable
  Performance Monitoring ON
  Monitoring Start Time 2012-04-11 12:00:00
  Monitoring Stop Time 2012-04-11 12:05:00

  Host Performance Information
    Host No.          0
    Host Name         HOST#0
    iSCSI Name        ign.1991-05.com.microsoft
    IP Address        192.168.43.151

      IOPS
      Ave   Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
              Ave   Min     Max
  -----  -----
  Host Total 2000   25     5000    24          9      34      555      12
      LUN
      IOPS
      Ave   Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
              Ave   Min     Max
  -----  -----
    0      100    10     120      2          1      5      420      15
    1     1555   35     5820    3          1      8      120      10

  Host Performance Information
    Host No.          0
    Host Name         HOST#0
    iSCSI Name        ign.1991-05.com.microsoft
    IP Address        192.168.43.152

      IOPS
      Ave   Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
              Ave   Min     Max
  -----  -----
  Host Total 2000   25     5000    24          9      34      555      12
      LUN
      IOPS
      Ave   Min     Max      Throughput (MB/s)
              Ave   Min     Max
  -----  -----
    0      100    10     120      2          1      5      420      15
    1     1555   35     5820    3          1      8      120      10
```

The following example displays the performance measurement information when performance measurements are not performed and a host interface port is set:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 000
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information
  Port Type           ISCSI
  Host Affinity       Enable
  Performance Monitoring OFF
```

The following example displays the performance measurement information when performance measurements are not performed and a host interface port is set (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos-performance -port 0000
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Port Performance Information
  Port Type           ISCSI
  Host Affinity       Enable
  Performance Monitoring OFF
```

## start host-lu-qos-performance

This command starts the collection of Host-LU QoS performance information.

### Syntax

```
start host-lu-qos-performance [-port {port_numbers | all}]
```

### Parameter

-port	Optional. This parameter specifies the ports from which the Host-LU QoS performance information is collected. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).  Example: -port 000, 100 For more details, refer to <a href="#">"Host Interface Port Syntax" (page 33)</a> .
<i>port_numbers</i>	Port  <i>xyz</i> "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only). Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.  <i>wxyz</i> "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.
all	All the ports

### Example(s)

The following example starts the collection of Host-LU QoS performance information:

```
CLI> start host-lu-qos-performance
```

The following is an example of when ports are specified (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> start host-lu-qos-performance -port 000,101
```

## stop host-lu-qos-performance

This command stops the collection of Host-LU QoS performance information.

### Syntax

```
stop host-lu-qos-performance [-port {port_numbers | all}]
```

### Parameter

-port	Optional. This parameter specifies the ports from which the Host-LU QoS performance information is collected. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).  Example: -port 000, 100 For more details, refer to <a href="#">"Host Interface Port Syntax" (page 33)</a> .
<i>port_numbers</i>	Port  <i>xyz</i> "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only). Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.  <i>wxyz</i> "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.
all	All the ports

### Example(s)

The following example stops the collection of Host-LU QoS performance information:

```
CLI> stop host-lu-qos-performance
```

The following example stops the collection of Host-LU QoS performance information for the specified ports:

```
CLI> stop host-lu-qos-performance -port 000,101
```

## Host Response

---

This section explains commands related to set up the host response.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-response

## show host-response

This command displays the host response settings. If the host response name or number is omitted, a summary of all host responses is displayed. If the host response name or number is included as a parameter, then the details of the specified host response parameters are displayed.

### Syntax

```
show host-response  
[-host-response-number host_response_numbers | -host-response-name host_response_names]
```

### Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the host response identifier and detailed information of the host response is displayed. One or more parameters can be specified. If omitted, a summary list is displayed. For details, refer to "["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#)".

*host\_response\_numbers*    Host response number  
*host\_response\_names*    Host response name

### Output

When a parameter is specified, details of the specified host response is displayed.

Item name	Description
Host Response No.	Host response number
Host Response Name	Host response name
LUN	LUN setting information category
LUN Addressing	LUN addressing format
LUN Expand Mode	Indicates whether the range of the LUN mapping reference is expanded to 4096. (This information is not used when the Flat Space Addressing mode is used for LUN addressing)
ALUA	ALUA setting information category
Asymmetric / Symmetric Logical Unit Access	Access type for volumes
TPGS Mode	Indicates whether Target Port Group Support (TPGS) is enabled.
TPG Referrals	Indicates whether the TPG Referrals function is enabled.
Inquiry Command	Inquiry Command setting information category
Peripheral Device Type (Peripheral Device Addressing)	Peripheral Device Type for unconnected LUNs in the Peripheral Device Addressing mode
Peripheral Device Type (Flat Space Addressing)	Peripheral Device Type for LUN0 in the Flat Space Addressing mode
SCSI Version	SCSI version
NACA	Indicates whether the NACA bit is set.
Device ID Type	Designator Type, which includes information for identification of the logical unit in the Device ID page

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-response

Item name	Description
Product ID	Product ID Indicates whether the "Default" product ID (product ID for the ETERNUS DX S4 series, the ETERNUS DX S3 series, the AF250 S2/AF650 S2, the AF250/AF650, or the DX200F) is responded or the "eternus-dx-s2" product ID (product ID for the ETERNUS DX S2 series) is responded.
Product Revision	Indicates whether the Product Revision with the controller firmware version is responded. This item is displayed as "Respond" or "Not Respond".
Test Unit Ready Command	Test Unit Read Command setting information category
Response Status for Reservation	Response status for reservation
Sense	Sense setting information category
Change Volume Mapping	Indicates whether a change in volume mapping is notified.
Change Volume Capacity	Indicates whether a change in the volume capacity is notified.
Vendor Unique Sense	Indicates whether a vendor unique sense code is notified.
Mode Sense Command	MODE SENSE command information category
Response Status for Reservation (Write Exclusive)	Displays the response to the MODE SENSE command issued during Reservation This is enabled only if the Reservation Type is Write Exclusive.
Other	Other setting information category
Command Monitoring Time	Monitoring time for command executions
Load Balance Response Status	Response status for load balancing
iSCSI Discovery Reply Mode	iSCSI Discovery response mode
iSCSI Reservation Range	iSCSI reservation unit

When no parameters are specified, a summary list is displayed.

Item name	Description
Host Response No.	Host response number
Host Response Name	Host response name

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-response

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the details of host response #0:

```
CLI> show host-response -host-response-number 0
Host Response No.0
Host Response Name           Default
LUN
  LUN Addressing            Peripheral Device Addressing (Default)
  LUN Expand Mode           Disable (Default)
ALUA
  Asymmetric / Symmetric Logical Unit Access ACTIVE-ACTIVE / PREFERRED_PATH (Default)
  TPGS Mode                 Enable (Default)
  TPG Referrals              Disable (Default)
Inquiry Command
  Peripheral Device Type    No Device Type(3Fh) (Default)
    (Peripheral Device Addressing)
  Peripheral Device Type    No Device Type(3Fh) (Default)
    (Flat Space Addressing)
  SCSI Version              Version 6 (Default)
  NACA                      OFF (Default)
  Device ID Type            Type3 (Default)
  Product ID                Default
  Product Revision          Not Respond (Default)
Test Unit Ready Command
  Response Status for Reservation Normal (Default)
Sense
  Change Volume Mapping     Report (Default)
  Change Volume Capacity    Report (Default)
  Vendor Unique Sense       Not Report (Default)
Mode Sense Command
  Response Status for Reservation (Write Exclusive) Conflict (Default)
Other
  Command Monitoring Time   25 (Default)
  Load Balance Response Status Unit Attention (Default)
  iSCSI Discovery Reply Mode Reply all port (Default)
  iSCSI Reservation Range   System (Default)
```

The following example lists a summary of all the existing host responses:

```
CLI> show host-response
Host Response
No. Name
-----
0 Default
250 Solaris MPxIO
251 HP-UX
252 AIX
253 AIX VxVM
254 VS850/SVC
255 BS2000
```

## set host-response

This command defines or changes host responses. The maximum number of available host response definitions depends on the number of available host interface ports and the system model.

When initially defining a host response, the host response number must be used and a host response name must be set.

### ■ Syntax

```
set host-response
{-host-response-number host_response_number | -host-response-name host_response_name}
[-name name]
[-lun-address {prhl-dev | flat-space}]
[-lun-expand-mode {enable | disable}]
[-symmetric {active | passive}]
[-tpgs {enable | disable}]
[-tpg-referrals {enable | disable}]
[-prhl-dev-type {no-dev-type | no-support | no-connect}]
[-flat-prhl-dev-type {no-dev-type | ctrl-dev}]
[-scsi-version {6 | 5 | 4 | 3}]
[-naca {on | off}]
[-dev-id-type {type1 | type1-3 | type3}]
[-product-id {default | eternus-dx-s2}]
[-rsv-rsp-status {enable | disable}]
[-lun-mapping {enable | disable}]
[-lun-capacity {enable | disable}]
[-vendor-unique-sense {enable | disable}]
[-monitor-time monitor_time]
[-load-balance-rsp-status {busy | queue-full | unit-attention}]
[-iscsi-disc-rsp {all | port}]
[-iscsi-rsv-range {port | system}]
[-rsv-mode-sense {good | conflict}]
[-product-revision {respond | not-respond}]
```

### ■ Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

This parameter specifies the host response identifier. The system default is host response #0. When a new host response is created, an unassigned host response number must be specified. Check which host response numbers have been assigned using the "show host-response" command. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

#### Caution

Host responses with the following combination of numbers and names cannot be changed.

- No.0 Default
- No.201 – 248 Preset reserved
- No.250 Solaris MPxIO
- No.251 HP-UX
- No.252 AIX

- No.253 AIX VxVM
- No.254 VS850/SVC
- No.255 BS2000

---

*host\_response\_number* Host response number

*host\_response\_name* Host response name

**-name** Optional. This parameter specifies the host response name for this host response identifier. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged. For details, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#).

---

**Caution**

This parameter is required when initially defining a host response.

---

*name* Host response name

**-lun-address**

Optional. This parameter specifies the format for LUN addressing. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

**prhl-dev** The Peripheral Device Addressing mode is set. (Default)  
The range for LUN mapping that this mode can reference is specified by the "-lun-expand-mode" parameter.

**flat-space** The Flat Space Addressing mode is set.  
With this mode, up to 4096 LUNs can be referenced for LUN mapping.

**-lun-expand-mode**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the range of LUN mapping reference is expanded to 4096 when "prhl-dev" is specified for the "-lun-address" parameter. When "flat-space" is specified for the "-lun-address" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

**enable** The range of the LUN mapping reference is set to 4096.

**disable** The range of the LUN mapping reference is set to 256. (default)

**-symmetric** Optional. This parameter specifies the method that is used to access a Logical Unit. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

**active** ACTIVE/ACTIVE (Default for the DX8900 S4)

**passive** ACTIVE-ACTIVE/PREFERRED-PATH (Default for the DX8100 S4)

**-tpgs** Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable Target Port Group Support (TPGS).  
If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

**enable** TPGS is enabled (default).

**disable** TPGS is disabled.

**-tpg-referrals**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the TPG Referrals.

When "enable" is set for this parameter, TPG Referrals are only performed when TPGS is enabled and Asymmetric/Symmetric Logical Unit Access is set to ACTIVE/ACTIVE-PREFERRED\_PATH.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

**Caution**

Set "enable" for this parameter only for connection environments in which the ETERNUS Multipath Driver that is being used supports TPG Referrals.

---

- enable      TPG Referrals is enabled.
- disable      TPG Referrals is disabled (default).

**-prhl-dev-type**

Optional. This parameter specifies a Byte-0 value for the Inquiry data that is used to respond to an Inquiry command. The Inquiry command inquires about the volume status in the ETERNUS DX and is sent during a certain period of time after a link is established between the ETERNUS DX and the host.

The Byte-0 value of the Inquiry data indicates the volume status. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

no-dev-type    The Byte-0 value is converted to "0x3F (No Device Type)" for the response. (default)

no-support    The Byte-0 value is converted to "0x7f (Not Supported)" for the response.

no-connect    The Byte-0 value is converted to "0x20 (Not Connected)" for the response.

**-flat-prhl-dev-type**

Optional. This parameter specifies the peripheral device type for LUN0 when the Flat Space Addressing mode is used.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

no-dev-type    No Device Type (3Fh) (default)

ctrl-dev       Controller Device (0Ch)

**-scsi-version**

Optional. This parameter specifies the data version of the Inquiry Standard. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

6              The data version is 6th (default).

5              The data version is 5th.

4              The data version is 4th.

3              The data version is 3rd.

**-naca**        Optional. This parameter specifies whether the NACA bit is set. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

on              The NACA bit is set.

off             The NACA bit is not set (default).

**-dev-id-type**

Optional. This parameter specifies the Vital Product Data (VPD) information type to respond to the host. The VPD information contains the device information (including the Vendor ID, the product ID for each model, and the volume number) of the volume. Type 1 and Type 3 indicate the data format. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

type1	type1
type1-3	type1 + type3
type3	type3 (default)

-product-id

Optional. This parameter specifies which product ID is responded. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

default	The default product ID (ETERNUS DX S4 series, ETERNUS DX S3 series, ETERNUS AF series, or DX200F) is responded.
---------	---

eternus-dx-s2	The product ID for the ETERNUS DX S2 series is responded.
---------------	---

-rsv-rsp-status

Optional. This parameter specifies the Reservation Conflict response corresponding to the Test Unit Ready. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

enable	This function is enabled.
--------	---------------------------

disable	This function is disabled. (default)
---------	--------------------------------------

-lun-mapping

Optional. This parameter specifies if the notification is sent when the LUN mapping is changed. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

enable	Notified (default)
--------	--------------------

disable	Not notified
---------	--------------

-lun-capacity

Optional. This parameter specifies if a notification is sent when the LUN capacity is changed. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

enable	Notified (default)
--------	--------------------

disable	Not notified
---------	--------------

-vendor-unique-sense

Optional. This parameter specifies whether an asynchronous sense, which is a vendor unique sense code that does not link with host I/Os, is notified. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

enable	Notified
--------	----------

disable	Not notified (default)
---------	------------------------

-monitor-time

Optional. This parameter specifies the timeout value of a host command. The range of the values is 10 – 255 and the unit for timeout is in seconds. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged. The default value is 25 seconds.

<i>monitor_time</i>	Timeout value of a host command (10 – 255 seconds)
---------------------	--

-load-balance-rsp-status

Optional. This parameter specifies the response status responded to hosts. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.

busy	Busy status is responded to hosts.
queue-full	Queue-Full status is responded to hosts.
unit-attention	Unit-Attention status is responded to hosts. (default)

-iscsi-disc-rsp

Optional. This parameter specifies the reply mode for the iSCSI Discovery request.

all	Replies to the host with the information for all the iSCSI ports (iSCSI names and IP addresses). (default)
port	Replies to the host with only the information for the specified iSCSI ports (iSCSI names and IP addresses).

-iscsi-rsv-range

Optional. This parameter specifies the reservation management range for iSCSI connections.  
If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

port	Each CA port
system	Each storage system (Default)

-rsv-mode-sense

Optional. This parameter specifies the response when the MODE SENSE command is issued during a reservation. This parameter is enabled only if the Reservation Type is Write Exclusive.

good	Responds with "GOOD". SPC-4 compliance. When using Veritas InfoScale (formerly Symantec Storage Foundation), specifying "good" is required.
conflict	Responds with "CONFLICT". (Default)

-product-revision

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to return the Product Revision as the firmware version when responding to an Inquiry command. If this parameter is omitted, the existing setting remains unchanged.  
If the setting of this parameter is changed, the host must be rebooted.

respond	Product Revision is returned as the firmware version.
not-respond	Product Revision is returned as a fixed value (0000) (default).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the host response for host response #1. The new host response name is "win-x". The response status is Busy status. The host command timeout is 30 seconds:

```
CLI> set host-response -host-response-number 1 -name win-x -load-balance-rsp-status busy -monitor-time 30
```

## delete host-response

This command deletes specified host response.

### Syntax

```
delete host-response {  
    -host-response-number host_response_numbers |  
    -host-response-name host_response_names}
```

### Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

This parameter specifies the host response identifiers to be deleted. Host response #0 is the system default and it cannot be deleted. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

#### Caution

Host responses with the following combination of numbers and names cannot be deleted.

- No.0 Default
- No.201 – 248 Preset reserved
- No.250 Solaris MPxIO
- No.251 HP-UX
- No.252 AIX
- No.253 AIX VxVM
- No.254 VS850/SVC
- No.255 BS2000

---

*host\_response\_numbers*      Host response number

*host\_response\_names*      Host response name

### Example(s)

The following example deletes the host responses with consecutively numbered identifiers #1 - #3:

```
CLI> delete host-response -host-response-number 1-3
```

The following example only deletes the host response named "HOSTRESP1":

```
CLI> delete host-response -host-response-name HOSTRESP1
```

## Host Sense Conversion

---

This section explains the commands related to host sense conversion.

## show host-sense

This command displays a list of the host responses and the associated sense code conversion information. Only preset information can be shown.

### Syntax

```
show host-sense
{-host-response-number host_response_numbers | -host-response-name host_response_names}
```

### Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

This parameter specifies the host response identifiers whose entries are to be displayed. One or more host response identifiers can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#)".

*host\_response\_numbers*    Host response number  
*host\_response\_names*    Host response name

### Output

Item name	Description
Host Response	Host response identifiers
No.	Host response number
Name	Host response name
Sense No.	Host sense number
Original Sense Code	Original sense code. A sense key, an additional sense code, and a sub sense code (additional sense code qualifier) appear in this order from left to right, delimited one by one by a slash.
Converted Sense Code	Converted sense code. A sense key, an additional sense code, and a sub sense code (additional sense code qualifier) appear in this order from left to right, delimited one by one by a slash.

### Example(s)

The following example displays the host responses and associated sense conversions:

```
CLI> show host-sense -host-response-number 1,2
Host Response      Sense Original   Converted
No. Name          No. Sense Code Sense Code
  1 fj0001         1  04/**/*    06/**/*
  2 fj0002         1  03/**/*    04/**/*
```

## set host-sense

This parameter specifies the host sense conversion pattern for the specified host response.

### Syntax

```
set host-sense
{-host-response-number host_response_numbers | -host-response-name host_response_names}
-preset {no-conversion | custom}
[-original-sk original_sk] [-original-asc original_asc] [-original-ascq original_ascq]
[-converted-sk converted_sk] [-converted-asc converted_asc]
[-converted-ascq converted_ascq]
```

### Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

This parameter specifies the host response identifier that is to be used to set the host sense. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_response\_numbers* Host response number

*host\_response\_names* Host response name

-preset This parameter specifies the preset host sense conversion pattern for the specified host response.

no-conversion It will revert to the default host sense value (Default).

custom Custom setting. The following sense parameters can be specified only when this setting is selected.

-original-sk

Optional. This parameter specifies the sense key that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is specified. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*original\_sk* Sense key that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source

-original-asc

Optional. This parameter specifies the sense code, which is an additional sense code, that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is specified. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*original\_asc* Sense code that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source

-original-ascq

Optional. This parameter specifies the sub sense code, which is an additional sense code qualifier that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is selected. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*original\_ascq*

Additional sense code qualifier that corresponds to the sense of the conversion source

-converted-sk

Optional. This parameter specifies the sense key that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is selected. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*converted\_sk* Sense key that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination

-converted-asc

Optional. This parameter specifies the sense code, which is an additional sense code that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is selected. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*converted\_asc* Additional sense code that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination

-converted-ascq

Optional. This parameter specifies the sub sense code, which is an additional sense code qualifier that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination. This parameter can only be specified when "-preset custom" is selected. This parameter must be specified by using either a hexadecimal number or the wildcard (\*).

*converted\_ascq* Additional sense code qualifier that corresponds to the sense of the conversion destination

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the preset host sense for "custom" to host response #1:

```
CLI> set host-sense -host-response-number 1 -preset custom -original-sk 3 -original-asc * -original-ascq * -converted-sk 4  
-converted-asc * -converted-ascq *
```

The following example reverts the host sense that is set to host response #1 to the default value:

```
CLI> set host-sense -host-response-number 1 -preset no-conversion
```

## delete host-sense

This command deletes (clears) the specified host sense.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete host-sense
{-host-response-number host_response_numbers | -host-response-name host_response_names}
-sense-number sense_numbers
```

### ■ Parameter

-host-response-number or -host-response-name

This parameter specifies host response identifiers to which the host sense to be deleted belongs. The range is 1 to 200. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "["Host Response Syntax" \(page 32\)](#).

*host\_response\_numbers*      Host response number  
*host\_response\_names*      Host response name

-sense-number

This parameter specifies the host sense number that is to be deleted. The host sense number is automatically registered in the system when the host sense conversion information is created. Between 1 to 8 can be specified. The host sense number can be checked by using the "show host-sense" command. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time.

*sense\_numbers*      Host sense number (1 – 8)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example respectively deletes the host sense #1 corresponding to the host response #1 to #3:

```
CLI> delete host-sense -host-response-number 1-3 -sense-number 1
```

## Reset Group for Host Interface Port

---

This section explains the commands related to defining the reset groups for each host interface port.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show ca-reset-group

## show ca-reset-group

This command displays a list of the host interface ports that are in each of the reset groups. The number of reset groups is dependent on the number of host interface ports available.

### Syntax

```
show ca-reset-group
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Port	Host interface port in the reset group For the DX8100 S4, the port is displayed in an "xyz" format (where "x" is the CM number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the port number). For the DX8900 S4, the port is displayed in an "wxyz" format (where "w" is the CE number, "x" is the CM number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the port number).
Reset Group	Reset group

### Example(s)

The following example shows each reset group configured with four host interface ports:

```
CLI> show ca-reset-group
      Port
Reset Group 000 001 002 003
Reset Group 010 011 012 013
Reset Group 100 101 102 103
Reset Group 110 111 112 113
```

The following example shows a reset group that is configured with 16 host interface ports:

```
CLI> show ca-reset-group
      Port
Reset Group 000 001 002 003 010 011 012 013 100 101
          102 103 110 111 112 113
```

The following example shows each reset group configured with four host interface ports (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-reset-group
      Port
Reset Group 0000 0001 0002 0003
Reset Group 0010 0011 0012 0013
Reset Group 0100 0101 0102 0103
Reset Group 0110 0111 0112 0113
```

The following example shows a reset group that is configured with 16 host interface ports (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-reset-group
      Port
Reset Group 0000 0001 0002 0003 0010 0011 0012 0013 0100 0101
          0102 0103 0110 0111 0112 0113
```

## set ca-reset-group

This command sets a reset group of host interface ports. The same number of reset groups as the host interface ports that are installed in the storage system can be set as the maximum. One reset group can be set at a time. In the initial state, all host interface ports are set in one reset group.

### Syntax

```
set ca-reset-group [-group port_numbers]
```

### Parameter

**-group** This parameter sets up a combination of host interface ports that will be reset as a group. Two or more host interface ports can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -group 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

#### Caution

If a host interface port in the specified group is already set for another group, this port is released from the group and reconfigured in the specified group.

port_numbers	Host interface port
<i>xyz</i>	"x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only). Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.
<i>wxyz</i>	"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.

### Example(s)

The following example sets up the reset groups.

The reset groups are configured with CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 and CM#0 CA#0 Port#1:

```
CLI> set ca-reset-group -group 000,001
```

## Ping Command for iSCSI Hosts

---

This section explains the ping related commands used in an iSCSI environment.

## test iscsi-ping

This command issues a ping command from the specified host interface port to the specified iSCSI host.

### Note

- When a response is successfully returned for the ping command, "Success" is displayed.
- When a response is not returned for the ping command, "Failure" is displayed and this CLI command abnormally terminates with an error message.  
However, when a response is not returned because of a connection failure between the host and the specified port, only "Failure" is displayed.

## Syntax

```
test iscsi-ping -port port_number-ip iscsi_host [-count count] [-additional-ip additional-ip]
```

## Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the source host interface port used to issue the ping command. Only one host interface port can be specified at the same time.

Example: -port 000

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_number* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the iSCSI port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3

**-ip** This parameter specifies the IP address of the target iSCSI host using IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 format. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Only one iSCSI host can be specified at the same time.

*iscsi\_host* IP address of the target iSCSI host

**-count** Optional. This parameter specifies the number of times that the ping command is to be issued. Any value between 1 and 10 can be specified. If omitted, this parameter value defaults to 1.

*count* Number of times that the ping command is to be issued (1 – 10)

**-additional-ip**

Optional. This parameter specifies the virtual port information number of the port for which the virtual port information is enabled. If this parameter is omitted, "0" (this indicates the actual port information) is set for the value of this parameter.

Only one virtual port information number can be specified.

*additional-ip* Virtual port information number (1 – 15)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example causes two pings to be issued from port#0 on CM#1 CA#0 to the iSCSI host 192.168.2.10. In this case, a "Success" string is displayed. This result indicates that a normal response was received to both pings:

```
CLI> test iscsi-ping -port 100 -ip 192.168.2.10 -count 2
Success
```

The following example causes two pings to be issued from port#0 on CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 to the iSCSI host 192.168.2.10 (for the DX8900 S4). In this case, a "Success" string is displayed. This result indicates that a normal response was received to both pings:

```
CLI> test iscsi-ping -port 0100 -ip 192.168.2.10 -count 2
Success
```

The following example uses the same command as the previous example, but in this case, a "Failure" string is displayed. This result indicates that a normal response was not received for at least one of the pings:

```
CLI> test iscsi-ping -port 100 -ip 192.168.2.10 -count 2
Failure
```

The following example sends three pings from port#0 on CM#1 CA#0 to iSCSI host 2001:0db8:0020:0003:1000:0100:0020:0003. In this case, a "Success" string is displayed. This result indicates that a normal response was received for all of the pings:

```
CLI> test iscsi-ping -port 100 -ip 2001:0db8:0020:0003:1000:0100:0020:0003 -count 3
Success
```

The following example displays the command execution result when the multiple IP address setting is enabled and virtual port information number #1 of the port for which the virtual port information is enabled is specified:

```
CLI> test iscsi-ping -port 100 -ip 192.168.2.10 -additional-ip 1
Success
```

## Host LU QoS

---

This section explains the commands related to Host LU QoS.

The commands that are used for the QoS management function are shown below.

Function	Command
Displaying whether the QoS function is enabled or disabled	show qos-mode
Setting whether to enable or disable the QoS function	set qos-mode
Displaying the settings of the LU QoS group	show lu-qos-groups
Setting the LU QoS group	set lu-qos-group
Deleting the LU QoS group	delete lu-qos-group
Displaying the details of the Host-LU QoS settings	show host-lu-qos
Setting the Host-LU QoS Changing the settings for Port QoS, Host QoS, LU QoS	set host-lu-qos
Displaying the QoS schedule	show qos-schedule
Setting the QoS schedule	set qos-schedule
Deleting the QoS related information	delete all-qos-setting
Displaying the performance setting values for the Volume QoS	show volume-qos
Setting the performance setting values for the Volume QoS	set volume-qos
Displaying the bandwidth limit assigned to the various QoS	show qos-bandwidth-limit
Setting the bandwidth limit assigned to the various QoS	set qos-bandwidth-limit

## show qos-mode

This command displays the setting status of the QoS function and QoS performance flexibility function.

### ■ Syntax

```
show qos-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
QoS Mode	Setting status of the QoS function (Enable or Disable)
Flexible Mode	Setting status of the QoS performance flexibility function (Enable or Disable)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the setting status of the QoS function and QoS performance flexibility function:

```
CLI> show qos-mode
QoS Mode [Disable]
Flexible Mode [Disable]

CLI> show qos-mode
QoS Mode [Enable]
Flexible Mode [Disable]

CLI> show qos-mode
QoS Mode [Enable]
Flexible Mode [Enable]
```

## set qos-mode

This command sets up the QoS function and the QoS performance flexibility function.

### Syntax

```
set qos-mode [-mode {enable | disable}] [-flexible-mode {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

- mode**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable or disable the QoS function. When "disable" is specified, the QoS performance flexibility function is also disabled.
- enable**      This parameter enables the QoS function.
- disable**      This parameter disables the QoS function.

**-flexible-mode**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable or disable the QoS performance flexibility function. The QoS performance flexibility function adapts the performance elsewhere if there is an excess in performance. This parameter can only be specified when "enable" is specified for the "-mode" parameter or the QoS function is already enabled.

- enable**      This parameter enables the QoS performance flexibility function.
- disable**      This parameter disables the QoS performance flexibility function.

### Example(s)

The following example enables the QoS function:

```
CLI> set qos-mode -mode enable
```

The following example disables the QoS function:

```
CLI> set qos-mode -mode disable
```

The following example enables the QoS function and the QoS performance flexibility function:

```
CLI> set qos-mode -mode enable -flexible-mode enable
```

The following example disables the QoS performance flexibility function:

```
CLI> set qos-mode -flexible-mode disable
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show lu-qos-groups

## show lu-qos-groups

This command displays detailed settings of the LU QoS Group.

### Syntax

```
show lu-qos-groups [-lu-qos-group lu_qos_group_number] [-lun lun | all]
```

### Parameter

#### -lu-qos-group

Optional. This parameter specifies the LU QoS Group to display detailed information.

*lu\_qos\_group\_number*     LU QoS group number

#### -lun

Optional. This parameter specifies which Host LUNs to display detailed information for.

When "all" is specified, the information for the LUNs with "0" (Unlimited) as the bandwidth limit is also displayed. If omitted, the information for the LUNs is not displayed.

*lun*        Host LUN

all        All Host LUNs

### Output

- When a list of the LU QoS Groups is displayed.

Item name	Description
LU QoS Group No.	Registered LU QoS Group numbers

- When the LU QoS Groups to display detailed information for are specified.

Item name	Description
LU QoS Group No.	Registered LU QoS Group numbers
LUN	Host LUN
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) that is set to the LU QoS Group

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the LU QoS Groups:

```
CLI> show lu-qos-groups
LU QoS Group
No.
-----
1
2
```

The following example displays the detailed information of the LU QoS Group #1 and #2:

```
CLI> show lu-qos-groups -lu-qos-group 1,2
LU QoS Group No.1
LUN Bandwidth Limit
-----
2          15
LU QoS Group No.2
LUN Bandwidth Limit
-----
4          12
```

## set lu-qos-group

This command performs detailed settings of the LU QoS Group.

### Syntax

```
set lu-qos-group -lu-qos-group lu_qos_group_number-lun luns-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limits
```

### Parameter

#### -lu-qos-group

This parameter specifies the LU QoS Group number to set for LU QoS.

Any value between 0 to 1055 can be specified for the DX8100 S4. For the DX8900 S4, the values are between 0 to 2431.

*lu\_qos\_group\_number*     LU QoS Group number

#### -lun

This parameter specifies the Host-LUN that is to be set. Any value between 0 and 1023 can be specified. Two or more Host-LUNs can be specified.

Example: -lun 1,2 -lun 0-10 -lun 1,2-9

*lun*     Host-LUN (0 – 1023)

#### -bandwidth-limit

This parameter specifies a bandwidth limit pattern (upper limit performance value) for the Host-LUN. Any value between 0 (unlimited) and 15 can be specified. The initial value of the bandwidth limit pattern (upper limit performance value) is described in the "[set qos-bandwidth-limit](#)" command. Two or more values can be specified. When two or more values are specified, the same number of values as the Host-LUNs that are specified by the "-lun" parameter must be specified.

Example: -bandwidth-limit 1,2  
          -bandwidth-limit 0-10  
          -bandwidth-limit 1,2-9

The same "-bandwidth-limit" parameter value can be specified for multiple "-lun" parameter values.

Example: -lun 1,2,4 -bandwidth-limit 1

*bandwidth\_limits*     Bandwidth limit pattern (upper limit performance value) for the Host-LUN (0 - 15)

### Example(s)

The following example sets the LU QoS Group:

```
CLI> set lu-qos-group -lu-qos-group 1 -lun 2 -bandwidth-limit 15
CLI> set lu-qos-group -lu-qos-group 1 -lun 1,2 -bandwidth-limit 1
CLI> set lu-qos-group -lu-qos-group 1 -lun 1,2 -bandwidth-limit 1,2
```

## delete lu-qos-group

This command deletes LU QoS Groups.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete lu-qos-group -lu-qos-group lu_qos_group_number
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -lu-qos-group

This parameter specifies the LU QoS Group number that is to be deleted. Two or more LU QoS Groups can be specified.

*lu\_qos\_group\_number*      LU QoS Group number

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes LU QoS Group#1:

```
CLI> delete lu-qos-group 1
```

## show host-lu-qos

This command displays the detailed setting information for the Host-LU QoS function.

### Syntax

```
show host-lu-qos [-mode {port-qos | host-qos | lu-qos}] [-port {port_numbers | all}]  
[-host-type {fc | iscsi} -host-number host_number | -host-name host_name]  
[-lu-qos-group lu_qos_group_number]
```

### Parameter

**-mode**      Optional. This parameter specifies which QoS settings are displayed.

port-qos	Port QoS
host-qos	Host QoS
lu-qos	LU QoS

**-port**      Optional. This parameter limits the QoS settings that are to be displayed to those that are related to the specified port.

Example: -port 000

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers*      Host interface port

<i>xyz</i>	"x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only). Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.
------------	---

<i>wxyz</i>	"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only). Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.
-------------	---

**all**      All the host interface ports

**-host-type**      Optional. This parameter specifies the type of host to set Host QoS for. The host can be specified by using the "-host-number" or "-host-name" parameter. Only one host type can be specified at the same time.

fc	FC
iscsi	iSCSI

**-host-number or -host-name**

Optional. This parameter limits the QoS settings that are to be displayed to those that are related to the specified host. The "-host-type" parameter must also be specified to use this parameter. For details, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

<i>host_number</i>	Host number
<i>host_name</i>	Host name

**-lu-qos-group**

Optional. This parameter limits the QoS settings that are to be displayed to those that are related to the specified LU QoS Group.

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos

*lu\_qos\_group\_number*    LU QoS Group number

## ■ Output

- When the Host-LU QoS settings are displayed.

Item name	Description
Port (Bandwidth Limit)	Host interface port (and its bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value])
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
(Bandwidth Limit)	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host
LU QoS Group	LU QoS Group number that is set for the LU QoS

- When the Host-LU QoS settings are displayed with the target port, the target host, and the target LU QoS group specified.

Item name	Description
Port (Bandwidth Limit)	Host interface port (and its bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value])
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
(Bandwidth Limit)	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host
LU QoS Group	LU QoS Group number that is set for the LU QoS
Event	Event
No.	Event number of the QoS schedule
Port	Host interface port details
Schedule No.	QoS schedule number for the host interface port
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS schedule for the host interface port
Host	Host details
Schedule No.	QoS schedule number for the host
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS schedule for the host
Schedule No.	QoS schedule number for the LU QoS
LU QoS Group	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS schedule for the LU QoS

- When the Port QoS settings are displayed.

Item name	Description
Port	Host interface port
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host interface port

- When the Port QoS settings are displayed with the target port specified.

Item name	Description
Port	Host interface port
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host interface port
Event	Event
No.	Event number of the QoS schedule
Schedule No.	QoS schedule number for the host interface port
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS schedule for the host interface port

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos

- When the Host QoS settings are displayed.

Item name	Description
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host
Host Type	Host type
WWN/iSCSI Name	WWN (for FC) or iSCSI name (for iSCSI) of the host

- When the Host QoS settings are displayed with the target host specified.

Item name	Description
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host
Host Type	Host type
WWN/iSCSI Name	WWN (for FC) or iSCSI name (for iSCSI) of the host
No.	Event number of the QoS schedule
Schedule No.	QoS schedule number for the host
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS schedule for the host

- When the LU Host-LU QoS settings are displayed.

Item name	Description
Port (Bandwidth Limit)	Host interface port (and its bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value])
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
(Bandwidth Limit)	Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the host
LUN (Bandwidth Limit)	LUN number (bandwidth limit [or upper limit performance value] that is set in the LUN)

## Example(s)

The following example displays the Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit)  LU QoS
No.   Name                No.          ( 0)        Group
----- -----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      0 Host#FC_0      ( 0)      -
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      2 Host#FC_1      ( 1)      2
CM#0 CA#1 Port#0 ( 2)      0 Host#iSCSI_0    ( 5)      2
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 ( 3)      0 Host#FC_0      ( 0)      3
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 ( 3)      2 Host#FC_1      ( 1)      3
CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 (15)      0 Host#iSCSI_0    ( 5)      2
```

3. Configuration Settings and Display  
 Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos

The following example displays the Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit) LU QoS
No.   Name                No.       (Bandwidth Limit) Group
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0) 0 Host#FC_0      ( 0) -
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0) 2 Host#FC_1      ( 1) 2
CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0 ( 2) 0 Host#iSCSI_0    ( 5) 2
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 ( 3) 0 Host#FC_0      ( 0) 3
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 ( 3) 2 Host#FC_1      ( 1) 3
CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 (15) 0 Host#iSCSI_0    ( 5) 2
```

The following example displays the details of the Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -port 000
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit) LU QoS
No.   Name                No.       (Bandwidth Limit) Group
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)     0 Host#FC_0      ( 0) -
<Event>
No. Port                  Host          Schedule No. LU QoS
Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Group
-----
1      10                   5           -             -         5   3
2      20                   8           -             -         -   -
5      30                   10          -             -         -   -
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit) LU QoS
No.   Name                No.       (Bandwidth Limit) Group
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)     2 Host#FC_1      ( 1) 2
<Event>
No. Port                  Host          Schedule No. LU QoS
Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Group
-----
1      10                   5           1             3         15  3
2      20                   8           3             5         25  4
5      30                   10          5             7         35  5
```

The following example displays the details of the Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -port 0000
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit) LU QoS
No.   Name                No.       (Bandwidth Limit) Group
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0) 0 Host#FC_0      ( 0) -
<Event>
No. Port                  Host          Schedule No. LU QoS
Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Group
-----
1      10                   5           -             -         5   3
2      20                   8           -             -         -   -
5      30                   10          -             -         -   -
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit) LU QoS
No.   Name                No.       (Bandwidth Limit) Group
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0) 2 Host#FC_1      ( 1) 2
<Event>
No. Port                  Host          Schedule No. LU QoS
Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit Group
-----
1      10                   5           1             3         15  3
2      20                   8           3             5         25  4
5      30                   10          5             7         35  5
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos

The following example displays the Port QoS settings (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode port-qos
Port          Bandwidth Limit
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0
CM#0 CA#1 Port#0      2
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0      3
CM#1 CA#1 Port#0     15
```

The following example displays the Port QoS settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode port-qos
Port          Bandwidth Limit
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0
CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0      2
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0      3
CE#0 CM#1 CA#1 Port#0     15
```

The following example displays the details of the Port QoS settings (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode port-qos -port 000
Port          Bandwidth Limit
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0
<Event>
No. Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit
-----
1            10          5
2            20          8
5            30         10
```

The following example displays the details of the Port QoS settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode port-qos -port 0000
Port          Bandwidth Limit
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0      0
<Event>
No. Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit
-----
1            10          5
2            20          8
5            30         10
```

The following example displays the Host QoS settings:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode host-qos
Host          Bandwidth Limit Host Type WWN/iSCSI Name
No.  Name
-----
0 Host#FC_0           0 FC      AABCCCDDEEFF0001
1 Host#FC_1           1 FC      AABCCCDDEEFF0011
0 Host#iSCSI_0         5 iSCSI   iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft
```

The following example displays the details of the Host QoS settings:

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode host-qos -host type iscsi -host-number 0
Host          Bandwidth Limit Host Type WWN/iSCSI Name
No.  Name
-----
0 Host#iSCSI_0         5 iSCSI   iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft
<Event>
No. Schedule No. Bandwidth Limit
-----
1            2          3
3            4         14
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show host-lu-qos

The following example displays the LU Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit)  LUN (Bandwidth Limit)
No.   Name
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (15)      0 HBA1      ( 0)      0 ( 0)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      0 ( 0)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      1 ( 0)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      2 ( 0)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      0 ( 5)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      1 ( 5)
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)      2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      2 ( 6)
```

The following example displays the LU Host-LU QoS settings (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos
Port (Bandwidth Limit)      Host      (Bandwidth Limit)  LUN (Bandwidth Limit)
No.   Name
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (15)  0 HBA1      ( 0)      0 ( 0)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      0 ( 0)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      1 ( 0)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  0 Host#FC_0  ( 0)      2 ( 0)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      0 ( 5)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      1 ( 5)
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 ( 0)  2 Host#FC_1  ( 1)      2 ( 6)
```

## set host-lu-qos

This command performs detailed settings for the Host-LU QoS function. This command can change the QoS settings for Port QoS, Host QoS, and LU QoS.

### Syntax

```
set host-lu-qos -mode {port-qos | host-qos | lu-qos}
{-port {port_numbers | all} [-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limits] [-event-number event_numbers]
[-schedule-number {schedule_numbers | ""}]}
{-host-type {fc | iscsi} {-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names}
[-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limits] [-event-number event_numbers]
[-schedule-number {schedule_numbers | ""}]}
{-port port_numbers [-host-number host_numbers | -host-name host_names]
[-lu-qos-group {lu_qos_group_numbers | ""}] [-event-number event_numbers]
[-schedule-number {schedule_numbers | ""}]}
```

### Parameter

-mode      This parameter specifies which QoS settings are changed.

port-qos    Port QoS

host-qos    Host QoS

lu-qos     LU QoS

-port      This parameter specifies the host interface port when Port QoS or LU QoS is set.

Example: -port 00

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

#### Note

- When "lu-qos" is specified for the "-mode" parameter, "all" cannot be specified.
- When "lu-qos" is specified for the "-mode" parameter, the type (FC, iSCSI) of all the ports that are specified by the "-host-number" or "-host-name" parameter must be the same.

*port\_numbers*    Host interface port

*xyz*            "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

*wxyz*          "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3.

all               All host interface ports

-bandwidth-limit

Optional. This parameter specifies the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for Port QoS or Host QoS. Any value between 0 (unlimited) and 15 can be specified. When multiple values are specified, the number of values that are specified for this parameter must be the same as the "-port" parameter and the "-host-number" parameter.

The initial value of the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) is described in the "[set qos-bandwidth-limit](#)" command.

*bandwidth\_limits* Bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for Port QoS or Host QoS (0 – 15)

-host-type This parameter specifies the type of host to set Host QoS for. The host can be specified by using the "-host-number" or "-host-name" parameter.

fc FC

iscsi iSCSI

-host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the host for setting Host QoS or LU QoS. The number of hosts that can be set is 1,024 (host numbers are not restricted). For details, refer to "[Host Syntax](#) (page 31).

*host\_numbers* Host number

*host\_names* Host name

-lu-qos-group

Optional. This parameter specifies the LU QoS Group number to set for LU QoS.

When multiple values are specified, the number of values that are specified for this parameter must be the same as the "-port" parameter or the "-host-number" parameter. Specify a null character ("") to restore the initial setting.

*lu\_qos\_group\_numbers* LU QoS Group number

"" The initial setting is restored.

-event-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the event number for the QoS schedule. A schedule number is assigned to each event number. Any value between 1 to 7 can be specified. Multiple event numbers can be specified. When multiple values are specified, the number of values that are specified for this parameter must be the same as the "-port" parameter and the "-host-number" parameter. If omitted, the default QoS schedule (event number 0) is set.

*event\_numbers* Event number

-schedule-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the QoS schedule number. Multiple QoS schedule numbers can be specified. When multiple values are specified, the number of values that are specified for this parameter must be the same as the "-port" parameter or the "-host-number" parameter. Specify a null character ("") to release the assigned QoS schedule.

*schedule\_numbers* QoS schedule number

"" The assigned QoS schedule is released.

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set host-lu-qos

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the Port QoS and the default QoS schedule for the Port QoS:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode port-qos -port 000 -bandwidth-limit 15
```

The following example sets the Host QoS and the default QoS schedule for the Host QoS:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode host-qos -host-type iscsi -host-number 12 -bandwidth-limit 0
```

The following example sets the LU QoS and the default QoS schedule for the LU QoS (for a port with the Host Affinity mode enabled):

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -host-number 12 -lu-qos-group 1
```

The following example sets the LU QoS and the default QoS schedule for the LU QoS (for a port with the Host Affinity mode disabled):

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -lu-qos-group 1
```

The following example restores the initial setting of the LU QoS and sets the default QoS schedule for the LU QoS (for a port with the Host Affinity mode enabled):

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -host-number 12 -lu-qos-group ""
```

The following example restores the initial setting of the LU QoS and sets the default QoS schedule for the LU QoS for all of the host affinities of the specified port:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -lu-qos-group ""
```

The following example sets the QoS schedule for the Port QoS:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode port-qos -port 000 -bandwidth-limit 15 -event-number 2 -schedule-number 0
```

The following example sets the QoS schedule for the Host QoS:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode host-qos -host-type iscsi -host-number 12 -bandwidth-limit 0 -event-number 7 -schedule-number 1
```

The following example sets the QoS schedule for the LU QoS (for a port with the Host Affinity mode enabled):

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -host-number 12 -lu-qos-group 1 -event-number 2 -schedule-number 4
```

The following example sets the QoS schedule for the LU QoS (for a port with the Host Affinity mode disabled):

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode lu-qos -port 000 -lu-qos-group 1 -event-number 1 -schedule-number 5
```

The following example restores the initial settings of the QoS schedule for the Port QoS:

```
CLI> set host-lu-qos -mode port-qos -port 000 -event-number 2 -schedule-number ""
```

## show qos-schedule

This command shows the details of the QoS schedule.

### Syntax

```
show qos-schedule [-schedule-number schedule-number]
```

### Parameter

#### -schedule-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the QoS schedule number to display details. One or more QoS schedule numbers can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, all the QoS schedules are displayed.

*schedule-number* QoS schedule number

### Output

Item name	Description
No.	QoS schedule number
Type	QoS schedule event type
Details	Explanation for the QoS schedule event type
Time	Starting QoS schedule time and ending QoS schedule time
from	Starting time
to	Ending time

### Example(s)

The following example displays the QoS schedules:

```
CLI> show qos-schedule
No. Type Details Time
-----
 0 Every-day
 1 Every-week Monday-Tuesday
 2 Specific-day 1day(s) from Every-month 15
 512 Specific-day 1day(s) from December 31
2047 Specific-week Every-month last week Monday-Sunday
from [18:10] to [12:20]
from [00:00] to [18:30]
from [00:40] to [18:30]
from [00:00] to [23:50]
from [00:00] to [06:00]
```

## set qos-schedule

This command sets the details of the QoS schedule. QoS schedule settings are only applicable to the Host-LU QoS.

### Syntax

```
set qos-schedule -schedule-number schedule_number
[-event-type
{every-day |
every-week,{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun} |
specific-day,MMDD,R |
specific-week,MM,{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun},
{mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat | sun} | none}]
[-event-from hhmm]
[-event-to hhmm]
```

### Parameter

#### -schedule-number

This parameter specifies the QoS schedule number. Multiple QoS schedule numbers can only be specified when "none" is specified for the "-event-type" parameter. For the DX8100 S4, the specifiable range is 0 to 1023. For the DX8900 S4, the specifiable range is 0 to 2047.

Example: -schedule-number 1,2  
          -schedule-number 0-10  
          -schedule-number 1,2-9

*schedule\_number* QoS schedule number

#### -event-type

Optional. This parameter specifies the QoS schedule event type.

every-day The QoS schedule is applied to every day. "every-day" is the only format. A suboperand is not required.

Example: -event-type every-day

#### every-week

The QoS schedule is applied to every week. This format is "every-week,STA,END". The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: Correct → -event-type every-week,mon,fri  
(from Monday to Friday is OK)

Example: Incorrect → -event-type every-week,fri,tue  
(from Friday to Tuesday is not OK)

Example: Correct → -event-type every-week,mon,mon  
(only Monday is OK)

mon	Monday
tue	Tuesday
wed	Wednesday
thu	Thursday
fri	Friday

sat	Saturday
sun	Sunday

**specific-day**

The QoS schedule is applied to a specific day. This format is "specific-day,MMDD,R". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific day DD (01 – 31) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). When the last day of the month is required, specify "99" instead of 01 – 31. The number of days that the schedule will apply is specified as R, and a value between 1 – 7 can be set.

Example: -event-type specific-day,0501,3  
(For three days, from May 1st to May 3rd)

Example: -event-type specific-day,0630,2  
(For two days, from June 30th to July 1st)

**specific-week**

The QoS schedule is applied to a specific week. This format is "specific-week,MM,W,STA,END". The specific month MM (01 – 12) and the specific week W (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, or last) are separated by a comma (,) (when every month is required, specify "em" instead of 01 – 12). The start day of the week (STA) and the end day of the week (END) are separated by a comma (,). The day of the week must be specified in the following format. The end day of the week must be after the start day of the week. The first day starts from Monday.

Example: Correct -> -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,mon,wed  
(from the 3rd Monday to the 3rd Wednesday in May is OK)

Example: Incorrect -> -event-type specific-week,05,3rd,wed,mon  
(from the 3rd Wednesday to the 3rd Monday in May is not OK)  
(When May 1st is a Monday)

mon	Monday
tue	Tuesday
wed	Wednesday
thu	Thursday
fri	Friday
sat	Saturday
sun	Sunday

**none** Specify this value to delete the specified QoS schedule.

Example: -event-type none

**-event-from**

Optional. This parameter specifies that the QoS schedule will start at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the starting hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the starting minute (00, 10, 20, 30, 40, or 50).

*hhmm* Starting time of the QoS schedule

**-event-to** Optional. This parameter specifies that the QoS schedule will end at a specific time. The format is "hhmm". "hh" is the ending hour (00 – 23) and "mm" is the ending minute (00, 10, 20, 30, 40, or 50).

*hhmm* Completion time of the QoS schedule

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates an QoS schedule. The QoS schedule number is 0. The QoS schedule will apply every day from 06:00 to 18:00:

```
CLI> set qos-schedule -schedule-number 0 -event-type every-day -event-from 0600 -event-to 1800
```

The following example deletes the QoS schedule:

```
CLI> set qos-schedule -schedule-number 0 -event-type none
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > delete all-qos-setting

## delete all-qos-setting

This command deletes all QoS related setting information including Host-LU QoS related settings, volume QoS settings and other scheduled settings. QoS operation related settings (QoS operation mode, QoS performance flexibility mode, and Host-LU QoS performance information acquisition state) are not deleted.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete all-qos-setting
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes all QoS related setting information:

```
CLI> delete all-qos-setting
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show qos-bandwidth-limit

## show qos-bandwidth-limit

This command displays the current setting of the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the various QoS (Port QoS, Host QoS, LU QoS, or Volume QoS).

### Syntax

```
show qos-bandwidth-limit
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Bandwidth Limit	Identification number of the bandwidth limit patterns for QoS (0 – 15)
Volume QoS IOPS	Upper limit for the number of I/Os per second for Volume QoS (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
Volume QoS Throughput (MB/s)	Upper limit of the transfer amount for Volume QoS (in MB/s) (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
LU QoS IOPS	Upper limit for the number of I/Os per second for LU QoS (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
LU QoS Throughput (MB/s)	Upper limit of the transfer amount for LU QoS (in MB/s) (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
Host QoS IOPS	Upper limit for the number of I/Os per second for Host QoS (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
Host QoS Throughput (MB/s)	Upper limit of the transfer amount for Host QoS (in MB/s) (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
Port QoS IOPS	Upper limit for the number of I/Os per second for Port QoS (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)
Port QoS Throughput (MB/s)	Upper limit of the transfer amount for Port QoS (in MB/s) (If the bandwidth limit [upper limit performance value] is not set, "Unlimited" is displayed) (If the default value has been changed, "*" is displayed in front of the value)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show qos-bandwidth-limit

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the current setting of the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the various QoS (Port QoS, Host QoS, LU QoS, or Volume QoS):

CLI> show qos-bandwidth-limit									
Bandwidth Limit	Volume	LU QoS		Host QoS		Port QoS			
		IOPS (IOPS)	Throughput (MB/s)						
0	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
1	15000	800	* 27000	* 1000	15000	800	* 65535	* 65535	* 65535
2	12600	700	* 21000	* 850	12600	700	* 42000	* 18999	* 18999
3	10020	600	* 15000	* 700	10020	600	15000	700	700
4	7500	500	* 10020	* 600	7500	500	10020	600	600
5	5040	400	* 8040	* 500	5040	400	8040	500	500
6	3000	300	* 6000	* 400	3000	300	6000	400	400
7	1020	200	* 5040	* 300	1020	200	5040	300	300
8	780	100	* 4020	* 250	780	100	4020	250	250
9	600	70	* 3000	* 200	600	70	3000	200	200
10	420	40	* 2040	* 160	420	40	2040	160	160
11	300	25	* 1020	* 125	300	25	1020	125	125
12	240	20	* 720	* 90	240	20	720	90	90
13	180	15	* 480	* 60	180	15	480	60	60
14	120	10	* 240	* 30	120	10	240	30	30
15	60	*	1	* 120	* 15	60	5	120	15

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set qos-bandwidth-limit

## set qos-bandwidth-limit

This command changes the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the various QoS (Port QoS, Host QoS, LU QoS, or Volume QoS).

### Caution

If the Automated QoS function is used with ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser, the IOPS or the throughput values that correspond to Bandwidth Limit (1 – 15) must be set in descending order. If the values are not in descending order, the Automated QoS function may not operate as expected.

### Syntax

```
set qos-bandwidth-limit
-mode {port-qos | host-qos | lu-qos | volume-qos}
[-reset]
[-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limit]
[-iops iops_value]
[-throughput throughput_value]
```

### Parameter

**-mode** This parameter specifies the QoS mode for changing the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value).

port-qos	Port QoS
host-qos	Host QoS
lu-qos	LU QoS
volume-qos	Volume QoS

**-reset** Optional. This parameter returns the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) of the QoS mode that is specified with "-mode" to the default value. If omitted, "-bandwidth-limit" must be specified.  
The default values of the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) that are assigned to Bandwidth Limit of the Host QoS, LU QoS, Volume QoS, or Port QoS are as follows.

	Host QoS / LU QoS / Volume QoS	Port QoS
0	Unlimited	Unlimited
1	15,000 IOPS (800 MB/s)	27,000 IOPS (1,000 MB/s)
2	12,600 IOPS (700 MB/s)	21,000 IOPS (850 MB/s)
3	10,020 IOPS (600 MB/s)	15,000 IOPS (700 MB/s)
4	7,500 IOPS (500 MB/s)	10,020 IOPS (600 MB/s)
5	5,040 IOPS (400 MB/s)	8,040 IOPS (500 MB/s)
6	3,000 IOPS (300 MB/s)	6,000 IOPS (400 MB/s)
7	1,020 IOPS (200 MB/s)	5,040 IOPS (300 MB/s)
8	780 IOPS (100 MB/s)	4,020 IOPS (250 MB/s)
9	600 IOPS (70 MB/s)	3,000 IOPS (200 MB/s)
10	420 IOPS (40 MB/s)	2,040 IOPS (160 MB/s)
11	300 IOPS (25 MB/s)	1,020 IOPS (125 MB/s)
12	240 IOPS (20 MB/s)	720 IOPS (90 MB/s)
13	180 IOPS (15 MB/s)	480 IOPS (60 MB/s)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set qos-bandwidth-limit

14	120 IOPS (10 MB/s)	240 IOPS (30 MB/s)
15	60 IOPS (5 MB/s)	120 IOPS (15 MB/s)

#### Caution

If this parameter is specified, "-bandwidth-limit", "-iops", and "-throughput" cannot be specified.

-bandwidth-limit

This parameter specifies the identification number for changing the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value). This parameter cannot be specified with "-reset".

*bandwidth\_limit* Bandwidth Limit (1 - 15)

-iops

Optional. This parameter specifies the upper limit for the number of I/Os per second. If omitted, the setting is not changed.

#### Caution

This parameter can be specified, only if "-bandwidth-limit" is specified.

*iops\_value* Upper limit value for IOPS (60 - 4294967295)

-throughput

Optional. This parameter specifies the upper limit value for the transfer amount per second (in MB/s). If omitted, the setting is not changed.

#### Caution

This parameter can be specified, only if "-bandwidth-limit" is specified.

*throughput\_value* Upper limit value for throughput (1 - 2097151)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the upper limit value for the number of I/Os per second that is assigned to Bandwidth Limit 1 of the Port QoS:

```
CLI> set qos-bandwidth-limit -mode port-qos -bandwidth-limit 1 -iops 28000
```

The following example changes the upper limit value for the transfer amount per second that is assigned to Bandwidth Limit 3 of the Host QoS:

```
CLI> set qos-bandwidth-limit -mode host-qos -bandwidth-limit 3 -throughput 650
```

The following example changes the upper limit values for the number of I/Os per second and the transfer amount per second that are assigned to Bandwidth Limit 3 of the LU QoS:

```
CLI> set qos-bandwidth-limit -mode lu-qos -bandwidth-limit 3 -iops 9000 -throughput 650
```

The following example changes the upper limit values for the number of I/Os per second and the transfer amount per second that are assigned to Bandwidth Limit 5 of the Volume QoS:

```
CLI> set qos-bandwidth-limit -mode volume-qos -bandwidth-limit 5 -iops 10000 -throughput 450
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set qos-bandwidth-limit

The following example returns the bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) assigned to Bandwidth Limit of the Volume QoS to the default value:

```
CLI> set qos-bandwidth-limit -mode volume-qos -reset
```

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > set qos-bandwidth-limit

---

## Login Host Display

This section explains the commands related to displaying the hosts currently logged in to the CA port.

## show ca-port-login-host

This command displays the hosts currently logged in to the CA port.

### Note

- If this command is executed without specifying any parameters, the information for all the hosts currently logged in to the CA ports is displayed (except for the corresponding storage systems of the remote copy).
- FCLINK is not displayed.
- To check whether there are logins from the corresponding storage systems of the remote copy, specify "remote-copy" for the "-display-mode" parameter.

## ■ Syntax

```
show ca-port-login-host
[ { -port port_number | -wwn wwn | -ip-address ip_address | -iscsi-name iscsi_name } ]
[ -display-mode { default | remote-copy } ]
```

## ■ Parameter

- port      Optional. This parameter specifies the CA port number. All the hosts currently logged in to the specified CA port are displayed. Only one parameter can be specified at a time. For details on the specification method, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).
- xyz*      "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
                Example: "121" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#1.
- wxyz*      "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
                Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3.
- wwn      Optional. This parameter specifies the WWN. The port location of the currently logged in host that is specified with the WWN is displayed. Only one parameter can be specified at a time.  
  
Example:    -wwn 40000000abc78856  
  
  *wwn*      World Wide Name (16-byte hexadecimal number)
- ip-address  
  
Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address. The port location of the currently logged in host that is specified with the IP address is displayed. Only one parameter can be specified at a time.  
  
Example:    -ip-address 192.168.1.20  
Example:    -ip-address fe80::1b:332f:d0  
  
  *ip\_address*    IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show ca-port-login-host

-iscsi-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the iSCSI name. The port location of the currently logged in host that is specified with the iSCSI name is displayed. Only one parameter can be specified at a time. The characters are case insensitive.

*iscsi\_name* iSCSI name

-display-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the display mode. If omitted, the information of the hosts currently logged in to the CA port is displayed. If hosts are specified and this parameter is omitted, a list of ports for currently logged in hosts that match the specification is displayed.

default The information of the hosts currently logged in to the CA port is displayed.

remote-copy The CA port information for the corresponding storage systems of the remote copy is displayed. This option cannot be specified if the remote copy license of the Advanced Copy license is not registered.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
FC Port List	List of hosts currently logged in to the FC port. The FC host is displayed if included in the display target.
Location	FC port location. If the port is specified, this item is not displayed. CM#x CA#y Port#z or CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z (DX8900 S4 only)
WWN	World Wide Name
iSCSI Port List	List of hosts currently logged in to the iSCSI port. The iSCSI host is displayed if included in the display target.
Location	iSCSI port location. If the port is specified, this item is not displayed. CM#x CA#y Port#z or CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z (DX8900 S4 only)
IP Address	IP address
iSCSI Name	iSCSI name
Port Location List	List of ports where the specified host is currently logged in. If the host is specified (or the "-wwn" parameter, the "-ip-address" parameter, or the "-iscsi-name" parameter is specified), this item is displayed.
Location	Port location. CM#x CA#y Port#z or CE#w CM#x CA#y Port#z (DX8900 S4 only)

### 3. Configuration Settings and Display

Host Interface Management > show ca-port-login-host

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the results when the parameters are omitted. All the ports and hosts are displayed. (For the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-port-login-host
<FC Port List>
Location          WWN
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 40000000abc80e38
                  40000000abc80e39
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 40000000abc80e38
                  40000000abc80e39

<iSCSI Port List>
Location          IP Address           iSCSI Name
-----
CM#0 CA#1 Port#0 192.168.1.1        iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft
CM#0 CA#1 Port#1 192.168.1.2        iqn.1991-06.com.microsoft
                           192.168.1.3        iqn.1991-07.com.microsoft
```

The following example displays the port location of the currently logged in host in which the WWN is 40000000abc80e39 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-port-login-host -wwn 40000000abc80e39
Location
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0
CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1
CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#2
```

The following example displays the corresponding storage systems of the remote copy currently logged in to CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 (FC port) (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-port-login-host -port 0000 -display-mode remote-copy
WWN
-----
40000000abc80e38
40000000abc80e39
40000000abc80e40
```

The following example displays the hosts currently logged in to CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0 (iSCSI port) (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show ca-port-login-host -port 0010
IP Address           iSCSI Name
-----
192.168.1.1         iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft
192.168.1.2         iqn.1991-06.com.microsoft
192.168.1.3         iqn.1991-07.com.microsoft
```

# 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

This chapter explains the commands related to the Advanced Copy management function.

## Advanced Copy Management

Advanced Copy is a function that copies an arbitrary volume of data at a certain point. The management unit of Advanced Copy is referred to as "copy session" or "session".

Only SnapOPC+ type sessions can be started using CLI. However, all types of copy sessions can be displayed and stopped.

The CLI commands that are related to the Advanced Copy function are shown below.

### Note

External Volumes cannot be specified as the copy source or copy destination.

Function	Command
Advanced Copy license	set advanced-copy-license delete advanced-copy-license show advanced-copy-license
Advanced Copy policy	set advanced-copy-policy show advanced-copy-policy
Advanced Copy parameter	set advanced-copy-parameters show advanced-copy-parameters
Snap Data Volume (SDV)	initialize snap-data-volume show snap-data-volume
Snap Data Pool (Pool/SDPV)	show snap-data-pool delete snap-data-pool-volume
Advanced Copy session	start advanced-copy (only SnapOPC+) stop advanced-copy (all types) show advanced-copy-sessions (all types)

For details on REC (Remote Equivalent Copy), refer to ["Remote Equivalent Copy Management" \(page 459\)](#).

Advanced Copy functions for the ETERNUS DX have the following features:

- Quick copy processes can be performed in units of a volume using ETERNUSmgr or CLI commands.
- Snapshots of volumes can be created using the Windows Volume Shadow Copy Service function.
- Backups and replications can be created using ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager.

This section explains how to perform copy operations in units of a volume using CLI of the ETERNUS DX. For details about setting parameters for each command, refer to this manual.

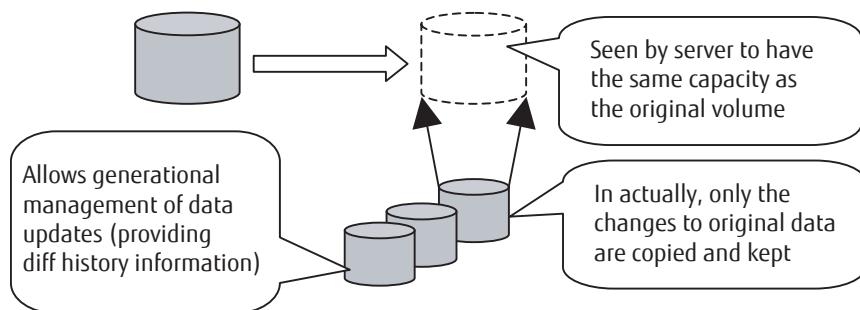
Note that snapshots of the specified volume are created by the ETERNUS Advanced Copy function for the ETERNUS DX. The purposes of the Advanced Copy function (such as creating backups and replications) and the procedure for using the Advanced Copy function via OS or software depends on the OS or software that is used. For details about purposes and procedures, refer to the manual of the OS or software that will be used.

Manage the Advanced Copy function by performing copy operations, and by checking and deleting copy sessions after preparing the Advanced Copy function.

## SnapOPC+ Outline

SnapOPC+ is a function that, to the server, appears to copy a volume (the copy source) in an ETERNUS DX to a different volume (the copy destination) in the same ETERNUS DX at a specific point in time. Only a logical copy is performed initially, following which the SnapOPC+ records changes as the data is updated. Access to changed areas is then referenced via the SnapOPC+ record, while access to the unchanged areas is transparently passed back to the original data (in the copy source area). The expected amount of updates must be considered when deciding the size of the copy destination area. By its nature, SnapOPC+ is best used for the temporary backup to tape of file server files and other low modification rate data, as provision against operating failures and software errors.

Figure 5 SnapOPC+ outline



## Preparations for the Advanced Copy Function

### Basic Settings

#### ■ License registration

Register the license for using the Advanced Copy function.  
If the license is not registered, the Advanced Copy function cannot be used.

[Example]

Registering the license key "1234567890123456"

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-license -key 1234567890123456
```

#### ■ License registration status check

Check the status of the Advanced Copy license registration.

[Example]

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-license
```

## ■ Copy parameter settings (required)

Set the internal table size to match the capacity of the volume to be copied, and the copy speed in the device. Copy table size (table size) and resolution vary according to the copy capacity and number of sessions that are operated at the same time.

### ● Resolution

This value determines the amount of data each bit in the copy bitmap represents.

The allowed resolution settings of "1 (standard)", "2", "4", "8", "16", "32", and "64" respectively give 8KB, 16KB, 32KB, 64KB, 128KB, 256KB, and 512KB regions of data per bitmap bit. The same value is used for all the copy sessions in the ETERNUS DX.

Set the resolution as small as possible. When a large value is specified, the performance may be reduced. When unsure about whether the copy target area might be increased in future use, specify the maximum resolution.

To change the resolution of a copy session that is currently being performed, cancel the copy session and start again.

### ● Internal table size

A dedicated memory area is required for Advanced Copy management and is allocated as a table size. The table size and resolution settings are determined by the copy capacity and the number of sessions (volumes) that will be run simultaneously.

$$(\text{Table size [S]} \text{ [MB]} = (\text{S1}) + (\text{S2}))$$

S1: Refers to the table size (MB) for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ without EC/REC and OPC Restoration.

S2: Refers to the table size (MB) for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ with OPC Restoration.

### Caution

- Round the derived value up to the next multiple of 8 to obtain the correct setting for the copy table size.
- A copy table of the appropriate size (as derived above) is created in each CM.
- If the total table size value (S) exceeds the maximum size allowed, adjust the resolution (M) upward until the maximum table size is no longer exceeded. The resolution (M) should be as small as possible.
- Maximum allowed table sizes are as follows:

Device name	Maximum copy table size (per CM)
DX8100 S4	1,024MB
DX8900 S4	12,288MB

- Allowance should be made for possible increases in the copy capacity.
- If the resolution is changed while a copy session exists, the changed resolution is only applied to copy sessions that are set after the resolution is changed. A copy session that is set before the resolution changes uses the resolution that is set before it is changed.
- The same bitmap ratio (M) value must be used by both the copy source device and copy destination device. If the bitmap ratio settings for the copy source and copy destination devices are different, REC cannot be performed. Note that the table sizes (S) do not need to be identical. If different recommended resolutions are calculated for the copy source and copy destination devices, use whichever resolution is greater for both devices. If the resolution (M) is changed, recalculate the table size (S) setting for the device with the new resolution.

- The table size for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ without EC / REC and OPC Restoration (S1)

M: Resolution (The same value is used in the ETERNUS DX. Set "x1" if possible.)

C1: The total copy capacity (GB) for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ without EC / REC and OPC Restoration (\*1)

N1: The number of sessions for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ without EC / REC and OPC Restoration

$$\text{S1 [MB]} = ([2 \times \text{C1} / \text{M}] + \text{N1}) \times 8 \text{ [KB]} / 1024 \text{ (Round up decimal point)}$$

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

### Advanced Copy Management

- The table size for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ with OPC Restoration (S2)

M: Resolution (The same value is used in the ETERNUS DX. Set "x1" if possible.)

C2: The total copy capacity (GB) for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ with OPC Restoration in the volume (\*1)

N2: The number of sessions for OPC / QuickOPC / SnapOPC / SnapOPC+ with OPC Restoration

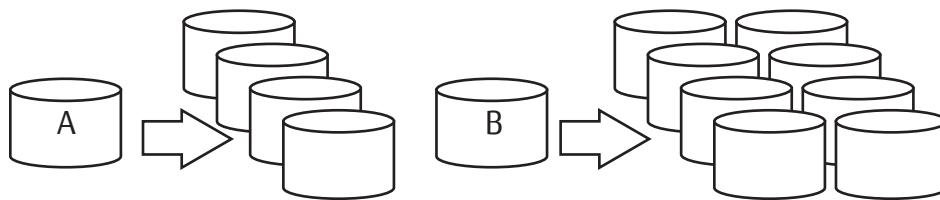
$$S2 \text{ [MB]} = ([2 \times C2 / M] + N2) \times 2 \times 8 \text{ [KB]} / 1024 \text{ (Round up decimal point)}$$

\*1: For EC, OPC, QuickOPC, SnapOPC, SnapOPC+, and REC copy sources, the copy capacity is the total capacity of all volumes (slices or partitions) in the ETERNUS DX that are defined as copy sources. For REC copy destinations, the copy capacity is the total capacity of all the volumes (slices or partitions) in the ETERNUS DX that are defined as copy destinations.

If the ETERNUS DX is used for both the "EC, OPC, QuickOPC, SnapOPC, SnapOPC+, or REC copy source" and the "REC copy source", the copy capacity is the total capacity of both.

The copy capacity for multi-copy sessions and for generation management by SnapOPC+ sessions is the total capacity of copy source volumes (slices or partitions), multiplied by the number of copy destinations (or generations) for each copy source.

Example:



Copy area in the copy source logical volume A: 200M,  
number of copy destinations (generations): 4

Copy area in the copy source logical volume B: 500MB,  
number of copy destinations (generations): 8

Add  $200 \times 4 + 500 \times 8 = 4800\text{MB}$  to the copy capacity (C1).

The number of copy sessions (N1) is  $4 + 8 = 12$ .

When executing OPC Restoration from a copy destination with multi-copy and SnapOPC+ multigeneration enabled, select one copy destination and apply the above formula. Other copy destinations are calculated as being normal multi-copy and SnapOPC+ multi-generation.

### ● Copy speed

Specify one of the following copy speed modes to match the operation to give priority during the copy operation:

- auto (default): Automatically changes the copy speed in response to the operation load status.
- very-low: Operates with a slower copy speed than the "low" mode.
- low: Reduces the effect on host access.
- middle: Operates with a slightly slower copy speed than the "high" mode.
- high: Operates by making maximum use of internal resources.

#### [Example]

Setting the Bitmap ratio to 2, table size to 32MB, and copy speed to Low.

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-parameters -resolution 2 -table-size 32 -ec-opc-priority low
```

## Copy Destination Volume Creation

With the following procedures, create a Snap Data Volume (SDV), which is a generation management volume for the copy destination volume, and create a Snap Data Pool Volume (SDPV) for storing the copied data that configures a pool area, which is a Snap Data Pool (SDP).

If the copy destination volume is TPV or FTV, the following procedure is not necessary.

### ■ RAID group creation

Create a RAID group used for SDV in the normal procedure.

(Refer to this manual for how to create a RAID group.)

When considering the effect on performance, creating SDVs in a RAID group that is not used for the operation is recommended, although the SDVs can be created in an existing RAID group.

### ■ SDV (Snap Data Volume) creation

Create SDVs, the copy destination for SnapOPC+, in the RAID group created in step (1).

[Example]

Creating one SDV with 10 GB virtual capacity in RAID group#2.

```
CLI> create volume -name SDV001 -rg-number 2 -type sdv -virtual-size 10gb -count 1
```

After creating the SDV, check the volume number.

```
CLI> show snap-data-volume
```

Volume Format is performed automatically after the SDV is created. Set the mapping to the LUN.

### ■ SDP (Snap Data Pool) creation

Create SDPVs in the created RAID group.

[Example]

Creating one SDPV having 1 [TB] capacity in the RAID group#4

```
CLI> create volume -name SDPV01 -rg-number 4 -type sdpv -size 1tb -count 1
```

Volume Format is performed automatically after the SDPV is created.

## Operation settings

### ■ Operation policy settings

Set the actions related to the threshold or the information notification of the volume overflow that occurs during copy operations.

For the notification setting of the copy destination TPV or FTV overflow, the warning level or the attention level of each pool applies.

For details, refer to ["Thin Provisioning Pool Management" \(page 217\)](#) or ["Flexible Tier Management" \(page 250\)](#).

[Example]

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

### Advanced Copy Management

Setting for notification of "information", "warning", and "error" if up to 60% and 80%, and more than 95% of the SDPV capacity is used respectively.

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-policy -level information -threshold 60  
CLI> set advanced-copy-policy -level warning -threshold 80  
CLI> set advanced-copy-policy -level error -threshold 95
```

#### [Example]

Set whether to send a notification for each threshold with an e-mail message or not.

```
CLI> set event-notification -level i-sdp-policy-information -method email -suppression disable
```

#### [Example]

Change the attention level of Thin Provisioning Pool #02 to 60% and the warning level to 80%.

```
CLI> set thin-pro-pool -pool-number 02 -attention 60 -warning 80
```

## Copy Session Management

### Copy management

After preparation for Advanced Copy is complete, create a copy session to start copying volumes. During operation, also check the status of the copy sessions and delete unnecessary copy sessions.

#### ■ SnapOPC+ copy execution

Create a copy session by using the "start advanced-copy" command to start the SnapOPC+ copy.

#### [Example]

Starting the SnapOPC+ copy from the copy source volume#0 to the copy destination volume (SDV) #100.

```
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 100
```

#### [Example]

Performing copies of seven generations with day-by-day rotation.

```
(Monday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 100  
(Tuesday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 101  
(Wednesday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 102  
(Thursday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 103  
(Friday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 104  
(Saturday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 105  
(Sunday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 106  
(Monday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 100  
(Tuesday)  
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-number 0 -destination-volume-number 101  
:  
(Daily copy operations are repeated hereinafter)  
:
```

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

### Advanced Copy Management

When setting the SnapOPC+ session of volume#0100 for Monday,

- The SnapOPC+ session for the last Monday is deleted.
- The SDP used for the SnapOPC+ session for the last Monday is released and a new SnapOPC+ session is set as a new backup point.

If the update size exceeds the SDV capacity, additional capacity is allocated from the SDPV area in units of SDPE.

#### ■ Copy session check

Check the status of the copy sessions by using the "show advanced-copy-sessions" command.  
The "show advanced-copy-sessions" command displays the status of all the copy sessions.

[Example]

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-sessions
```

#### ■ Copy session deletion

Delete unnecessary copy sessions by using the "stop advanced-copy" command.  
The areas used by the deleted copy sessions become unused.  
Data in the copy destination volume loses its meaning (becomes undefined).

[Example]

Deleting the copy session with copy session ID 1.

```
CLI> stop advanced-copy -session-id 1 -delete-mode normal
```

## show advanced-copy-license

This command displays the registration status of the Advanced Copy license.

### Syntax

```
show advanced-copy-license
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Copy Type	Copy type ("Local" or "Remote")
Status	Copy license status
Local	Local copy license (a hyphen [-], "Trial", "Trial Expiration", or "Registered")
Remote	Remote copy license (a hyphen [-], "Trial", or "Registered")
Trial registration Date	Registration date of the trial version license. "-" is displayed for the license that is not the trial version.
Local	Registration date of the trial version license for local copy
Remote	Registration date of the trial version license for remote copy
Trial expiration Date	Trial license expiration date. "-" is displayed for the license that is not the trial version.
Local	Trial license expiration date for local copy
Remote	Trial license expiration date for remote copy

### Example(s)

The following example displays the registration status of the Advanced Copy license (when the license has been registered):

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-license
      Copy      Status          Trial registration   Trial expiration
      Type           Date            Date
-----+-----+-----+
 Local    [Trial]        2010/11/27 (1)     2011/01/05
 Remote   [Registered]   -                  -
```

## set advanced-copy-license

This command registers an Advanced Copy license. If the "legitimate version" license is registered in an ETERNUS DX, when trying to register a "legitimate version" license with a lower software level than the already registered license, an error occurs. The trial period of an already registered trial version license can be changed only once by registering another trial version license. If a second attempt is made, an error occurs. In addition, when a trial version license key is registered again, the trial period may be shortened due to the valid period of the license key.

### ■ Syntax

```
set advanced-copy-license {-key key}
```

### ■ Parameter

- key      This parameter specifies the Advanced Copy license key. The license key is 16 letters (fixed).  
*key*      Advanced Copy license key

### ■ Example(s)

The following example registers an Advanced Copy license:

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-license -key 1234567890123456
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > delete advanced-copy-license

## delete advanced-copy-license

This command deletes the registered Advanced Copy license.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete advanced-copy-license -execution {yes | no}
```

### ■ Parameter

**-execution** This parameter confirms that the operation should proceed. The Advanced Copy license is deleted only when the user explicitly specifies "-execution yes".

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| yes | The registered Advanced Copy license is deleted. |
| no  | No operation.                                    |

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the registered Advanced Copy license:

```
CLI> delete advanced-copy-license -execution yes
```

## show advanced-copy-policy

This command displays the Advanced Copy policies for all the Snap Data Pools that are assigned to the system.

### ■ Syntax

```
show advanced-copy-policy
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
SDP-ID	Snap Data Pool number
Information	Threshold value that is registered as the Advanced Copy policy Information level
Warning	Threshold value that is registered as the Advanced Copy policy Warning level
Error	Threshold value that is registered as the Advanced Copy policy Error level

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the Advanced Copy policy:

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-policy
SDP-ID  Information  Warning  Error
      0          50%     90%    99%
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set advanced-copy-policy

## set advanced-copy-policy

This command sets the Advanced Copy pool policy (the threshold value of the Snap Pool area usage for each policy level).

### Syntax

```
set advanced-copy-policy -level {information | warning | error} -threshold threshold
```

### Parameter

**-level** This parameter specifies the policy level of the Advanced Copy. Only one policy level can be specified at the same time.

information Information level.

- Settable range is 1 – 97%.
- Default value is 50%.

warning Warning level.

- Settable range is 2 – 98%.
- Default value is 70%.

error Error level.

- Settable range is 3 – 99%.
- Default value is 99%.

**-threshold** This parameter specifies a threshold corresponding to the specified policy level.

It must be based on the following rule:

0% < Information level < Warning level < Error level < 100%

*threshold* Threshold corresponding to the specified policy level

### Example(s)

The following example sets the Warning level to 80%:

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-policy -level warning -threshold 80
```

## show advanced-copy-parameters

This command displays the current settings of the Advanced Copy parameters.

### Syntax

```
show advanced-copy-parameters
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Resolution	Resolution
Advanced Copy Table Size	Advanced Copy table size
EC/OPC Priority	EC/OPC priority and EC/OPC rate mode that is currently set in the system (Example: Auto, Very Low Priority, Low Priority, Middle Priority, High Priority)
Current EC/OPC Priority	EC/OPC priority that is currently used
SDPE	Resolution of a snap data pool volume
Warning	Threshold value of the Advanced Copy table usage
Used Advanced Copy Table Size	Advanced Copy table size that is currently used
Usable Advanced Copy Size	Usable Advanced Copy table size
Copy Schedule Mode	Copy Schedule Mode (Example: Session balancing, Destination RAID Group balancing)

### Example(s)

The following example displays the Advanced Copy parameters:

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-parameters
Resolution [x2]
Advanced Copy Table Size [128MB]
EC/OPC Priority [Auto]
Current EC/OPC Priority [Low Priority]
SDPE [1GB]
Warning [80%]
Used Advanced Copy Table Size [30MB]
Usable Advanced Copy Size [20GB]
Copy Schedule Mode [Session balancing]
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set advanced-copy-parameters

## set advanced-copy-parameters

This command sets up parameters to use the Advanced Copy functions.

### Syntax

```
set advanced-copy-parameters [-resolution {1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 32 | 64}] [-table-size table_size]  
[-sdpe {1g | 2g | 4g}] [-ec-opc-priority {auto | very-low | low | middle | high}] [-warning warning_level]  
[-copy-schedule-mode {session-balancing | dst-rg-balancing}]
```

### Parameter

**-resolution** Optional. This parameter specifies the Advanced Copy resolution. The default value is "1". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

1	x1
2	x2
4	x4
8	x8
16	x16
32	x32
64	x64

**-table-size** Optional. This parameter specifies the Advanced Copy table size. The size can be specified in multiples of 8MB. Note that the maximum value depends on the memory size that is to be installed in the controllers. The initial value is set to 0MB. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

The specifiable Advanced Copy table size for each model are shown below:

DX8100 S4: 0 to 1,024MB  
DX8900 S4: 0 to 12,288MB

*table\_size* Advanced Copy table size

**-sdpe** Optional. This parameter specifies the resolution for the SDPV. The initial value is set to 1GB. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

1g	1GB (default)
2g	2GB
4g	4GB

**-ec-opc-priority**

Optional. This parameter specifies the EC/OPC rate mode (EC/OPC priority). The initial value is "auto". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

auto	Automatically (default)
very-low	Very low priority
low	Low priority
middle	Middle priority
high	High priority

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set advanced-copy-parameters

**-warning**    Optional. This parameter specifies the threshold value for Advanced Copy table usage. This value is indicated by percent (%). The initial value is set to 80%. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. In addition, the system has a function that notifies users when this value reaches the specified upper limit value. This upper limit value is set by using this parameter. For details, refer to the "["show event-notification"](#)" command or the "["set event-notification"](#)" command.

*warning\_level*    Threshold value for Advanced Copy table usage

**-copy-schedule-mode**

Optional. This parameter specifies the Copy Schedule Mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

session-balancing    Session balancing is performed.

dst-rg-balancing    Destination RAID Group balancing is performed.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up Advanced Copy parameters. The resolution is set to twice the default, the table size is set to 128MB, and the EC/OPC priority is set to automatic mode.

```
CLI> set advanced-copy-parameters -resolution 2 -table-size 128 -ec-opc-priority auto
```

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show snap-data-volume

### show snap-data-volume

This command displays all the registered Snap Data Volumes (SDV). The SDVs that are displayed can also be narrowed down by using the option parameter. The display includes the logical size, the physical size, the used size, and various other items.

#### Syntax

```
show snap-data-volume [-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
```

#### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the Snap Data Volume (SDV) identifiers that are to be displayed. One or more SDVs can be specified at the same time. If this parameter is omitted, all the SDVs are displayed. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers* SDV number

*volume\_names* SDV name

#### Output

Item name	Description
Volume	SDV identifiers
No.	SDV number
Name	SDV name
Status	SDV status
Size(MB)	SDV size (unit: MB)
Logical Size(MB)	Logical size of SDV (unit: MB)
Physical Size(MB)	Physical size of SDV (unit: MB)
Host Used Size(MB)	Size that is used by hosts (unit: MB)
Copy Used Size(MB)	Size that is used for copy sessions (unit: MB)
Host SDP Using Size(MB)	Size of the area in the Snap Data Pool (SDP) that is used by hosts (unit: MB)
Copy SDP Using Size(MB)	Size of the area in the Snap Data Pool (SDP) that is used for copy sessions (unit: MB)

#### Example(s)

The following example displays all the registered SDVs:

CLI> show snap-data-volume	Status	Size(MB)	Logical Size(MB)	Physical Size(MB)	Host Used Size(MB)	Copy Used Size(MB)	Host SDP Using Size(MB)	Copy SDP Using Size(MB)
No. Name								
100 SDV001	Available	102400	5120	4144	3120	1024	3120	1024
105 SDV002	Available	102400	5120	4144	3120	1024	3120	1024
108 SDV003	Available	102400	5120	4144	3120	1024	3120	1024

## initialize snap-data-volume

This command initializes Snap Data Volumes (SDV). Volume types other than snap data volumes cannot be specified.

### ■ Syntax

```
initialize snap-data-volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the Snap Data Volume (SDV) identifiers to be initialized. One or more SDVs can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers* SDV number

*volume\_names* SDV name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example initializes the consecutive SDVs from #1 through #5:

```
CLI> initialize snap-data-volume -volume-number 1-5
```

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show snap-data-pool

### show snap-data-pool

This command displays the snap data pool (SDP). The display includes the total size and the assigned size of the SDP area.

#### Syntax

```
show snap-data-pool [-sdp-number sdp_number]
```

#### Parameter

##### -sdp-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the SDP number to be displayed. Only "0" can be specified.

*sdp\_number* SDP number

#### Output

Item name	Description
Total Size(GB)	Total size (unit: GB)
Unencrypted	Total size of the unencrypted data
Encrypted	Total size of the encrypted data
Host Size(GB)	Size of the data that is directly updated from a host (unit: GB)
Unencrypted	Size of the unencrypted data that is directly updated from a host
Encrypted	Size of the encrypted data that is directly updated from a host
Copy Size(GB)	Size of copied data (unit: GB)
Unencrypted	Size of unencrypted data that is copied using the SDP due to a shortage of SDV capacity
Encrypted	Size of encrypted data that is copied using the SDP due to a shortage of SDV capacity
No.	Snap Data Pool Volume number
Name	Snap Data Pool Volume name
Status	Snap Data Pool Volume status
Reserved Deletion	Indicates whether the deletion of snap data pool volume is reserved.
Size(MB)	Snap Data Pool Volume size

#### Example(s)

The following example displays the SDPs:

```
CLI> show snap-data-pool
Snap Data Pool Information
    Total Size(GB) Host Size(GB) Copy Size(GB)
    -----
Unencrypted          4            0            0
Encrypted            0            0            0

Snap Data Pool Volume List
No.   Name           Status             Reserved Deletion Size(MB)
----- -----
2   SDPV#01        Not Ready        No                  2048
3   SDPV#11        Partially Exposed Rebuild  No                  2048
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > delete snap-data-pool-volume

## delete snap-data-pool-volume

This command deletes Snap Data Pool Volumes (SDPV). Other volume types cannot be deleted by this command.

### Syntax

```
delete snap-data-pool-volume {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}  
-mode {force | reservation}
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the SDPV identifiers to be deleted. One or more volumes can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers* SDPV number

*volume\_names* SDPV name

-mode This parameter specifies the deletion mode.

force The SDPV is immediately deleted even when an SDP element (SDPE) has been assigned to it.  
Up to 128 volumes can be specified at the same time.

reservation The SDPV is deleted when the SDPE is no longer used.

### Example(s)

The following example forcibly deletes the SDPV named "SDPV1":

```
CLI> delete snap-data-pool-volume -volume-name SDPV1 -mode force
```

The following example deletes SDPV #1 through #10 when the SDPE is no longer used:

```
CLI> delete snap-data-pool-volume -volume-number 1-10 -mode reservation
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show advanced-copy-sessions

## show advanced-copy-sessions

This command displays a list of the Advance Copy sessions that are being started. The number of sessions for each Advanced Copy type can be displayed when all parameters are omitted. A list of the sessions that are to be displayed can be narrowed down to the Advanced Copy type, the requestor, and the volume type. Details for a session can also be displayed by specifying the session-ID, which is the number used to identify a session. Note that only one session can be displayed at a time.

### Note

- All sessions are displayed. In addition, by specifying parameters in combination, output results can be refined.
- The status of some reserved copy sessions may be displayed as "Reserved" immediately after the session starts. The type of sessions in Reserved status can only be distinguished as being either OPC, EC, XCOPY, or ODX. In this case, sessions that are distinguished as OPC or EC may be determined as being another type of session once the type of copy session can be confirmed.
- VVOL copy sessions are not displayed. To display the VVOL copy session list, use the "show vvol-copy-session" command.

## Syntax

```
show advanced-copy-sessions  
[-session-id id] [-type {all | ec | opc | qopc | sopc | sopc+ | mon | rec | xcopy | odx}  
[-requestor {all | gui | cli | guicli | smis | scsi | lan}] [-volume-type {all | open | standard}]]
```

## Parameter

-session-id Optional. This parameter specifies the session ID that is to be used to display details. The session ID is the number to identify a session. Only one session ID can be displayed at a time. If this parameter is omitted, the details cannot be displayed.

### Note

This parameter cannot be specified with other parameters.

*id* Session ID

-type Optional. This parameter specifies the Advanced Copy type that is used to display a list of the sessions. If this parameter is omitted, the Advanced Copy type cannot be narrowed down.

### Note

- This parameter can be specified with the "-requestor" and "-volume-type" parameters.
- The "-session-id" parameter cannot be specified with this parameter.

all	All sessions for all the types are displayed.
ec	All EC sessions are displayed.
opc	All OPC sessions are displayed.
qopc	All QuickOPC sessions are displayed.
sopc	All SnapOPC sessions are displayed.

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show advanced-copy-sessions

sopc+	All SnapOPC+ sessions are displayed.
mon	All Monitor sessions are displayed.
rec	All REC sessions are displayed.
xcopy	All XCopy sessions are displayed.
odx	All ODX copy sessions are displayed.

-requestor Optional. This parameter specifies the requestor that is to be used to narrow down the sessions. If omitted, this parameter is handled as though "-requestor all" is specified.

##### Note

- This parameter must be specified with the "-type" parameter.
- This parameter can be specified with the "-volume-type" parameter.
- The "-session-id" parameter cannot be specified with this parameter.

all	Sessions to be displayed are not restricted by the requestors. If omitted, this operand is assigned.
gui	Only sessions being started from GUI are displayed.
cli	Only sessions being started from CLI are displayed.
guicli	Only sessions being started from both GUI and CLI are displayed.
smis	Only sessions being started from SMI-S are displayed.
scsi	Only sessions being started from SCSI are displayed.
lan	Only sessions being started from Software via LAN except from SMI-S are displayed.

-volume-type

Optional. This parameter specifies the type of volume that is to be used to narrow down the sessions. If omitted, this parameter is handled as though "-volume-type all" is specified.

##### Note

- This parameter must be specified with the "-type" parameter.
- The "-requestor" parameter can be specified with this parameter.
- The "-session-id" parameter cannot be specified with this parameter.

all	Sessions to be displayed are not restricted by the volume type. If omitted, this operand is assigned.
standard	Only sessions associated with the Standard volume type are displayed.
open	Same as "standard".

## ■ Output

- When all parameters are omitted.

Item name	Description
Number of EC Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type EC sessions
Number of OPC Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type OPC sessions
Number of QuickOPC Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type QuickOPC sessions

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show advanced-copy-sessions

Item name	Description
Number of SnapOPC Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type SnapOPC sessions
Number of SnapOPC+ Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type SnapOPC+ sessions
Number of Monitor Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type Monitor sessions
Number of REC Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type Remote Equivalent Copy (REC) sessions
Number of XCopy Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type XCOPY sessions
Number of ODX Sessions	Number of the Advanced Copy type ODX sessions

- When a list is displayed.

Item name	Description
SID	Session ID of this system is displayed in decimal number
Generation	The generation is displayed only when the SnapOPC+ type is selected.
Type	Advanced Copy type (EC, OPC, QuickOPC, SnapOPC, SnapOPC+, Monitor, REC, ODX, or XCOPY) is displayed.
Volume Type	Volume type that is to be copied in the session
Source Volume	Copy source volume identifiers
No.	Copy source volume number
Name	Copy source volume name
Destination Volume	Copy destination volume identifiers (This information is displayed when types other than Monitor are selected.)
No.	Copy destination volume number
Name	Copy destination volume name
Status	Session status (Idle, Reserve, Active, Error Suspend, Suspend, or Halt)
Phase	The session phase (No Pair, Copying, Equivalent, Tracking, Tracking&Copying, or Readying) is displayed when EC, QuickOPC, Monitor, or REC is selected.
Error Code	Error code (for details, refer to <a href="#">"Copy Session Error Codes" (page 907)</a> ) in a 2-digit hexadecimal number
Requestor	The requestor that started the session (GUI, CLI, SMI-S, SCSI or LAN) is displayed.

- When details are displayed

Item name	Description
SID, Generation, Type, Volume Type, Source Volume, Destination Volume, Status, Phase, Error Code, and Requestor	Refer to the above information when a list is displayed.
Source Block Address (LBA)	The copy source Start Logical Block Address (LBA) in the specified range is displayed in 16-digit hexadecimal.
Destination Block Address (LBA)	The copy destination Start LBA in the specified range is displayed in 16-digit hexadecimal.
Total Data Size(MB)	Total data size
Copied Data Size(MB)	Copied data size
Modified Data Size(MB)	Tracking data size
SDP Used Capacity(MB)	Used Snap Data Pool block is displayed when the type SnapOPC or SnapOPC+ is selected. (If the copy destination volume of SnapOPC/SnapOPC+ is TPV or FTV, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show advanced-copy-sessions

Item name	Description
SDP-ID (assigned to SDV)	Snap Data Pool ID that is assigned to SDV is displayed when the type SnapOPC or SnapOPC+ is selected. (If the copy destination volume of SnapOPC/SnapOPC+ is TPV or FTV, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)
Direction	In the relevant copy session, the direction of the copy is displayed when the type REC is selected (Primary: copy source, Secondary: copy destination).
Sync	Operation mode of the session is displayed. Details are as follows: Sync: Synchronous Operation Mode Async: Asynchronous Operation Mode
Transfer Mode	Transfer mode of the session is displayed. Details are as follows: Through Mode: Asynchronous Through Mode Stack Mode: Asynchronous Stack Mode Consistency Mode: Asynchronous Consistency Mode (a mode that guarantees data transfer ordering to the connection destination storage system for all the specified REC sessions)
Recovery Mode	The recovery mode of the session is displayed only when the type REC is selected. Automatic: A mode to restart copying automatically when the REC copy path has recovered from abnormal status. Manual: A mode not to restart copying automatically when the REC copy path has recovered from abnormal status.
Split Mode	The split mode of the relevant session is displayed only when the type REC is selected. Automatic: A mode in which Write I/O accesses to copy source are accepted when the copy path of REC is in abnormal status. Manual: A mode in which Write I/O accesses to copy source are accepted when the copy path of REC is in abnormal status. Specified sense information is sent to the host.
Remote Session-ID	The session ID of another which is remotely connected with this system
Remote Box-ID	The identifier of another which is remotely connected with this system
Time Stamp	Time stamp is displayed in local time. The previous time stamp backed-up is displayed when the Status is Active or Suspend. The time that the accident occurred is displayed when the Status is Error Suspend or Halt.
Elapsed Time	The elapsed time from starting the session is displayed (unit: day, hour, min, sec).
Resolution	The resolution of the session is displayed (x2, x4, x8, x16).
License	The license information of the session is displayed (Regular, Trial, Unknown).
Copy Range	The copy range is displayed. (Totally, Extent)
Secondary Access Permission	Indicates whether the Secondary area can be accessed when the Status is Active. (Read Only at Equivalency, No Read/Write)
Concurrent Suspend Status	Transition status of Concurrent Suspend. (Normal, Exec, Error, Unknown)
Change Error	Execution result of the Change command. (Normal, Mode Change Error, Reverse Error)
Remain Time	Estimated time until the transition to Suspend status is complete.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the number of sessions for each Advanced Copy type. In this example, a list of sessions is not displayed:

```
CLI> show advanced-copy-sessions
Number of EC Sessions      :      2
Number of OPC Sessions     :      1
Number of QuickOPC Sessions:      1
Number of SnapOPC Sessions :      1
Number of SnapOPC+ Sessions:      1
Number of Monitor Sessions :      1
Number of REC Sessions     :      1
Number of XCopy Sessions   :      1
Number of ODX Sessions     :      1
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show advanced-copy-sessions

The following example displays the details of session #3: Multiple sessions cannot be specified at the same time.

CLI>	show advanced-copy-sessions -session-id 0	Destination Volume	Status	Phase	Error Code	Requestor
SID	Gene ration	Type	Volume No.	Source Volume Name	No.	Name
0	1 / 1	SnapOPC+ Standard	8	TPV	9	snap
		Source Block Address (LBA)	:	0x0000000000000000		
		Destination Block Address (LBA)	:	0x0000000000000000		
		Total Data Size(MB)	:	1024		
		Copied Data Size(MB)	:	0		
		Modified Data Size(MB)	:	-		
		SDP Used Capacity(MB)	:	-		
		SDP-ID (assigned to SDV)	:	-		
		Direction	:	-		
		Sync	:	-		
		Transfer Mode	:	-		
		Recovery Mode	:	-		
		Split Mode	:	-		
		Remote Session-ID	:	-		
		Remote Box-ID	:	-		
		Time Stamp	:	2018-11-08 21:43:29		
		Elapsed Time	:	3 day 22 hour 50 min 20 sec		
		Resolution	:	x1		
		License	:	Regular		
		Copy Range	:	Totally		
		Secondary Access Permission	:	-		
		Concurrent Suspend Status	:	-		
		Change Error	:	-		
		Remain Time	:	-		

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > start advanced-copy

## start advanced-copy

This command starts an Advanced Copy SnapOPC+ session. All other Copy types cannot be started using this command.

### Syntax

```
start advanced-copy
{-source-volume-number volume_number | -source-volume-name volume_name}
{-destination-volume-number volume_number | -destination-volume-name volume_name}
```

### Parameter

-source-volume-number or -source-volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier of the copy source.

Only one volume can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Copy source volume number

*volume\_name*      Copy source volume name

-destination-volume-number or -destination-volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifier of the copy destination. The volume type that can be specified for the copy destination volume is SDV, TPV, or FTV. However, Compression-enabled TPVs cannot be specified.

Only one volume identifier can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_number*      Copy destination volume number

*volume\_name*      Copy destination volume name

### Example(s)

The following example starts an Advanced Copy session from the volume named "OPEN1" to the volume named "SDV1":

```
CLI> start advanced-copy -source-volume-name OPEN1 -destination-volume-name SDV1
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > stop advanced-copy

## stop advanced-copy

This command stops an Advanced Copy session or sessions.

### Note

- All Advanced Copy sessions can be stopped.
- VVOL copy sessions cannot be stopped. To stop VVOL copy sessions, use the "stop vvol-copy-session" command.

## Syntax

```
stop advanced-copy -session-id session_ids [-delete-mode {forced | normal}]
```

## Parameter

**-session-id** This parameter specifies the session IDs that are to be stopped. One or more numbers can be specified at the same time.

Example:

- session-id 0 (Only 0)
- session-id 0,1 (0 and 1)
- session-id 2-5 (2 to 5)
- session-id 0,2-5 (0, and 2 to 5)

*session\_ids* Session ID

**-delete-mode**

Optional. The Copy Session Management policy is required.

This parameter specifies the deletion mode. This parameter can be specified for any type of Advanced Copy session. When the Copy type is SnapOPC, the specified session and all prior sessions are deleted. If omitted, this parameter is handled as though "normal" is specified. When multiple sessions are specified, this parameter is applied to all the selected sessions.

forced Sessions are forcibly deleted.

normal Sessions are not forcibly deleted (default).

## Example(s)

The following example forcibly stops Advanced Copy session ID #1:

```
CLI> stop advanced-copy -session-id 1 -delete-mode forced
```

## Remote Equivalent Copy Management

---

Remote Equivalent Copy (REC) is a function that is used to perform Equivalent Copy (EC) between remote storage systems. CLI for settings related to REC allows the composing of REC path information, setting information, tuning performance and other similar actions, but cannot support starting sessions and session management. For controlling sessions, use ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager (ACM). For further information, refer to the related documentation.

For details about the license that is required for REC session connections, refer to the "set advanced-copy-license" and the "show advanced-copy-license" commands.

The CLI commands that are related to the REC function are shown below.

Function	Command
Port mode	set host-port-mode show host-port-mode
REC path	import rec-path show rec-path export backup-rec-path show backup-rec-path-information convert rec-path set rec-path-parameters
Round trip time	measure rec-round-trip-time set rec-round-trip-time
REC multiplicity	set rec-multiplicity
REC buffer	set rec-buffer delete rec-buffer show rec-buffer
REC disk buffer	create rec-disk-buffer set rec-disk-buffer delete rec-disk-buffer show rec-disk-buffer format rec-disk-buffer release rec-disk-buffer
REC QoS	set rec-path-qos

This section explains the CLI commands related to the environment settings used to control the REC. The minimum requirements for both the copy source storage system and the copy destination storage system is a path information file that defines the data transmission line and related performance boosting settings.

## Summaries of REC Environment Settings through CLI

Even though REC sessions may be started by using ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager (ACM) upon applying the REC environment settings using CLI, it is recommended that round trip times be measured to optimize the performance between storage systems. The steps involved in setting the REC environment using CLI are as follows:

### Procedure ►►►

- 1** Switch the host interface ports to RA mode or CA/RA auto mode (on both the copy source and the copy destination storage systems).
- Use the "set host-port-mode" command to set the host interface port that is to be used to establish an REC path to RA mode or CA/RA auto mode. The currently set mode can also be displayed by using the "show host-port-mode" command. Parameter settings for each host interface port can be set by using the "set fc-parameters" and "set iscsi parameters" commands.
- 2** Create TEXT type REC path information (TEXT type is recommended for CLI).  
Describe the REC path information using a text editor, commercial software, etc. For details, refer to the descriptions that follow.
- 3** Apply the REC path information.  
Use the "import rec-path" command to apply the REC path information to the target storage systems (both the copy source and the copy destination). If a syntax error is detected, the command will terminate with an error message and an error line. Make sure that the information in the REC path information file matches the actual setup.
- 4** Measure and apply round trip times.  
Firstly, measure the round trip time using the "measure rec-round-trip-time" command in automatic mode and apply it in the system. Individual round trip times can be manually measured and applied afterwards if necessary. Multiplicity can also be set to fine tune the REC performance. For detail, refer to the set rec-multiplicity command.
- 5** Define REC buffers (Only for REC Asynchronous Consistency Mode).  
If the mode is used, define an REC buffer using the "set rec-buffer" command. The configuration and status of the REC buffer can be checked by using the "show rec-buffer" command.

The following functions (services) are also supported:

- Exporting the REC path information system backup file to an FTP server.
- Converting the REC path information file type bi-directionally, from TEXT type to BINARY type, or from BINARY type to TEXT type.

## Path Information File

In order to control the REC, a path information file must be created. This file contains Box IDs, information identifying ETERNUS DX storage systems and remote adapters, host interface port information for the host interface adapters installed in the ETERNUS DX/AF. This file is set to RA (Remote Adapter) mode. In the ETERNUS DX/AF, two different path information file formats are supported; TEXT type and BINARY type.

- **TEXT type**

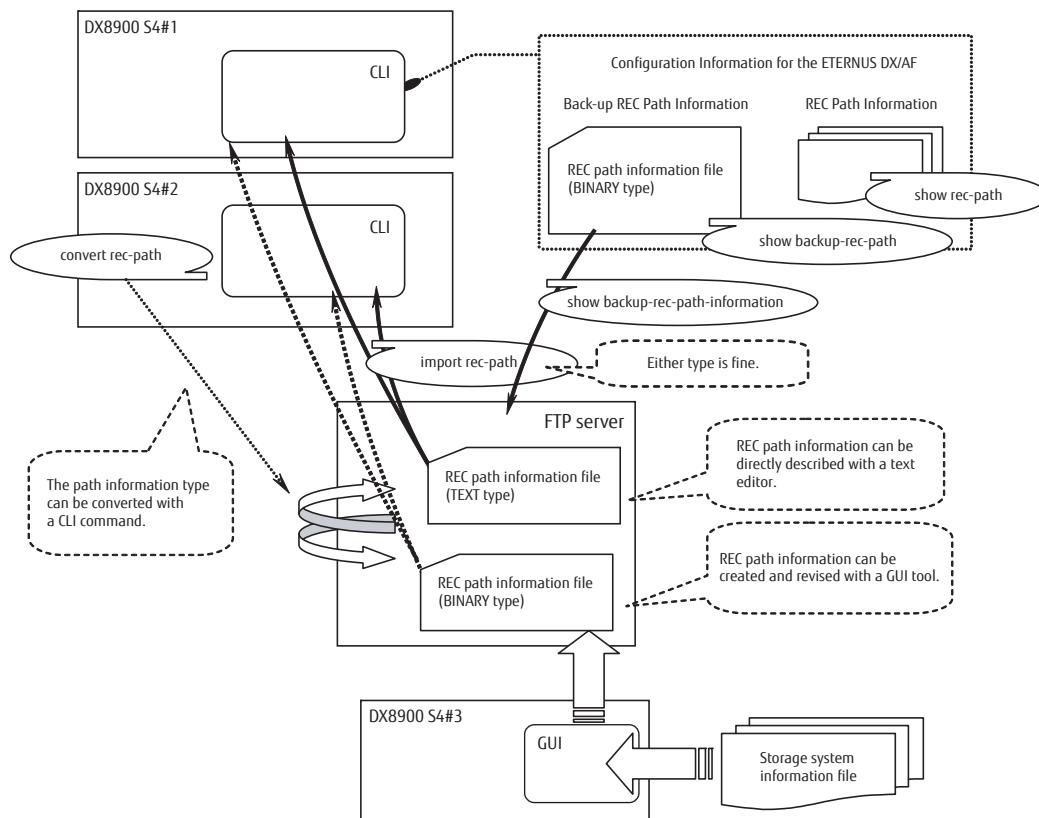
Path information is directly described using a text editor or similar tool (details follow). This is the recommended approach for CLI-use.

- **BINARY type**

Path information is created and revised using the GUI edit function. This is the recommended approach for GUI-use.

The contents of a typical REC path information file are as follows:

Figure 6 Overview of the path information file



## Path Information File Syntax (TEXT type)

For CLI-use, a path information file should be created using text editor, or something similar. The TEXT type path information file description rules are as follows:

### ■ Basic rules

- Only ASCII characters may be used.
- All label names must be in lowercase. The following is a correct example.

```
storage 10
```

The following example has an uppercase label (a syntax error):

```
STORAGE 10
```

- Lines 'starting' (first non-space character) with a hash mark (#) are handled as comment lines. The following example shows a correct comment line:

```
# definition of storage system
```

The following line is NOT handled as a comment line because the "box-id" string appears before the hash mark:

```
box-id ###DXL###
```

- The number of space is not restricted. Note that at least one or more space keys are required between a label name and operand, to set value. The following example is also identified as a correct line.

```
storage      10
```

The following example has no spaces between the "storage" label name and the operand value "10" (a syntax error):

```
storage10
```

- The ASCII characters CR+LF (hexadecimal code 0x0d0a) are expected for newlines, with CR or LF alone also being interpreted as a newline. When exporting the system backup path information, newlines are output as ASCII code CR+LF.
- The maximum number of characters for each line is 255 (including the newline characters).

## ■ Authentication strings

eternus-rec-path-text-xxxx

The authentication string must be described from the first column of the top line. Any space characters must not be inserted.

The xxxx defines the version of the path information file. The version that can be applied differs depending on connection source device, connection destination device, and the firmware version.

The following table indicates the specification methods for the versions of the path information file.

Connection source device series/model	Version of the path information file	Connection destination device series/model	
		DX8900 S4, DX8700 S3/ DX8900 S3	DX100 S4/DX200 S4, DX500 S4/DX600 S4, DX8100 S4, DX100 S3/DX200 S3, DX500 S3/DX600 S3, DX8100 S3, AF250 S2/AF250, AF650 S2/AF650
DX8100 S4	0202	x	x
	0101	-	x
DX8900 S4	0202	x	x
	0101	x*	x

x: REC connections available, x\*: REC connections possible, -: REC connections not possible

- Version 0101 of the path information file

The specifiable ports are 0 to 7 for the controller module (CM), 0 to 3 for the CA, and 0 to 3 for the host interface port.

For x\*, if CM#2 to CM#7 is specified, a configuration to CE#1 to CE#3 is performed.

- CE number

The value (quotient) obtained by dividing the CM number by 2.

- CM number

The remaining value (remainder) obtained by dividing the CM number by 2.

Example: If CM#2 was specified, the result is CE#1CM#0 (2 / 2 = 1 with a remainder of 0)

Example: If CM#7 was specified, the result is CE#3CM#1 (7 / 2 = 3 with a remainder of 1)

- Version 0202 of the path information file

The specifiable ports are 0 to 3 for the controller enclosure (CE), 0 to 3 for the controller module (CM), 0 to 1 for the CA, and 0 to 3 for the host interface port.

The following example shows version 0101 of the path information file.

```
eternus-rec-path-text-0101
```

## ■ Storage system definitions

**storage**      Defines an identification number (0-127) for each of the local and remote storage systems. Usable numbers can be freely selected within this range. The following example uses "0" as the storage system id number:

```
storage 0
```

**box-id**      Defines a Box ID for the target storage system. Note the following:

- The Box ID value must be double-quoted ("").
- Lowercase characters are automatically converted to uppercase.
- Hash marks (#) are automatically appended to Box IDs shorter than 40 characters in length.
- The Box ID can be confirmed using the "show boxid" command.

```
box-id "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000000#####"
```

**device-type**      Defines a device type for the target storage system. The storage system is specified by two numbers that indicate the unit type and the unit sub type.

The meaning of these numbers are shown in the table below.

Storage series / models	Unit type	Sub unit type
DX100 S4/DX200 S4	5	7
DX500 S4/DX600 S4	5	8
DX8100 S4	7	10
DX8900 S4	7	11
DX100 S3/DX200 S3	5	7
DX500 S3/DX600 S3	5	8
DX8100 S3	5	8
DX8700 S3/DX8900 S3	5	9
AF250 S2/AF250	5	7
AF650 S2/AF650	5	8
DX200F	5	7

Examples are shown below.

```
device-type 4, 5
```

## cmX-caY-portZ

Define the World Wide Name (WWN) or iSCSI parameters of a host interface port to be set to RA mode or CA/RA auto mode in the target storage system. The X in a label name is the controller module number, the Y is the CA number, and the Z is the host interface port number.

Examples are shown below. In this example, the host interface port of CM#0 is defined when version 0101 of the path information file is used.

- RA mode or CA/RA auto mode can be switched by using the "set host-port-mode" command.
- Host interface port WWNs or iSCSI name can be confirmed using the "show fru-ce" command.
- The limitation for the number of characters for each iSCSI parameter is as follows:
  - iSCSI name: At least 4 and a maximum of 223.
  - RA port CHAP authentication username: At least 1 and a maximum of 63.
  - RA port CHAP authentication password: At least 12 and a maximum of 32.
  - When CHAP authentication is disabled, CHAP authentication username and password should be omitted.
  - Alias: At least 0 and a maximum of 31, which must be enclosed with double quotations (").

Examples are shown below.

```
cm0-ca0-port0 40000000abc80e38
cm0-ca0-port1 40000000abc80e3a
cm0-ca3-port2 40000000abc80e3c
cm0-ca3-port3 40000000abc80e3e
```

### Example host interface port iSCSI parameter definitions:

```
cm0-ca0-port0 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.13,eternus,eternus,"eternus000"
cm0-ca1-port1 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.22,,,""
cm1-ca0-port0 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,fe80::250,,,""
cm1-ca1-port1 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,2000:100::10:1:0:250,,,""
```

## ceW-cmX-caY-portZ

Define the World Wide Name (WWN) or iSCSI parameters of a host interface port to be set to RA mode or CA/RA auto mode in the target storage system. The W in a label name is the controller enclosure number (and "0" is specified for the DX8100 S4), the X is the controller module number, the Y is the CA number, and the Z is the host interface port number.

Examples are shown below. In this example, the host interface port of CE#0 CM#0 is defined when version 0202 of the path information file is used.

- RA mode or CA/RA auto mode can be switched by using the "set host-port-mode" command.
- Host interface port WWNs or iSCSI name can be confirmed using the "show fru-ce" command.
- The limitation for the number of characters for each iSCSI parameter is as follows:
  - iSCSI name: At least 4 and a maximum of 223.
  - RA port CHAP authentication username: At least 1 and a maximum of 63.
  - RA port CHAP authentication password: At least 12 and a maximum of 32.
  - When CHAP authentication is disabled, CHAP authentication username and password should be omitted.
  - Alias: At least 0 and a maximum of 31, which must be enclosed with double quotations (").

Examples are shown below.

```
ce0-cm0-ca0-port0 40000000abc80e38
ce0-cm0-ca0-port1 40000000abc80e3a
ce0-cm0-ca3-port2 40000000abc80e3c
ce0-cm0-ca3-port3 40000000abc80e3e
```

Example host interface port iSCSI parameter definitions:

```
ce0-cm0-ca0-port0 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.13,ternus,ternus,"ternus000"
ce0-cm0-ca1-port1 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.22,,,""
ce0-cm1-ca0-port0 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dx400:00040080,fe80::250:,,,""
ce0-cm1-ca1-port1 iqn.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.ternus-dx400:00040080,2000:100::10:1:0:250,,,""
```

## ■ Inter storage system REC path information definitions

In order to use REC, a file that specifies the inter-storage-system copy paths must be created. This contains REC path information indicating the whole paths (copy source, copy destination, and the path between them) that are to be used for REC. The following examples describe the various inter-storage-system REC path information parameters.

storage-link X,Y

Defines the numbers of the two storage systems (the copy source and the copy destination) that are to be linked. The numbers are those used in the storage system definitions. The following example shows numbers from the storage system definitions being used.

```
storage-link 5,6
```

path-type {direct | switched}

Defines the type of path connection of the connected device. If the device is connected directly, the descriptor is "direct". If the device is connected remotely, the descriptor is "switched". The following example is specified when using a direct connection type:

```
path-type direct
```

The following example is specified when using a remote connection type:

```
path-type switched
```

line-speed {1-65535}

Defines an effective line speed for the path between the linked storage systems. This is the WAN bandwidth that is actually available and used for the REC. The possible range is from 1 to 65535 and the units are megabits per second (= Mbit/s). This definition is only specified for switched type paths. The following example specifies 100 Mbit/s as the effective line speed:

```
line-speed 100
```

port-link cmX-ca YportZ,cmW-ca V-portU

Respectively defines the target host interface ports in the local and remote storage systems in the same order as used in the "storage-link" field. The following example is when version 0101 of the path information file is used. For "storage-link 5,6" used in the above storage system definition example, cm0-ca0-port1 belongs to storage system #5 and cm1-ca2-port3 belongs to storage system #6. In the "cmX-portY-portZ,cmW-portV-portU" format, X and W indicate the controller module number, Y and V indicate the host adapter on the specified controller module, and Z and U indicate the host interface port number of the specified adapter.

```
port-link cm0-ca0-port1,cm1-ca2-port3
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

##### Advanced Copy Management

Note that space characters may not be inserted before and after the commas (,). The following example has a space character after the comma (,) (a syntax error):

```
port-link cm0-ca0-port1, cm1-ca2-port3
```

port-link ceW-cmX-caY-portZ,ceV-cmU-caT-portS

Respectively defines the target host interface ports in the local and remote storage systems in the same order as used in the "storage-link" field. The following example is when version 0202 of the path information file is used. For "storage-link 5,6" used in the above storage system definition example, ce0-cm0-ca0-port1 belongs to storage system #5 and ce0-cm1-ca2-port3 belongs to storage system #6. In the "ceW-cmX-caY-portZ,ceV-cmU-caT-portS" format, W and V indicate the controller enclosure number (and "0" is specified for the DX8100 S4), X and U indicate the controller module number, Y and T indicate the host adapter on the specified controller module, and Z and S indicate the host interface port number of the specified adapter.

```
port-link ce0-cm0-ca0-port1,ce0-cm1-ca2-port3
```

Note that space characters may not be inserted before and after the commas (,). The following example has a space character after the comma (,) (a syntax error):

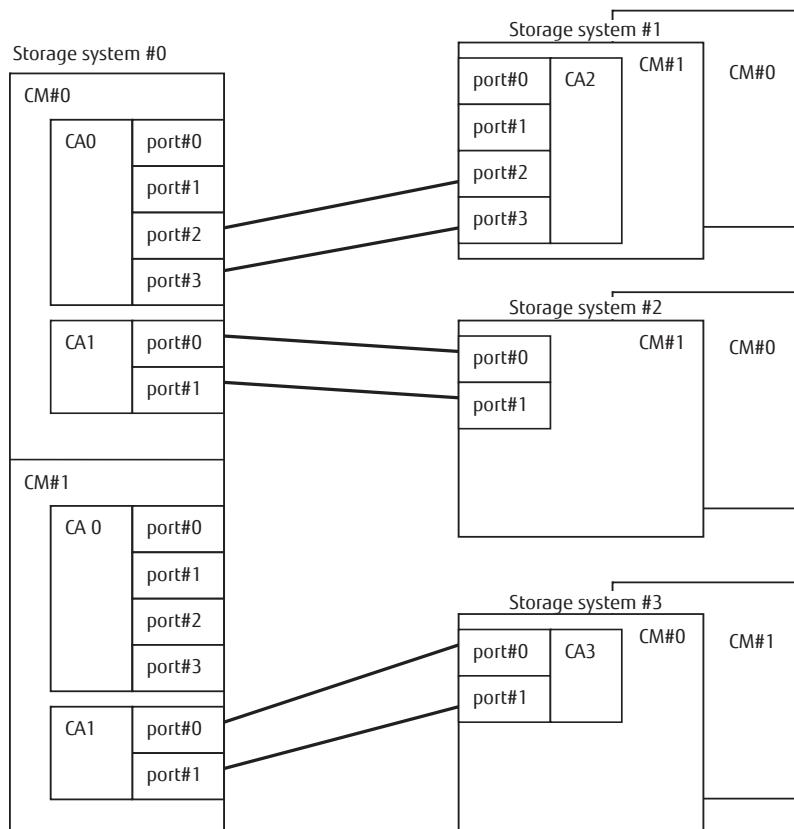
```
port-link ce0-cm0-ca0-port1, ce0-cm1-ca2-port3
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

##### Advanced Copy Management

The example REC path information file that follows is based on the path topology shown below:

Figure 7 Example of an REC path information file



## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

### Advanced Copy Management

```
eternus-rec-path-text-0101
# REC Path information file for ETERNUS
# Definition of storage system
# Storage system #0
storage 0
box-id      "00ETERNUSDXMS2ET00000A####EI000000#####"
device-type 4,5
cm0-ca0-port2 40000000abc80e42
cm0-ca0-port3 40000000abc80e43
cm0-ca1-port0 40000000abc80e50
cm0-ca1-port1 40000000abc80e51
cm1-ca1-port0 irq.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.13,eternus,eternus,"n0p110"
cm1-ca1-port1 irq.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.14,,,""

# Storage system #1
storage 1
box-id      "00ETERNUSDXMS2ET00000A####EI000001#####"
device-type 4,5
cm1-ca2-port2 40000000abc80e42
cm1-ca2-port3 40000000abc80e43

# Storage system #2
storage 2
box-id      "00DXL####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####"
device-type 4,4
cm1-ca0-port0 40000000abc80e42
cm1-ca0-port1 40000000abc80e43

# Storage system #3
storage 3
box-id      "00ETERNUSDXMS2ET00000A####EI000003#####"
device-type 4,5
cm0-ca3-port0 irq.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.93,eternus,eternus,"n3p030"
cm0-ca3-port1 irq.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.eternus-dx400:00040080,10.11.12.94,,,""

# Definition of REC path information
# Linked between 0 and 1
storage-link 0,1
path-type      direct
port-link cm0-ca0-port2,cm1-ca2-port2
port-link cm0-ca0-port3,cm1-ca2-port3

# Linked between 2 and 0
storage-link 2,0
path-type      switched
line-speed    1000
port-link cm1-ca0-port0,cm0-ca1-port0
port-link cm1-ca0-port1,cm0-ca1-port1

# Linked between 0 and 3
storage-link 0,3
path-type      switched
line-speed    1000
port-link cm1-ca1-port0,cm0-ca3-port0
port-link cm1-ca1-port1,cm0-ca3-port1
```

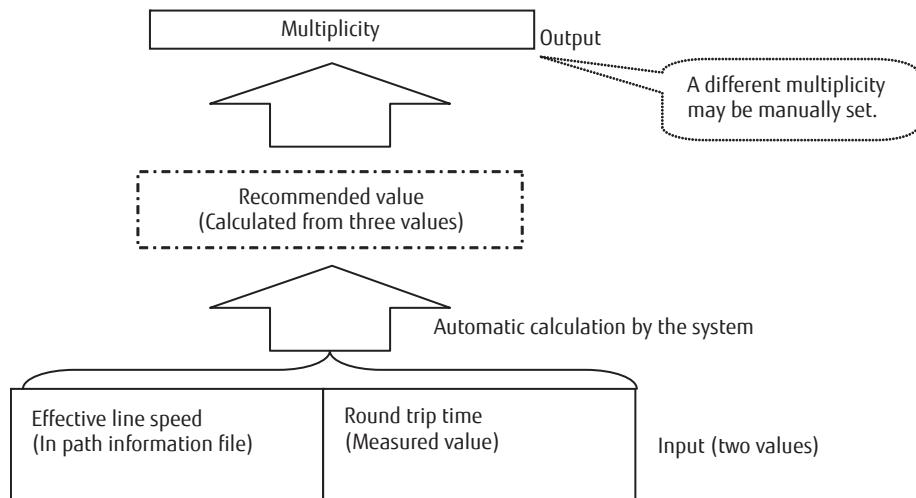
## REC Multiplicity

An REC multiplicity value must be set for the REC path between storage systems, and is determined based on the following two values:

- Effective line speed (as described in the REC path information file)
- Round trip time (as actually measured using a CLI command)

The schematic diagram for determining the REC multiplicity is as follows:

Figure 8 Overview of REC multiplicity



## Assigning REC Buffers

An area that is used to divide REC buffers is called a partition. This area can also be called a group. An REC buffer must be assigned when the REC Asynchronous Consistency Mode is used. Up to 8,192MB (\*1) can be assigned in the memory space area of REC buffers. The maximum number of partitions in the system is 8 (\*1). The maximum size of a partition is 2,048MB and the minimum is 128MB. Each partition is handled by specifying its partition number from 0 to 7 (\*1).

\*1: Values differ among models.

## Assigning REC Disk Buffers

If an REC disk buffer is assigned for the REC Asynchronous Consistency mode, even if an REC buffer overflow occurs, the REC disk buffer is used. An REC disk buffer is made from four or eight drives and is displayed as a RAID group of RAID1+0. However, it is only used as an REC disk buffer. Up to 4 REC disk buffers can be assigned to one REC buffer.

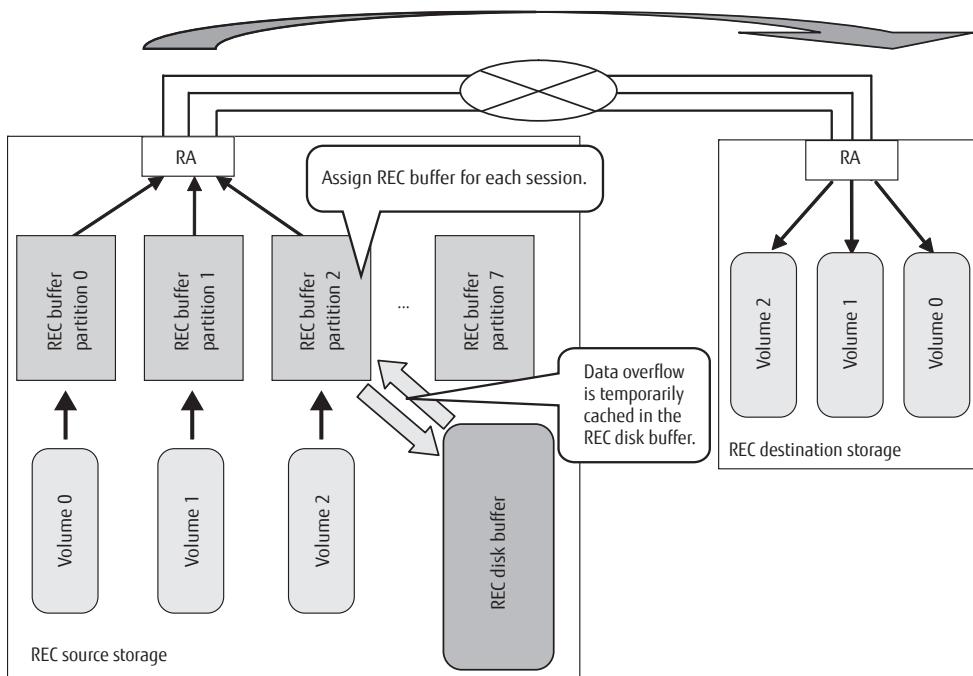
If multiple REC disk buffers are assigned to a single REC buffer, the REC disk buffers must satisfy the following conditions.

- The drive types must be the same
- The number of drives must be the same
- The encryption state must be the same
- The Stripe Depth must be the same (recommended)
- The capacity must be the same (recommended)

If the REC that is using the REC buffer is operating, "Suspend" the corresponding REC session in advance.

The following figure shows how the REC disk buffer is used:

Figure 9 Structure of an REC disk buffer



## ■ Summary of REC disk buffer settings through CLI

The steps involved in setting an REC disk buffer using CLI are as follows:

### Procedure ►►►

#### 1 Create an REC disk buffer.

To create an REC disk buffer, choose four or eight drives that do not belong to a RAID group by using the "create rec-disk-buffer" command.

Then create a volume from this RAID group. This is a RAID group that can be displayed by using the "show rec-disk-buffer" command.

#### 2 Format REC disk buffer volumes.

Format REC disk buffers by using the "format rec-disk-buffer" command.

#### 3 Associate REC buffer with REC disk buffer.

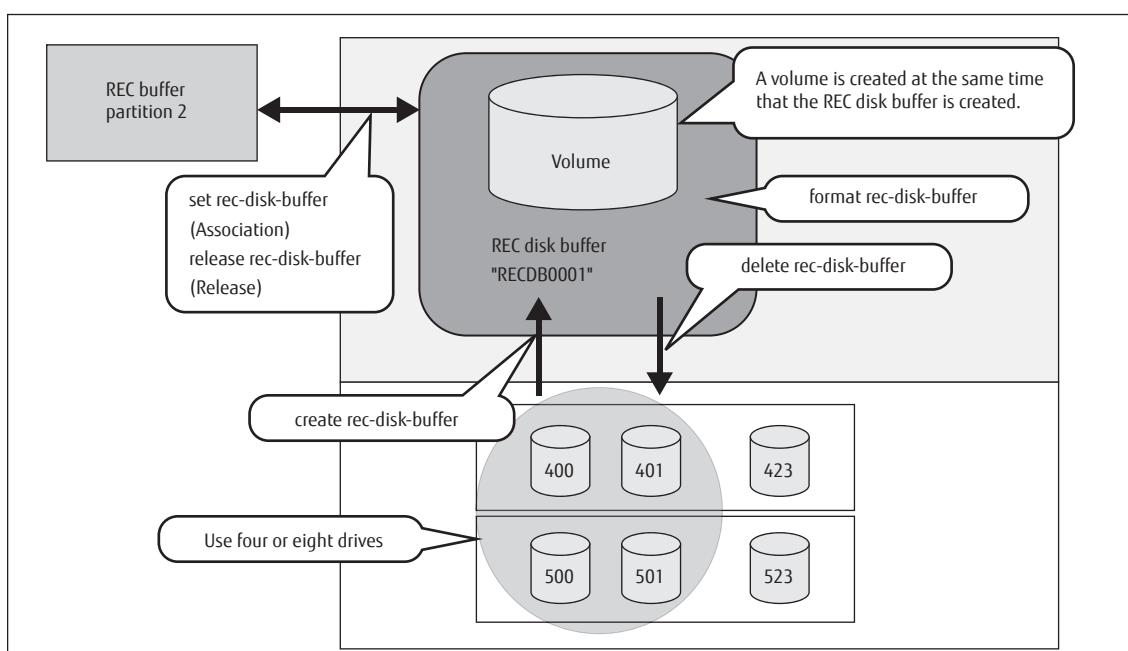
To associate an REC buffer with an REC disk buffer, use the "set rec-disk-buffer" command.

#### Note

- To release the REC disk buffer from the REC buffer, use the "release rec-disk-buffer" command. This can be confirmed by using the "show rec-disk-buffer" command.
- To delete an REC disk buffer, use the "delete rec-disk-buffer" command.

The following figure shows the process involved in setting the REC disk buffer through CLI:

Figure 10 Setup procedure for an REC disk buffer



## show host-port-mode

This command displays operation mode that is set to each host interface port.

### ■ Syntax

```
show host-port-mode
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
CM# <i>x</i> CA# <i>y</i> Port# <i>z</i>	Host interface port number (Only for the DX8100 S4)
CE# <i>w</i> CM# <i>x</i> CA# <i>y</i> Port# <i>z</i>	Host interface port number (Only for the DX8900 S4)
Port Mode	Operation mode for a host interface port

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays operation mode that is set to all the host interface ports on a system (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show host-port-mode
                  Port Mode
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0    CA
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1    CA
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0    CA
CM#1 CA#0 Port#1    CA
```

The following example displays operation mode that is set to all the host interface ports on a system (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show host-port-mode
                  Port Mode
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0    CA
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1    CA
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0    CA
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1    CA
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set host-port-mode

## set host-port-mode

This command sets which mode to use for host interface ports.

### Caution

- If the CA or CA/RA mode is switched to the RA or Initiator mode, the host mapping information that is related to the target port is automatically released.

To change the setting, stop access from the host that is associated with the target port. However, for multipath configurations, operations can be continued in other normal paths.

- If the RA or CA/RA mode is switched to the CA or Initiator mode, the REC path information that is associated with the target port is automatically initialized.

- The REC path information is released.
- The REC line number is changed to the default value (0).
- The copy transfer modes are changed to the default values (all are set to Enable).

To change the setting, stop REC sessions that are related to the target port. However, for multipath configurations, copy operations can be continued in other normal paths.

## Syntax

```
set host-port-mode -port {port_numbers | all} -mode {ra | ca | initiator | cara}
```

## Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the number of the host interface port that is to be switched. Two or more parameters can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -port 000,100

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: 123 (CM#1-CA#2-Port#3)

*wxyz* "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: 0123 (CE#0-CM#1-CA#2-Port#3)

**all** All the host interface ports

**-mode** Optional. This parameter specifies operation mode for the host interface port. RA mode must be set when the REC functions are used. The RA mode can only be set for FC ports and iSCSI ports. The Initiator mode can only be set for FC ports.

**ra** RA mode (for REC)

**ca** CA mode

**initiator** Initiator mode (for Storage Migration)

**cara** CA/RA auto mode

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set host-port-mode

### ■ Example(s)

The following example switches CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 to the RA mode (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> set host-port-mode -port 100 -mode ra
```

The following example switches CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0 to the RA mode (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> set host-port-mode -port 0100 -mode ra
```

The following example reverts CM#1 CA#0 Port#3 to the CA mode:

```
CLI> set host-port-mode -port 103 -mode ca
```

The following example switches all the host interface ports to the RA mode:

```
CLI> set host-port-mode -port all -mode ra
```

## show rec-path

This command is used to display the detailed REC path information of a system, and also displays the status of any remotely connected devices. If this parameter is omitted, the information regarding all remote storage systems is listed. If this parameter is specified, the path information for a single device can be displayed.

### Syntax

```
show rec-path [-remote-boxid remote_storage_box_id]
```

### Parameter

#### -remote-boxid

Optional. This parameter specifies the Box ID of the storage system whose REC path information details are to be displayed. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time. If this parameter is omitted, a list of the storage system and its remote storage systems is displayed

- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The pound key characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*remote\_storage\_box\_id*    Box ID

### Output

- When the parameter is omitted.

Item name	Description
E	Error sign. If "*" mark is output, it means that path information status between storage systems is not normal. You can check details by trying this command with this remote Box ID.
Remote Box ID	Box ID of a remote storage system registered in the system
Path Type	Connection form of a remote storage system registered in the system
Line Speed (Mbit/s)	Effective line speed of a remote storage system registered in the system
Round Trip Time (ms)	Round trip time of a remote storage system registered in the system. If a round trip time is not measured, "Unknown" is displayed.
Multiplicity	Multiplicity
Current	Actual multiplicity of a remote storage system registered in the system. If "Auto" is displayed, it indicates that a recommended multiplicity is used.
Recommended	Multiplicity recommended by the system. If the round trip time is "Unknown", "****" is displayed.
Priority Level	Copy level of a remote storage system registered in the system. "auto" indicates that the EC/OPC rate is used.
Copy Schedule Mode	Copy Schedule Mode

- When the parameter is specified.

Item name	Description
Local Box ID (Current Storage System)	Box ID of a local storage system
Remote Box ID	Box ID of the specified remote storage system
Path type	Connection form of a remote storage system registered in the system
Effective Line Speed	Effective line speed of a remote storage system registered in the system. A unit is Mbit/s.

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show rec-path

Item name	Description
Round Trip Time	Round trip time of a remote storage system registered in the system. A unit is millisecond.
Current Multiplicity	Multiplicity recommended by the system
Recommended Multiplicity	Multiplicity of the remote storage system registered in the system. If the round trip time is "Unknown", "****" is displayed.
Priority Level	Copy level of a remote storage system registered in the system
Copy schedule Mode	Copy Schedule Mode
Path Information	Path details
Local Port	Host interface port number of the local storage system
Status	Path status ("Error", "Warn", or "Normal") between the local storage system and the remote storage system. When the path status is not normal, this information is followed by symbols that indicate the place that is suspected to have an error or the reason for the warning. The details of the symbols are displayed under "Error detail description(s)".
Bandwidth Limit	Bandwidth limit value (unit: Mbit/s) If there is no limit, "Unlimited" is displayed.
Remote Port WWN / iSCSI Name (IP Address)	World Wide Name (WWN) of FC-RA of the remote storage system or iSCSI name and IP address of iSCSI-RA (for connecting older models) of the remote storage system.
Error detail description(s)	Symbols that indicate the place that is suspected to have an error and detailed descriptions of the symbols. These descriptions appear only when the path status is not normal.

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of remote storage systems connected to this system. In this case, an error in the path information status is indicated with a "\*" mark.

```
CLI> show rec-path
Storage System
E Remote Box ID          Path Type Line Speed Round Trip Multiplicity      Priority Copy Schedule
                           (Mbit/s)   Time (ms) Current/Recommended Level Mode
-----+
 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002##### Direct      -           -           3 Session
* 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00004##### Switched    10          20          4           3       - Destination
 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00006##### Switched    10          Unknown     4           3       - Session
```

The following example displays the path information details for the specified storage system. Note that if spaces or hash mark (#) characters are used, the Box ID must be specified with double quotations ("):

```
CLI> show rec-path -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00000#####"
Storage Information
Local Box ID (Current Storage System) 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00001#####
Remote Box ID          Line Information
                           Path Type Effective Line Speed Round Trip Time (ms) Current Multiplicity Recommended Multiplicity Priority Level Copy Schedule Mode
-----+
                           Switched   10 (Mbit/s) 12 (ms) Auto          3           -
                           Session balancing
Path Information (to Remote Storage System)
Local Port Status          Bandwidth Limit Remote Port WWN / iSCSI Name (IP Address)
                           (Mbit/s)
-----+
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 Normal      Unlimited 500000E0DDC40005
CA#0 Port#1 Error [I T      ] Unlimited 500000E0DDC40006
                           Error [T      ] Unlimited 500000E0DDC40087
                           Normal      1 500000E0DDC40086
CA#0 Port#2 Error [R      ]      120 500000E0DDC40007
CM#1 CA#1 Port#2 Error [C      ]      1000 500000E0DDC40006
CM#1 CA#2 Port#0 Error [B      ]      6535 500000E0DDC40085

Error detail description(s)
R: The copy path between the local device and remote device is in unstable status.
For example, link-down repeatedly occurs in a certain period of time or communication fails.
B: The resolution settings are different between the local device and remote device.
T: The error occurs in the FC-RA port or iSCSI-RA port on the remote device.
C: The error occurs in the cable.
I: The error occurs in the FC-RA port or iSCSI-RA port on the local device.
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show rec-path

The following example displays the path information details for the specified storage system. In this case, iSCSI-RA (for connecting older models) is used:

```
CLI> show rec-path -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00000#####"
Storage Information
  Local Box ID (Current Storage System) 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00000#####
  Remote Box ID 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00000#####
Line Information
  Path Type Switched
  Effective Line Speed 10 (Mbit/s)
  Round Trip Time 12 (ms)
  Current Multiplicity Auto
  Recommended Multiplicity 3
  Priority Level -
  Copy Schedule Mode Destination RAID Group balancing
Path Information (to Remote Storage System)
Local Port Status Bandwidth Limit Remote Port WWN / iSCSI Name (IP Address)
(Mbit/s)

CM#0 CA#2 Port#1 Error [B ] Unlimited irq.2010-10.com (FE80::290:CCFF:FEA4:3A49)
CM#1 CA#1 Port#0 Error [T ] Unlimited irq.2010-11.com (2001:DB8::8:800:200C:417A)
  CA#2 Port#0 Normal 1 irq.2010-12.com (192.168.2.64)
  CA#2 Port#0 Error [I C T S ] 120 irq.2011-01.com (192.168.2.65)
  CA#2 Port#1 Normal 65535 irq.2010-12.com.fujitsu:storage-system.etercus-dx400:00040093405060808091 (192.168.2.66)

Error detail description(s)
B: The resolution settings are different between the local device and remote device.
T: The error occurs in the FC-RA port or iSCSI-RA port on the remote device.
C: The error occurs in the cable.
S: The error occurs in the switch or switch settings.
I: The error occurs in the FC-RA port or iSCSI-RA port on the local device.
```

## import rec-path

This command is used to import an REC path information file from a specified FTP server and apply it to a system. Either type, TEXT or BINARY is available.

### Note

- For details, refer to "[Remote Equivalent Copy Management](#)" (page 459).
- If a TEXT type path information file has syntax errors, the number of the problem line is included with the error message.
- This command may also be used to apply a GUI-created BINARY type path information file.

## Syntax

```
import rec-path -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
    -user login_user_account -filename filename [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

## Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
- |             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| maintenance | Maintenance port (MNT port) |
| remote      | Remote port (RMT port)      |
| fst         | FST port                    |
- server     This parameter specifies the name of the FTP server that contains the REC path information file. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name.
- Example: -server 192.168.1.20  
    Example: -server foo.bar
- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>server_name</i> | FTP server name |
|--------------------|-----------------|
- user      This parameter specifies the user name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.
- |                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| <i>login_user_account</i> | User name |
|---------------------------|-----------|
- filename   This parameter specifies the REC path information filename.
- |                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| <i>filename</i> | Filename |
|-----------------|----------|
- indicator   Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.
- |         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| enable  | Progress indicator is displayed.     |
| disable | Progress indicator is not displayed. |

## Example(s)

The following example imports an REC path information file from the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port). For the FTP server, the user name is "cli-user" and the filename is "/tmp/rec-path1.txt". The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > import rec-path

```
CLI> import rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/rec-path1.txt -user cli-user  
Password :  
importing /tmp/rec-path1.txt from ftp.a.com  
complete.
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.  
The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> import rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/rec-path1.txt -user cli-user -indicator disable  
Password :
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show backup-rec-path-information

## show backup-rec-path-information

This command displays a summary of the REC path information file backed up in a system. The information includes date and file size of the backup file.

### Syntax

```
show backup-rec-path-information
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Date	Date of the backed up REC path information file
File Size	File size of the backed up REC path information file

### Example(s)

The following example displays the date and file size of the backup REC path information file.

```
CLI> show backup-rec-path-information
Date      2009-06-02 15:24:17
File Size 51224 Bytes
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > export backup-rec-path

## export backup-rec-path

Each storage system contains a backup path information file. This is a backup copy of the original path information file. When the original path information file is imported, information that is described in the original path information file is reflected to the configuration information database and a backup copy is stored in the ETERNUS DX. If the original file was TEXT type, it is automatically converted to BINARY type. This command exports the backup path information file to an external FTP server.

### Note

- If the same file on an FTP server already exists, it would be overwritten.
- If the backup file is exported as TEXT type, comment lines are eliminated from the file. Therefore, even if the originally imported path information file was also TEXT type, the TEXT type exported backup file may not be identical.

## ■ Syntax

```
export backup-rec-path -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
                     -user login_user_account-filename filename-type {text | binary} [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

## ■ Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
- |             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| maintenance | Maintenance port (MNT port) |
| remote      | Remote port (RMT port)      |
| fst         | FST port                    |
- server     This parameter specifies the name of the FTP server name that is to receive the backup REC path information file. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name.
- Example: -server 192.168.1.20  
Example: -server foo.bar
- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>server_name</i> | FTP server name |
|--------------------|-----------------|
- user      This parameter specifies the user name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.
- |                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| <i>login_user_account</i> | User name |
|---------------------------|-----------|
- filename   This parameter specifies the REC path information filename.
- |                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| <i>filename</i> | Filename |
|-----------------|----------|
- type      This parameter specifies the type of path information file that is to be exported.
- |        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| text   | TEXT type   |
| binary | BINARY type |
- indicator   Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.
- |         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| enable  | Progress indicator is displayed.     |
| disable | Progress indicator is not displayed. |

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > export backup-rec-path

### ■ Example(s)

The following example exports an REC path information file to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port). For the FTP server, the user name is "cli-user" and the filename is "/tmp/rec-path1.txt". The file type is TEXT.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export backup-rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/rec-path1.txt -user cli-user -type text  
Password :  
exporting /tmp/rec-path1.txt from ftp.a.com  
complete.
```

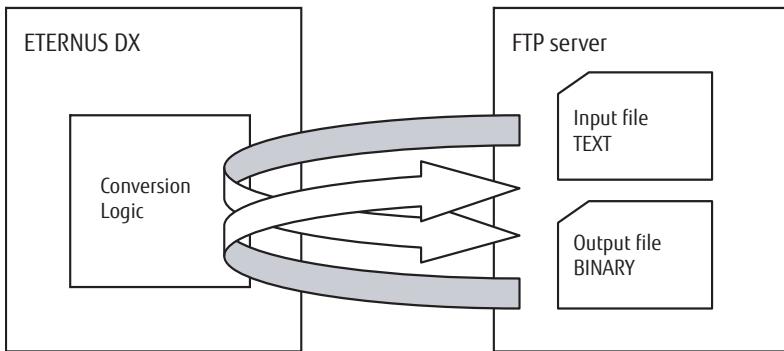
The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export backup-rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/rec-path1.txt -user cli-user -type text -  
indicator disable  
Password :
```

## convert rec-path

This command is used to convert the type of the REC path information file to the file type that is saved on and to an FTP server by passing it through the ETERNUS DX. This conversion only affects the REC path information file on the FTP server, and has no effect on the current system setup.



### Caution

- If the same file on an FTP server already exists, it would be overwritten.
- If a TEXT type path information file has syntax errors, the number of the problem line is included with the error message.

## ■ Syntax

```
convert rec-path -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name  
-user login_user_account-source-file source_file-output-file output_file  
-mode {t2b | b2t} [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

## ■ Parameter

-port	This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
	maintenance     Maintenance port (MNT port)
	remote         Remote port (RMT port)
	fst             FST port
-server	Both a conversion source file and a conversion destination file must be in an FTP server. This parameter specifies the FTP server name. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name.  Example: -server 192.168.1.20 Example: -server foo.bar  <i>server_name</i> FTP server name
-user	This parameter specifies the user name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.  <i>login_user_account</i> User name that is to be used to access the FTP server

-source-file This parameter specifies the REC path information filename as the conversion source.

*source\_file*   Filename

-output-file This parameter specifies the REC path information filename as the conversion destination.

*output\_file*   Filename

-mode   This parameter specifies conversion mode.

t2b       TEXT type is converted to BINARY.

b2t       BINARY type is converted to TEXT.

-indicator   Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.

enable      Progress indicator is displayed.

disable     Progress indicator is not displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example imports an REC path information file to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port) and exports the file to the server after the file is converted. For the FTP server, the user name is "cli-user" and the conversion source filename is "/tmp/rec-path.txt" and the conversion destination filename is "/tmp/bin/rec\_path.bin". The conversion mode is a direction from TEXT type to BINARY.

The entered password in "password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> convert rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user cli-user -source-file /tmp/rec_path.txt
-output-file /tmp/bin/rec_path.bin -mode t2b
password :
importing /tmp/rec_path.txt from ftp.a.com
exporting /tmp/rec_path.bin to ftp.a.com
complete.
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> convert rec-path -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user cli-user -source-file /tmp/rec_path.txt
-output-file /tmp/bin/rec_path.bin -mode t2b -indicator disable
Password :
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-path-parameters

## set rec-path-parameters

This command modifies the settings of the remote copy paths.

### Syntax

```
set rec-path-parameters -remote-boxid storage_system_box_id -line-speed line-speed
```

### Parameter

#### -remote-boxid

This parameter specifies the Box ID of a single remote storage system to which the path to the local storage system is set. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time.

- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The pound key characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*remote\_storage\_system\_box\_id*      Remote storage system Box ID

#### -line-speed

This parameter specifies the effective line speed (Mbit/s) to set for the remote storage system. The possible range is from 1 to 65535.

*line-speed*      Effective line speed (1 to 65535)

### Example(s)

The following example sets an effective line speed of a remote storage system to 100 Mbit/s.

```
CLI> set rec-path-parameters -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ED06F21AUABCPJ00001#####" -line-speed 100
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > measure rec-round-trip-time

## measure rec-round-trip-time

After setting up the REC path information, the round trip times to all remote storage systems where a time has not yet been set must be measured. This command measures the round trip time for each REC path, displays it, and can also save it in the system if so desired.

### Caution

- If the round trip time is measured with "-mode auto" specified, the path multiplicity is automatically set to the recommended multiplicity.
- If the round trip time is measured with "-mode manual" specified, the path multiplicity is automatically changed to the recommended multiplicity only if the results are saved to the system.

### Syntax

```
measure rec-round-trip-time -mode {auto | manual}  
[-remote-boxid remote_storage_system_box_id] [-save {yes | no}]
```

### Parameter

-mode This parameter specifies the round trip time measurement and the setting mode.

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| auto   | Automatic mode. Round trip times are measured for all remote storage systems for which the round trip time has not yet set, and these times are set to the system as base information to optimize REC performance. This mode is recommended for initial setup. |
| manual | Manual mode. Round trip times are measured for the specified single remote storage system. The displayed times can then be saved to the system if desired.   |

-remote-boxid

Optional. This parameter specifies the Box ID of a single remote storage system. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time.

- When "-mode auto" is specified, this parameter cannot be specified and when "-mode manual" is specified, this parameter must be specified.
- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The pound key characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*remote\_storage\_system\_box\_id* Remote storage system Box ID

-save Optional. This parameter specifies the save mode. If omitted, the displayed round trip time can be saved to the system if requested by the operator. If "-mode auto" is specified, this parameter cannot be specified.

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| yes | Path multiplicity is automatically set to the recommended multiplicity. |
| no  | Path multiplicity is not set.   |

## ■ Output

- When the "manual" mode is selected.

Item name	Description
Remote Box ID	Box ID of a remote storage system
Round Trip Time(ms)	Measured round trip time

## ■ Example(s)

The following example measures the round trip times to all remote storage systems for which a round trip time has not yet been set, and automatically reflects this to the system. Remote storage systems for which a round trip time has already been set are not remeasured or otherwise affected.

```
CLI> measure rec-round-trip-time -mode auto
```

The following example displays the measured round trip time, and confirms with the operator whether or not the result is to be saved to the system. In this example, the measured round trip time is reflected to the system.

```
CLI> measure rec-round-trip-time -mode manual -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####"  
Remote Box ID          Round Trip Time(ms)  
-----  
00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####      20  
Enter 'y' to save this round trip time or 'n' to cancel.  
> y  
Complete.
```

The following example is the same as the above except entering a cancel. In this case, the round trip time is not reflected to the system.

```
CLI> measure rec-round-trip-time -mode manual -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####"  
Remote Box ID          Round Trip Time(ms)  
-----  
00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####      20  
Enter 'y' to save this round trip time or 'n' to cancel.  
> n  
Canceled.
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-round-trip-time

## set rec-round-trip-time

The REC round trip time is set based on the result of the "measure rec-round-trip-time" command. However, the REC round trip time for individual paths can be tuned in order to maximize REC performance. This command is used to manually set the REC round trip time.

### Caution

If the round trip time is specified, the path multiplicity is automatically changed to the recommended multiplicity.

### Syntax

```
set rec-round-trip-time -remote-boxid remote_storage_system_box_id-time round_trip_time
```

### Parameter

-remote-boxid

This parameter specifies the Box ID of a single remote storage system. This is the storage system for which the REC round trip time is to be manually set. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time.

### Note

- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- Hash marks (#) are automatically appended to Box IDs shorter than 40 characters in length.

*remote\_storage\_system\_box\_id*      Remote storage system Box ID

-time      This parameter specifies the REC round trip time. The possible values are from 1 to 65535 milliseconds. The following ranges are recommended:

Asynchronous Through Mode: 100ms or less  
Synchronous Transfer Mode: 50ms or less

*round\_trip\_time*      REC round trip time (1 – 65535)

### Example(s)

The following example sets the multiplicity to 5.

```
CLI> set rec-round-trip-time -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ED06F21AUABCPJ000001#####" -time 5
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-multiplicity

## set rec-multiplicity

REC multiplicity does not need to be set because the recommended multiplicity (which is automatically calculated by the system) is normally used in most cases. However, REC multiplicity for individual paths can be tuned in order to maximize REC performance. For remote connections, use this command to manually set the REC multiplicity. For direct connections, use this command to manually set the priority level.

### Syntax

```
set rec-multiplicity -remote-boxid remote_storage_system_box_id
{-multiplicity {auto | multiplicity} | -priority-level {auto | priority_level} }
[-copy-schedule-mode {session-balancing | dst-rg-balancing}]
```

### Parameter

#### -remote-boxid

This parameter specifies the Box ID of a single remote storage system. This is the storage system for which the REC multiplicity is to be set. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time.

- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The pound key characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*remote\_storage\_system\_box\_id*      Remote storage system Box ID

#### -multiplicity

This parameter specifies the REC multiplicity value for remote connections. From 1 to 1024 or "auto" can be set for the value. The "-multiplicity" option and the "-priority-level" option cannot be specified at the same time.

*auto*                  The recommended REC multiplicity is used.

*multiplicity*            REC multiplicity value (1 – 1024)

#### -priority-level

This parameter specifies the priority level value for direct connections. From 1 to 8 can be set for the value. If "auto" is specified, the EC/OPC priority is used. The "-multiplicity" option and the "-priority-level" option cannot be specified at the same time.

*auto*                  The EC/OPC priority is used.

*priority\_level*        Priority level value (1 – 6)

#### -copy-schedule-mode

This parameter specifies the Copy Schedule Mode. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*session-balancing*    Session balancing is performed.

*dst-rg-balancing*    Destination RAID Group balancing is performed.

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-multiplicity

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the REC multiplicity to 5:

```
CLI> set rec-multiplicity -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ED06F21AUABCPJ000001#####" -multiplicity 5
```

The following example sets the Copy Level to 3.

```
CLI> set rec-multiplicity -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ED06F21AUABCPJ000001#####" -priority-level 3
```

The following example sets the Copy Schedule Mode to Session balancing.

```
CLI> set rec-multiplicity -remote-boxid "00DXL#####ED06F21AUABCPJ000001#####" -copy-schedule-mode session-balancing
```

## show rec-buffer

This command is used to display the information defined for REC buffers.

### Syntax

```
show rec-buffer
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Part.	Assigned partition number
Usage	REC buffer usage
Remote Box ID	Box ID of a storage system that uses an REC buffer
Status	REC buffer status
Mirror Status	Mirroring status of an REC buffer
Size (MB)	REC buffer size
Forwarding Interval (s)	Forwarding interval (unit: second)
Monitoring Time (m)	Monitoring time (unit: minute)
Halt Wait Timer (s)	HALT wait timer (unit: second)
IO Resp Mode	I/O response priority mode
Immed-Halt Mode	Immediate Halt mode
High-BW Mode	High Bandwidth mode

### Example(s)

The following example displays the REC buffer information and the REC buffer status.

CLI>	show rec-buffer	Part.	Usage	Remote Box ID	Status	Mirror Status	Size (MB)	Forwarding Interval (s)	Monitoring Time (m)	Halt Wait Timer (s)	IO Resp Mode	Immed-Halt Mode	High-BW Mode
		1	Receive	00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####	Active	Normal	128	4	3	10	Enable	Enable	Enable
		2	Send	00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00002#####	Inactive	Recovering	128	1	1	5	Enable	Enable	Enable
		3	(Unused)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		4	(Unused)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## set rec-buffer

This command sets up REC buffers for use by the REC Asynchronous Consistency Mode. Up to 8 REC buffers can be set. When an REC buffer is newly defined, all the parameters must be specified. When an existing REC buffer is changed, only the needed parameters may be specified.

The REC buffer sizes that can be selected are 128MB, 256MB, 512MB, 1,024MB, and 2,048MB. In addition, the maximum value of the total REC buffer size in the ETERNUS DX is 8,192MB.

However, depending on the memory capacity that is installed in the ETERNUS DX, there are cases when the REC buffer cannot be set up to the upper limit of the model. In addition, REC buffer uses the shared areas of the cache memory. There are cases when the REC buffer cannot be set up to the upper limit of the model according to the maximum pool capacity of the TPP/FTSP, the TFOV maximum capacity, the copy table size, and the REC buffer capacity.

### Caution

- Receive and Send REC buffers must both be independently defined if the REC buffer is to be used bi-directionally.
- The REC buffer uses twice as much memory capacity as the selected REC buffer capacity because the REC buffer is made redundant between the CMs.

## Syntax

```
set rec-buffer -partition {0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7}
[-remote-boxid remote_storage_system_box_id]
[-buffer-size {128mb | 256mb | 512mb | 1024mb | 2048mb}]
[-buffer-type {receive | send}]
[-forwarding-interval {1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120}]
[-halt-wait-timer {0 | 5 | 10 | 15}]
[-monitoring-time {0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15}]
[-io-response-mode {enable | disable}]
[-immed-halt-mode {enable | disable}]
[-high-bandwidth-mode {enable | disable}]
```

## Parameter

**-partition** This parameter specifies the REC buffer partition number. This can also be called the group number. This number starts from 0. Only one number can be specified at a time. The selectable range is from 0 to 7.

### Note

When the specified number is already used, existing set values are overwritten.

**-remote-boxid**

Optional. This parameter specifies the Box ID of a single remote storage system that is to be defined. Only one Box ID can be specified at a time. Only one Send/Receive REC buffer transfer can be set using the Box ID of a single remote storage system. This parameter must be specified for the initial setup. If omitted, this parameter value is not changed.

- Box IDs use a maximum of 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and pound key characters (#).
- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The pound key characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*remote\_storage\_system\_box\_id* Remote storage system Box ID

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-buffer

##### -buffer-size

Optional. This parameter specifies the REC buffer size. This parameter must be specified for the initial setup. If omitted, this parameter value is not changed. The REC buffer sizes that can be selected are 128MB, 256MB, 512MB, 1,024MB, and 2,048MB.

##### -buffer-type

Optional. This parameter specifies the REC buffer type. This parameter must be specified for the initial setup. If omitted, this parameter value cannot be changed.

receive      Use as a Receive buffer.

send        Use as a Send buffer.

##### -forwarding-interval

Optional. This parameter specifies the interval at which data should be transferred. A long interval will reduce the Host I/O overhead, but increase the amount of data susceptible to loss in the event of disaster. This parameter must be specified for the initial setup. If omitted, this parameter value is not changed.

1            1 second (Recommended value)

2            2 seconds

4            4 seconds

8            8 seconds

15          15 seconds

30          30 seconds

45          45 seconds

60          60 seconds

75          75 seconds

90          90 seconds

105        105 seconds

120        120 seconds

##### -halt-wait-timer

Optional. This parameter specifies the maximum no-response time for which host I/O responses may be delayed in order to prioritize data transfers from the REC buffer when it is in a high-load state. When this time is exceeded, response to host I/O is restarted, but the copy session is halted. This parameter must be specified for the initial setup. If omitted, this parameter value cannot be changed.

0            Disabled

5            5 seconds

10         10 seconds

15         15 seconds (Recommended value)

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-buffer

### -monitoring-time

Optional. This parameter specifies the monitoring time for high-load state REC buffers. The possible range is from 0 to 15 minutes. Zero means the monitoring function is disabled. When the REC buffer has large amounts of data to be stored and is in a high-load state, the time required for I/O responses to the server is gradually incremented by the "-halt-wait-timer" parameter value. Once the delay state has continued for longer than this parameter value, all REC Asynchronous Consistency Mode sessions that are currently transferring data are halted to allow priority processing of the server responses. If omitted, this parameter value is not changed.

- |        |   |
|--------|---|
| 0      | Disabled                                    |
| 1 – 15 | 1 to 15 minutes (5 minutes is recommended). |

### -io-response-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the I/O priority mode. Specifying "enable" for this parameter may improve the Write I/O response during initial copying of an REC Consistency mode copy session. If heavy-load Write I/O continues, an extended period of time may be required to achieve an equivalent state. To prevent this from occurring, make sure that the Write I/O during an initial copy is well below the REC line throughput.

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| enable  | The I/O response priority mode is enabled.  |
| disable | The I/O response priority mode is disabled. |

### -immed-halt-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the immediate halt mode. Specifying "enable" for this parameter may improve the Write I/O response while an REC Consistency mode copy session maintains an equivalent state. If the Write I/O response is affected even slightly, the REC buffer is changed to HALT status and the copy order may not be guaranteed for an extended period of time. This parameter is effective only when the HALT wait timer is set to 0 seconds.

- |         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| enable  | The Immediate Halt mode is enabled.  |
| disable | The Immediate Halt mode is disabled. |

### -high-bandwidth-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the high bandwidth mode. By transferring data all at once, the number of communications is reduced and the throughput is improved especially with high-bandwidth/high-delay networks.

- |         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| enable  | The High Bandwidth mode is enabled.  |
| disable | The High Bandwidth mode is disabled. |

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up partition #1:

```
CLI> set rec-buffer -partition 1 -buffer-type receive -remote-boxid  
"00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000002#####" -buffer-size 128mb -forwarding-interval 1 -halt-wait-timer 15 -monitoring-  
time 5
```

The following example changes the defined size of partition #2 to 256MB:

```
CLI> set rec-buffer -partition 2 -buffer-size 256mb
```

## delete rec-buffer

This command is used to delete an existing REC buffer definition.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete rec-buffer -partition {0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7}
```

### ■ Parameter

-partition This parameter specifies the REC buffer group number that is to be deleted. This number starts from 0. Two or more numbers cannot be specified at the same time. The selectable range is from 0 to 7.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes partition #1:

```
CLI> delete rec-buffer -partition 1
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show rec-disk-buffer

## show rec-disk-buffer

This command displays a list of all of the REC disk buffers or displays only the REC disk buffers that are specified by the REC buffer partition number(s).

Detailed information of the RAID group that is displayed when this command is used can be checked by using the "show raid-groups" command.

### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

### Syntax

```
show rec-disk-buffer [-partition partition_numbers]
```

### Parameter

-partition    Optional. This parameter specifies the REC buffer partition number for REC disk buffers. One or more numbers can be specified. If this parameter is specified, the CM-CPU information is also displayed. This number starts from 0.

The selectable range is from 0 to 7.

Example:

- partition 1 (Only #1 is specified)
- partition 5,7 (Both #5 and 7 are specified)
- partition 2-5 (#2 through #5 are specified)
- partition 1,3,4-7 (#1, #3, and #4 through #7 are specified)

### Output

Item name	Description
Partition number	An REC Buffer Group partition number. If the REC disk buffer is not associated to REC buffer, it displays "-".
Status	When REC Disk buffer is associated to REC buffer, it displays the status of REC Disk buffer as "Active", "Rebuilding", "Error", "Formatting", "Not supported", "Not mirrored". Otherwise, it displays the status the same as RAID groups.
Progress (%)	REC Disk buffer progress, formatting or rebuilding. If there is nothing to format and/or rebuild, it displays "-".
Encryption	REC Disk buffer encryption method. It will be displayed as "SED", "Encrypting", "Decrypting", "OFF", or "CM". When the encryption function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX, it is not displayed.
Session count	Number of sessions which used this REC disk buffer.
Elapsed time(s)	Elapsed time of between last copy worked time to current time.
Total disk buffer size (MB)	Total REC disk buffer capacity.
Total storage data size (MB)	Total REC disk buffer size which used to send data stored.
Free disk buffer size (MB)	Total REC disk buffer remain size
No of RGs	Number of RAID groups associated with the REC disk buffer
RG#1	Associated RAID group #1
RG#2	Associated RAID group #2

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > show rec-disk-buffer

Item name	Description
RG#3	Associated RAID group #3
RG#4	Associated RAID group #4
RG#5	Associated RAID group #5
RG#6	Associated RAID group #6
CM	CM number indication. If "-partition" is specified, the CE number and the CM number are shown.
MID	CM module ID. This information appears when the "-partition" parameter is specified.
Disk buffer(MB)	Disk buffer size of its CM. This information appears when the "-partition" parameter is specified.
Storage data(MB)	Storage data size of its CM. This information appears when the "-partition" parameter is specified.
Free disk buffer(MB)	Free disk buffer size of its CM. This information appears when the "-partition" parameter is specified.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a summary of all the REC disk buffers:

CLI> show rec-disk-buffer Partition Status number	Progress (%)	Encryption count	Session time(s)	Elapsed time(s)	Total size (MB)	disk buffer size (MB)	Total storage size (MB)	Free disk buffer size (MB)	No of RGs	RG#1	RG#2	RG#3	RG#4	RG#5	RG#6
1 Active	-	-	2	1	2097152	-	1572864	524288	6	12	13	14	15	16	17
-	-	Encryption	-	-	2097152	-	-	-	1	20	-	-	-	-	-
-	80	Formatting	Encryption	-	2097152	-	-	-	1	21	-	-	-	-	-

The following example displays the details of the REC disk buffers associated with partition #1:

```
CLI> show rec-disk-buffer -partition 1
Partition Status          Progress   Encryption Session    Elapsed      Total disk buffer  Total storage  Free disk buffer  No of RG#1 RG#2 RG#3 RG#4 RG#5 RG#6
number                  (%)        count       time(s)     size (MB)    size (MB)      size (MB)      size (MB)      RGs
-----  -----
1 Active                -         -          2           1          2097152      1572864      524288       6 12 13 14 15 16 17
<CM Info>
 CM          MID Disk buffer size(MB) Storage data size(MB) Free disk buffer(MB)
 ---  -----
 CE#0 CM#0  10  2097152      1572864      524288
 CE#0 CM#0  18  0            0            0
 CE#1 CM#1  11  0            0            0
 CE#1 CM#1  19  0            0            0
```

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > create rec-disk-buffer

## create rec-disk-buffer

This command creates an REC disk buffer for the REC Asynchronous Consistency Mode that is used when an REC buffer overflow occurs.

### Syntax

```
create rec-disk-buffer -name rg_name -disks disks [-encryption {enable | disable}]  
[-assigned-cm { 00 | 01 | 10 | 11 | 20 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 40 | 41 | 50 | 51 | 60 | 61 | 70 | 71 | 80 | 81 | 90 | 91 | a0 | a1 |  
b0 | b1 | auto }]  
[-stripe-depth { 64kb | 128kb | 256kb | 512kb | 1024kb }]
```

### Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies the alias name of a RAID group for the REC disk buffer. Only one name can be specified. For details, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax](#)" (page 26).

*rg\_name*    Alias name of a RAID group

-disks      This parameter specifies which drives will form the RAID group. For details, refer to "[Drive Syntax](#)" (page 25). Specify four or eight drives that are not used with other RAID groups.

#### Caution

- Specify the same drive type for all the drives (required).
- Specify drives with the same capacity (recommended).
- Specify drives with the same rotational speed (recommended).

*disks*      Drive

-encryption    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the encryption by a CM is performed. If "enable" is selected, the specified REC disk buffer data is encrypted.

enable      The REC disk buffer data is encrypted.

disable      The REC disk buffer data is not encrypted. (Default)

-assigned-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the assigned controller module (CM) number of the REC disk buffer. If "auto" is specified, the controller is automatically assigned by the system. If omitted, "auto" mode is selected.

*wx*      CE#*w*-CM#*x*

"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number and "x" is the controller module (CM) number.  
Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1.

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

auto      Automatically (default)

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > create rec-disk-buffer

##### -stripe-depth

Optional. This parameter specifies the stripe depth for the REC Disk Buffer that is to be created. If omitted, it is handled as if "64kb" is specified.

64kb	64KB
128kb	128KB
256kb	256KB
512kb	512KB
1024kb	1,024KB

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates an REC disk buffer using drives #001, #002, #011 and #012:

```
CLI> create rec-disk-buffer -name REC01 -encryption enable -assigned-cm 0 -disks 001-002, 011-012
```

## 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-disk-buffer

### set rec-disk-buffer

This command assigns REC disk buffers with the REC buffer.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set rec-disk-buffer -partition {0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7} {-rg-number rg_number | -rg-name rg_name}
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-partition** This parameter specifies the partition number (process number) for which an REC buffer is to be defined. The selectable range is from 0 to 7.

**-rg-number or -rg-name**

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifier of the REC disk buffer for assignment of the REC buffer. A maximum of two parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

The number of REC disk buffers that can be assigned to REC buffers is 1, 2, 4, or 6. Specify the RAID groups so that the number of assigned REC disk buffers matches 1, 2, 4, or 6 after assigning the REC disk buffers.

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example assigns an REC disk buffer which has RG number 0 to REC buffer partition 1:

```
CLI> set rec-disk-buffer -partition 1 -rg-number 0
```

The following example assigns two REC disk buffers which are named REC001 and REC002 to REC buffer partition 2:

```
CLI> set rec-buffer -partition 2 -rg-name REC001, REC002
```

## delete rec-disk-buffer

This command is used to delete the RAID group(s) of the REC disk buffer.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete rec-disk-buffer {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifier of the REC disk buffer for assignment of the REC buffer. One or more RAID groups can be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the REC disk buffer that was created as RAID group number 0:

```
CLI> delete rec-disk-buffer -rg-number 0
```

## format rec-disk-buffer

This command formats the RAID group(s) of the REC disk buffer(s).

### ■ Syntax

```
format rec-disk-buffer {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifier of the REC disk buffer for assignment of the REC buffer. One or more RAID groups can be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example formats the REC disk buffers that are assigned to RAID group number 0:

```
CLI> format rec-disk-buffer -rg-number 0
```

## release rec-disk-buffer

This command releases the assignment of the REC disk buffer(s) with REC buffer(s).

### Syntax

```
release rec-disk-buffer {-partition {0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7}  
{-mode all | -rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}
```

### Parameter

**-partition** This parameter specifies the partition number for which REC disk buffer(s) are to be released. The range is 0 to 7. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time.

The selectable range is from 0 to 7.

**-rg-number**, **-rg-name**, or **-mode all**

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifier of the REC disk buffer that is assigned to the REC buffer. One or more RAID groups can be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

The number of REC disk buffers that can be assigned to REC buffers is 1, 2, 4, or 6. Specify the RAID groups so that the number of assigned REC disk buffers matches 0, 1, 2, 4, or 6 after releasing the assigned REC disk buffers.

*rg\_number* RAID group number

*rg\_name* RAID group name

**-mode all** All of the REC disk buffers that are associated with the REC buffer are deleted.

### Example(s)

The following example releases the REC disk buffer from REC buffer partition #1:

```
CLI> release rec-disk-buffer -partition 1 -rg-number 1
```

## set rec-path-qos

This command specifies the performance bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the remote copy path.

### Syntax

```
set rec-path-qos -port port_number {-wwn wwn | -iscsi-name iscsi_name  
{ -ip ip | -link-local-ip link_local_ip | -connect-ip connect_ip} }  
-bandwidth-limit bandwidth_limit
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the host interface port number of the local storage system. Only one host interface port number can be specified at the same time.

*port\_number* Host interface port

*xyz* "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).  
Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3

*wxyz*

"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).  
Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3

**-wwn or -iscsi-name**

This parameter specifies the WWN (an 8-byte hexadecimal number) of the FC-RA for the remote storage system or the iSCSI name of the iSCSI-RA for the remote storage system. Only one WWN or iSCSI name can be specified at the same time.

*wwn* World Wide Name

*iscsi\_name* iSCSI Name

**-ip, -link-local-ip, or -connect-ip**

This parameter specifies an IP address (IPv4 format), an IPv6 link-local address, or an IPv6 global address of the iSCSI-RA for the remote storage system. Only one address can be specified at the same time.

*ip* IP address (IPv4 format)

*link\_local\_ip* Link-local address (IPv6 format)

*connect\_ip* Global address (IPv6 format)

**-bandwidth-limit**

This parameter specifies the performance bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) for the remote copy path. The range of possible values is from 0 (unlimited) to 65535 (Max) and the unit is Mbit/s. Only one performance limit value can be specified at the same time.

*bandwidth\_limit* Performance bandwidth limit (upper limit performance value) (0 to 65535)

#### 4. Copy Function Settings and Display

Advanced Copy Management > set rec-path-qos

### ■ Example(s)

The following example specifies the WWN QoS performance limit value of "500000E0D0C40005" on CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 to 1:

```
CLI> set rec-path-qos -port 000 -wwn 500000E0D0C40005 -bandwidth-limit 1
```

The following example specifies the iSCSI name QoS performance limit value of "irq.2010-12.com" (192.168.2.64) on CM#1 CA#2 Port#0 to 65535:

```
CLI> set rec-path-qos -port 120 -iscsi-name irq.2010-12.com -ip 192.168.2.64 -bandwidth-limit 65535
```

The following example specifies the iSCSI name QoS performance limit value of "irq.2010-11.com" (2001:DB8::8:800:200C:417A) to 120:

```
CLI> set rec-path-qos -port 110 -iscsi-name irq.2010-11.com -link-local-ip 2001:DB8::8:800:200C:417A -bandwidth-limit 120
```

The following example specifies the iSCSI name QoS performance limit value of "rq.2010-10.com" (FE80::290:CCFF:FEA4:3A49) to 0:

```
CLI> set rec-path-qos -port 021 -iscsi-name irq.2010-10.com -connect-ip FE80::290:CCFF:FEA4:3A49 -bandwidth-limit 0
```

# 5. System Settings and Display

---

This chapter explains the commands related to the system settings.

## System Settings

---

This section explains the commands related to the following miscellaneous functions.

The main functions are as follows:

- Date and time
- NTP
- ETERNUS DX name
- Encryption mode
- Box ID
- Power synchronization
- Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) authentication
- Syslog server
- Audit log
- Key management server linkage
- Power-off/reboot system
- Compression mode
- Non-disruptive Storage Migration

### Date, Time, and NTP

---

This section explains the commands related to the date and time settings of the ETERNUS DX. The system also supports time correction using the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show date

### show date

This command displays the date and time of the system.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show date
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
YYYY-MM-DD	Date (YYYY: year, MM: month, DD: day)
hh:mm:ss	Time (hh: hour, mm: minute, ss: second)
GMT	Greenwich Mean Time
DST	Starting date and time and ending date and time (displayed in "MMDDhh" format or "MM,{1st   2nd   3rd   4th   last},{sun   mon   tue   wed   thu   fri   sat},hh" format)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the system date and time:

```
CLI> show date
2008-10-01 10:59:59 GMT+09:00 (Tokyo, Osaka, Kyoto, Fukuoka, Sapporo)
DST [OFF]

CLI> show date
2008-12-31 00:00:03 GMT+03:00 (Nairobi, Moscow)
DST [ON] 06-01 02:00 - 09-30 02:00

CLI> show date
2008-01-01 23:55:00 GMT+01:00 (Paris, Madrid, Stockholm)
DST [ON] 03-last-Sun 01:00 - 10-last-Sun 01:00
```

## set date

This command sets the date and time of the system.

### Syntax

```
set date [-time YYYYMMDDhhmmss]
[-timezone number]
[-dst {enable | disable}]
[-from{MMDDhh | MM,{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh}]
[-to {MMDDhh | MM,{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh}]
```

### Parameter

**-time** Optional. This parameter specifies the date and time. The format is "YYYYMMDDhhmmss": "YYYY" is the year (a four-digit number from 2001 to 2037), "MM" is the number of the month (01-12), "DD" is the number of the day (01-31), "hh" is the hour in 24-hour time (00-23), "mm" is the minute (00-59), and "ss" is the second (00-59). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*YYYYMMDDhhmmss* Date and time

**-timezone** Optional. This parameter specifies the time difference from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). The selectable preset numbers are shown below. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*number* Time difference from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)

0	Eniwetok, Kwajalein	-12:00
1	Samoa	-11:00
2	Honolulu	-10:00
3	Alaska	-9:00
4	Los Angeles, San Francisco, San Diego	-8:00
5	Arizona	-7:00
6	Chicago, Mexico City	-6:00
7	New York, Bogota	-5:00
8	Caracas	-4:00
9	Newfoundland	-3:30
10	Sao Paulo, Brasilia	-3:00
11	Mid-Atlantic Ocean	-2:00
12	Azores Island, Cape Verde	-1:00
13	Dublin, London, Manchester, Lisbon	0:00
14	Paris, Madrid, Stockholm	+1:00
15	Rome, Vienna, Berlin	+1:00
16	Milan, Amsterdam	+1:00
17	Athens, Helsinki, Cairo	+2:00
18	Beirut, Cape Town	+2:00
19	Nairobi, Moscow	+3:00
20	Abu Dhabi	+4:00
21	Islamabad, Karachi	+5:00

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set date

22	New Delhi	+5:30
23	Dhaka	+6:00
24	Bangkok, Jakarta	+7:00
25	Hong Kong, Manila, Singapore	+8:00
26	Beijing, Taipei, Kuala Lumpur, Perth	+8:00
27	Tokyo, Osaka, Kyoto, Fukuoka, Sapporo	+9:00
28	Seoul	+9:00
29	Adelaide	+9:30
30	Guam, Sydney, Melbourne	+10:00
31	Solomon Islands, New Caledonia	+11:00
32	Wellington, Auckland, Fiji	+12:00

-dst      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the daylight saving time is enabled or not. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable      DST is enabled.

disable      DST is disabled.

#### Caution

- When "enable" is specified, both the starting and the ending information must be specified.
- When "disable" is specified, the starting nor the ending information cannot be specified.

-from      Optional. This parameter specifies when DST (daylight saving time) starts, and must be specified when enabling DST. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

There are two formats; "MMDDhh" and "MM, {1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh".

*MMDDhh*      "MM" is the starting month number (01 – 12), "DD" is the starting day number (01 – 31), and "hh" is the starting hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23).

*MM, {1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh*

"MM" is the starting month number (01 – 12). Both "{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last}" and "{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat}" are pairs, and means the starting day and the starting week. "hh" is the starting hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23).

-to      Optional. This parameter specifies when DST (daylight saving time) ends, and must be specified when enabling DST. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

There are two formats; "MMDDhh" and "MM, {1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh".

*MMDDhh*      "MM" is the ending month number (01 – 12), "DD" is the ending day number (01 – 31), and "hh" is the ending hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23).

*MM, {1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last},{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat},hh*

"MM" is the ending month number (01 – 12). Both "{1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | last}" and "{sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat}" are pairs, and means the ending day and the ending week. "hh" is the ending hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the system date to 11:55 PM on January 12, 2009 GMT:

```
CLI> set date -time 20090112235500
```

The following example sets the system date to 11:55 PM on January 12, 2009 in the New York time zone (GMT -5:00):

```
CLI> set date -time 20090112235500 -timezone 7
```

The following example sets the system date to 12:30 PM on January 1, 2009 in the Honolulu time zone (GMT-10:00). DST is set from 1:00 AM on the last Sunday of March to 1:00 AM on the last Sunday of October:

```
CLI> set date -time 20090101123000 -timezone 2 -dst enable -from 03,last,sun,01 -to 10,last,sun,01
```

The following example sets the system date to 12:30 PM on January 1, 2009. DST is set from 2:00 AM on March 1st and 2:00 AM on October 30th:

```
CLI> set date -time 20090101123000 -timezone 2 -dst enable -from 030102 -to 103002
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show ntp

### show ntp

This command displays the NTP configuration.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show ntp
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
NTP	It shows whether the NTP function is enabled, or not.
Primary NTP Server	Primary NTP server name
Primary NTP LAN Port	LAN port to connect to primary NTP server (MNT or RMT)
Secondary NTP Server	Secondary NTP server name
Secondary NTP LAN Port	LAN port to connect to secondary NTP server (MNT or RMT)
Access Status	Result of synchronization
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss no date SYNC	No synchronization result can be found.
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss Primary NTP Server suc- ceeded SYNC	Synchronization with the primary NTP server succeeded.
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss Secondary NTP Server suc- ceeded SYNC	Synchronization with the secondary NTP server succeeded.
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss failed SYNC	Synchronization failed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show ntp

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the NTP configuration:

```
CLI> show ntp
NTP [Enable]
Primary NTP Server [10.1.1.100]
Primary NTP LAN Port [RMT]
Secondary NTP Server [10.1.1.200]
Secondary NTP LAN Port [MNT]
Access Status [2008-02-21 08:30:00 Primary NTP Server succeeded SYNC]

CLI> show ntp
NTP [Enable]
Primary NTP Server [fd80::abd0:223:ad]
Primary NTP LAN Port [RMT]
Secondary NTP Server [fe80:0000:0000:0000:0280:0001:fe84:6417]
Secondary NTP LAN Port [MNT]
Access Status [0000-00-00 00:00:00 failed SYNC]

CLI> show ntp
NTP [Disable]
Primary NTP Server [10.1.1.100]
Primary NTP LAN Port [RMT]
Secondary NTP Server [10.1.1.200]
Secondary NTP LAN Port [MNT]
Access Status [0000-00-00 00:00:00 Secondary NTP Server succeeded SYNC]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set ntp

### set ntp

The system supports time correction using the Network Time Protocol (NTP) and implements the NTP client functions. This command can set up the NTP environment.

#### Syntax

```
set ntp [-function {enable | disable}] [-primary-server server_address]
[-primary-port {maintenance | remote}] [-secondary-server server_address]
[-secondary-port {maintenance | remote}]
```

#### Parameter

**-function**    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the NTP client is enabled or not. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable        NTP is enabled.

disable       NTP is disabled.

**-primary-server**

Optional. This parameter specifies the address of the primary NTP server. Up to 64 characters can be specified. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -primary-server 192.168.1.20

Example: -primary-server fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -primary-server foo.bar

*server\_address*      Primary NTP server address

**-primary-port**

Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port to connect to the primary NTP server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote            Remote port (RMT port)

**-secondary-server**

Optional. This parameter specifies the address of the secondary NTP server. Up to 64 characters can be specified. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -secondary-server 192.168.1.20

Example: -secondary-server fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -secondary-server foo.bar

*server\_address*      Secondary NTP server address

**-secondary-port**

Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port to connect to the secondary NTP server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set ntp

maintenance	Maintenance port (MNT port)
remote	Remote port (RMT port)

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the NTP configuration. The primary NTP server is specified as "ntpserver.com". The MNT port is specified as the Ethernet port for the primary NTP functions.

```
CLI> set ntp -function enable -primary-server ntpserver.com -primary-port maintenance
```

The following example sets the NTP configuration. The secondary NTP server is specified as IP address "10.1.1.100". The RMT port is specified as the Ethernet port for secondary NTP functions.

```
CLI> set ntp -function enable -secondary-server 10.1.1.100 -secondary-port remote
```

The following example disables NTP:

```
CLI> set ntp -function disable
```

## ETERNUS DX Name

---

This section explains the commands used to set the ETERNUS DX name.

## show storage-system-name

This command displays the registered ETERNUS DX name.

### ■ Syntax

```
show storage-system-name
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Name	ETERNUS DX name
Installation Site	Installation site
Contact	Contact address
Description	Description of the ETERNUS DX

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the ETERNUS DX name:

```
CLI> show storage-system-name
Name          [DXL-1]
Installation Site [FJ]
Contact        [AVRIL]
Description    [CALC1]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set storage-system-name

### set storage-system-name

This command sets the ETERNUS DX information.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set storage-system-name [-name name] [-installation-site location]  
[-contact contact] [-description description]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-name      Optional. This parameter specifies the ETERNUS DX name (up to 16 characters). Permitted characters are described in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*name*      ETERNUS DX name

-installation-site

    Optional. This parameter specifies the installation site name (up to 50 characters). Permitted characters are described in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*location*      Installation site name

-contact      Optional. This parameter specifies the administrator address (up to 50 characters). Permitted characters are described in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*contact*      Administrator address

-description

    Optional. This parameter specifies the description of the ETERNUS DX (up to 50 characters). Permitted characters are described in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*description*      Description of the ETERNUS DX

    Optional. This parameter specifies the description of the ETERNUS DX (up to 50 characters). Permitted characters are described in ["Keywords and Parameters" \(page 24\)](#). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*description*      Description of the ETERNUS DX

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the ETERNUS DX name, installation site name, descriptions, and contact address:

```
CLI> set storage-system-name -name E2000-No1 -installation-site FJ -contact AVRIL -description CALC2
```

## Box ID

---

This section explains the commands related to the Box ID.

## show boxid

This command displays the registered Box ID.

### ■ Syntax

```
show boxid
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Box ID	Registered Box ID

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the registered Box ID:

```
CLI> show boxid
Box ID [00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000000#####]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set boxid

## set boxid

Box ID is the identification information presented to certain applications. This command sets the Box ID. The series name, the model name, the serial number, and additional fixed characters of the system are set as the default for the Box ID.

### Syntax

```
set boxid -id box_id
```

### Parameter

- id      This parameter specifies a Box ID. Up to 40 alphanumeric characters, spaces, and hash marks (#) can be specified. Each Box ID must be unique.

#### Note

- All alphabetic characters are handled as uppercase.
- The hash marks (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*box\_id*      Box ID

### Example(s)

The following example sets the Box ID:

```
CLI> set boxid -id "00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000000#####"
```

## Subsystem Parameters

---

This section explains the commands used to set and check the subsystem parameters.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show subsystem-parameters

# show subsystem-parameters

This command displays the subsystem parameters.

## ■ Syntax

```
show subsystem-parameters
```

## ■ Parameter

No parameters.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
Load Balance	Indicates whether controlling load balance of the system is enabled.
Reject INQUIRY from Unauthorized Host	Indicates whether an INQUIRY command that is issued from an unauthorized host is accepted. (When an INQUIRY command is set to be not accepted, the operation is the same as the response to an INQUIRY command with an Affinity Error.)
Thin Provisioning Allocation Mode	Indicates the Thin Provisioning allocation mode. (TPP balancing or TPV balancing)
Checkcode Enforcement Mode	Indicates whether the current setting of the Checkcode Enforcement Mode is enabled.
Copybackless	Indicates whether the Copybackless function is enabled.
Turbo Mode	Indicates whether the Turbo mode is enabled.
Optimize for Advanced Format SSD	Indicates whether Advanced Format (AF) is supported and whether the ETERNUS DX responds to the host so that access for RAID groups or pools that include SSDs can be performed with a 4k sector alignment.
Slow Format	Indicates whether the slow format is enabled.
Writeback Limit Count	Indicates the number of process commands that are issued during Writeback (writes data back to the drive).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the subsystem parameters:

```
CLI> show subsystem-parameters
Load Balance                                [Disable      ]
Reject INQUIRY from Unauthorized Host       [Enable      ]
Thin Provisioning Allocation Mode           [TPP balancing]
Checkcode Enforcement Mode                 [Disable      ]
Copybackless                               [Enable      ]
Turbo Mode                                 [Disable      ]
Optimize for Advanced Format SSD          [Enable      ]
Slow Format                                [Disable      ]
Writeback Limit Count                      [            512]
```

## set subsystem-parameters

This command sets up the storage unit subsystem parameters.

### Syntax

```
set subsystem-parameters
[-load-balance {enable | disable}]
[-reject-inquiry {enable | disable}]
[-tp-alloc-mode {tpp-balancing | tpv-balancing}]
[-enforce-checkcode { enable | disable } ]
[-copybackless{ enable | disable } ]
[-turbo-mode { enable | disable }]
[-optimize-af-ssd {enable | disable}]
[-slow-format { enable | disable }]
[-writeback-limit-count { 128 | 256 | 512 | 1024 | 2048 | 3072 | 6144 }]
```

### Parameter

#### -load-balance

Optional. This parameter specifies if the controlling load balance of the system is enabled. This function will allow the system to return sense information to the host even if the I/O traffic for the overall system is overloaded. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to "enable".

##### Caution

Disable the load balance when the ETERNUS DX is connected to hosts that are running HP-UX. If the load balance is enabled, incorrect logs may be recorded in the host.

- |         |                                   |
|---------|-----------------------------------|
| enable  | Load balance control is enabled.  |
| disable | Load balance control is disabled. |

#### -reject-inquiry

Optional. This parameter specifies whether an INQUIRY command that is issued from an unauthorized host is rejected. Enable this parameter when VERITAS Volume Manager Dynamic Multi-Pathing (VxVM DMP) is used. If omitted, the existing settings are not changed. The default value is disabled.

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| enable  | An Affinity Error is returned for an INQUIRY command that is issued from an unauthorized host. |
| disable | A normal response is returned for an INQUIRY command that is issued from an unauthorized host. |

#### -tp-alloc-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies how to allocate the physical drive area when a write process is performed for an area in a Thin Provisioning Volume to which physical drive area is not allocated.

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| tpp-balancing | The physical drive area is allocated so that each TPP is evenly used.   |
| tpv-balancing | The physical drive area is allocated so that the physical drive area for a TPV is evenly allocated to each RAID group in the TPP. |

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set subsystem-parameters

### -enforce-checkcode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the Checkcode Enforcement Mode is enabled. If this parameter is enabled, the error detection mechanism inside the device intensifies. During write data duplication, check codes for all the blocks are checked. If omitted, the value of this parameter will not change. The default value is "enable".

enable      Checkcode Enforcement Mode is enabled.

disable     Checkcode Enforcement Mode is disabled.

### -copybackless

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the copybackless function is enabled. When this function is enabled, the configuration of the relevant RAID group is changed to add the hot spare to the RAID group after a rebuild operation is complete. A copyback operation is not performed after a failed drive is replaced. When this function is disabled, the configuration of the relevant RAID group remains unchanged after a rebuild operation is complete. A copyback operation is performed after a failed drive is replaced. The default value is "enable".

#### Note

The copybackless function operates if a hot spare is registered with the same drive type (\*1) as the target drive.

\*1: The same drive type refers to a drive that has all of the same attributes (Online / Nearline / SSD / Online SED / Nearline SED / SSD SED), SSD type, capacity, and rotational speed.

enable      The copybackless function is enabled.

disable     The copybackless function is disabled.

### -turbo-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable or disable the Turbo mode. The Turbo mode is a function that makes processors work at a higher frequency than the rated frequency to improve performance. This function is also called Intel® Turbo Boost Technology.

enable      The Turbo mode is enabled.

disable     The Turbo mode is disabled.

### -optimize-af-ssd

Optional. This parameter specifies whether Advanced Format (AF) is supported in SSDs. This parameter specifies whether the ETERNUS DX responds to the host so that access for RAID groups or pools that are configured with SSDs can be performed with a 4k sector alignment. Setting this parameter promotes access efficiency.

enable      The ETERNUS DX responds to the host.

disable     The ETERNUS DX does not respond to the host.

### -slow-format

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the slow format.

enable      Slow format is enabled.

disable     Slow format is disabled.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set subsystem-parameters

### -writeback-limit-count

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of process commands that are issued during Writeback (writes data back to the drive). The bigger the Writeback Limit Count is, the more the resources that are used for the write process becomes. Cache hits for the write process also become more likely to occur. The smaller the Writeback Limit Count is, the less the resources that are used for the write process becomes. However, it is more likely to cause a write cache miss.

The default value is 512.

- |      |   |
|------|---|
| 128  | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 128.  |
| 256  | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 256.  |
| 512  | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 512.  |
| 1024 | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 1024.   |
| 2048 | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 2048.   |
| 3072 | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 3072.   |
| 6144 | The Writeback Limit Count is set to 6144. (This cannot be set for the DX8100 S4.) |

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the subsystem parameter:

```
CLI> set subsystem-parameters -load-balance enable -tp-alloc-mode tpp-balancing
```

## Encryption Mode

---

This section explains the commands related to encryption mode functions. Enabling encryption mode makes the encryption mode functions that are performed by a CM available.

---

**Note**

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

---

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show encryption

### show encryption

This command displays the status of the encryption mode.

#### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show encryption
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Encryption Mode	Encryption mode

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays whether the encryption mode is enabled or disabled:

```
CLI> show encryption
Encryption Mode [Fujitsu]

CLI> show encryption
Encryption Mode [AES-128]

CLI> show encryption
Encryption Mode [AES-256]

CLI> show encryption
Encryption Mode [Disable]
```

## set encryption

This command specifies whether encryption mode is enabled or disabled. If the encryption mode is enabled, "Fujitsu Original Encryption", "AES-128bit", or "AES-256bit" must be specified for the encryption type. After switching the encryption mode from enabled to disabled, the ETERNUS DX must be rebooted. When switching the encryption mode from disabled to enabled, this operation is not required.

### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

### Syntax

```
set encryption -mode {fujitsu | aes | aes128 | aes256 | disable}
```

### Parameter

-mode This parameter specifies encryption mode.

fujitsu	Encryption mode is enabled (Fujitsu Original Encryption).
aes	Encryption mode is enabled (AES-128bit).
aes128	Encryption mode is enabled (AES-128bit). Specify this option to enable AES 128bit encryption. If this parameter is specified, the same process as "aes" is performed.
aes256	Encryption mode is enabled (AES-256bit). Specify this option to enable AES 256bit encryption.
disable	Encryption mode is disabled.

### Example(s)

The following example enables the Fujitsu Original Encryption mode function:

```
CLI> set encryption -mode fujitsu
```

The following example disables the encryption mode.

After that, the ETERNUS DX is rebooted:

```
CLI> set encryption -mode disable
CLI> shutdown -mode reboot
```

## Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) Authentication Settings

---

This section explains the commands that are related to the Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) authentication settings. Because the SED authentication key is already registered by default at the factory, setting the key is not necessary.

There are two types of authentication keys for SEDs: the common key that is stored in the ETERNUS DX and an SED authentication key that is managed by the key server. Commands for setting the common key are explained in this section.

---

**Caution**

The commands that are described in this section support only models that can be installed with SEDs.

---

## show sed-authentication

This command displays the status of the authentication key registration for SEDs.

### ■ Syntax

```
show sed-authentication
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
SED authentication	Indicates whether the SED authentication key is registered.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows the sed-authentication command when the SED authentication key is registered:

```
CLI> show sed-authentication
SED authentication      [Registered]
```

The following example shows the sed-authentication command when the SED authentication key is not registered:

```
CLI> show sed-authentication
SED authentication      [Not Registered]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set sed-authentication

### set sed-authentication

This command sets the authentication key for SEDs. SEDs are used to prevent the leakage of data in case a drive is stolen or lost.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set sed-authentication -execution {yes | no}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-execution This parameter sets the authentication key for SEDs.

yes The authentication key for SEDs is set.

no The authentication key for SEDs is not set (default).

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the authentication key for an SED:

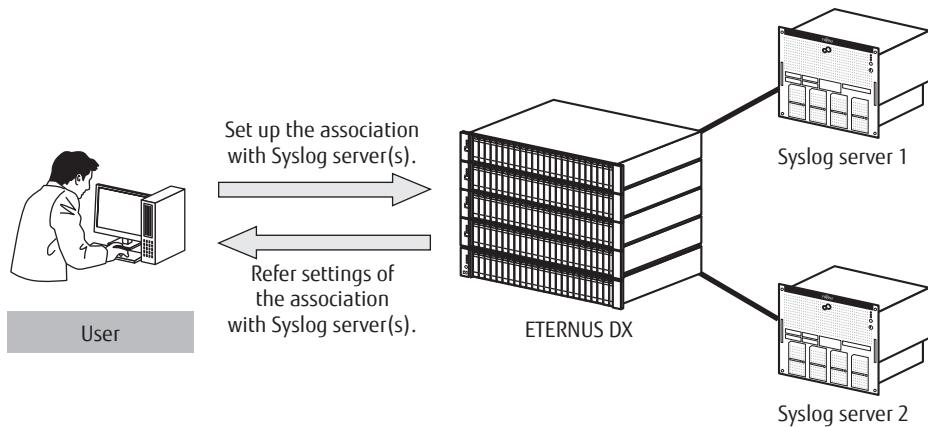
```
CLI> set sed-authentication -execution yes
```

## Syslog Server Settings

Syslog is a protocol that allows a machine to send event notification message.  
This section explains commands related to the sending settings for the server.

- Displaying the Syslog server settings.
- Setting the Syslog server.

Figure 11 Syslog server overview



## show syslog-notification

This command displays settings of the syslog server association.

### ■ Syntax

```
show syslog-notification
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Server1 function	Indicates whether syslog server 1 is enabled
Server1	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the syslog server 1
Server1 Port Number	UDP port number of the syslog server 1 for the syslog protocol
Server1 Port	Indicates which port is used
Server2 function	Indicates whether syslog server 2 is enabled
Server2	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the syslog server 2
Server2 Port Number	UDP port number of the syslog server 2 for the syslog protocol
Server2 Port	Indicates which port is used

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the settings of the syslog servers:

```
CLI> show syslog-notification
Server1 Function      [Enable (RFC3164)]
Server1
[10.21.134.198]
Server1 Port Number  [514]
Server1 Port          [MNT]
Server2 Function      [Enable (RFC5424)]
Server2
[10.17.80.6]
Server2 Port Number  [517]
Server2 Port          [RMT]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set syslog-notification

### set syslog-notification

This command sets up an association with the syslog server.

#### Syntax

```
set syslog-notification
[-server1-function {disable | rfc3164 | rfc5424}]
[-server1 syslog-server1] [-server1-port-number port_number]
[-server1-port {maintenance | remote}]
[-server2-function {disable | rfc3164 | rfc5424}]
[-server2 syslog-server2] [-server2-port-number port_number]
[-server2-port {maintenance | remote}]
```

#### Parameter

##### -server1-function

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable syslog server 1. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

disable      Syslog server 1 is disabled.

rfc3164     Syslog server 1 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC3164.

rfc5424     Syslog server 1 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC5424.

##### -server1

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

Example: -server1 192.168.1.20

Example: -server1 fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -server1 foo.bar

*syslog-server1*     Server name of syslog server 1

##### -server1-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1's UDP port number for the syslog protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the setting is not changed. The default value is 514.

*port\_number*     Syslog server 1's UDP port number

##### -server1-port

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1's LAN port. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

maintenance    Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote        Remote port (RMT port)

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set syslog-notification

### -server2-function

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable syslog server 2. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

disable      Syslog server 2 is disabled.

rfc3164     Syslog server 2 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC3164.

rfc5424     Syslog server 2 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC5424.

### -server2

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

Example: -server2 192.168.1.20

Example: -server2 fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -server2 foo.bar

*syslog-server2*     Server name of syslog server 2

### -server2-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2's UDP port number for the syslog protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the setting is not changed. The default value is 514.

*port\_number*     Syslog server 2's UDP port number

### -server2-port

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2's LAN port. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

maintenance     Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote        Remote port (RMT port)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the syslog server:

```
CLI> set syslog-notification -server1-function rfc3164 -server1 10.21.134.198 -server1-port-number 514  
-server1-port maintenance -server2-function rfc5424 -server2 10.17.80.6 -server2-port-number 517 -server2-lan-port remote
```

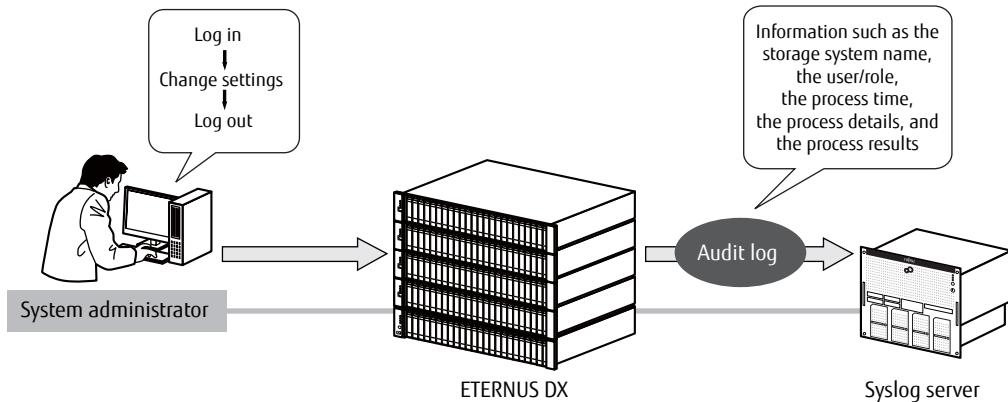
## Audit Log Settings

Audit logs are audit trail information that records operations that are executed for the system by a system engineer or administrator and the response from the system. Logs are sent to the server by using syslog protocols.

This section explains the following commands related to the audit log settings.

- Displaying the audit log function
- Changing the audit log function settings

Figure 12 Audit log function overview



## show audit

This command displays the settings of the audit log functions.

### ■ Syntax

```
show audit
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Audit Log	Indicates whether the audit log function is enabled.
Server1 function	Indicates whether syslog server 1 is enabled.
Server1	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the syslog server 1
Server1 Port Number	UDP port number of the syslog server 1 for the syslog protocol
Server1 Port	Indicates which port is used.
Server2 function	Indicates whether syslog server 2 is enabled.
Server2	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the syslog server 2
Server2 Port Number	UDP port number of the syslog server 2 for the syslog protocol
Server2 Port	Indicates which port is used.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the settings of the audit log function:

```
CLI> show audit
Audit Log      [Enable]
Server1 Function [Enable (RFC3164)]
Server1          [10.21.134.198]
Server1 Port Number [514]
Server1 Port     [MNT]
Server2 Function [Enable (RFC5424)]
Server2          [10.17.80.6]
Server2 Port Number [517]
Server2 Port     [RMT]
```

## set audit

This command changes the general settings of the audit log function. Use the "show audit" command to display the audit log function settings that are configured by this command.

### ■ Syntax

```
set audit [-mode {enable | disable}]  
[-server1-function {disable | rfc3164 | rfc5424}]  
[-server1 audit_log_server1] [-server1-port-number port_number]  
[-server1-port {maintenance | remote}]  
[-server2-function {disable | rfc3164 | rfc5424}]  
[-server2 audit_log_server2] [-server2-port-number port_number]  
[-server2-port {maintenance | remote}]
```

### ■ Parameter

- mode**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the audit log function.
- |         |                                     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| enable  | The audit log function is enabled.  |
| disable | The audit log function is disabled. |
- server1-function**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable syslog server 1. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.
- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| disable | Syslog server 1 is disabled.   |
| rfc3164 | Syslog server 1 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC3164. |
| rfc5424 | Syslog server 1 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC5424. |
- server1**      Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.
- Example: -server1 192.168.1.20  
Example: -server1 fd80::abd0:223:ad  
Example: -server1 foo.bar
- audit\_log\_server1*      Server name of syslog server 1
- server1-port-number**      Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1's UDP port number for the syslog protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the setting is not changed.
- The default value is 514. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.
- |                    |                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>port_number</i> | Syslog server 1's UDP port number |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set audit

#### -server1-port

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 1's LAN port. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.

maintenance	Maintenance port (MNT port)
remote	Remote port (RMT port)

#### -server2-function

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable syslog server 2. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.

disable	Syslog server 2 is disabled.
rfc3164	Syslog server 2 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC3164.
rfc5424	Syslog server 2 is enabled and uses message format based on RFC5424.

#### -server2

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.

Example: -server2 192.168.1.20

Example: -server2 fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -server2 foo.bar

*audit\_log\_server2* Server name of syslog server 2

#### -server2-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2's UDP port number for the syslog protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the setting is not changed. The default value is 514. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.

*port\_number* Syslog server 2's UDP port number

#### -server2-port

Optional. This parameter specifies syslog server 2's LAN port. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when the audit log function is disabled.

maintenance	Maintenance port (MNT port)
remote	Remote port (RMT port)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the audit log function:

```
CLI> set audit -mode enable -server1-function rfc3164 -server1 10.21.134.198 -server1-port-number 514  
-server1-port maintenance -server2-function rfc5424 -server2 10.17.80.6 -server2-port-number 517 -server2-lan-port remote
```

## Key Management Server Linkage Function

The key management server linkage function manages the authentication keys that are used for Self-Encrypting Drives (SED) in the key server.

This section explains the commands to set up the key management server linkage function.

- Setting the key management machine name
- Setting the key server
- Registering the SSL/KMIP server certificate
- Creating/changing/deleting the key group
- Updating the key
- Recovery from key group blockage

### Caution

The commands that are described in this section support only models that can be installed with SEDs.

### ■ Summary of the key management server linkage function settings

The steps involved in setting the key management server linkage function are provided below.

#### Procedure ►►►

##### 1 Create a self-signed SSL certificate.

Use the "create ssl-certificate" command to create a Secure Socket Layer (SSL) server key and an SSL server certificate.

##### 2 Set the key management machine name.

Use the "set sed-key-machine-name" command to set the key management machine name. After executing this command, use the "show sed-key-machine-name" command to check if the key management machine name is set.

##### 3 Add the key servers.

Use the "set sed-key-server" command to set up the key servers.

##### 4 Create a key group.

Use the "create sed-key-group" command to create a key group.

### Note

- Use the "create sed-key-group" command to change a key group.
- Use the "delete sed-key-group" command to delete a key group.

##### 5 Import the SSL/KMIP certificate.

Use the "import ssl-kmip-certificate" command to register the server certificate that is signed by a certificate provider to the ETERNUS DX.

**6** Update the SED authentication key.

Use the "change sed-key" command to update the SED authentication key for the key group.

**Caution**

If no SED authentication key is registered in the key group, an error occurs when the first update of the SED authentication key is performed. In this case, register the self-signed SSL certificate of the ETERNUS DX in the key server, accept access from the ETERNUS DX, and then update the SED authentication key again. The "Key Status" changes to "Normal".

**7** Check the key server status.

Use the "show sed-key-groups" command to check the key server status.

**8** Set the key group for a RAID group.

Use the "set raid-group" command to enable the key management server linkage function for a RAID group.



## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show sed-key-machine-name

### show sed-key-machine-name

This command displays the key management machine name for connecting with the key server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show sed-key-machine-name
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Key Machine Name	Key management machine name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the key management machine name:

```
CLI> show sed-key-machine-name
Key Machine Name      AOE2000000000_ET06F21AUABCPJ000000
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set sed-key-machine-name

### set sed-key-machine-name

This command specifies the key management machine name that is used as the machine name for connecting to the key server.

The key management machine name corresponds to the machine ID in the key server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set sed-key-machine-name -machine-name {machine_name | ""}
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -machine-name

This parameter specifies the key management machine name. Up to 48 alphanumeric characters and underscores (\_) can be specified. Only an alphabetical character can be specified as the first letter. Specify a null character ("") to disable the specified key management machine name.

*machine\_name*      Key management machine name

""                  The specified key management machine name is disabled.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets a key management machine name:

```
CLI> set sed-key-machine-name -machine-name A0E2000000000_ET06F21AUABCPJ000000
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show sed-key-servers

## show sed-key-servers

This command displays the key server.

### Syntax

```
show sed-key-servers [-server-id server_id]
```

### Parameter

-server-id    Optional. This parameter specifies the key server IDs that are to be displayed. 1 or 2 can be specified. Multiple key server IDs can be specified at the same time. If this parameter is omitted, all of the server information is displayed.

*server\_id*    Key server ID

### Output

Item name	Description
Server ID	Key server ID
Server	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the key server
Port Number	Port number of the key server
Port	Indicates which LAN port is used

### Example(s)

The following example displays the key server information:

```
CLI> show sed-key-servers
Server ID      1
Server          10.21.134.198
Port Number    5696
Port            RMT

Server ID      2
Server          -
Port Number    5696
Port            MNT
```

The following example displays the key server information when the server ID is 1:

```
CLI> show sed-key-servers -server-id 1
Server ID      1
Server          10.21.134.198
Port Number    5696
Port            RMT
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set sed-key-server

### set sed-key-server

This command sets up the key servers. Up to two key servers can be registered.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set sed-key-server -server-id server_id [-server {server | ""}] [-port-number port_number]  
[-port {maintenance | remote}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-server-id This parameter specifies the key server ID that is to be registered. 1 or 2 can be specified.

*server\_id* Key server ID

-server Optional. This parameter specifies the key server. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. Specify a null character ("") to disable the specified server ID. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -server 192.168.1.20

Example: -server fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -server foo.bar

*server* Key server

"" The specified server ID is disabled.

-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the port number of the key server. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the setting is not changed. The default value is 5696.

*port\_number* Port number of the key server

-port

Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port for the key server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

maintenance Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote Remote port (RMT port)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the key server:

```
CLI> set sed-key-server -server-id 1 -server 10.21.134.198 -port-number 5696 -port maintenance
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > import ssl-kmip-certificate

## import ssl-kmip-certificate

This command imports and registers in the ETERNUS DX the server certificate that is signed by a certificate provider.

### Syntax

```
import ssl-kmip-certificate -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
    -user login_user_account -filename filename [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
  - maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
  - remote      Remote port (RMT port)
  - fst      FST port
- server      This parameter specifies the FTP server name in which the certificate file is to be stored. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (as a string in the base 256 notation d.d.d.d), IPv6 address format or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
  - Example: -server 192.168.1.20
  - Example: -server fd80::ab0d0:223:ad
  - Example: -server foo.bar

*server\_name*      FTP server name
- user      This parameter specifies the user name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.
  - login\_user\_account*      User account name
- filename      This parameter specifies the certificate file name.
  - filename*      Certificate file name
- indicator      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.
  - enable      Progress indicator is displayed.
  - disable      Progress indicator is not displayed.

### Example(s)

The following example imports and registers the signed certificate:

```
CLI> import ssl-kmip-certificate -port maintenance -server ftp.example.com -user cli-user filename server.cert
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show sed-key-groups

### show sed-key-groups

This command displays the key group and the server certificate.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show sed-key-groups
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

The following information is displayed when a key group is registered.

Item name	Description
SED Key Group Name	Key group name
Key Expiration Date	Valid period of the key being used (If the key server is inaccessible, "Not Available" is displayed. If a valid period is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)
Key Status	Key status
Machine Group Name	Machine group name
Security Level	Security level
Recovery Mode	Recovery mode
Period	Valid period of the key (If a valid period is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)
Master Server ID	Master server ID and the master server status (If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed. This information is followed by the master server status.)
Master Server	FQDN or IP address of the master server (If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)
Slave Server ID	Slave server ID and the slave server status (If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed. This information is followed by the slave server status.)
Slave Server	FQDN or IP address of the slave server (If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.)

The following information is displayed when a server certificate is registered.

Item name	Description
Issuer Name	Issuer name
Subject Name	Owner name
Valid From	Starting date of the valid period
Valid To	Ending date of the valid period
Serial Number	Serial number

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show sed-key-groups

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the key group information and the server certificate information:

```
CLI> show sed-key-groups
SED Key Group          Key Expiration Key Status
Name                  Date
key_group1            2012-07-27    Normal
<Detail Information>
Machine Group Name   machine_group1
Security Level       High
Recovery Mode        Auto
Period                7
Master Server ID     1 (Normal)
Master Server         10.21.134.198
Slave Server ID      2 (Normal)
Slave Server          10.21.134.199
<Server Certificate Information>
Issuer Name          Fujitsu Certification Authority
Subject Name          Key Management Server
Valid From           2012-08-17 13:04:47
Valid To              2015-08-17 13:04:47
Serial Number         602199653074063
```

The following example shows when a key group is registered but a server certificate is not registered:

```
CLI> show sed-key-groups
SED Key Group          Key Expiration Key Status
Name                  Date
key_group1            2012-07-27    Normal
<Detail Information>
Machine Group Name   machine_group1
Security Level       High
Recovery Mode        Auto
Period                7
Master Server ID     1 (Normal)
Master Server         10.21.134.198
Slave Server ID      2 (Normal)
Slave Server          10.21.134.199
```

The following example shows when a key group is not registered but a server certificate is registered:

```
CLI> show sed-key-groups
<Server Certificate Information>
Issuer Name          Fujitsu Certification Authority
Subject Name          Key Management Server
Valid From           2012-08-17 13:04:47
Valid To              2015-08-17 13:04:47
Serial Number         602199653074063
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > create sed-key-group

### create sed-key-group

This command creates a key group.

Only one key group can be created for the ETERNUS DX.

#### ■ Syntax

```
create sed-key-group -name name -machine-group-name machine_group_name
[-security-level {low | high}] [-recovery-mode {auto | manual}] [-period {period | ""}]
[-master-server-id {master_server_id | ""}] [-slave-server-id {slave_server_id | ""}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies the key group name. 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters and underscores (\_) can be specified. Only an alphabetical character can be specified as the first letter.

*name* Key group name

**-machine-group-name**

This parameter specifies the machine group name. Set the same name as the device group name in the key server. 1 to 16 alphanumeric characters and underscores (\_) can be specified. Only an alphabetical character can be specified as the first letter.

*machine\_group\_name* Machine group name

**-security-level**

Optional. This parameter specifies the security level when communication with the key server is not available during a drive failure or drive maintenance work in a RAID group that uses the key group. If omitted, "high" is set.

**high** Rebuild or maintenance cannot be performed.

**low** Rebuild or maintenance is performed using the common key.

**-recovery-mode**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to automatically perform recovery of a drive or a RAID group that cannot be communicated with due to blockage of the key server when the communication recovers. When "manual" is set, recovery work is performed manually by the user from Web GUI or CLI. If omitted, "auto" is set.

**auto** Automatic recovery is performed.

**manual** Automatic recovery is not performed.

**-period**

Optional. This parameter specifies the valid period of the key. This period can be specified on a monthly basis by using a number from 1 to 12. Specify a null character ("") or omit this parameter to not set this period.

***period*** Valid period of the key (1 – 12)

**""** The valid period of the key is not set.

**-master-server-id**

Optional. This parameter specifies the key server ID for the master server. 1 or 2 can be specified. When the master server is not used, specify a null character ("") or omit this parameter. Use the same setting as the master server that is set in the key server.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > create sed-key-group

*master\_server\_id* Key server ID for the master server (1 or 2)

"" The key server ID is omitted.

#### -slave-server-id

Optional. This parameter specifies the key server ID for the slave server. 1 or 2 can be specified. When the slave server is not used, specify a null character (""). If omitted, the slave server is not set. Use the same setting as the slave server that is set in the key server.

*slave\_server\_id* Key server ID for the slave server (1 or 2)

"" The key server ID is omitted.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the key group:

```
CLI> create sed-key-group -name key-group1 -machine-group-name machine_group1 -security-level high -recovery-mode auto  
-period 6 -master-server-id 1 -slave-server-id 2
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set sed-key-group

### set sed-key-group

This command modifies the key group.

#### Syntax

```
set sed-key-group [-name name] [-machine-group-name machine_group_name]
[-security-level {low | high}] [-recovery-mode {auto | manual}] [-period {period | ""}]
[-master-server-id {master_server_id | ""}] [-slave-server-id {slave_server_id | ""}]
```

#### Parameter

- name      Optional. This parameter specifies the key group name. 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters and underscores (\_) can be specified. Only an alphabetical character can be specified as the first letter. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - name*      Key group name
- machine-group-name      Optional. This parameter specifies the machine group name. Set the same name as the device group name in the key server. 1 to 16 alphanumeric characters and underscores (\_) can be specified. Only an alphabetical character can be specified as the first letter. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - machine\_group\_name*      Machine group name
- security-level      Optional. This parameter specifies the security level. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - high      Rebuild or maintenance cannot be performed when communication with the key server is not available during a drive failure or drive maintenance work in a RAID group that uses the key group.
  - low      Rebuild or maintenance is performed using the common key when communication with the key server is not available during a drive failure or drive maintenance work in a RAID group that uses the key group.
- recovery-mode      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to automatically perform recovery of a drive or a RAID group that cannot be communicated with due to blockage of the key server when the communication recovers. When "manual" is set, the recovery work is performed manually by the user from Web GUI or CLI. If omitted, "auto" is set.
  - auto      Automatic recovery is performed.
  - manual      Automatic recovery is not performed.
- period      Optional. This parameter specifies the valid period of the key. This period can be specified on a monthly basis by using a number from 1 to 12. Specify a null character ("") or omit this parameter to not set this period. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - period*      Valid period of the key (1 - 12)
  - ""      The valid period of the key is not set.
- master-server-id      Optional. This parameter specifies the key server ID for the master server. 1 or 2 can be specified. When the master server is not used, specify a null character (""). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Use the same setting as the master server that is set in the key server.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set sed-key-group

*master\_server\_id* Key server ID for the master server (1 or 2)

"" The key server ID is omitted.

#### -slave-server-id

Optional. This parameter specifies the key server ID for the slave server. 1 or 2 can be specified. When the slave server is not used, specify a null character (""). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Use the same setting as the slave server that is set in the key server.

*slave\_server\_id* Key server ID for the slave server (1 or 2)

"" The key server ID is omitted.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example modifies the key group:

```
CLI> set sed-key-group -name key-group2 -machine-group-name machine_group2 -security-level low -recovery-mode manual  
-period "" -master-server-id 2 -slave-server-id 1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > delete sed-key-group

# delete sed-key-group

This command deletes the key group.

## ■ Syntax

```
delete sed-key-group
```

## ■ Parameter

No parameters.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the key group:

```
CLI> delete sed-key-group
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > change sed-key

## change sed-key

This command updates the key for the key group.

### ■ Syntax

```
change sed-key -mode {reuse | delete}
```

### ■ Parameter

-mode This parameter specifies the update mode.

reuse The previously used key is reusable after being switched.

delete The previously used key is not reusable after being switched.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example updates the key for the key group:

```
CLI> change sed-key -mode reuse
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > recover sed-key-group

### recover sed-key-group

This command recovers a blocked key group.

#### ■ Syntax

```
recover sed-key-group
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example recovers the blocked key group:

```
CLI> recover sed-key-group
```

## Power Synchronization

---

This section explains the commands related to power synchronization.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show power-synchronization

### show power-synchronization

This command displays the settings that control how the shutdown function interacts with the external sensor.

#### Syntax

```
show power-synchronization
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
RCIL	The setting of the power control function that uses an RCIL interface
Auto Power	The setting to turn the system power on when power is supplied
Resume Power	The setting to turn the system power on when power is supplied after the ETERNUS DX is shut down due to a power outage
<b>PWC Port Information</b>	
Controller Module #0	Indicates whether CM#0 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8100 S4)
Controller Module #1	Indicates whether CM#1 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8100 S4)
Service Controller #0	Indicates whether SVC#0 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8900 S4)
Service Controller #1	Indicates whether SVC#1 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8900 S4)
Waiting Time to Shutdown	The time that starts the ETERNUS DX shutdown when a power outage signal is received from an external sensor device
Type	The reset interface (Power Synchronized Unit or manual). In this output, the preset interface is displayed if the same setup as the preset is set by manual setup.
Power Fail Signal	The signal polarity that controls the input power outage signal when a power supply fails and power is not provided
Low Battery Signal	The signal polarity that controls the battery voltage low signal when the battery usage of a UPS is low
UPS Shutdown Signal	The signal polarity that controls the UPS output stop signal when the shutdown is complete
<b>SCCI/PPC Unit Information</b>	
Controller Module #0	Indicates whether CM#0 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8100 S4)
Controller Module #1	Indicates whether CM#1 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8100 S4)
Service Controller #0	Indicates whether SVC#0 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8900 S4)
Service Controller #1	Indicates whether SVC#1 is connected to the power synchronized device. (Only for the DX8900 S4)

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show power-synchronization

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the settings that control how the shutdown function interacts with the external sensor (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show power-synchronization
RCIL [Enable]
Auto Power [Enable]
Resume Power [Disable]
<PWC Port>
Controller Module #0 [Enable]
Controller Module #1 [Disable]
Waiting Time to Shutdown [5 min.]
Type [Power Synchronized Unit]
Power Fail Signal [Positive]
Low Battery Signal [Negative]
UPS Shutdown Signal [Negative]
<SCCI/PPC Unit>
Controller Module #0 [Enable]
Controller Module #1 [Disable]
```

The following example displays the settings that control how the shutdown function interacts with the external sensor (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show power-synchronization
RCIL [Enable]
Auto Power [Enable]
Resume Power [Disable]
<PWC Port>
Service Controller #0 [Enable]
Service Controller #1 [Disable]
Waiting Time to Shutdown [5 min.]
Type [Power Synchronized Unit]
Power Fail Signal [Positive]
Low Battery Signal [Negative]
UPS Shutdown Signal [Negative]
<SCCI/PPC Unit>
Service Controller #0 [Enable]
Service Controller #1 [Disable]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set power-synchronization

### set power-synchronization

This command configures the way in which the shutdown function interacts with the external sensor.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set power-synchronization [-rcil {enable | disable}]\n[-auto-power {enable | disable}] [-resume-power {enable | disable}]\n[-pwc-cm {0 | 1 | all | none}] [-pwc-svc {0 | 1 | all | none}]\n[-scsi-ppc-cm {0 | 1 | all | none}] [-scsi-ppc-svc {0 | 1 | all | none}]\n[-shutdown-time shutdown_time]\n[-preset {power-sync | manual}]\n[-power-fail-signal {positive | negative}]\n[-low-battery-signal {positive | negative}]\n[-ups-shutdown-signal {disable | positive | negative}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-rcil**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the power synchronization setting using the RCIL.

enable      Enabled.

disable      Disabled.

**-auto-power**

Optional. If "enable" is specified, the system power is turned on when a power supply is detected. The default value is set to disable.

enable      Enabled.

disable      Disabled. (Default)

**-resume-power**

Optional. If "enable" is specified, the system power is turned on when a power supply is detected after the ETERNUS DX is shut down due to a power outage. The default value is set to disable.

enable      Enabled.

disable      Disabled. (Default)

**-pwc-cm**

Optional. This parameter specifies the controller module number that connects to the external sensor (only for the DX8100 S4).

The connection method conforms to the PWC port (RS-232C standard). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

0      Controller module #0

1      Controller module #1

all      Both controller module #0 and controller module #1

none      No connection. If selected, only "-auto-power" and "-resume-power" from the parameters that follow can be selected.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set power-synchronization

**-pwc-svc** Optional. This parameter specifies the service controller (SVC) number that connects to the external sensor (only for the DX8900 S4).

The connection method conforms to the PWC port (RS-232C standard). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

0 SVC #0

1 SVC #1

all Both SVC #0 and SVC #1

none No connection. If selected, only "-auto-power" and "-resume-power" from the parameters that follow can be selected.

### -scci-ppc-cm

Optional. This parameter specifies the controller module number that connects to the external sensor (only for the DX8100 S4).

The connection method is SCCI or PPC. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

0 Controller module #0

1 Controller module #1

all Both controller module #0 and controller module #1

none No connection.

### -scci-ppc-svc

Optional. This parameter specifies the Service Controller (SVC) number that connects to the external sensor (only for the DX8900 S4).

The connection method is SCCI or PPC. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

0 SVC #0

1 SVC #1

all Both SVC #0 and SVC #1

none No connection.

### -shutdown-time

Optional. This parameter specifies the time in minutes between when a power outage signal is received and when a system shutdown begins. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Any value between 0 and 15 can be specified.

*shutdown\_time* Time in minutes between when a power outage signal is received and when a system shutdown begins (0 – 15)

**-preset** Optional. This parameter specifies the preset values for the power synchronization interface (only for the ETERNUS DX8900 S4). If this parameter is specified, the "-power-fail-signal" and "-low-battery-signal" parameters cannot be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

**power-sync** Power synchronized unit. If this operand is specified, "-power-fail-signal" is assigned as positive and "-low-battery-signal" is assigned as negative.

**manual** Manual setting (default). For this setting, "-power-fail-signal" and "-low-battery-signal" must be specified at the same time.

### -power-fail-signal

Optional. This parameter specifies the signal polarity of the power outage signal, which indicates that the power supply has failed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to "positive". This can be set when "manual" is specified for "-preset".

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > set power-synchronization

positive Positive is set. (Default)

negative Negative is set.

#### -low-battery-signal

Optional. This parameter specifies the signal polarity of the low battery voltage signal, which indicates that battery power is nearly exhausted. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to "positive". This can be set when "manual" is specified for "-preset".

positive Positive is set. (Default)

negative Negative is set.

#### -ups-shutdown-signal

Optional. This parameter specifies the signal polarity of the UPS stop signal when completing shutdown. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to "disable".

positive Positive is set.

negative Negative is set.

disable The UPS synchronization function is disabled. (Default)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets how the shutdown function interacts with the external sensor.

Both controller modules are selected, the shutdown time is specified as five minutes, and the input signal that signals power outage is specified as positive.

```
CLI> set power-synchronization -pwc-cm all -shutdown-time 5 -power-fail-signal positive
```

## Power-Off/Reboot System

---

This section explains the commands related to system power-off or reboot.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > shutdown

### shutdown

This command will power off or reboot the system. The CLI session is automatically closed.

#### Note

- The ETERNUS DX is powered off or rebooted regardless of the power synchronization setting.
- When power synchronization is enabled and the ETERNUS DX is powered off by this command, the ETERNUS DX may automatically reboot according to the power control process of the server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
shutdown -mode {off | reboot}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-mode This parameter specifies the shutdown mode.

    off Power off the system.

    reboot Reboot the system.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example powers off the system:

```
CLI> shutdown -mode off
```

The following example reboots the system:

```
CLI> shutdown -mode reboot
```

## Compression Mode Setting

---

This section describes the commands related to the Compression mode setting.

---

### Caution

- To use the Compression function, the Compression mode setting must be enabled in advance.
  - This function is not supported by the DX8100 S4.
- 

The functions that are related to the Compression mode setting are as follows.

- Displaying the state of the Compression mode setting
- Configuring the Compression mode setting

## show data-reduction

This command displays the state of the Compression mode setting of the ETERNUS DX.

### ■ Syntax

```
show data-reduction
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Mode	State of the Compression mode setting
Compression	The Compression mode setting is enabled
Disable	The Compression mode setting is disabled

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the output when the Compression mode setting is enabled:

```
CLI> show data-reduction
Mode          [Compression]
```

The following example displays the output when the Compression mode setting is disabled:

```
CLI> show data-reduction
Mode          [Disable]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set data-reduction

### set data-reduction

This command configures the Compression mode setting. To use the Compression function, this setting must be enabled.

#### Caution

If the Compression mode setting is disabled, the ETERNUS DX must be rebooted.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set data-reduction -mode {compression | disable}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-mode      This parameter specifies whether to enable the Compression mode setting. For details on the Compression mode setting, refer to "[Compression](#)" (page 246).

#### Caution

The Maintenance Operation policy is required to disable the Compression mode setting.

compression      The Compression mode setting is enabled.

disable      The Compression mode setting is disabled.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the Compression mode setting:

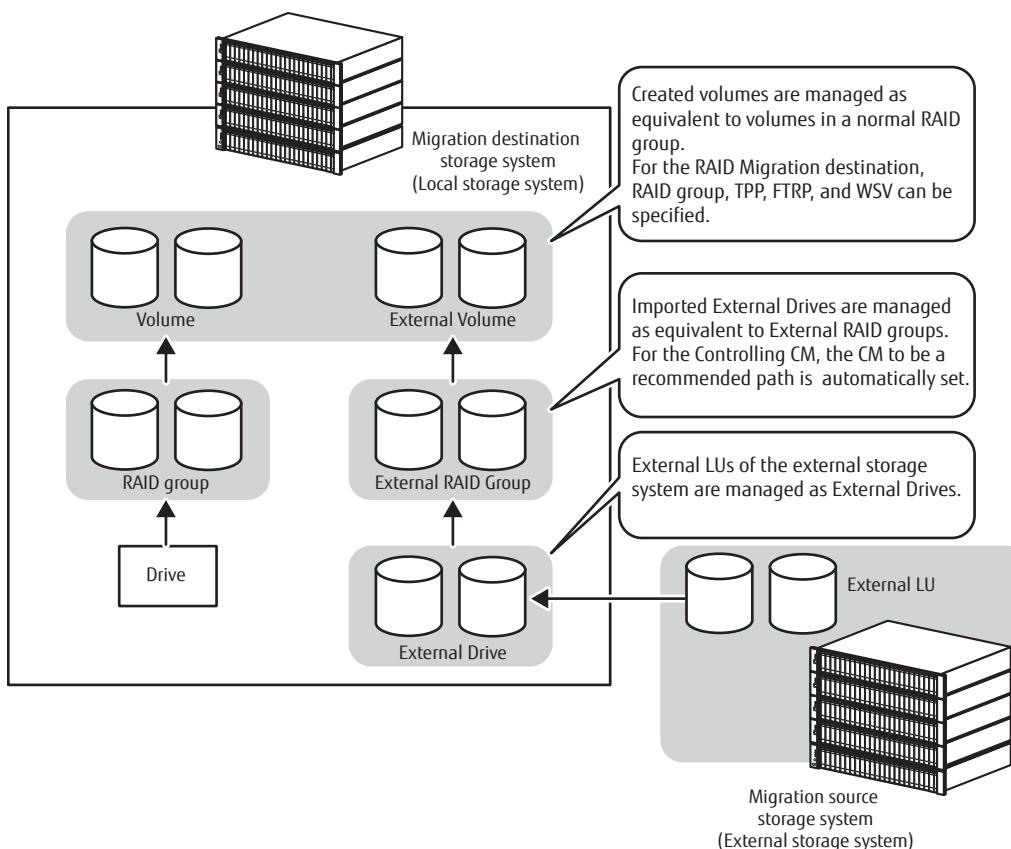
```
CLI> set data-reduction -mode compression
```

## Non-disruptive Storage Migration Function

The Non-disruptive Storage Migration function migrates volume data from the migration source storage system (external storage system) to the migration destination storage system (local storage system) without using the host. RAID Migration is used for the data migration.

The logical volumes in the external storage system are imported into the local storage system as External Drives and an External RAID Group is created. Because a logical volume (External Volume) that is created in an External RAID Group inherits the device information of an External LU, the server recognizes the volume as the same device. Therefore, the server does not need to recognize the migration destination volume and the online data migration is available.

Figure 13 Non-disruptive Storage Migration function overview



This section explains the following commands related to the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function.

- Registering/displaying the license for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function
- Displaying external storage systems/External LU list
- Importing External LU (creating an External Drive)
- Displaying/deleting External Drives
- Creating/deleting/displaying External RAID Groups
- Creating an External Volume (\*1)
- RAID Migration function (\*1)

\*1: For details about the operation commands, refer to ["Volume" \(page 123\)](#).

**Note**

- To use this function, registration of the Non-disruptive Storage Migration License (free of charge) is required.
- For connection between storage systems, an FC host interface is used. FC ports are connected in the FC-Initiator mode.
- Up to 32 ports on the external storage system can be connected to one FC-Initiator port.
- For the RAID Migration destination, RAID group, TPP, FTRP, and WSV can be specified.  
The volume type that can be created from the imported External Volume is Standard only.
- One External Volume can be created from an External RAID Group.
- Volumes that are migrated to the local storage system respond to the host with information that is equivalent to External Volumes, even after migration is completed.

## ■ Volume overview

The volumes used for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function are shown below.

- External LU  
General term for migration source LU managed on the external storage system.
  - External Drive  
General term for migration source LU managed on the local storage system.  
Drives specified with "Migration" for "Usage" in the output of the "show external-drive" command.
  - External RAID Group  
General term for a RAID group created from an External Drive.  
RAID groups specified with "Migration" for "Usage" in the output of the "show external-raid-group" command.
  - External Volume  
Volume created from an External RAID Group.  
Volumes specified with "Migration" for "Type" in the output of the "show volumes" command.
- 
- Maximum number of volumes that can be migrated  
Data migration (RAID Migration) can be performed for 32 volumes at a time.
  - Number of External Drives that can be imported into the local storage system  
The number of External Drives that can be imported into each model is 16,384.

## ■ Setting the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function

The following procedure explains how to set the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function.

### Procedure ►►►

- 1** Enable the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function using the "set non-disruptive-storage-migration" command to register the license.
- 2** Connect the external storage system and local storage system in the FC-Initiator mode.
  - 2-1** Use the "set host-port-mode" command to set the operation mode of the host interface port to the Initiator mode.

**Caution**  
Before executing the "set fc-parameters" command, make sure to use the "set host-port-mode" command to switch the port mode. The reason for this operation is that switching the port mode restores some parameters to the default values.
  - 2-2** Use the "show host-port-mode" command to check the status.
  - 2-3** Use the "set fc-parameters" command to specify the parameters to control the FC host interface port.
  - 2-4** Use the "show fc-parameters" command to check the status.
- 3** Import the volumes in the external storage system into the local storage system as External Drives.
  - 3-1** Use the "discover external-storage" command to check the external storage system that is connected to the FC-Initiator port.
  - 3-2** Specify the "-serial" option for the "discover external-storage" command to check the External LU of the selected external storage system.
  - 3-3** Use the "create external-drive" command to import the volumes as External Drives.  
Check the state of the imported External Drive using the "show external-drive" command.
- 4** Create an External RAID Group from the External Drive.
  - 4-1** Use the "create external-raid-group" command to create an External RAID Group.
  - 4-2** Use the "show external-raid-group" command to check the status.
- 5** Create an External Volume in the External RAID Group.
  - 5-1** Using the "create volume" command, specify the "-external-rg-number" or "-external-rg-name" option to create an External Volume.  
The created External Volume is not formatted and the stored data is inherited.
  - 5-2** Use the "show volumes" command to check the status.
- 6** Associate the created volume with the server.
  - 6-1** Set host affinity.  
For details about host affinity setting, refer to ["Host Interface Management" \(page 271\)](#).
- 7** Add a multipath to the server.

**8** Remove the multipath from the server and disconnect the server from the external storage system.  
The operation switches from the migration source storage system to the migration destination storage system.

**9** Start data migration (RAID Migration).

- 9-1** Use the "start migration" command or the "start flexible-tier-migration" command to start data migration.
- If the migration destination is not an FTRP  
Use the "start migration" command to start data migration.
  - If the migration destination is an FTRP  
Use the "start flexible-tier-migration" command to start data migration.

**Caution**

If data synchronization is required between the migration source volume and the migration destination volume until the entire data migration is completed, select to stop the data synchronization manually (specify "manual-stop" for the "-data-sync-after-migration" option). If this option is specified, the data synchronization must be manually stopped.

- 9-2** Use the "show migration" command to check the status.  
To stop the data migration, use the "stop migration" command.

- 9-3** If "manual-stop" is specified for the "-data-sync-after-migration" option when the migration starts, stop the data synchronization.  
After checking that the data migration is completed ([Progress] is [100%] and [Migration Status] is [Active] for the "stop migration" command), stop the data synchronization using the "stop external-volume-data-synchronization" command.

**Caution**

Do not execute the "stop migration" command to stop the data synchronization. If the "stop migration" command is executed, the RAID migration process is stopped.

**Note**

When migrating a volume created from an External RAID Group, the encryption function cannot be specified.

**10** After the migration is completed, delete both the External RAID Group and the External Drive.

- 10-1** Use the "delete external-raid-group" command to delete the External RAID Groups.  
**10-2** Use the "delete external-drive" command to delete the External Drives.

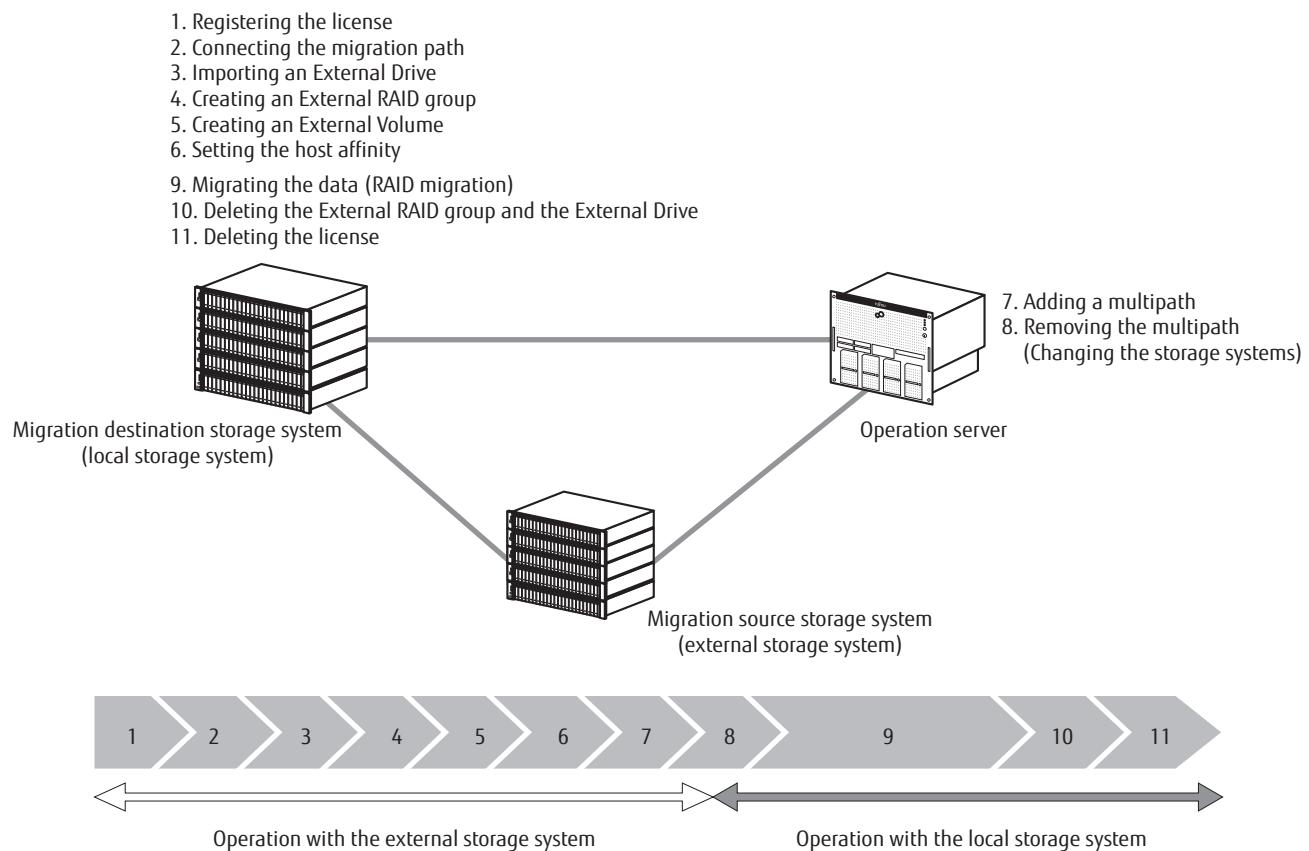
**11** Delete the license for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function.



## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings

Figure 14 Structure of the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function



## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings

The commands that are used for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function are shown below.

Function	Command
Displaying volumes	show volumes
Creating volumes	create volume
Deleting volumes	delete volume
Displaying the Migration	show migration
Starting a RAID Migration	start migration
	start flexible-tier-migration
Stopping a RAID Migration	stop migration
Stopping the data synchronization of External Volumes	stop external-volume-data-synchronization
Displaying the registration status of the Non-disruptive Storage Migration License	show non-disruptive-storage-migration
Registering the Non-disruptive Storage Migration License	set non-disruptive-storage-migration
Displaying the external storage system information and External LU Information	discover external-storage
Displaying the External Drive information	show external-drive
Importing the External Drives	create external-drive
Deleting External Drives	delete external-drive
Displaying External RAID Groups	show external-raid-group
Creating an External RAID Group	create external-raid-group
Deleting External RAID Groups	delete external-raid-group
Recovering an External RAID Group	recover external-raid-group

Whether the commands can operate External Volumes is shown below:

Command	External Volume Operation
set volume	x
show volume-progress	x
show volume-mapping	x
format volume	-
expand volume	-
set volume-parameters	N/A
create odx-buffer-volume	N/A
set volume-exc	N/A
set volume-qos	x
create lun-group	x
set lun-group	x
set mapping	x
start advanced-copy	-
create rec-disk-buffer	N/A
show performance	x
set cache-parameters	N/A
show cache-parameters	N/A
release reservation	x

x: Available, -: Unavailable, N/A: The command does not function even if it is specified.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show non-disruptive-storage-migration

## show non-disruptive-storage-migration

This command displays the registration status of the license for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function.

### ■ Syntax

```
show non-disruptive-storage-migration
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
License	Registration status of the license
Registered	The license is registered.
-	The license is not registered.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the registration status of the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function:

```
CLI> show non-disruptive-storage-migration
License [Registered]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > set non-disruptive-storage-migration

### set non-disruptive-storage-migration

This command registers the license for the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function.

#### Note

To use the Non-disruptive Storage Migration function, register the Non-disruptive Storage Migration License in advance using this command.

#### Syntax

```
set non-disruptive-storage-migration -key key
```

#### Parameter

-key      This parameter specifies the license key for the function that manages the external storage system. The license key consists of 16 alphanumeric characters (fixed). To delete the license, specify a null character ("").

*key*      License key

#### Example(s)

The following example registers the license:

```
CLI> set non-disruptive-storage-migration -key 0123456789abcdef
```

The following example deletes the license:

```
CLI> set non-disruptive-storage-migration -key ""
```

## discover external-storage

This command displays information of the external storage system that is connected to the local storage system and information of the External LU.

### Syntax

```
discover external-storage [ -serial serial_number ]
```

### Parameter

- serial      Optional. This parameter specifies the serial number of the external storage system.  
When a serial number is specified, the External LU Information of the corresponding external storage system is displayed.  
If omitted, information of external storage system connected to the local storage system is displayed in a list.  
A maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters (ASCII) can be used.  
Up to 512 External LUs associated with the specified external storage system can be displayed. Only one serial number can be specified.

*serial\_number*

Serial number

### Output

Item name	Description
External Storage	External storage system information
Serial No.	Serial number of the external storage system
Vendor ID	Vendor ID of the external storage system
Product ID	Product ID of the external storage system
External LU Count	Number of External LUs associated with the specified external storage system. Displayed only when the "-serial" parameter is specified.
Connection Path	Connection path information between the external storage system and local storage system
Target WWN	WWN of the external storage system port
Initiator Port	FC-Initiator port of the local storage system connected to the external storage system.
External LU List	External LU list
LUN	LU number of the External LU. If the LUN addressing format is a PRHL/FLAT configuration, the LU number is displayed with a decimal number. If the LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT, the LU number is displayed with a hexadecimal number.
UID	GUID of the External LU
Size	Capacity of the External LU. For details about the display format, refer to <a href="#">"Size of Drives and Logical Units" (page 36)</a> .
LUN Addressing	LUN addressing format of the External LU
PRHL	PRHL configuration
FLAT	FLAT configuration
-	The LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > discover external-storage

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays information of all connected external storage systems:

```
CLI> discover external-storage
<External Storage>
Serial No.          [2801FE0006000000]
Vendor ID           [FUJITSU]
Product ID          [ETERNUS_DXL]
<Connection Path>
Target WWN          Initiator Port
-----
0001020304050607 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2
08090A0B0C0D0E0F CM#1 CA#0 Port#1

<External Storage>
Serial No.          [1106A60005000000]
Vendor ID           [FUJITSU]
Product ID          [ETERNUS_DXH]
<Connection Path>
Target WWN          Initiator Port
-----
0001020304050611 CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2
08090A0B0C0D0F00 CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1
```

The following example displays the information of the external storage system with a serial number of "2801FE0006000000":

```
CLI> discover external-storage -serial 2801FE0006000000
<External Storage>
Serial No.          [2801FE0006000000]
Vendor ID           [FUJITSU]
Product ID          [ETERNUS_DXL]
External LU Count   [2]
<External LU List>
  LUN      UID                      Size      LUN Addressing
  -----  -----
    0 600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000  4.00 GB PRHL
    1 600000E00D2A0000002A000000F0000  8.00 GB PRHL
```

The following example displays the information of the external storage system that has a LUN whose LUN addressing format is not a PRHL/FLAT configuration:

```
CLI> discover external-storage -serial 2801FE0006000000
<External Storage>
Serial No.          [2801FE0006000000]
Vendor ID           [UNKNOWNVENDOR]
Product ID          [UNKNOWN_PRODUCT_ID]
External LU Count   [2]
<External LU List>
  LUN      UID                      Size      LUN Addressing
  -----  -----
 0x8005123456789ABC 00000000000000000000000000000025  4.00 GB -
 0x8006123456789ABC 00000000000000000000000000000026  4.00 GB -
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show external-drive

### show external-drive

This command displays information of External Drives that are imported into the ETERNUS DX.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show external-drive [ -mode { list | detail } ] [ -external-drive-number numbers | -serial serial_number ]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-mode**      Optional. This parameter specifies a display mode.  
If omitted, summary information is displayed.

list            Summary information is displayed.  
detail          Detailed information is displayed.

**-external-drive-number**

Optional. This parameter specifies the External Drive number.  
When this parameter is specified, only the External Drive that matches the specified number is displayed.  
Multiple numbers can be specified, but duplicate numbers cannot be specified. Multiple numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-) (or both).

numbers        External Drive number

**-serial**      Optional. This parameter specifies the serial number of the external storage system.  
When this parameter is specified, only the External Drives that belong to the specified external storage system are displayed.  
A maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters (ASCII) can be used. Only one serial number can be specified.

*serial\_number*

Serial number

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
External Drive	External Drive information
External Drive No.	External Drive number
Status	Status
Size	Capacity. For details about the display format, refer to <a href="#">"Size of Drives and Logical Units" (page 36)</a> . When detailed information is displayed, the size in bytes is also displayed. Display example: [131.50GB (141197049856 bytes)]
Usage	Usage of the External LU
Migration	For data migration
External LU Info	Whether the External LU Information is inherited or not
Inherited	External LU Information is inherited
-	External LU Information is not inherited
External LU	Information related to External LU
Serial No.	Serial number of the external storage system
Vendor ID	Vendor ID of the external storage system
Product ID	Product ID of the external storage system
UID	GUID of the External LU
LUN	LU number of the External LU. If the LUN addressing format is a PRHL/FLAT configuration, the LU number is displayed with a decimal number. If the LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT, the LU number is displayed with a hexadecimal number.
LUN Addressing	LUN addressing format of the External LU
PRHL	PRHL configuration
FLAT	FLAT configuration
-	The LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT
Connection Path	Connection path information between the external storage system and local storage system
Target WWN	WWN of the external storage system port
Initiator Port	FC-Initiator port of the local storage system connected to the external storage system

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the summary information of all External Drives:

```
CLI> show external-drive
External Drives
No. Status Size Usage External LU Info Serial No. External LUs
----- 1023.00 MB Migration Inherited 2801FE0006000000 600000E00D2A0000002A006800000000
1 Available 8.00 GB Migration Inherited 2801FE0007000000 600000E00D2A0000002A006800010000
2 Available 4.00 GB Migration - 2801FE0009000000 600000E00D2B0000002A006800020000
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > show external-drive

The following example displays the detailed information of all External Drives:

```
CLI> show external-drive -mode detail
<External Drive>
External Drive No. [0]
Status [Available]
Size [1023.00 MB (1072693248 Byte)]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [Inherited]
<External LU>
  Serial No. [2801FE0006000000]
  Vendor ID [FUJITSU]
  Product ID [ETERNUS_DLX]
  UID [600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000]
  LUN [0]
  LUN Addressing [PRHL]
<Connection Path>
  Target WWN Initiator Port
  -----
  3331020304050607 CM#0 CA#1 Port#2
  44490A0B0C0D0E0F CM#1 CA#0 Port#2

<External Drive>
External Drive No. [1]
Status [Available]
Size [8.00GB (8589934592 Byte)]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [-]
<External LU>
  Serial No. [2801FE0007000000]
  Vendor ID [FUJITSU]
  Product ID [ETERNUS_DLX]
  UID [600000E00D2A0000002A000000F0000]
  LUN [1]
  LUN Addressing [PRHL]
<Connection Path>
  Target WWN Initiator Port
  -----
  1111020304050607 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2
  22290A0B0C0D0E0F CM#1 CA#0 Port#1

<External Drive>
External Drive No. [2]
Status [Available]
Size [4.00GB (4294967296 Byte)]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [-]
<External LU>
  Serial No. [2801FE0007000000]
  Vendor ID [FUJITSU]
  Product ID [ETERNUS_DLX]
  UID [600000E00D2A0000002A000000E0000]
  LUN [2]
  LUN Addressing [PRHL]
<Connection Path>
  Target WWN Initiator Port
  -----
  0001020304050607 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2
  08090A0B0C0D0E0F CM#1 CA#0 Port#2
```

The following example displays the summary information of External Drives #0 and #1:

```
CLI> show external-drive -mode list -external-drive-number 0,1
External Drives
No. Status Size Usage External LU Info Serial No. External LUs
UID
-----
0 Available 1023.00 MB Migration Inherited 2801FE0006000000 600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000
1 Available 8.00 GB Migration - 2801FE0007000000 600000E00D2A0000002A000000F0000
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### System Settings > show external-drive

The following example displays the detailed information of the External Drive imported from the external storage system with a serial number of "2801FE0006000000":

```
CLI> show external-drive -mode detail -serial 2801FE0006000000
<External Drive>
External Drive No. [0]
Status [Available]
Size [1023.00 MB (1072693248 Byte)]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [Inherited]
<External LU>
  Serial No. [2801FE0006000000]
  Vendor ID [FUJITSU]
  Product ID [ETERNUS_DXL]
  UID [600000E00D2A0000002A000000000000]
  LUN [0]
  LUN Addressing [PRHL]
<Connection Path>
  Target WWN Initiator Port
  -----
  0001020304050607 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1
  08090A0B0C0D0E0F CM#1 CA#0 Port#2
  18191A1B1C1D1E1F CM#1 CA#1 Port#2
```

The following example displays the detailed information of the External Drive if the LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT:

```
CLI> show external-drive -mode detail -serial 2801FE0006000000
<External Drive>
External Drive No. [5]
Status [Available]
Size [1023.00 MB (1072693248 Byte)]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [Inherited]
<External LU>
  Serial No. [2801FE0006000000]
  Vendor ID [UNKNOWNVENDOR]
  Product ID [UNKNOWN_PRODUCT_ID]
  UID [00000000000000000000000000000025]
  LUN [0x8005123456789ABC]
  LUN Addressing [-]
<Connection Path>
  Target WWN Initiator Port
  -----
  1122334455667788 CM#0 CA#1 Port#2
  1100000000000088 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > create external-drive

### create external-drive

This command imports the External LU of the specified external storage system as an External Drive of the local storage system.

#### Note

- The External LU of the external storage system that is displayed with the "discover external-storage" command can be imported.
- Before executing this command, use the "discover external-storage" command to check the External LU of the external storage system that can be imported.

#### Syntax

```
create external-drive -serial serial_number [ -inherit-external-lu-info { yes | no } ] -lun { /uns | all }
```

#### Parameter

-serial	This parameter specifies the serial number of the external storage system. A maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters (ASCII) can be used. Only one serial number can be specified.  <i>serial_number</i> Serial number
-inherit-external-lu-info	Optional. This parameter specifies whether the External Drive information is inherited or not. If omitted, the information is inherited.  yes        External LU Information is inherited. no        External LU Information is not inherited.
-lun	This parameter specifies the External LU number. The External LU imported into the ETERNUS DX cannot be imported again. For " <i>/uns</i> ", multiple numbers can be specified but duplicate numbers cannot be specified. If this parameter is specified with decimal numbers (the LUN addressing format is a PRHL/FLAT configuration), up to 512 numbers can be specified. (The settable range is 0 to 4095, numbers only.) Multiple numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-) (or both). If this parameter is specified with hexadecimal numbers (the LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT), up to 256 numbers can be specified. (Fixed to 18 characters, including numbers, upper case letters from A to F and lower case letters from a to f. The first characters must be 0x.) Multiple numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).  <i>/uns</i> LU number of the External LU all        All External LUs in the specified external storage system are imported.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > create external-drive

### ■ Example(s)

The following example imports External LU#0 , #1, and #2 of the specified external storage system with External LU Information inherited:

```
CLI> create external-drive -serial 1106A60005000000 -inherit-external-lu-info yes -lun 0-2
```

The following example imports all External LUs of the specified external storage system with no External LU Information inherited:

```
CLI> create external-drive -serial 1106A60008000000 -inherit-external-lu-info no -lun all
```

The following example imports External LUs (whose LUN addressing format is a configuration other than PRHL/FLAT) from the specified external storage system with no External LU Information inherited:

```
CLI> create external-drive -serial 1106A60008000000 -inherit-external-lu-info no -lun  
0x8005123456789abc,0x8006321654987cba
```

## delete external-drive

This command deletes External Drives.

### Note

External Drives that are in use cannot be deleted. To delete an External Drive, the External RAID Group created from the target External Drive must be deleted.

### Syntax

```
delete external-drive { -external-drive-number numbers | -serial serial_number }
```

### Parameter

#### -external-drive-number

This parameter specifies the External Drive number.

Multiple numbers can be specified, but duplicate numbers cannot be specified. Multiple numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-) (or both).

*numbers*      External Drive number

#### -serial

This parameter specifies the serial number of the external storage system.

All imported External Drives are deleted from the external storage system of the specified serial number. If any one of the External Drives is in use, the command terminates with an error.

A maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters (ASCII) can be used. Only one serial number can be specified.

*serial\_number*

Serial number

### Example(s)

The following example deletes imported External Drives #0 and #1:

```
CLI> delete external-drive -external-drive-number 0,1
```

The following example deletes all External Drives of the external storage system with a serial number of "2801FE0006000000":

```
CLI> delete external-drive -serial 2801FE0006000000
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show external-raid-group

### show external-raid-group

This command displays the External RAID Groups imported into the ETERNUS DX.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show external-raid-group [ -external-rg-number numbers | -external-rg-name name ]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-external-rg-number or -external-rg-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the identifier of the External RAID Group to display the detailed information.

If omitted, the summary information of all External RAID Groups is displayed.

When the "-external-rg-number *numbers*" parameter is specified, multiple numbers can be specified but duplicate numbers cannot be specified.

When the "-external-rg-name *name*" parameter is specified, only one External RAID Group name can be specified.

*numbers*      External RAID Group number

*name*      External RAID Group name

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
External RAID Group Information	External RAID Group identification information
External RAID Group	External RAID Group information
No.	External RAID Group number
Name	External RAID Group name
Usage	Usage of the External LU
Migration	Data migration
External LU Info	Whether the External LU Information is inherited or not
Inherited	External LU Information is inherited.
-	External LU Information is not inherited.
Assigned CM	Associated CM number
Status	External RAID Group status
Total Capacity	Total capacity. For details about the display format, refer to <a href="#">"Size of Drives and Logical Units" (page 36)</a> . When detailed information is displayed, the size in bytes is also displayed. Display example: [131.50GB (141197049856 bytes)]

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show external-raid-group

Item name	Description
Free Capacity	<p>Free capacity.</p> <p>If "0" is displayed, this indicates the state in which the External Volumes are created from the External RAID group.</p> <p>If a number other than "0" is displayed, this indicates the state in which there are no External Volumes in the External RAID group.</p> <p>For details about the display format, refer to <a href="#">"Size of Drives and Logical Units" (page 36)</a>.</p> <p>When detailed information is displayed, the size in bytes is also displayed.</p> <p>Display example: [131.50GB (141197049856 bytes)]</p>

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > show external-raid-group

Item name	Description
External Drive List	External Drive list
No.	External Drive number assigned to the External RAID Group
Status	External Drive status

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the summary information of all External RAID Groups:

```
CLI> show external-raid-group
External RAID Group      Usage     External   Assigned   Status          Total       Free
No.    Name           LU Info   CM          Capacity     Capacity
----- -----
 1 RAIDGROUP001    Migration Inherited CM#0     Available    131.50 GB  129.42 GB
 2 RAIDGROUP002    Migration -             CM#1     Broken      131.50 GB  129.42 GB
```

The following example displays the detailed information of External RAID Groups #1 and #2:

```
CLI> show external-raid-group -external-rg-number 1,2
<External RAID Group Information>
External RAID Group No. [1]
External RAID Group Name [RAIDGROUP001]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [Inherited]
Assigned CM [CM#0]
Status [Available]
Total Capacity [131.50 GB (141197049856 Byte)]
Free Capacity [129.42 GB (138963666862 Byte)]
<External Drive List>
No.   Status
-----
0     Available

<External RAID Group Information>
External RAID Group No. [2]
External RAID Group Name [RAIDGROUP002]
Usage [Migration]
External LU Info [-]
Assigned CM [CM#1]
Status [Broken]
Total Capacity [131.50 GB (141197049856 Byte)]
Free Capacity [129.42 GB (138963666862 Byte)]
<External Drive List>
No.   Status
-----
1     Broken
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > create external-raid-group

### create external-raid-group

This command creates an External RAID Group. For one External Drive, one External RAID Group is created.

#### Syntax

```
create external-raid-group -name name -external-drive-number { numbers | all }
```

#### Parameter

- name** This parameter specifies an alias for the External RAID Group.  
For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" ([page 29](#)).  
Only one External RAID Group name can be specified. An External RAID Group name is a unique name in the ETERNUS DX.  
If multiple External Drives are specified for the "-external-drive-number" parameter, the External RAID groups are created by adding an integer in ascending order to the end of the specified name.  
If the maximum number of characters (16 characters) is exceeded by addition of the above-mentioned integer, the string of characters that exceeds the maximum number is converted to "~".
- Example 1: When two External RAID Groups are created with "-name VLUNAME\_abcdefg" specified, External RAID Groups named "VLUNAME\_abcdef~0" and "VLUNAME\_abcdef~1" are created.
- Example 2: When two External RAID Groups are created with "-name VLUNAME\_abcdefg" specified while 10 External RAID Group names from "VLUNAME\_abcdefg0" to "VLUNAME\_abcdefg9" exist in the ETERNUS DX, External RAID Groups named "VLUNAME\_abcde~10" and "VLUNAME\_abcde~11" are created.
- name* External RAID Group name
- external-drive-number**  
This parameter specifies the External Drive assigned to the External RAID Group. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time.
- For one specified External Drive, one External RAID Group is created.
  - The same number of External RAID Groups is created as the number of specified External Drives.
  - When the specified External Drive does not exist, the command terminates with an error.
  - When the specified External Drive is in use, the command terminates with an error.
  - When "all" is specified, External RAID Groups are created for all unused External Drives.
  - When "all" is specified but no unused External Drives exist, the command terminates with an error.
  - Multiple numbers can be specified, but duplicate numbers cannot be specified.
- Multiple numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-) (or both).
- numbers* External Drive number  
*all* All External Drives are specified.

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > create external-raid-group

### ■ Example(s)

The following example creates External RAID Groups for External Drives #0 and #20:

```
CLI> create external-raid-group -name VLU -external-drive-number 0,20
```

The following example creates External RAID Groups for all External Drives:

```
CLI> create external-raid-group -name VLU -external-drive-number all
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > delete external-raid-group

### delete external-raid-group

This command deletes the specified External RAID Group.

#### ■ Syntax

```
delete external-raid-group { -external-rg-number numbers | -external-rg-name name }
```

#### ■ Parameter

-external-rg-number or -external-rg-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the External RAID Group to be deleted.

For details, refer to "[RAID Group Syntax](#)" (page 29).

When the "-external-rg-number" parameter is specified, multiple numbers can be specified but duplicate numbers cannot be specified.

When the "-external-rg-name" parameter is specified, only one External RAID Group name can be specified.

*numbers*      External RAID Group number

*name*        External RAID Group name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes External RAID Groups #0 and #1:

```
CLI> delete external-raid-group -external-rg-number 0,1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

System Settings > recover external-raid-group

## recover external-raid-group

This command recovers the External RAID Group.

### Syntax

```
recover external-raid-group { -external-rg-number number | -external-rg-name name }
```

### Parameter

-external-rg-number or -external-rg-name

This parameter specifies the identifier of the External RAID Group to be recovered. Specify an External RAID Group in Broken status. Multiple groups cannot be specified. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

*number*      External RAID Group number

*name*      External RAID Group name

### Example(s)

The following example recovers External RAID Group #0:

```
CLI> recover external-raid-group -external-rg-number 0
```

## User Management

---

This section explains the commands that manage a user account and a password.

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > recover external-raid-group

## Role

Roles define the user roles and the policies based on the definitions that are assigned to each role. Policies are given to users as roles. There are default roles that are preset in the ETERNUS DX and user-defined roles (custom roles). The following table shows the roles and their policies.

### ■ Default roles

The default roles and corresponding policies are shown in the following table.

Table 6 Default roles and policies

Policy	Default role						
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer	Software (*1)
Status Display	Yes	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	
RAID Group Management		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Volume - Create / Modify		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Volume - Delete / Format		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Host Interface Management		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Advanced Copy Management		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Copy Session Management		Yes	Yes			Yes	
Storage Management		Yes				Yes	
User Management		Yes		Yes			
Authentication / Role		Yes		Yes			
Security Setting		Yes			Yes		
Maintenance Information		Yes			Yes	Yes	
Maintenance Operation						Yes	
Software Control							Yes
Firmware Management		Yes					Yes

\*1: A role that is dedicated for external software. This role enables external software to access CLI.

### ■ Custom roles

Create custom roles when an operation cannot be performed with only the default roles.

Multiple policies can be assigned to a single custom role.

For details on creating and setting custom roles, refer to the "[create role](#)" and "[set role](#)" commands.

## show role

This command displays all the registered user-defined role information.

### ■ Syntax

```
show role
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Role Name	User-defined role name
Policies	Assigned policies

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays all the registered user-defined roles:

```
CLI > show role
Role Name      Policies
-----
Monitor        [1
                [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,  10,11,12,13,   15,       18,19]
Admin          [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,
StorageAdmin   [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,
AccountAdmin   [
                            11,12
                            ]
SecurityAdmin  [1,
                            13,       15
                            ]
Maintainer    [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,  10,
                            15,16,   18,19]
Software       [                                17      ]
```

## create role

This command creates a new user-defined role to which any policy is assigned. Multiple policies can be assigned to one role. Role names that are already registered cannot be used to create new roles.

### Syntax

```
create role -name name -policy policy
```

### Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies a unique name for the new role. Usable characters are alphanumeric (case-sensitive), exclamation mark (!), hyphen (-), underscore (\_), and dot (.) characters. A minimum of 1 letter and a maximum of 16 letters are required.

*name* Name for the new role

**-policy** This parameter specifies the policies that are assigned to the role. Use the numbers that are listed below to specify policies. Multiple policies can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). Note that spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,).

*policy* Policy that is assigned to the role

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Status Display                             |
| 2  | RAID Group Management                      |
| 3  | Volume - Create/Modify                     |
| 4  | Volume - Delete/Format                     |
| 5  | Host Interface Management                  |
| 6  | Advanced Copy Management                   |
| 7  | Copy Session Management                    |
| 8  | Storage Migration Management               |
| 9  | Resource Domain Management (not supported) |
| 10 | Storage Management                         |
| 11 | User Management                            |
| 12 | Authentication/Role                        |
| 13 | Security Setting                           |
| 14 | Audit Setting (not supported)              |
| 15 | Maintenance Information                    |
| 16 | Maintenance Operation                      |
| 17 | Software Control (not supported)           |
| 18 | Firmware Management                        |

### Example(s)

The following example creates a Total Administrator as Role 1 to which the "Status Display", "User Management", and "Authentication Management" policies are assigned:

```
CLI> create role -name Role1 -policy 1,11,12
```

## set role

This command changes the registered user-defined role information. Note that this command cannot change the role name or the role types. This command can also change the role that is currently assigned to the user. Any changes are enabled after the next login.

### Syntax

```
set role -role-name role_name [-policy policy]
```

### Parameter

-role-name	This parameter specifies a role name. Two or more parameters cannot be specified at the same time. <i>role_name</i> Role name
-policy	Optional. This parameter specifies policies to set for the role. Use the numbers that are listed below to specify policies. Multiple policies can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). Note that spaces are not permitted before or after commas (,). If omitted, this parameter is not changed. <i>policy</i> Policy that is assigned to the role 1 Status Display 2 RAID Group Management 3 Volume - Create/Modify 4 Volume - Delete/Format 5 Host Interface Management 6 Advanced Copy Management 7 Copy Session Management 8 Storage Migration Management 9 Resource Domain Management (not supported) 10 Storage Management 11 User Management 12 Authentication/Role 13 Security Setting 14 Audit Setting (not supported) 15 Maintenance Information 16 Maintenance Operation 17 Software Control (not supported) 18 Firmware Management

### Example(s)

The following example specifies "Resource Domain Management" policies for Role1.

```
CLI> set role -role-name Role1 -policy 10
```

## delete role

This command deletes a specified user-defined role. Note that any roles that are already assigned to users cannot be deleted.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete role -name name
```

### ■ Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies the role name that is to be deleted. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time.

*name*      Role name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the role named "Role2":

```
CLI> delete role -name Role2
```

## User Policy

---

For user policies (password policy and account lockout policy), one exists in the ETERNUS DX and the setting can be changed. The user policy setting can be enabled or disabled per user account.

When the password of a newly created user account is set or when the password of an existing user account is changed, a password that is based on the policy can be applied. The policy that is used at this time is the password policy.

The account lockout policy is a policy that is applied when a user logs in and determines whether to lock the user out if multiple failed login attempts are detected.

In addition, user policies are cannot be applied to the following user accounts:

- Software role user account
- User accounts used for external authentication (RADIUS authentication)

### ■ Password policy

#### ● Password policy setting

The password policy setting is performed by an account manager (user account with the User Management role) using the following procedure.

### Procedure ►►► —————

#### 1 Changing the password policy

Change the password policy as required by using the "set user-policy" command.

##### Note

- Only one password policy can be set per ETERNUS DX.
- If the user account is initialized by using the "initialize all-users" command, the password policy is also initialized.

#### 2 Enabling or disabling the password policy setting

The password policy setting for each user account can be set to enable or disable by using the "create user" command or the "set user" command.



## 5. System Settings and Display

### User Management

#### ● Applying the password policy

The password policy is applied for any one of the following methods of the account user.

- A password is changed based on the password policy by using the "set password" command.
- If a user account that has a password that expires in 14 days (or less than 15 days) is used to log in, a warning message is displayed. The password is changed by using the "set password" command.
- If a user account that has an expired password is used to log in, no operations can be performed until the password is changed. The password is changed by using the "set password" command.

#### Note

- After the password policy is set by an account manager, the password policy is applied when the password of the account user is changed at the next login.
- For users, the existing password can be used to log in until it is changed with the "set password" command.

#### ■ Account lockout policy

#### ● Setting the account lockout policy

The account lockout policy setting is performed by an account manager (user account with the User Management role) using the following procedure.

#### Procedure ►►► —————

##### 1 Changing the account lockout policy

Change the account lockout policy during a local authentication as required by using the "set user-policy" command.

##### 2 Enabling or disabling the account lockout policy setting

The account lockout policy setting for each user account can be set to enable or disable by using the "create user" command or the "set user" command.



#### ● Applying the account lockout policy

If the local authentication fails more than the set lockout threshold value (the "-lockout-threshold" parameter of the "set user-policy" command), the relevant user account is locked out for the set lockout duration.

To have the lockout released, a request for a lockout release must be sent to the account manager.

#### Note

- After the lockout period, the lockout state is automatically released.
- If the account manager changes the user account settings, the lockout state is released.
- The lockout state is initialized by rebooting the ETERNUS DX.

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > show user-policy

## show user-policy

This command displays the password policy and account lockout policy of the user account.

### Syntax

```
show user-policy
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Password Policy	Displays the password policy.
Minimum Password Length	Minimum number of characters for the password
Password Complexity	Shows whether or not the password must satisfy the complexity requirement.
Enable	The password must satisfy the complexity requirement.
Disable	The password does not need to satisfy the complexity requirement.
Password History	Number of generations for the password history management If the password history management is not performed, "0" is displayed.
Minimum Password Age	Period in which the password cannot be changed Minimum number of days until the user account password can be changed When the user account password can be changed, "0" is displayed.
Maximum Password Age	Password expiration Maximum number of days in which the user account password will expire If the user account password has an indefinite period of validity, "0" is displayed.
Account Lockout Policy	Displays the account lockout policy.
Account Lockout Threshold	Number of failed login attempts before the user account is locked out Threshold for the number of failed confirmations until the account is locked out If a lockout is not performed for failed confirmations, "0" is displayed.
Account Lockout Duration	Lockout period before the locked out account is automatically released If the lockout is not automatically released, "0" is displayed.

### Example(s)

The following example displays the password policy and account lockout policy for user accounts:

```
CLI> show user-policy
<Password Policy>
Minimum Password Length      [4]
Password Complexity          [Disable]
Password History              [10]
Minimum Password Age(day)    [1]
Maximum Password Age(day)    [999]
<Account Lockout Policy>
Account Lockout Threshold    [3]
Account Lockout Duration(min) [99999]
```

## set user-policy

This command sets the password policy and the account lockout policy used during local authentications for the user account.

The password policy and the account lockout policy set with this command can be specified if new user accounts are created with the "create user" command or if the existing user account information is changed with the "set user" command.

### Caution

If user accounts are initialized with the "initialize all-users" command, the password policy setting and the account lockout policy setting are also initialized.

## ■ Syntax

```
set user-policy [-password-length length]  
[-password-complexity {enable | disable}]  
[-password-history number_of_passwords] [-password-min-age days]  
[-password-max-age days] [-lockout-threshold threshold]  
[-lockout-duration minutes]
```

## ■ Parameter

### -password-length

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of bytes for the minimum password length with a range of 4 to 64. The default value is 4. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

*length*      Minimum password length (4 to 64)

### -password-complexity

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the password must satisfy the complexity requirement. The default value is "disable". If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

#### Note

If "enable" is specified, characters from three or more of the following four categories must be used.

- Uppercase letters (A to Z)
- Lowercase letters (a to z)
- Decimal number (0 to 9)
- Symbols (such as "!", "\$", "#", and "%")

**enable**      The password must satisfy the complexity requirement.

**disable**      The password does not need to satisfy the complexity requirement (default).

### -password-history

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of generations for the password history management within a range of 0 to 16. By specifying the number of generations to remember, the current password or a recently used password cannot be set as the new password when the password is changed.

The default value is "0". If the set value is "0", the password history management is not performed. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

*number\_of\_passwords* Number of generations for the password history management (0 to 16)

## 5. System Settings and Display

### User Management > set user-policy

#### -password-min-age

Optional. This parameter specifies the minimum number of days until the password can be changed within a range of 0 to 999. If the set value is "0", the password can be changed at any time. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

*days*      Password change restriction period (0 to 999)

#### -password-max-age

Optional. This parameter specifies the maximum number of days the password is valid within a range of 0 to 999. The default value is "0". If the set value is "0", the password validity period is indefinite. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

#### Note

When logged in with a user account that has a password with a validity period of under 14 days, the valid number of days for that password is displayed and a message prompting the user to change the password is displayed.

*days*      Password validity period (0 to 999)

#### -lockout-threshold

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of failed login attempts before the user account is locked out within a range of 0 to 999. The default value is "0". If the set value is "0", an account lockout due to authentication failures will not occur. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

*threshold*    Number of failed login attempts before the user account is locked out (0 to 999)

#### -lockout-duration

Optional. This parameter specifies the lockout duration (in minutes) until the locked out account is automatically unlocked within a range of 0 to 99999. The default value is 30. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

#### Caution

- If "0" is specified, the lockout is not automatically released. Only the account manager (user account with the User Management role) can release the lock.
- If the "-lockout-threshold" parameter is "0", a lockout duration cannot be specified.  
If the "-lockout-threshold" parameter is 1 to 999, a lockout duration can be specified.

*minutes*    Lockout duration (0 to 99999)

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > set user-policy

### ■ Example(s)

This example changes the following settings of the password policy and the account lockout policy.

- Minimum password length: 8 characters
- Password must satisfy the complexity requirement
- Number of generations for the password history management: 10 generations
- Password change restriction period: 1 day
- Password validity period: 365 days
- Number of failed login attempts before being locked out: 10
- Lockout duration: 120 minutes

```
CLI> set user-policy -password-length 8 -password-complexity enable -password-history 10 -password-min-age 1  
-password-max-age 365 -lockout-threshold 10 -lockout-duration 120
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > show users

### show users

This command displays all of the registered user accounts.

#### Syntax

```
show users
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
User Name	User account name
User Role	Role name
Availability	Indicates whether the user account is enabled.
Enable	Enables the user account
Disable	Disables the user account
SSH Public Key	Indicates whether an SSH public key is registered.
Registered	The SSH public key is registered.
Not Registered	The SSH public key is not registered.
Enforce Password Policy	Indicates whether the password policy is applied to the user account.
Yes	The password policy is applied to the user account.
No	The password policy is not applied to the user account.
Enforce Lockout Policy	Indicates whether the account lockout policy is applied to the user account.
Yes	The account lockout policy is applied to the user account.
No	The account lockout policy is not applied to the user account.
Last Password Setting Date	The last time the password was changed If the password policy is not registered, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Days to Password Changeable	Number of days until the password can be changed. If the "Minimum Password Age" of the password policy is "Unrestricted", a hyphen (-) is displayed. When the number of days until the password can be changed becomes "0 days", "less than 24 hours" is displayed. When the password can be changed, "changeable" is displayed.
Days to Expiration	Number of days the password is valid If the "Maximum Password Age" of the password policy is "Unrestricted", a hyphen (-) is displayed. When the number of days for the password validity becomes "0 days", "less than 24 hours" is displayed. When the password validity period expires, "expired" is displayed.

#### Example(s)

The following example displays all of the existing user accounts:

User Name	User Role	Availability	SSH Public Key	Enforce Password Policy	Enforce Lockout Policy	Last Password Setting Date	Days to Password Changeable	Days to Expiration
f.ce	Maintainer	[Enable]	[Not Registered]	[Yes]	[Yes]	2015-12-31 00:00:03	changeable	80
root		[Enable]	[Not Registered]	[Yes]	[Yes]	2016-10-10 10:00:03	10	-
manager	Admin	[Enable]	[Registered]	[No]	[Yes]	-	180	-
user1	Monitor	[Enable]	[Registered]	[Yes]	[No]	2016-10-19 12:10:03	less than 24 hours	189
user2	Monitor	[Disable]	[Registered]	[No]	[No]	-	-	-
user3	Monitor	[Enable]	[Registered]	[Yes]	[No]	2016-10-19 12:10:03	changeable	less than 24 hours
user4	Monitor	[Enable]	[Registered]	[Yes]	[No]	2016-10-18 12:10:03	changeable	expired

## create user

This command creates a new user account.

### Note

- User account names that are already registered cannot be used.
- User policies (password policy and account lockout policy) cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role.

## Syntax

```
create user -name name -role role [-function {enable | disable}]  
[-enforce-password-policy {yes | no}] [-enforce-lockout-policy {yes | no}]
```

## Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies a unique name for the new user account. Usable characters are alphanumeric (case-sensitive), exclamation mark (!), hyphen (-), underscore (\_), and dot (.) characters. A minimum of 1 letter and a maximum of 32 letters are required.

### Caution

User names that are already registered cannot be specified.

*name*      Name for the new user account

-role      This parameter specifies the role. For details, refer to "["Role" \(page 594\)](#)".

*role*      Total Administrator role or user-defined role

Total Administrator role

Maintainer      Maintenance operator

SecurityAdmin      Security administrator

AccountAdmin      Account administrator

StorageAdmin      ETERNUS DX administrator

Administrator      Total administrator

Monitor      Monitor

Software      Software

User-defined role

Role that is created using the "create role" command.

-function      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the created user account will be enabled. If "disable" is specified, the relevant user account cannot log in to CLI. If omitted, "enable" is set.

enable      The user account created is enabled immediately (default).

disable      The user account is created but not enabled.

-enforce-password-policy

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the password policy is applied to the user account. The password policy setting is reflected immediately. The password policy is used when the password is set. The password policy cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role. If omitted, "no" is set.

- yes        The password policy is applied to the user account.
- no        The password policy is not applied to the user account (default).

-enforce-lockout-policy

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the account lockout policy is applied to the user account. The account lockout policy cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role. If omitted, "no" is set.

- yes        The account lockout policy is applied to the user account.
- no        The account lockout policy is not applied to the user account (default).

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates a new user account named "user1" with the Account Admin role and is applied with the password policy and the account lockout policy.

The entered password for "Password:" and "Confirm Password:" is not displayed:

```
CLI> create user -name user1 -role AccountAdmin -function enable -enforce-password-policy yes -enforce-lockout-policy yes
Password:
Confirm Password:
```

## set user

This command changes the information of an existing user account.

### Note

- User account names cannot be changed.
- The user account information of the currently logged in user can be used, and any changes are enabled after the next login.
- The account information for the factory shipped default users (f.ce and root) can also be changed with this command.
- User policies (password policy and account lockout policy) cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role.

## ■ Syntax

```
set user -name name [-role role] [-function {enable | disable}]  
[-enforce-password-policy {yes | no}] [-enforce-lockout-policy {yes | no}]
```

## ■ Parameter

-name This parameter specifies the user account name. Only one user account name can be specified at the same time.

*name* User account name

-role Optional. This parameter specifies the role. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*role* Total Administrator role or user-defined role

Total Administrator role

Maintainer Maintenance operator

SecurityAdmin Security administrator

AccountAdmin Account administrator

StorageAdmin ETERNUS DX administrator

Administrator Total administrator

Monitor Monitor

Software Software

Custom role

Role that is created using the "create role" command.

-function Optional. This parameter specifies whether the modified user account is enabled. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged. If "disable" is specified, the relevant account cannot log in to CLI.

enable The modified user account is enabled immediately (default).

disable The user account is modified but not enabled.

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > set user

### -enforce-password-policy

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the password policy is applied to the modified user account. The password policy setting is reflected immediately. The password policy is used when the password is set. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged. The password policy cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role.

yes        The password policy is applied to the modified user account.

no        The password policy is not applied to the modified user account (default).

### -enforce-lockout-policy

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the account lockout policy is applied to the modified user account. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged. The account lockout policy cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role.

yes        The account lockout policy is applied to the modified user account.

no        The account lockout policy is not applied to the modified user account (default).

## ■ Example(s)

This example changes the information of the user account named "user1" to the following settings.

- Admin role
- Apply the password policy
- Apply the account lockout policy

```
CLI> set user -name user1 -role Admin -function enable -enforce-password-policy yes -enforce-lockout-policy yes
```

## delete user

This command deletes the specified user account. The currently logged in user account can be deleted, and deletion is enabled after the next login. Even if a disabled user account is specified, the user account can be deleted. In addition, if a SSH public key is registered, the key is also automatically deleted when this command is executed.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete user -name name
```

### ■ Parameter

-name      This parameter specifies the user account name to be deleted. Only one user name can be specified at the same time.

*name*      User account name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the user account named "user1":

```
CLI> delete user -name user1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > show login-users

### show login-users

This command displays the login users.

Users who are logged in to GUI or to the master CM to which the command is executed from CLI or software are displayed.  
Users who are logged in to the slave CM from CLI or software are not displayed.

#### Syntax

```
show login-users
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
Interface	User interface type
Session ID	User session ID
User Name	User account name
User Role	Role name
Login Date	Login date and time
Lock	Resource lock
IP Address	IP address of logged in users

#### Example(s)

The following example displays the information of the users who are logged in:

```
CLI> show login-users
Interface Session ID User Name          User Role      Login Date    Lock   IP Address
----- -----
GUI        65535 f.ce                  Maintainer   2012-07-02 10:12:05 No    2001:db8::1234:0:0:9abc
GUI        5 root                   Admin        2012-07-02 10:13:05 No    2002:COA8:2101::1
CLI        * 6 anonymous            Monitor     2012-07-02 10:14:05 No    192.168.0.2
CLI        10 root                  Admin        2012-07-02 11:12:05 No    fe80::20a:e4ff:fe9b:f50f
SOFT      112 esf_user              Software    2012-07-02 12:12:07 Yes   192.168.0.1
```

## set password

This command changes the password of the specified user account or the password of the currently logged in user account. The password can be entered from the terminal after the command input. If the password policy is applied, the password that is based on the policy is set. Use the "show users" command or the "show user-policy" command to check the application of the password policy.

### Syntax

```
set password [-name name]
```

### Parameter

-name      Optional. This parameter specifies the user name to change the password. Only one user name can be specified at the same time. If omitted, the password of the current user is changed.

#### Note

Only users with the User Management policy can specify this parameter.

*name*      User name

### Output

Item name	Description
Password Information	Displayed if the password is changed for a user account that has been applied with the password policy. Not displayed if the password is changed for a user account that has not been applied with the password policy.
Last Password Setting Date	The last time the password was changed If the password policy is not registered, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Days to Password Changeable(day)	Number of days until the password can be changed. If the "Minimum Password Age" of the password policy is "Unrestricted", a hyphen (-) is displayed. When the number of days until the password can be changed becomes "0 days", "less than 24 hours" is displayed. When the password can be changed, "changeable" is displayed.
Days to Expiration(day)	Number of days the password is valid If the "Maximum Password Age" of the password policy is "Unrestricted", a hyphen (-) is displayed. When the number of days for the password validity becomes "0 days", "less than 24 hours" is displayed. When the password validity period expires, "expired" is displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the password of the current user while logged in with a user account that has the User Management policy (when the password policy is not applied):

```
CLI> set password
Password :
New Password :
Confirm Password :
```

The following example changes the password of a different user (user2) from a user account that has the User Management policy (when the password policy is not applied):

```
CLI> set password -name user2
New Password :
Confirm Password :
```

The following example changes the password of the current user while logged in with a user account that does not have the User Management policy (when the password policy is not applied):

```
CLI> set password
Password :
New Password :
Confirm Password :
```

The following example changes the password of a user account that has been applied with the password policy:

```
CLI> set password
<Password Information>
Last Password Setting Date      [2016-01-31 00:00:03]
Days to Password Changeable(day) [2]
Days to Expiration(day)         [310]
<Change Password>
Password :
New Password :
Confirm Password :
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > initialize all-users

### initialize all-users

This command clears all of the existing user accounts. Note that only the initial default user is enabled.

#### ■ Syntax

```
initialize all-users -execution {yes | no}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-execution This parameter specifies the execution mode. User accounts are initialized only when selecting "yes".

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| yes | All the user accounts are initialized. |
| no  | No operation.                          |

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example initializes all of the registered user accounts:

```
CLI> initialize all-users -execution yes
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > initialize all-users

---

## Account Authentication

---

Importing of Secure SHell (SSH) public keys, and the maintenance key for performing maintenance work are described here.

The commands that are used for account authentications are shown below.

Function	Command
Importing SSH public keys	import ssh-public-key
Deleting SSH public key	delete ssh-public-key
Generation, display, and destruction of the maintenance key	show maintenance-key

## import ssh-public-key

For SSH (Secure SHell) connections, passwords or certificate keys can be used for authentication. This command is used to import a SSH public key into an ETERNUS DX from an FTP server when using the certificate key method of authentication.

- One certificate key corresponds to a single user account.
- Even if a specific user account is disabled, a key may still be imported.
- If a public key is already registered and this command is executed, the imported information setting of the SSH public key is overwritten.

The key types that are supported are as follows:

- IETF style DSA for SSH v2 (Strength 1,024bit, 2,048bit, or 4,096bit)
- IETF style RSA for SSH v2 (Strength 1,024bit, 2,048bit, or 4,096bit)

### Syntax

```
import ssh-public-key -account-name account_name
                     -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
                     -user login_user_account-filename filename [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

#### -account-name

This parameter specifies a user account name used for a certificate key for authentication. Only one user name can be specified at the same time.

*account\_name* User account name

#### -port

This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.

maintenance Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote Remote port (RMT port)

fst FST port

#### -server

This parameter specifies an FTP server name where the public key is stored. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name.

Example: -server 192.168.1.20

Example: -server foo.bar

*server\_name* FTP server name

#### -user

This parameter specifies the user account name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.

*login\_user\_account* User account name that is to be used to access the FTP server

#### -filename

This parameter specifies the name of the file that contains a public key.

*filename* Filename

#### -indicator

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.

enable Progress indicator is displayed.

disable Progress indicator is not displayed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > import ssh-public-key

### ■ Example(s)

For a user account named "manager", the following example imports a public key for SSH authentication from an FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port). The user name used to log into the FTP server is "cli-user" and the file that contains the SSH public key is "/tmp/ssh\_key1".

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> import ssh-public-key -account-name manager -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/ssh_key1 -user cli-user  
Password :  
importing /tmp/ssh_key1 from ftp.a.com  
complete.
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> import ssh-public-key -user-account manager -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -filename /tmp/ssh_key1 -user cli-user  
-indicator disable  
Password :
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

User Management > delete ssh-public-key

# delete ssh-public-key

This command deletes an existing public key for SSH authentication. Even if a specified user account is disabled at that time, the SSH public key can be deleted.

## ■ Syntax

```
delete ssh-public-key -account-name account_name
```

## ■ Parameter

### -account-name

This parameter specifies an existing user account name with the SSH certificate key registered for authentication-use. Only one user account name can be specified at once.

*account\_name*      User account name

## ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the SSH public key for the "manager" user account.

```
CLI> delete ssh-public-key -account-name manager
```

## show maintenance-key

This command generates, displays, and discards the required maintenance key for performing maintenance work by the maintenance engineer.

### Caution

The maintenance key that is displayed with this command is used as a temporary login for specialized maintenance use. Be careful with the handling of the information that is displayed.

### Syntax

```
show maintenance-key [{-generate [-time lifetime_hours] | -delete}]
```

### Parameter

- generate    Optional. This parameter generates and displays a new maintenance key. The generated maintenance key is only valid for temporarily logging in to the controller module (CM) where this command was executed. When temporarily logging in to different CMs, execute this command in the relevant CMs. The generated maintenance key is automatically discarded after the valid period elapses or when the CM is rebooted.

### Caution

If a valid maintenance key already exists, this command discards it and generates a new maintenance key. In order to ensure security, the maintenance key is a character string that is impossible to guess. When requesting maintenance work, make sure to give the correct information (such as uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and symbols) to the maintenance engineer.

- time    Optional. This option specifies the valid period of the maintenance key that is to be generated. This option can only be specified with the "-generate" parameter. If omitted, "12" (hours) is set.

*lifetime\_hours*    1 to 48 (hours)

- delete    Optional. This parameter deletes a valid maintenance key if one already exists. If the maintenance work is complete, in order to ensure security, delete the maintenance key with this parameter without waiting for the maintenance key to expire.

### Caution

Regardless of the existence of a valid maintenance key, this command completes successfully.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
Controller Module	Controller module (CM or CE-CM) where the command was executed The maintenance key is only valid for the displayed CM.
Maintenance key	Maintenance key In order to ensure security, the maintenance key is a character string that is impossible to guess. When requesting maintenance work, make sure to give the correct information (such as uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and symbols) to the maintenance engineer. If a valid maintenance key does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Time left	The time left before the maintenance key is invalidated If the time left is an hour or more, the time is displayed with a format of [xx h yy min]. If the time left is less than an hour, the time is displayed with a format of [yy min zz sec]. If a valid maintenance key does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example generates a new maintenance key with a valid period of 36 hours:

```
CLI> show maintenance-key -generate -time 36
Controller Module [CE#0 CM#0]
Maintenance key [Rd$5@dted9E9]
Time left [36 h 00 min]
```

The following example shows an output when a valid maintenance key exists:

```
CLI> show maintenance-key
Controller Module [CE#0 CM#0]
Maintenance key [Rd$5@dted9E9]
Time left [11 h 59 min]
```

The following example deletes the maintenance key:

```
CLI> show maintenance-key -delete
Controller Module [CE#0 CM#0]
Maintenance key [-]
Time left [-]
```

The following example shows an output when no valid maintenance keys exist:

```
CLI> show maintenance-key
Controller Module [CE#0 CM#0]
Maintenance key [-]
Time left [-]
```

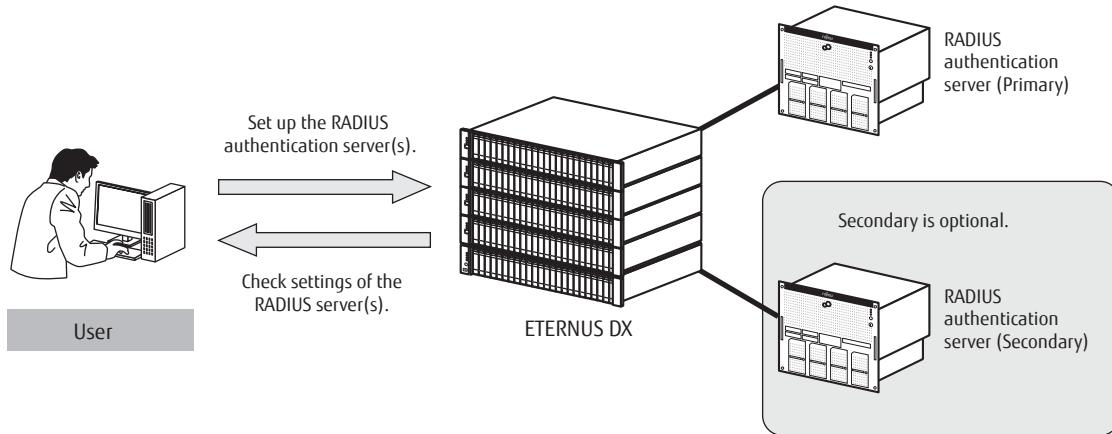
## RADIUS Server Settings

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User) is the networking protocol for the centralized management of the authentication, authorization and accounts of network users.

This section explains the commands to set authentication, authorize and account by the server.

- Displaying the RADIUS authentication server(s) settings.
- Setting the RADIUS authentication server(s).

Figure 15 RADIUS server overview



## show radius

This command displays the settings of the RADIUS server.

### Syntax

```
show radius
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
RADIUS authentication	Display the system's mode.
After error	Indicates which method is used after an error is detected.
Primary server	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the primary authentication server
Primary port	Port that is used for primary settings
Primary port number	Port number of the primary authentication server for the authentication protocol
Primary authentication mode	Authentication method type of the primary authentication server
Primary shared secret	Shared secret of the primary authentication server
Primary retry timeout	Retry timeout value of the primary authentication server
Secondary server	FQDN or IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the secondary authentication server
Secondary port	Port that is used for secondary settings
Secondary port number	Port number of the secondary authentication server for the authentication protocol
Secondary authentication mode	Authentication method type of the secondary authentication server
Secondary shared secret	Shared secret of the secondary authentication server.
Secondary retry timeout	Retry timeout value of the secondary authentication server.

### Example(s)

The following example displays the settings of the RADIUS authentication servers:

```
CLI> show radius
RADIUS authentication      [Enable]
After error                 [No]
Primary server              [10.21.134.198]
Primary port                [MNT]
Primary port number         [1812]
Primary authentication mode [CHAP]
Primary shared secret       [xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
Primary retry timeout       [20]
Secondary server            [10.17.80.6]
Secondary lan port          [RMT]
Secondary port number       [1912]
Secondary authentication mode [PAP]
Secondary shared secret     [yyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyy]
Secondary retry timeout     [20]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### User Management > show radius

The following example shows when the secondary server is not valid.

```
CLI> show radius
RADIUS authentication      [Enable]
After error                [No]
Primary server             [10.21.134.198]
Primary port               [MNT]
Primary port number        [1812]
Primary authentication mode [CHAP]
Primary shared secret      [xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
Primary retry timeout      [20]
Secondary server           [-]
Secondary lan port          [RMT]
Secondary port number       [1912]
Secondary authentication mode [PAP]
Secondary shared secret    [yyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyy]
Secondary retry timeout    [20]
```

The following example shows when RADIUS authentication is disabled.

```
CLI> show radius
RADIUS authentication      [Disable]
After error                [No]
Primary server             [10.21.134.198]
Primary port               [MNT]
Primary port number        [1812]
Primary authentication mode [CHAP]
Primary shared secret      [xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
Primary retry timeout      [20]
Secondary server           [-]
Secondary port              [RMT]
Secondary port number       [1912]
Secondary authentication mode [PAP]
Secondary shared secret    [yyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyyy]
Secondary retry timeout    [20]
```

## set radius

This command sets up the RADIUS authentication server. A secondary server cannot be set up without setting up a primary server. Set the secondary IP address to "0.0.0.0." to disable the secondary-server setting.

### Syntax

```
set radius -mode {enable | disable} [-after-error {internal | internal-net | no}]  
[-primary-server {primary_server | ""}] [-primary-port {maintenance | remote}]  
[-primary-port-number port_number] [-primary-authentication-mode {chap | pap}]  
[-primary-shared-secret shared_secret_code] [-primary-retry-timeout{10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60}]  
[-secondary-server secondary_server] [-secondary-port {maintenance | remote}]  
[-secondary-port-number port_number] [-secondary-authentication-mode {chap | pap}]  
[-secondary-shared-secret shared_secret_code] [-secondary-retry-timeout{10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60}]
```

### Parameter

**-mode** This parameter specifies enable or disable for RADIUS authentication, authorization and accounts functions. To enable RADIUS authentication, the primary server must be set in advance or at the same time that this parameter is set. RADIUS authentication can be disabled regardless of the primary server setting status.

enable RADIUS function is enabled.

disable RADIUS function is disabled.

**-after-error** Optional. This parameter specifies what happens when an error occurs. If this parameter is omitted, this setting is not changed.

internal Authenticate and authorize for any error that occurs.

internal-net Authenticate and authorize for an error that occurs due to a network problem.

no No authenticate and/or no authorize.

**-primary-server**

Optional. This parameter specifies the primary server. Only one server can be specified. If the primary server is not set, specify the primary server for this parameter to enable RADIUS authentication. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. To delete the primary server, specify a null character ("").

Example: -primary-server 192.168.1.20

Example: -primary-server fd80::abdo:223:ad

Example: -primary-server foo.bar

Example: -primary-server "" (when deleting)

*primary\_server* Primary server name

"" The primary server is deleted.

**-primary-port**

Optional. This parameter specifies the port number of the primary server for the authentication protocol.

maintenance Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote Remote port (RMT port)

-primary-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the UDP port number of the primary server for the authentication protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is 1812.

*port\_number*      UDP port number of the primary server

-primary-authentication-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the authentication method type of the primary server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The following methods can be specified:

chap      Use CHAP. (Default)

pap      Use PAP.

PAP: Password Authentication Protocol

-primary-shared-secret

Optional. This parameter specifies the shared secret of the primary server (up to 64 alphanumeric characters). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*shared\_secret\_code*      Shared secret of the primary server

-primary-retry-timeout

Optional. This parameter specifies the retry timeout value of the primary server. If omitted, 30 seconds (default value) is used. The timeout value should be selected from following values:

10      10 seconds

20      20 seconds

30      30 seconds (Default value)

40      40 seconds

50      50 seconds

60      60 seconds

-secondary-server

Optional. This parameter specifies the secondary server. Only one server can be specified. The server name format should be IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. Up to 64 alphanumeric characters can be specified.

Example: -secondary-server 192.168.1.20

Example: -secondary-server fd80::abd0:223:ad

Example: -secondary-server foo.bar

*secondary\_server*      Secondary server

-secondary-port

Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port for secondary settings. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote      Remote port (RMT port)

-secondary-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the UDP port number of the secondary server for the authentication protocol. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is 1812.

*port\_number*      UDP port number of the secondary server

-secondary-authentication-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the authentication method of the secondary server. CHAP or PAP can be selected for the authentication method. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The following methods can be specified.

chap      Use CHAP. (Default)

pap      Use PAP.

PAP: Password Authentication Protocol

-secondary-shared-secret

Optional. This parameter specifies the shared secret of the secondary server. Up to 64 alphanumeric characters can be specified for the shared value. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*shared\_secret\_code*      Shared secret of the secondary server

-secondary-retry-timeout

Optional. This parameter specifies the retry timeout value of the secondary server. If omitted, 30 seconds (default value) is used. The timeout value should be selected from following values:

10      10 seconds

20      20 seconds

30      30 seconds (Default value)

40      40 seconds

50      50 seconds

60      60 seconds

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the RADIUS authentication server:

```
CLI> set radius -mode -after-error no -primary-server 10.21.134.198 -primary-port maintenance -primary-port-number 1812
      -primary-authentication-mode chap -primary-shared-secret "RADIUS Secret" -primary-retry-timeout 20
      -secondary-server 10.17.80.6 -secondary-port remote -secondary-port-number 1912 -secondary-authentication-mode pap
      -secondary-shared-secret "RADIUS Secret1" -secondary-retry-timeout 20
```

## Network Management

---

This section explains commands related to the following network operations:

- System network configurations
- SNMP configurations
- SMI-S configurations
- Secure server keys

### Network Settings

---

This section explains the commands related to network connectivity.

For the factory default network setting, the default IP address is set for the MNT port of the master CM. If the default setting is used, the following functions are unavailable:

- SNMP Agent basic settings
- E-mail notification settings
- Syslog settings
- RADIUS settings
- Remote support settings (only for ETERNUS Web GUI)
- Network settings update except for the IP address
- Settings for a firmware update from the peer storage system (only for ETERNUS Web GUI)
- SMI-S settings
- AIS Connect settings
- Audit log
- Key management server linkage
- Activation of the NPT in date and time settings
- Firmware hot swapping
- Memory addition

To make these functions available, set the network by executing the "set network" command. This releases the factory default network setting. Whether the factory default network setting is set can be determined by executing the "show network" command. If the factory default network setting is set, a message informing that the network setting is required appears when one of the functions above is executed or enabled. A message that prompts the network setting appears at login.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network

### show network

This command displays the network (LAN) configuration parameters.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show network
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
MNT port	Maintenance port (MNT port) name
RMT port	Remote port (RMT port) name
FST port	Field support port (FST port) name
Ipv4	Indicates whether IPv4 settings are enabled or disabled (Enable/Disable/Factory Default). (When the factory default network setting is set, this information is displayed as "Factory Default" for the MNT port.)
Master IP Address	IP address of the maintenance port on master CM (IPv4)
Slave IP Address	IP address of the maintenance port on slave CM (IPv4)
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask of the maintenance port (IPv4)
Gateway	Gateway IP address (IPv4 and IPv6) of the maintenance port
Primary DNS	Primary DNS IP address (IPv4 and IPv6)
Secondary DNS	Secondary DNS IP address (IPv4 and IPv6)
Speed and Duplex	Connection speed of the maintenance port (IPv4 and IPv6)
Allowable IP Address List	List of allowed IP addresses
NO.	Allowable IP address number
IP Address	Allowable IP address (IPv4)
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask (IPv4)
Connect IP Address	Connect IP Address and mask length (IPv6)
Wake on LAN	Indicates whether the Wake on LAN function is enabled on the maintenance port.
Ipv6	Indicates whether IPv6 settings are enabled or disabled (Enable/Disable/Factory Default) (When the factory default network setting is set, this information is displayed as "Factory Default" for the MNT port.)
Master Link Local IP Address	Link local IP address (Master) (IPv6)
Master Connect IP Address	Connect IP address (Master) (IPv6)
Slave Link Local IP Address	Link local IP address (Slave) (IPv6)
Slave Connect IP Address	Connect IP address (Slave) (IPv6)
Length of Subnet Prefix	Prefix length (IPv6)
MAC Address	The MAC address of all the controller modules that are installed A hyphen (-) is displayed in the field of CM#1 for an ETERNUS DX with a single controller.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the network (LAN) configuration parameters (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show network
MNT Port
<IPv4 Information>
Ipv4 [Enable]
Master IP Address [192.168.1.1]
Slave IP Address [192.168.1.2]
Subnet Mask [255.255.255.0]
Gateway [192.168.1.250]
Primary DNS [192.168.1.253]
Secondary DNS [192.168.1.254]
Speed and Duplex [Auto Negotiation]
Wake on LAN [Disable]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. IP Address Subnet Mask
--- -----
1 192.180.1.0 255.255.255.0
2 10.21.138.0 255.255.255.0
3 1.2.3.0 255.255.255.0
4 10.10.10.10 255.255.0.0

<IPv6 Information>
Ipv6 [Enable]
Master Link Local IP Address [fe80:2:3:4:5:6:7:8]
Master Connect IP Address [1:2:3::6:7:8]
Slave Link Local IP Address [fe80:b:c:d:e:f:10:11]
Slave Connect IP Address [a:b:c:d::]
Length of Subnet Prefix [64]
Gateway [c0:a8:1:fa:ff:ff:ff:0]
Primary DNS [c0:a8:1:fd::]
Secondary DNS [c0:a8:1:fe::]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. Connect IP Address
--- -----
0 2001:0db8:bd05:01d2:288a:1fc0:0001:10ee/64
1 c0:c8:2::/64

<MAC Address>
CM#0 [01:02:03:04:05:06]
CM#1 [11:12:13:14:15:16]

RMT Port
<IPv4 Information>
Ipv4 [Enable]
Master IP Address [192.168.128.1]
Slave IP Address [192.168.128.2]
Subnet Mask [255.255.255.0]
Gateway [192.168.128.250]
Primary DNS [192.168.128.253]
Secondary DNS [192.168.128.254]
Speed and Duplex [Auto Negotiation]
Wake on LAN [Disable]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. IP Address Subnet Mask
--- -----
1 192.180.1.0 255.255.255.0
2 10.21.138.0 255.255.255.0
3 1.2.3.0 255.255.255.0
4 10.10.10.10 255.255.0.0

<IPv6 Information>
Ipv6 [Enable]
Master Link Local IP Address [fe80:2:3:4:5:6:7:8]
Master Connect IP Address [1:2:3::6:7:8]
Slave Link Local IP Address [fe80:b:c:d:e:f:10:11]
Slave Connect IP Address [a:b:c:d::]
Length of Subnet Prefix [64]
Gateway [c0:a8:1:fa:ff:ff:ff:0]
Primary DNS [c0:a8:1:fd::]
Secondary DNS [c0:a8:1:fe::]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > show network

```
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. Connect IP Address
--- -----
0 2001:0db8:bd05:01d2:288a:ifc0:0001:10ee/64
1 c0:c8:2::/64

<MAC Address>
CM#0 [21:22:23:24:25:26]
CM#1 [31:32:33:34:35:36]

FST Port
<Port Information>
Ipv4 [Enable]
Master IP Address [192.168.134.1]
Slave IP Address [192.168.134.2]
Subnet Mask [255.255.255.0]
Speed and Duplex [Auto Negotiation]

<MAC Address>
CM#0 [41:42:43:44:45:46]
CM#1 [51:52:53:54:55:56]
```

The following example displays the network (LAN) configuration parameters (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show network
MNT Port
<IPv4 Information>
Ipv4 [Enable]
Master IP Address [192.168.1.1]
Slave IP Address [192.168.1.2]
Subnet Mask [255.255.255.0]
Gateway [192.168.1.250]
Primary DNS [192.168.1.253]
Secondary DNS [192.168.1.254]
Speed and Duplex [Auto Negotiation]
Wake on LAN [Disable]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. IP Address Subnet Mask
--- -----
1 192.180.1.0 255.255.255.0
2 10.21.138.0 255.255.255.0
3 1.2.3.0 255.255.255.0
4 10.10.10.10 255.255.0.0

<IPv6 Information>
Ipv6 [Enable]
Master Link Local IP Address [fe80:2:3:4:5:6:7:8]
Master Connect IP Address [1:2:3::6:7:8]
Slave Link Local IP Address [fe80:b:c:d:e:f:10:11]
Slave Connect IP Address [a:b:c:d::]
Length of Subnet Prefix [64]
Gateway [c0:a8:1:fa:ff:ff:ff:0]
Primary DNS [c0:a8:1:fd::]
Secondary DNS [c0:a8:1:fe::]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. Connect IP Address
--- -----
0 2001:0db8:bd05:01d2:288a:ifc0:0001:10ee/64
1 c0:c8:2::/64
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > show network

```
<MAC Address>
CE#0 CM#0      [00:01:02:03:04:05]
CE#0 CM#1      [00:01:02:03:04:06]
CE#1 CM#0      [00:01:02:03:04:07]
CE#1 CM#1      [00:01:02:03:04:08]
CE#2 CM#0      [00:01:02:03:04:09]
CE#2 CM#1      [00:01:02:03:04:0A]
CE#3 CM#0      [00:01:02:03:04:0B]
CE#3 CM#1      [00:01:02:03:04:0C]
RMT Port

<IPv4 Information>
Ipv4          [Enable]
Master IP Address  [192.168.128.1]
Slave IP Address  [192.168.128.2]
Subnet Mask     [255.255.255.0]
Gateway        [192.168.128.250]
Primary DNS     [192.168.128.253]
Secondary DNS    [192.168.128.254]
Speed and Duplex  [Auto Negotiation]
Wake on LAN     [Disable]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. IP Address   Subnet Mask
-----
1 192.180.1.0    255.255.255.0
2 10.21.138.0    255.255.255.0
3 1.2.3.0        255.255.255.0
4 10.10.10.10    255.255.0.0

<IPv6 Information>
Ipv6          [Enable]
Master Link Local IP Address [fe80:2:3:4:5:6:7:8]
Master Connect IP Address  [1:2:3::6:7:8]
Slave Link Local IP Address [fe80:b:c:d:e:f:10:11]
Slave Connect IP Address   [a:b:c:d::]
Length of Subnet Prefix   [64]
Gateway        [c0:a8:1:fa:ff:ff:ff:0]
Primary DNS     [c0:a8:1:fd::]
Secondary DNS    [c0:a8:1:fe::]
<Allowable IP Address List>
NO. Connect IP Address
-----
0 2001:0db8:bd05:01d2:288a:1fc0:0001:10ee/64
1 c0:c8:2::/64

<MAC Address>
CE#0 CM#0      [01:01:02:03:04:05]
CE#0 CM#1      [01:01:02:03:04:06]
CE#1 CM#0      [01:01:02:03:04:07]
CE#1 CM#1      [01:01:02:03:04:08]
CE#2 CM#0      [01:01:02:03:04:09]
CE#2 CM#1      [01:01:02:03:04:0A]
CE#3 CM#0      [01:01:02:03:04:0B]
CE#3 CM#1      [01:01:02:03:04:0C]

FST Port
<Port Information>
Ipv4          [Enable]
Master IP Address  [192.168.134.1]
Slave IP Address  [192.168.134.2]
Subnet Mask     [255.255.255.0]
Speed and Duplex  [Auto Negotiation]

<MAC Address>
CE#0 CM#0      [02:01:02:03:04:05]
CE#0 CM#1      [02:01:02:03:04:06]
CE#1 CM#0      [02:01:02:03:04:07]
CE#1 CM#1      [02:01:02:03:04:08]
CE#2 CM#0      [02:01:02:03:04:09]
CE#2 CM#1      [02:01:02:03:04:0A]
CE#3 CM#0      [02:01:02:03:04:0B]
CE#3 CM#1      [02:01:02:03:04:0C]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set network

### set network

This command sets up parameters for the Ethernet network, and checks the consistency of parameters. If the system detects an inconsistency between the parameters, the command is terminated abnormally.

- If the factory default network setting is used, make sure to set the "-master-ip" parameter with the MNT port first.

#### Caution

This command releases the factory default network setting. If settings other than the MNT port are configured first, a confirmation message is displayed to continue the process because connections to the MNT port become unavailable.

- An IPv4 address can be deleted by specifying it as "0.0.0.0", and an IPv6 address can be deleted by specifying it as "0".
- Either the MNT port or the RMT port on the master controller module (CM) must be enabled.
- When critical changes are made (such as changing a subnet address), all of the network parameters should be reconfigured.
- When the command is executed, the CLI session is logged off automatically.
- When "fst" is specified for "-port", gateway, DNSs and IP addresses cannot be set.
- When "fst" is specified for "-port", IPv6 addresses cannot be set.

### Syntax

```
set network -port {maintenance | remote | fst} [-ip-format {v4 | v6}] [-ipv6-set-auto {disable | enable}]  
[-master-ip ip_address] [-slave-ip ip_address] [-master-link-local-ip ip_address]  
[-slave-link-local-ip ip_address] [-master-connect-ip ip_address] [-slave-connect-ip ip_address]  
[-netmask netmask] [-subnet-prefix-length length] [-gateway gateway]  
[-allow-ip1 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip2 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip3 ip_address,netmask]  
[-allow-ip4 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip5 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip6 ip_address,netmask]  
[-allow-ip7 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip8 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip9 ip_address,netmask]  
[-allow-ip10 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip11 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip12 ip_address,netmask]  
[-allow-ip13 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip14 ip_address,netmask] [-allow-ip15 ip_address,netmask]  
[-allow-ip16 ip_address,netmask] [-speed {1000 | 100full | 100half | 10full | 10half | auto}]  
[-primary-dns-ip ip_address] [-secondary-dns-ip ip_address] [-wake-on-lan {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

-port This parameter specifies the LAN port for configuring the settings.

    maintenance Maintenance port (MNT port)

    remote Remote port (RMT port)

    fst FST port

-ip-format Optional. This parameter specifies the format of the IP address that is to be set. If omitted, IPv4 is selected. This parameter can be specified when "maintenance" or "remote" is specified for the "-port" parameter.

    v4 The IPv4 setting is performed.

    v6 The IPv6 setting is performed.

-ipv6-set-auto

Optional. When "enable" is selected, the link local IP address, the connect IP address, and gateway are set automatically. If omitted, it is handled as if "disable" is selected. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set network

enable      IPv6 automatic setting is performed.

disable     IPv6 automatic setting is not performed.

**-master-ip**    Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address of the master CM. The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter.

Example: -master-ip 192.168.1.1

---

#### Caution

- If the slave IP address is active, both master/slave IP addresses must belong to the same subnet address.
- When "0.0.0.0" is set, the IPv4 settings for the port are disabled.
- When both IPv4 and IPv6 settings are disabled, the port becomes unavailable. (Either the maintenance port or the remote port must be enabled.)

*ip\_address*    IP address of the master CM

**-slave-ip**    Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address of the slave CM. The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string). This parameter cannot be specified for the ETERNUS DX with a single controller. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter.

Example: -slave-ip 192.168.1.2

---

#### Caution

Both the master/slave IP addresses must belong to the same subnet address.

*ip\_address*    IP address of the slave CM

**-master-link-local-ip**

Optional. This parameter specifies the link local IP address of the master IP. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter.

Example: -master-link-local-ip fe80::9abd:2df

---

#### Caution

- When "0" is set, the IPv6 settings for the port are disabled.
- When both IPv4 and IPv6 settings are disabled, the port becomes unavailable. (Either the maintenance port or the remote port must be enabled.)

*ip\_address*    Link local IP address of the master IP

**-slave-link-local-ip**

Optional. This parameter specifies the link local IP address of the slave IP. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter.

Example: -slave-link-local-ip fe80::9ab0:2d0

*ip\_address*    Link local IP address of the slave IP

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set network

#### -master-connect-ip

Optional. This parameter specifies the connect IP address of the master IP. Global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses) and unique local unicast addresses can be specified for the connect IP address. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter.

Example: -master-connect-ip 2003:12b:84d::87:3e3

*ip\_address* Connect IP address of the master IP

#### -slave-connect-ip

Optional. This parameter specifies the connect IP address of the slave IP. Global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses) and unique local unicast addresses can be specified for the connect IP address. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter.

Example: -slave-connect-ip 2003:120:84d::7ac:45

*ip\_address* Connect IP address of the slave IP

#### -netmask

Optional. This parameter specifies the subnet mask for the specified Ethernet port. The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 address format. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter.

Example: -netmask 255.255.255.0

*netmask* Subnet mask

#### -subnet-prefix-length

Optional. This command specifies the prefix length of the connect IP address. This parameter is used for IPv6 addresses. The prefix length is equivalent to the subnet mask for IPv4 addresses. Specify a value from 3 to 128.

When a global unicast address is specified for the connect IP address, a value from 3 to 128 can be specified. When a unique local unicast address is specified for the connect IP address, a value from 7 to 128 can be specified. (When a 6to4 address is used to specify the global unicast address, a value from 48 to 128 can be specified.) If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter. To delete the prefix length, set "0".

Example: -subnet-prefix-length 64

*length* Prefix length

For global unicast addresses: 3 – 128

For global unicast addresses (6to4 addresses): 48 – 128

For unique local unicast addresses (6to4 addresses): 7 – 128

#### -gateway

Optional. This parameter specifies the gateway address for the specified Ethernet port. This setting is required to permit access beyond the local sub-network (the sub-network to which the system network addresses belong). The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 address format. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are local link addresses, global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses), and unique local unicast addresses. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter, or when "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter.

Example: -gateway 10.1.1.2

Example: -gateway 2001:df:a012::3bbd

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set network

*gateway*      Gateway address

-allow-ip1 ... -allow-ip16

Optional. These parameters specify IP addresses or network addresses that are permitted to connect to this system. A maximum of 16 IP addresses can be specified. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses) and unique local unicast addresses. If omitted, no changes are made to the table of allowed addresses. This setting is not required to allow connection from the local sub-network (sub-network to which the system network addresses belong). This parameter can only be specified when "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter and "disable" is specified for the "-ipv6-set-auto" parameter, or when "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified.

*ip\_address,netmask*      IP address or network address

Example: Specify the following parameter to only permit access from a terminal host that has the IP address "192.168.1.2":

"-allow-ip1 192.168.1.2"

Example: Specify the following parameter to only permit access from a terminal host that has the IP address "2001:d53:c51::78:332"

"-allow-ip1 2001:d53:c51::78:332"

Example: Specify the following parameter to permit access from all terminals where the IP address range is "192.168.3.1" to "192.168.3.254":

"-allow-ip1 192.168.3.0,255.255.255.0"

Example: Specify the following parameter to permit access from all terminals that belong to the 2001:d53:c51:78::/64 network address:

"-allow-ip1 2001:d53:c51:78::,64"

Example: Specify the following parameter to delete an IP address:

"-allow-ip1 0.0.0.0" (IPv4)

"-allow-ip1 0,0" (IPv6)

**-speed**      Optional. This parameter specifies the connection speed of the specified Ethernet port. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

1000      1Gbit/s

100full      100Mbit/s full-duplex

100half      100Mbit/s half-duplex

10full      10Mbit/s full-duplex

10half      10Mbit/s half-duplex

auto      Auto negotiation

**-primary-dns-ip**

Optional. This parameter specifies the primary DNS IP address for the Ethernet port. The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 format. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses) and unique local unicast addresses. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. When "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter, the IP addresses must be specified using IPv4 standard notation. When "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter, the IP addresses must be specified in IPv6 address format. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified.

*ip\_address*      Primary DNS IP address

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set network

#### -secondary-dns-ip

Optional. This parameter specifies the secondary DNS IP address for the Ethernet port. The format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 format. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global unicast addresses (including 6to4 addresses) and unique local unicast addresses. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. When "v4" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter, the IP addresses must be specified using IPv4 standard notation. When "v6" is specified for the "-ip-format" parameter, the IP addresses must be specified in IPv6 address format. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified.

*ip\_address* Secondary DNS IP address

#### -wake-on-lan

Optional. This parameter specifies whether or not the Wake on LAN (WOL) function is enabled. This function can be independently set for each Ethernet port (MNT/RMT). The initial value is disabled. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" selected. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when "-port fst" is specified.

enable Wake on LAN is enabled.

disable Wake on LAN is disabled.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up network parameters for the Maintenance port (MNT port). The IP address is "192.168.1.100", and the subnet mask is "255.255.255.0":

```
CLI> set network -port maintenance -master-ip 192.168.1.100 -netmask 255.255.255.0
```

The following example sets up network parameters for the Maintenance port (MNT port). The IP address is "10.10.10.1", the subnet mask is "255.255.0.0", and the gateway address is "10.10.10.250"; accessible terminals are all addresses on the "10.11.0.0" network, and the single host address "192.168.1.1":

```
CLI> set network -port maintenance -master-ip 10.10.10.1 -netmask 255.255.0.0 -gateway 10.10.10.250 -allow-ip1 10.11.0.0,255.255.0.0 -allow-ip2 192.168.1.1
```

The following example changes the Ethernet speed of the maintenance port (MNT port) to 100Mbit/s full-duplex:

```
CLI> set network -port maintenance -speed 100full
```

The following example sets the IP address in IPv6 address format:

```
CLI> set network -port maintenance -ip-format v6 -ipv6-set-auto disable -master-link-local-ip fe80:10:20:34:ab::55:234:abde -slave-link-local-ip fe80:20:31:abcf:f3f::78:4fa -master-connect-ip 2010:df:90a::55:33:234 -slave-connect-ip 2011:23:ab:345:77::32:12a -subnet-prefix-length 64 -gateway 2010:df:90a::52:ab:d3e -allow-ip1 2001:ab:df:23f::abc:56:2 -allow-ip2 2001:234::,64 -primary-dns-ip 2011:ab:def:190::900:32:a80 -secondary-dns-ip 2011:91:aa9::7ab:74:dd
```

The following example automatically sets the IP address in IPv6 format:

```
CLI> set network -port maintenance -ip-format v6 -ipv6-set-auto enable
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show firewall

# show firewall

This command displays the status of each Ethernet application service port.

## ■ Syntax

```
show firewall
```

## ■ Parameter

No parameters.

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
MNT Port	Maintenance port (MNT port) name
RMT Port	Remote port (RMT port) name
FST Port	Field support port (FST port) name
http	Indicates whether an http connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
https	Indicates whether an https connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
telnet	Indicates whether a telnet connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
SSH	Indicates whether an SSH connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
Maintenance-Secure	Indicates whether an ETERNUS Maintenance Secure connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
ICMP	Indicates whether an ICMP connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
SNMP	Indicates whether an SNMP connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled)
RCIL	Indicates whether an RCIL connection is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled) (MNT port only)
ETERNUS DX Discovery	Indicates whether ETERNUS DX Discovery is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled) (MNT port only)
ICMP Redirect	Indicates whether ICMP Redirect is enabled. (open: enabled, close: disabled) (MNT port only)

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show firewall

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of each application service port:

```
CLI> show firewall
MNT Port
http [Closed]
https [Closed]
telnet [Closed]
SSH [Open ]
Maintenance-Secure [Closed]
ICMP [Closed]
SNMP [Closed]
RCIL [Closed]
ETERNUS DX Discovery [Open ]  
  
RMT Port
http [Closed]
https [Closed]
telnet [Closed]
SSH [Open ]
Maintenance-Secure [Closed]
ICMP [Closed]
SNMP [Closed]  
  
FST Port
http [Closed]
https [Closed]
telnet [Closed]
SSH [Open ]
Maintenance-Secure [Closed]
ICMP [Closed]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set firewall

### set firewall

This command is used to enable and disable the individual Ethernet application service ports. The settings listed in the table below must be performed for each Ethernet port.

Protocol	Service type	
http	GUI	Specify "-confirm-close-all yes" to disable all of the service ports for the GUI and CLI connections or both of the service ports for the CLI connection. If this parameter is not specified, the CLI command terminates with an error message.
https		
telnet		
SSH		
Proprietary protocol	ETERNUS Maintenance Secure Secure storage platform software (such as monitoring software)	
ICMP	ping	
SNMP	SNMP protocol	
IPMI	RCIL	
Proprietary protocol	ETERNUS DX Discovery	
ICMP Redirect	ICMP Redirect	

#### Caution

- All the service ports can be disabled by using this command, but all software, CLI, GUI, and external software such as monitoring software will not be able to establish a connection. In this case, contact your maintenance engineer.
- When any settings except for ICMP are changed, the CLI session is automatically disconnected after the command is executed. Note that the session is disconnected even if a setting value not involved in CLI connections is changed. For example, your system opens SSH and HTTPS ports, and closes all other ports. At that case, if you requests to close only HTTPS port, your connection connected by SSH will be disconnected. After disconnecting the connection, retry to log in the system.
- It can take a little time for the requested changes to be applied. For example, when GUI is used to request the opening of the SSH port, it may take around a minute before an SSH connected CLI session can be initiated.

### Syntax

```
set firewall -port {maintenance | remote | fst} [-http {open | close}]  
[-https {open | close}] [-telnet {open | close}] [-ssh {open | close}]  
[-maintenance-secure {open | close}] [-icmp {open | close}]  
[-snmp {open | close}] [-rcil {open | close}]  
[-eternus-dx-discovery {open | close}] [-icmp-redirect {open | close}]  
[-confirm-close-all {yes | no}]
```

### Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies the LAN port for configuring the settings.
- |             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| maintenance | Maintenance port (MNT port) |
| remote      | Remote port (RMT port)      |
| fst         | FST port                    |

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set firewall

-http	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "http" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "http" is opened.
close	Application port "http" is closed.
-https	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "https" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "https" is opened.
close	Application port "https" is closed.
-telnet	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "telnet" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "telnet" is opened.
close	Application port "telnet" is closed.
-ssh	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "SSH" (Secure Shell) application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "SSH" is opened.
close	Application port "SSH" is closed.
-maintenance-secure	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "ETERNUS Maintenance Secure (PCCT Secure)" application port, which is used to connect to the monitoring software, is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "ETERNUS Maintenance Secure" is opened.
close	Application port "ETERNUS Maintenance Secure" is closed.
-icmp	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "ICMP"" (Internet Control Message Protocol) application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "ICMP" is opened.
close	Application port "ICMP" is closed.
-snmp	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "SNMP" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when "fst" is specified for "-port". The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "SNMP" is opened.
close	Application port "SNMP" is closed.
-rcil	Optional. This parameter specifies if the "RCIL" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. This parameter cannot be specified when "remote" or "fst" is specified for "-port". The initial state is "open".
open	Application port "RCIL" is opened.
close	Application port "RCIL" is closed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set firewall

#### -eternus-dx-discovery

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the port for connecting to the ETERNUS DX that is connected to the network with the Remote Installation function.

##### Caution

This parameter can only be used for the MNT port.

open      ETERNUS DX Discovery is enabled.

close     ETERNUS DX Discovery is disabled.

#### -icmp-redirect

Optional. This parameter specifies if the "ICMP Redirect" application port is opened or closed. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is set to "close".

This parameter cannot be specified if ICMP Redirect cannot be set. The initial state will be "open".

##### Caution

- This parameter can only be used for the MNT port.

- This parameter can only be specified by roles with the Maintenance Operation policy.

open      Application port "ICMP Redirect" is opened.

close     Application port "ICMP Redirect" is closed.

#### -confirm-close-all

Optional. Specify "-confirm-close-all yes" to disable all of the service ports for both GUI and CLI connections. This parameter must be specified in either of the following cases:

- When disabling all of the service ports for both GUI and CLI connections (HTTP, HTTPS, telnet, and SSH)
- When disabling both of the service ports for CLI connections (telnet and SSH)

In all other cases, this parameter is ignored. For example, if a command such as "set firewall -port remote -icmp close -confirm-close-all no" is entered, the command is executed with exactly the same result as if the ICMP service protocol was disabled normally.

yes      Only required when all of the GUI and CLI related service ports are disabled.

no       Handled as "no operation".

## ■ Example(s)

The following example closes all the service ports, except the SSH service for CLI:

```
CLI> set firewall -port remote -http close -https close -telnet close -maintenance-secure close -icmp close -snmp close  
CLI> set firewall -port maintenance -http close -https close -telnet close -maintenance-secure close -icmp close -snmp close  
CLI> set firewall -port fst -http close -https close -telnet close -maintenance-secure close -icmp close -rcil close
```

The following example closes all the service ports involved in both GUI and CLI connections:

```
CLI> set firewall -port remote -http close -https close -telnet close -ssh close -confirm-close-all yes  
CLI> set firewall -port maintenance -http close -https close -telnet close -ssh close -confirm-close-all yes  
CLI> set firewall -port fst -http close -https close -telnet close -ssh close -confirm-close-all yes
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network-stat

### show network-stat

This command displays the network information of the management LAN (routing table information, socket information, and network statistics information) and the hardware device statistics information of the LAN port.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show network-stat {-mode {routing | socket | statistics} | -port {maintenance | remote | fst}}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-mode This parameter specifies the display mode of the network information.

##### Caution

If the "-port" parameter is specified, this parameter cannot be specified.

routing The current routing table information is displayed.

socket The current socket information is displayed.

statistics The network statistics information is displayed.

IP statistics information, ICMP statistics information, UDP statistics information, TCP statistics information, and detailed TCP statistics information are displayed in order.

-port This parameter specifies the LAN port for displaying the hardware device statistics information.

##### Caution

If the "-mode" parameter is specified, this parameter cannot be specified.

maintenance Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote Remote port (RMT port)

fst FST port

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Routing Information	Current routing table information (when "-mode routing" is specified)
Socket Information	Current socket information (when "-mode socket" is specified)
Network Statistics Information	Network statistics information (when "-mode statistics" is specified)
IP Statistics	IP related statistics information
ICMP Statistics	ICMP related statistics information
UDP Statistics	UDP related statistics information
TCP Statistics	TCP related statistics information
Detailed TCP Statistics	Detailed TCP statistics information (VxWorks proprietary statistics information and ETERNUS proprietary statistics information)
LAN Port Network Statistics Information	Hardware device statistics information of the specified LAN port (when "-port" is specified)

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network-stat

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the current routing table information:

```
CLI> show network-stat -mode routing
IPv4
Destination           Gateway          Flags   Use If Metric
0.0.0.0               192.168.0.254  UGS    34813 MNT 0
127.0.0.1             127.0.0.1      UH     16556 lo0 0
192.168.0.0/24        192.168.0.90   UC     415   MNT 0
192.168.0.90          192.168.0.90   UH     11449 lo0 0
192.168.1.0/24        192.168.1.1    UC     0     RMT 0
192.168.1.1           192.168.1.1   UH     0     lo0 0

IPv6
Destination           Gateway          Flags   Use If Metric
::1                  ::1              UH     398   lo0 0
fe80::/64             fe80::ffff:ffff:ffffe UC     0     lo0 0
fe80::ffff:ffff:ffff:ffffe  fe80::ffff:ffff:ffff:ffffe UH     0     lo0 0
```

The following example displays the current socket information:

```
CLI> show network-stat -mode socket
INET sockets
Prot Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address          Foreign Address      State
TCP 0 0 0.0.0.0.XXX 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 0.0.0.0.XXXX 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 0.0.0.0.XXXX 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 127.0.0.0.1.20005 127.0.0.0.1.20004 LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.XX 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 127.0.0.0.1.20073 127.0.0.0.1.20072 LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.623 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.664 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.* 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.9686 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 0.0.0.0.161 0.0.0.0.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 127.0.0.0.1.20029 127.0.0.0.1.20028 LISTEN

INET6 sockets
Prot Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address          Foreign Address      State
TCP 0 0 ::.XXX ::.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 ::.XX ::.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 ::.XXXX ::.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 ::.XXXX ::.* LISTEN
TCP 0 0 ::.80 ::.* LISTEN
TCP 1 0 ::ffff:192.168.0.90.23 ::ffff:192.168.0.254.48404 ESTABLISHED
TCP 0 0 ::.22 ::.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 ::.* ::.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 ::.9686 ::.* LISTEN
UDP 0 0 ::.161 ::.* LISTEN
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network-stat

The following example displays the network statistics information:

```
CLI> show network-stat -mode statistics
IP Statistics
Total packets received [1539261]
Forwarded [0]
Incoming packets discarded [9]
Incoming packets delivered [47346]
Requests sent out [0]

ICMP Statistics
Messages received [5]
Input errors [0]
Input histogram:
Destination unreachable [5]
Messages sent [5]
Output errors [0]
Output histogram:
Destination unreachable [5]

UDP Statistics
Packets received [26169]
Packets to unknown port received [5]
Packet receive errors [0]
Packets sent [26148]

TCP Statistics
Active connection openings [1839]
Passive connection openings [4486]
Failed connection attempts [7]
Connection resets received [1906]
Connections established [1]
Segments received [1470826]
Segments send out [1532390]
Segments retransmitted [578]
Bad segments received [0]
Resets sent [10]

Detailed TCP Statistics
Segments received [1470826]
with header truncation [0]
with bad checksum [0]
with bad authentication [0]
:
:
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show network-stat

The following example displays the hardware device statistics information of the maintenance port (MNT port):

```
CLI> show network-stat -port maintenance
MNT port statistics
Total octets received [16272824]
Total octets transmitted [131514]
Good octets received count [768]
Good octets transmitted count [774]
Total packets received [67542]
Total packets transmitted [635]
Good packets received count [12]
Good packets transmitted count [12]
Broadcast packets received count [0]
Broadcast packets transmitted count [0]
Multicast packets received count [0]
Multicast packets transmitted count [0]
CRC error count [0]
Alignment error count [0]
Symbol error count [0]
RX error count [0]
Missed packets count [0]
Single collision count [21]
Excessive collisions count [0]
Multiple collision count [7]
Late collisions count [0]
Collision count [37]
Defer count [3]
Transmit with no CRS [635]
Sequence error count [0]
Carrier extension error count [0]
Receive length error count [0]
XON received count [0]
XON transmitted count [0]
XOFF received count [0]
XOFF transmitted count [0]
FC received unsupported count [0]
:
:
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test network

### test network

This command checks the network communication of the management LAN.

The network communication can be checked by executing the following functions.

- Converting the specified host name to an IP address
- Executing "ping" for the specified IP address
- Performing a TCP connection for the port of the specified IP address

#### ■ Syntax

```
test network -function {dns | ping | tcp-connection}
[-port {maintenance | remote}] [-host-name host_name]
[-ip-address ip_address] [-tcp-port tcp_port]
[-auto-routing {yes | no}] [-retry retry_count] [-timeout timeout]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-function** This parameter specifies the function to use for checking the network communication.

**dns** The specified host name is converted to an IP address and the result is displayed.

**ping** A "ping" is performed for the specified IP address and the result is displayed.

**tcp-connection** A TCP connection is performed for the port of the specified IP address and the result is displayed.

**-port** Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port to be used for checking the network communication. If omitted, the maintenance port (MNT port) is used.

If automatic routing is set or if the link local address in the IPv6 format is specified, this parameter must be specified.

#### Note

FST ports cannot be specified.

**maintenance** Maintenance port (MNT port)

**remote** Remote port (RMT port)

**-host-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the host name when "dns" is specified with the "-function" parameter. The characters that can be used are 1 to 63 alphanumeric characters (US-ASCII codes 0x30 to 0x39, 0x41 to 0x5A, and 0x61 to 0x7A) and symbols (US-ASCII codes 0x2D, 0x2E, and 0x3A).

If "ping" or "tcp-connection" is specified with the "-function" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified.

*host\_name* Host name

**-ip-address**

Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address when "ping" or "tcp-connection" is specified with the "-function" parameter. If "dns" is specified with the "-function" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified.

*ip\_address* IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > test network

**-tcp-port** Optional. This parameter specifies the TCP port number within a range of 1 to 65535 when "tcp-connection" is specified with the "-function" parameter. If "dns" or "ping" is specified with the "-function" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified.

*tcp\_port* TCP port number (1 to 65535)

**-auto-routing**

Optional. This parameter configures automatic routing.

**yes** Automatic routing is enabled

**no** Automatic routing is disabled (only routes the addresses listed in the Allowable IP Address List that is configured in the network environment setting)

**-retry** Optional. This parameter specifies the number of ping retries within a range of 1 to 10 when "ping" is specified with the "-function" parameter. If omitted, the retry count is "1".

If "dns" or "tcp-connection" is specified with the "-function" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified.

*retry-count* Retry count (1 to 10)

**-timeout** Optional. This parameter specifies the connection timeout if a TCP connection check is executed when "tcp-connection" is specified for the "-function" parameter within a range of 1 to 60. If omitted, the timeout is "5" seconds. If "dns" or "ping" is specified with the "-function" parameter, this parameter cannot be specified.

*timeout* Timeout during a TCP connection (1 to 60 seconds)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example converts the host name "test0.fujitsu.co.jp" to an IP address using the maintenance port (MNT port):

```
CLI> test network -function dns -port maintenance -host-name test0.fujitsu.co.jp
LAN Port: MNT
Server: IPv4 Secondary DNS
Name: test0.fujitsu.co.jp
Address: 10.20.30.1
```

The following example executes pings for "192.168.0.51" using the remote port (RMT port):

```
CLI> test network -function ping -port remote -ip-address 192.168.0.51 -auto-routing yes -retry 5
---192.168.0.51 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 5933 ms
rtt min/avg/max = 0/1056/2116 ms
```

The following example executes TCP connections for 192.168.10.5 using the remote port (RMT port):

```
CLI> test network -function tcp-connection -port remote -ip-address 192.168.10.5 -tcp-port 80 -auto-routing yes -timemout 10
TCP connection is successful. time 14 ms
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test network

---

### SNMP

---

This section explains the commands that are related to SNMP settings, MIB view controls, community controls, and SNMP trap controls. ETERNUS DX supports SNMP v1, v2c, and v3.

- Setting/Releasing SNMP parameters
- Setting/Releasing SNMP manager
- Creating SNMP MIB view and adding/removing subtrees
- Deleting SNMP MIB view
- Creating/Changing/Deleting SNMP user settings
- Setting/Changing/Deleting SNMP community profiles
- Setting/Deleting SNMP trap and testing the transmission of SNMP trap
- Exporting enhanced SNMP MIB files

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp

### show snmp

This command displays the SNMP parameters.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show snmp
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
SNMP	Indicates whether SNMP functions are enabled.
Port	LAN port to use SNMP functions
Authentication Failure	Indicates whether to notify Authentication Failure by an SNMP trap when the system is accessed from undefined SNMP communities.
Engine ID	Engine identifier. This information is followed by "(Default)" when the "-engine-id default" parameter is specified for the "set snmp" command.
MIB-II RFC Version	Indicates the version of MIB-II that is used by the ETERNUS DX.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the SNMP parameters:

```
CLI> show snmp
SNMP [Enable]
Port [MNT]
Authentication Failure [Enable]
Engine ID [0x000102030405060708090a0b0c0d0e0f101112131415161718191a1b1c1d1e1f]
MIB-II RFC Version [RFC1213]
```

The following example displays the SNMP parameter that uses the RMT port and the default engine identifier.

```
CLI> show snmp
SNMP [Enable]
Port [RMT]
Authentication Failure [Enable]
Engine ID [0x800000d380500000e0d0401400] (Default)
MIB-II RFC Version [RFC4293]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp

### set snmp

This command enables or disables SNMP and specifies the port to be used for SNMP.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set snmp [-function {enable | disable}] [-port {maintenance | remote}]
[-authentication-failure {enable | disable}] [-engine-id {engine_id} | default]
[-mib-ii-rfc-version {1213 | 4293}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

- function    Optional. This parameter specifies whether SNMP functions are enabled or not. The initial value is disabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - enable       Functions of each SNMP are enabled.
  - disable      Functions of each SNMP are disabled (default).
- port        Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP trap sending port. This parameter is only applied when the trap version is V1 and affects all traps. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default is the MNT port.
  - maintenance   Maintenance port (MNT port) (default)
  - remote        Remote port (RMT port)
- authentication-failure    Optional. This parameter specifies if the SNMP authentication failure function is enabled. This function is used to notify the operator of Authentication Failure by an SNMP trap when this system is accessed from a undefined SNMP community. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is enabled.
  - enable       An SNMP trap is notified when SNMP authentication fails (default).
  - disable      An SNMP trap is not notified when SNMP authentication fails.
- engine-id    Optional. This parameter specified the engine identifier. The engine identifier is 12 to 66 characters because of 5 to 32bytes hexadecimal value which followed from the "0x". It is not available which set all of character is "00" and/or "ff". When "default" is specified, the default value is used.  
If omitted, the existing id or default value is used.
  - engine\_id*   Engine identifier
  - default      Default value
- mib-ii-rfc-version    Optional. This parameter specifies the version of MIB-II that is used by the ETERNUS DX. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - 1213       The RFC1213 format is used. (default)
  - 4293       The RFC4293 format is used.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example disables SNMP functions:

```
CLI> set snmp -function disable
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set snmp

The following example uses the Remote port (RMT port) for SNMP:

```
CLI> set snmp -port remote
```

The following example uses the specified engine identifier:

```
CLI> set snmp -engine-id 0x800102030405060708090a0b0c0d0e0f101112131415161718191a1b1c1d1e1f
```

The following example uses the default engine identifier:

```
CLI> set snmp -engine-id default
```

The following example uses MIB-II RFC4293:

```
CLI> set snmp -mib-ii-rfc-version 4293
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-manager

### show snmp-manager

This command displays the SNMP manager settings.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show snmp-manager
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
No.	SNMP manager setting number
IP address	SNMP manager IP address

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the SNMP parameters:

```
CLI> show snmp-manger
No.  IP address
-----
1   10.0.0.1
2   fd80::abdo0:123:55
3   192.168.0.21
5   192.168.10.11
6   192.168.0.254
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create snmp-manager

### create snmp-manager

This command sets IP address to receive SNMP traps in the SNMP manager setting. Since the ETERNUS DX has 10 entries, up to 10 settings can be specified. A new SNMP manager setting will be the lowest number.

#### ■ Syntax

```
create snmp-manager -ip-address ip_address
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -ip-address

This parameter specifies the SNMP manager IP address. To specify the SNMP manager IP address, use IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or the IPv6 format. The SNMP manager IP address cannot be specified with a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses.

Example: -ip-address 192.168.1.20

Example: -ip-address fe80::1b:332f:d0

*ip\_address*    SNMP manager IP address

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example creates SNMP manager to set IP address 10.0.0.1:

```
CLI> create snmp-manager -ip-address 10.0.0.1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-manager

### set snmp-manager

This command sets an IP address to the snmp-manager setting.

This command is not available when the set SNMP manager setting is already used for a SNMP community or SNMP trap.

#### Syntax

```
set snmp-manager -manager-number manager-number-ip-address ip_address
```

#### Parameter

##### -manager-number

This parameter specifies the SNMP manager settings number. This number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-manager" command.

*manager-number* Settings number

##### -ip-address

This parameter specifies the SNMP manager IP address. To specify the SNMP manager IP address, use IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or the IPv6 format. The SNMP manager IP address cannot be specified with a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses.

Example: -ip-address 192.168.1.20

Example: -ip-address fe80::1b:332f:d0

*ip\_address* IP address

#### Example(s)

The following example sets SNMP manager number 3 to IP address 192.168.0.254:

```
CLI> set snmp-manager -manager-number 3 -ip-address 192.168.0.254
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > delete snmp-manager

## delete snmp-manager

This command deletes the SNMP manager settings.

This command is not available when the SNMP manager setting that is to be deleted is already used for an SNMP community, an SNMP user, or an SNMP trap.

### Syntax

```
delete snmp-manager -manager-number manager-numbers
```

### Parameter

#### -manager-number

This parameter specifies the SNMP manager settings to delete. One or more numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

Example:

```
-manager-number 1,2,4  
-manager-number 6-9  
manager-numbers Settings number
```

### Example(s)

The following example deletes the #4 SNMP manager setting:

```
CLI> show snmp-manager
No. IP address
1 10.0.0.1
2 172.20.235.1
3 192.168.0.21
4 172.20.235.1
5 192.168.10.11
6 192.168.0.254

CLI> delete snmp-manager -manager-number 4

CLI> show snmp-manager
No. IP address
1 10.0.0.1
2 172.20.235.1
3 192.168.0.21
5 192.168.10.11
6 192.168.0.254
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-view

### show snmp-view

This command displays a list of the registered SNMP MIB views. If MIB view names are specified, the command displays the associated sub-trees.

#### Syntax

```
show snmp-view [-view view_names]
```

#### Parameter

**-view**      Optional. This parameter specifies the MIB view name to display sub-trees. Two or more MIB views can be specified by both a combination of a part of name and asterisk (\*), a wildcard at the same time and just scribring names. The wildcard rules are shown below:

Examples are shown below.

\*: Correct

part-of-view-name\*: Correct

\*part-of-view-name: Incorrect

*view\_names* MIB view name

#### Output

- When the parameter is omitted.

Item name	Description
"xxxxxxxx"	MIB view name

- When an SNMP MIB view name is specified.

Item name	Description
View-name	MIB view name
Subtree	Sub-tree information (include/exclude information) and OID format sub-tree

#### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the registered MIB view names:

```
CLI> show snmp-view
"ViewALL"
"View-mib2"
"View-exmib"
"xview4"
"xview5"
```

The following example displays a sub-tree list of the MIB view named "View-exmib":

```
CLI> show snmp-view -view View-exmib
View-name : "View-exmib"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-view

The following example displays the sub-trees of the MIB views beginning with the name "xview":

```
CLI> show snmp-view -view xview*
View-name : "xview4"
Subtree1 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.1
Subtree2 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.2
Subtree3 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.3

View-name : "xview5"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
Subtree2 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2
Subtree3 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3
```

The following example displays all the registered MIB views and their sub-trees:

```
CLI> show snmp-view -view *
View-name : "ViewALL"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1

View-name : "View-mib2"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1

View-name : "View-exmib"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.1

View-name : "xview4"
Subtree1 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.1
Subtree2 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.2
Subtree3 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.3

View-name : "xview5"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
Subtree2 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2
Subtree3 : [Exclude] 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3
```

The following example displays the default MIB view:

```
CLI> show snmp-view -view *
View-name : "ViewALL"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1

View-name : "View-mib2"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.2.1

View-name : "View-exmib"
Subtree1 : [Include] 1.3.6.1.4.1.211.1.21.1
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create snmp-view

### create snmp-view

This command creates an SNMP Management Information Base view (MIB view). A MIB is a data base which has a tree structure, and the MIB view defines a set of sub-trees for a MIB. MIB views are used to define access scope. A maximum of ten MIB views can be created. ETERNUS DX has three default view settings. These entries can also delete and modify as same as other entries. These default values are described in the ["show snmp-view"](#) command section.

#### Caution

Regarding the SNMP sub-trees name, the following rules apply for descriptions.

- Up to 251 characters can be specified.
- Names must be specified as a combination of numbers and periods (.). Example: "1.3.5"
- A combination of numbers and periods (.) must be used. At least one period (.) must be used. Example: "15" is NG.
- The number "0" cannot be specified between period (.) characters. Example: "1.0.1" is NG.
- Numbers that begin with 0 cannot be specified. Example: "1.01.1" is NG.

### ■ Syntax

```
create snmp-view -view view_name [-subtree1 {subtree1 | ""}] [-subtree2 {subtree2 | ""}]  
[-subtree3 {subtree3 | ""}] [-subtree4 {subtree4 | ""}] [-subtree5 {subtree5 | ""}]  
[-subtree6 {subtree6 | ""}] [-subtree7 {subtree7 | ""}] [-subtree8 {subtree8 | ""}]  
[-subtree9 {subtree9 | ""}] [-subtree10 {subtree10 | ""}]  
[-include-subtree subtree_numbers] [-exclude-subtree subtree_numbers]
```

### ■ Parameter

**-view** This parameter specifies the MIB view name. A maximum of 10 MIB views can be specified. It is a unique name. Up to 32 characters can be specified for a view name.

*view\_name* MIB view name

**-subtree1 . . . -subtree10**

Optional. These parameters specify the accessible sub-trees that make up the specified MIB view (up to 10 sub-trees). If this parameter is omitted or a null character ("") is specified, the subtree is deleted. Each subtree must be unique. If duplex is specified, the command terminates with an error.

*subtree1* . . . *subtree10* Accessible sub-trees

"" The subtree is deleted.

**-include-subtree**

Optional. This parameter specifies the "include" subtree type. A value between 1 and 10 can be specified for the subtree number. Two or more subtree numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

If this parameter and the "-exclude-subtree" parameter are omitted, "include" is used as the default for subtree.

The "-include-subtree" and "-exclude-subtree" parameters cannot both be specified for the same subtree.

*subtree\_numbers* "Include" type subtree number (1 – 10)

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create snmp-view

### -exclude-subtree

Optional. This parameter specifies the "exclude" subtree type. A value between 1 and 10 can be specified for the subtree number. Two or more subtree numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

If this parameter and the "-include-subtree" parameter are omitted, "include" is used as the default for subtree.

*subtree\_numbers* "Exclude" type subtree number (1 – 10)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates the MIB view named "1.3". It includes one sub-tree named "1.3.6.1.2.1" in the MIB view.

```
CLI> create snmp-view -view xview4 -subtree1 1.3.6.1.2.1 -include-subtree 1
```

The following example is specified without the "-subtree2" parameter when "-subtree1", "-subtree3", "-include-subtree1", and "-exclude-subtree3" are specified:

```
CLI> create snmp-view -view xview5 -subtree1 1.3.6.1.2.1 -subtree3 1.3.6.1.2.2 -include-subtree 1 -exclude-subtree 3
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-view

### set snmp-view

This command adds or deletes sub-trees to the specified SNMP MIB view. This command is not available when the delete SNMP MIB view setting is already used for a SNMP community, SNMP user or SNMP trap.

#### Caution

Regarding the SNMP sub-trees name, the following rules apply for descriptions.

- Up to 251 characters can be specified.
- Names must be specified as a combination of numbers and periods (.). Example: "1.3.5"
- A combination of numbers and periods (.) must be used. At least one period (.) must be used. Example: "15" is NG.
- The number "0" cannot be specified between period (.) characters. Example: "1.0.1" is NG.
- Numbers that begin with 0 cannot be specified. Example: "1.01.1" is NG.

### Syntax

```
set snmp-view -view view_name [-subtree1 {subtree1 | ""}] [-subtree2 {subtree2 | ""}]  
[-subtree3 {subtree3 | ""}] [-subtree4 {subtree4 | ""}] [-subtree5 {subtree5 | ""}]  
[-subtree6 {subtree6 | ""}] [-subtree7 {subtree7 | ""}] [-subtree8 {subtree8 | ""}]  
[-subtree9 {subtree9 | ""}] [-subtree10 {subtree10 | ""}]  
[-include-subtree subtree_numbers] [-exclude-subtree subtree_numbers]
```

### Parameter

**-view** This parameter specifies the name of the MIB view that will be changed. Only one view can be specified at the same time. Up to 32 characters can be specified for a view name and at least one character must be specified.

*view\_name* MIB view name

**-subtree1 . . . -subtree10**

Optional. These parameters specify the accessible sub-trees corresponding to the specified MIB view (up to 10 sub-trees). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Each sub-tree must be unique. If duplex is specified, the command terminates with an error.

#### Caution

To delete a subtree, specify a null character (""). When a null character ("") is specified, all of the subtrees are relocated. Example: -subtree3 "".

*subtree1 . . . subtree10* Accessible sub-trees

"" The subtree is deleted.

**-include-subtree**

Optional. This parameter specifies the "include" subtree type. A value between 1 and 10 can be specified for the subtree number. Two or more subtree numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set snmp-view

If this parameter and the "-exclude-subtree" parameter are omitted, "include" is used as the default for subtree.

The "-include-subtree" and "-exclude-subtree" parameters cannot both be specified for the same subtree.

*subtree\_numbers* "Include" type subtree number

#### -exclude-subtree

Optional. This parameter specifies the "exclude" subtree type. A value between 1 and 10 can be specified for the subtree number. Two or more subtree numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

If this parameter and the "-include-subtree" parameter are omitted, "include" is used as the default for subtree.

*subtree\_numbers* "Exclude" type subtree number

## ■ Example(s):

The following example adds the sub-tree named "1.3.6.1.2.8" to the MIB view named "xview4":

```
CLI> set snmp-view -view xview4 -subtree2 1.3.6.1.2.8
```

The following example deletes the sub-tree #1 from the SNMP view named "xview5". For example, sub-tree #2 is newly relocated as sub-tree #1:

```
CLI> set snmp-view -view xview5 -subtree1 ""
```

The following example changes the sub-tree #4 of "xview1" from "include" to "exclude":

```
CLI> set snmp-view -view xview1 -exclude-subtree 4
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > delete snmp-view

### delete snmp-view

This command deletes one or more SNMP MIB views.

This command is not available when the SNMP MIB view setting that is to be deleted is already used for an SNMP community, an SNMP user, or an SNMP trap.

#### ■ Syntax

```
delete snmp-view -view view_names
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-view** This parameter specifies the MIB view name to be deleted. The wildcard asterisk (\*) can be used to specify the view names of two or more MIBs. Specify each part of a view name followed by an asterisk (\*) or only use an asterisk. The asterisk cannot be specified before the part of each view name.

Examples are shown below.

\*: Correct

part-of-view-name\*: Correct

\*part-of-view-name: Incorrect

*view\_names* MIB view name

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the MIB view named "xview4":

```
CLI> delete snmp-view -view xview4
```

The following example deletes the MIB views beginning with the name "xview1":

```
CLI> delete snmp-view -view xview1*
```

The following example deletes all the registered MIB views:

```
CLI> delete snmp-view -view *
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-user

### show snmp-user

This command displays a list of the registered SNMP users.

#### Syntax

```
show snmp-user [-name user_name | -number numbers]
```

#### Parameter

-user or -number

Optional. This parameter specifies the user name or user number to display SNMP user entry. When using "-number", one or more users can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). If this parameter is omitted, all the registered SNMP users are listed.

Example:

```
-name Foo  
-number 1  
-number 2,3  
-number 1-4  
user_name  SNMP user name  
numbers    SNMP user number
```

#### Output

Item name	Description
No.	User number
User name	User name
Authentication	Authentication method or disable
Encryption	Encryption enable or disable (AES, DES, or disable)
MIB-view	MIB view name

#### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the registered SNMP users:

```
CLI> show snmp-user  
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view  
1   "FooVar1"          MD5           AES         "xview4"  
2   "FooVax"            SHA           disable     "xview5"  
3   "BUZZ"              disable        disable     "view13"  
4   "snmpuser1"         MD5           DES         "View-exmib"  
5   "snmpuser2"         SHA           DES         "
```

The following example lists the SNMP users named "Buzz":

```
CLI> show snmp-user -user BUZZ  
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view  
3   "BUZZ"              disable        disable     "
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-user

The following example displays the SNMP users numbering from 2 to 4:

```
CLI> show snmp-user -number 2-4
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view
 2  "FooVax"           SHA           disable     "view4"
 3  "BUZZ"             disable       disable     ""
 4  "snmpuser1"        MD5          AES         "view13"
```

The following example displays the SNMP users numbering from 1 and 5:

```
CLI> show snmp-user -number 1,5
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view
 1  "FooVar1"           MD5          DES        "xview4"
 5  "snmpuser2"         SHA          DES        "View-exmib"
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create snmp-user

### create snmp-user

This command creates SNMP user settings.

#### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

#### Syntax

```
create snmp-user -name user_name -view {mib_view_name | ""} [-authentication {enable | disable}]  
[-authentication-method {md5 | sha}] [-encryption {enable | disable}] [-encryption-method {des | aes}]
```

#### Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies the SNMP user name. Up to 10 SNMP user names can be specified. It is a unique name. Between 8 and 32 characters can be specified for a name.

*user\_name* SNMP user name

**-view** This parameter specifies the MIB view name. Up to 32 characters can be specified for a view name. Specify a null character ("") to not specify a view name.

*mib\_view\_name* MIB view name

"" An MIB view name is not specified.

**-authentication**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable authentication. If it is specified, the "-authentication-method" and "-encryption" options can be specified. In addition, the ETERNUS DX confirms the authentication password. Between 8 and 64 characters can be used for the password. If omitted, it is enabled.

**enable** Authentication is enabled (default).

**disable** Authentication is disabled.

**-authentication-method**

Optional. This parameter specifies which authentication method is used. One of the following methods can be selected.

**md5** MD5 (default)

**sha** SHA

**-encryption**

Optional. This parameter specifies the encryption mode. If this parameter is set to enable, the ETERNUS DX confirms the encryption password. Between 8 and 64 characters can be used for the password.

**enable** Encryption is enabled (default).

**disable** Encryption is disabled.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create snmp-user

### -encryption-method

Optional. This parameter specifies the encryption method. If this parameter is omitted, the DES method is used as the encryption method.

#### Caution

This parameter can only be specified when the encryption function is enabled.

des	DES encryption method (Default)
aes	AES encryption method (Default)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates the MIB user named "snmpuser1" with view "view13":

```
CLI> create snmp-user -name snmpuser1 -view view13
Authentication Password:
Confirm Authentication Password:
Encryption Password:
Confirm Encryption Password:
```

The following example creates the MIB user name "FooVar" with view "xview4" and authentication is disabled:

```
CLI> create snmp-user -name FooVar -view xview4 -authentication disable
```

The following example creates the SNMP user name "FooUser" without specifying a view name:

```
CLI> create snmp-user -name FooUser -view ""
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-user

### set snmp-user

This command modifies SNMP user settings.

#### Note

Depending on the model, the support state of the encryption-related functions may differ.

#### Syntax

```
set snmp-user {-user user_name | -number number} [-view {mib_view_name | ""}]  
[-authentication {enable | disable}] [-authentication-method {md5 | sha}]  
[-encryption {enable | disable}] [-encryption-method {des | aes}]
```

#### Parameter

-user or -number

This parameter specifies the SNMP user name or user number.

The user number can be confirmed by using the command "show snmp-user".

*user\_name*    SNMP user name

*number*      SNMP user number

-view      Optional. This parameter specifies the name of the MIB view that will be changed. Only one view can be specified at the same time. Up to 32 characters can be specified for a view name. Specify a null character ("") to not specify a view name. If a null character ("") is specified, the associated view is removed from this user setting.

*mib\_view\_name*    MIB view name

""               An MIB view name is not specified.

-authentication

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable authentication. If it is specified, the "-authentication-method" and "-encryption" options can be specified. In addition, the ETERNUS DX confirms the authentication password. Between 8 and 64 characters can be used for the password. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable      Authentication is enabled.

disable     Authentication is disabled.

-authentication-method

Optional. This parameter specifies which authentication method is used. One of the following methods can be selected. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

md5           MD5 (default)

sha           SHA

-encryption

Optional. This parameter specifies the encryption mode. If this parameter is set to enable, the ETERNUS DX confirms the encryption password. Between 8 and 64 characters can be used for the password. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-user

enable      Encryption is enabled.

disable     Encryption is disabled.

### -encryption-method

Optional. This parameter specifies the encryption method. If this parameter is omitted, the DES encryption method is used.

#### Caution

This parameter can be specified only when the encryption function is enabled.

des        DES encryption method (Default)

aes        AES encryption method (Default)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets user FooVar to SNMP view "xview4":

```
CLI> set snmp-user -user FooVar -view xview4
```

In the following example, user FooVar is set to SNMP view "xview4", the authentication method is set to MD5, and encryption is enabled:

```
CLI> set snmp-user -user FooVar -view xview4 -authentication enable -authentication-method md5
Current Authentication Password:
New Authentication Password:
Confirm Authentication Password:
Current Encryption Password:
New Encryption Password:
Confirm Encryption Password:
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > delete snmp-user

### delete snmp-user

This command deletes one or more SNMP user settings. This command is not available when the SNMP user setting that is to be deleted is already used for an SNMP community or an SNMP trap.

#### Syntax

```
delete snmp-user {-user user_name | -number numbers}
```

#### Parameter

-user or -number

This parameter specifies the user name or user number to delete SNMP user entry. For the "-number" parameter, one or more users can be specified by separating each user number with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

When "-number all" is specified, all of the users are deleted. The user number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-user" command.

Example:

```
-name Foo  
-number 1  
-number 2,3  
-number 1-4  
user_name  SNMP user name  
numbers    SNMP user number
```

#### Example(s)

The following example deletes the SNMP user named "FooVar":

```
CLI> delete snmp-user -user FooVar
```

The following example deletes SNMP users number 2 and 4:

```
CLI> show snmp-user  
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view  
1   "FooVar1"          MD5           enable      "xview4"  
2   "FooVax"            SHA           disable     "xview5"  
3   "BUZZ"              disable       disable     "view11"  
4   "snmpuser1"         MD5           enable      "view13"  
  
CLI> delete snmp-user -number 2,4  
  
CLI> show snmp-user  
No. User name          Authentication  Encryption  MIB-view  
1   "FooVar1"          MD5           enable      "xview4"  
3   "BUZZ"              disable       disable     "view11"
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show community-profile

## show community-profile

This command displays a list of all the registered SNMP community profiles.

### Syntax

```
show community-profile [-community community_name]
```

### Parameter

-community Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP community name of the profiles to be displayed. Only one community name can be specified at the same time.

*community\_name* SNMP community name

### Output

Item name	Description
No.	Community number
Name	Community name
Manager No.	Manager number
MIB View	MIB view name
Manager list	Manager details
No.	Manager number
IP address	Manager IP address

### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the registered SNMP community profiles:

```
CLI> show community-profile
No. Name Manager No. MIB View
1 "community10000000000000000000000000000000" 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 "view1"
2 "community2" 2, 6, "view3"
3 "community3.141592" 1, 4, 7, 8, 9 "view4"
4 "c4" 2, 3, 4, 5, "viewC4"
```

The following example displays the SNMP community profiles that is named community2:

```
CLI> show community-profile -community community2
No. Name Manager No. MIB View
2 "community2" 2, 6, "view3"

<Manager list>
No. IP address
2: 17.20.56.101
6: 144.72.48.100
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > show community-profile

The following example displays an SNMP community profile named community5 with 1, 2, and 3 registered for the manager number that is only used to TRAP:

```
CLI> show community-profile -community community5
No. Name          Manager No.
-----
5 "community5"    1, 2, 3

<Manager list>
No. IP address
-----
1 192.168.0.10
2 17.20.56.101
3 10.0.0.1
```

MIB View

The following example displays an SNMP community profile name community6 with unlimited access for all managers:

```
CLI> show community-profile -community community6
No. Name          Manager No.
-----
6 "community6"    "xview6"

<Manager list>
No. IP address
-----
```

MIB View

"xview6"

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create community-profile

### create community-profile

This command specifies the network scope for SNMP by defining a community profile, which is an association between an SNMP community name, an IP address and a MIB view.

The same community name and IP address cannot be used in more than one profile.

A maximum of 10 profiles can be created.

The SNMP agent of the system permits an access request by an SNMP manager if the request matches the community profile.

A request matches a community profile if the following conditions are met:

- The community name presented by the manager to the agent must match the community name of the profile.
- The IP address of the SNMP manager must also match the address defined in the profile. If the profile contains an IP address that is "0.0.0.0", then all manager IP addresses are matched.

The MIB view associated with a matching profile defines the information that a manager can retrieve from the agent.

Read-Only authority is granted to SNMP manager requests that match a community profile.

It is not possible for a profile to grant any authority other than read-only.

#### ■ Syntax

```
create community-profile -community community_name -view {view_name | ""}  
-manager-number {manager_numbers | none}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-community

This parameter specifies the SNMP community name, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Only one community name can be specified at the same time.

##### Caution

If the SNMP community name includes a space ( ), it must be enclosed by double quotation marks (""). Double quotation marks are included in the character count.

Example: -community "community 001" (using 15 letters)

*community\_name* SNMP community name

-view

This parameter specifies the SNMP MIB view name that is accessible by members of the community. If the specified community is set to trap only, specify a null character ("") instead of a view name.

*view\_name* SNMP MIB view name

"" The specified community is set to trap only.

-manager-number

This parameter specifies the number of SNMP managers.

Any value between 1 and 10 can be specified. One or more numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). This number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-manager" command. If unlimited access is specified for the community, specify "none" instead of a manager number.

*manager\_numbers* SNMP manager number (1 – 10)

none Unlimited access is specified for the community.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create community-profile

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the SNMP community. SNMP manager numbers 1 to 10 are specified, and the SNMP MIB view name is "xview4":

```
CLI> create community-profile -community community1 -manager-number 1-10 -view xview4
```

The following example creates the SNMP community in which the SNMP community is named "community2", the SNMP manager number is 2, and the SNMP MIB view is able to access all MIB views:

```
CLI> create community-profile -community community2 -manager-number 2 -view xview5
```

The following example creates an SNMP community that is used only for traps.

```
CLI> create community-profile -community community3 -manager-number 3 -view ""
```

The following example creates an SNMP community for which unlimited access is specified:

```
CLI> create community-profile -community community4 -manager-number none -view xview6
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set community-profile

### set community-profile

This command modifies community profiles to add or to delete SNMP managers.

#### Syntax

```
set community-profile -community community_name [-name new-community-name]  
[-view {view_name | ""}] [-manager-number {manager_numbers | none}]
```

#### Parameter

##### -community

This parameter specifies the SNMP community name, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Only one community name can be specified at the same time.

##### Caution

If the SNMP community name includes a space ( ), it must be enclosed by double quotation marks (""). Double quotation marks are included in the character count.

Example: -community "community 001" (using 15 letters)

*community\_name* SNMP community name

##### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies a new community name for a community that already exists.

*new-community-name* New SNMP community name

##### -view

Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP MIB view name that is accessible by members of the community. If the specified community is changed to be used for traps only, specify a null character ("") instead of a view name.

*view\_name* SNMP MIB view name

"" The specified community is changed to be used for traps only.

##### -manager-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of SNMP managers.

Any value between 1 and 10 can be specified. This number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-manager" command. One or more numbers can be specified using "," or "-". If unlimited access is specified for the community, specify "none" instead of a manager number.

*manager\_numbers* SNMP manager number (1 - 10)

none Unlimited access is specified for the community.

#### Example(s)

The following example sets the SNMP community. SNMP manager numbers 1 to 10 are specified, and the SNMP MIB view name is "xview4":

```
CLI> set community-profile -community community1 -manager-number 1-10 -view xview4
```

The following example sets the SNMP community in which the SNMP community is named "community2", the SNMP manager number is 2, and the SNMP MIB view is able to access all MIB views:

```
CLI> set community-profile -community community2 -manager-number 2 -view xview4
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set community-profile

The following example sets an SNMP community that is used only for traps.

```
CLI> set community-profile -community community3 -manager-number 3 -view ""
```

The following example sets an SNMP community for which unlimited access is specified:

```
CLI> set community-profile -community community4 -manager-number none -view xview6
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > delete community-profile

### delete community-profile

This command deletes an SNMP community profile and/or deletes SNMP managers from community profile. This command is not available when the SNMP manager setting that is to be deleted is already used for an SNMP trap.

#### Caution

- The community-profile "community4" has 3 manager settings #1 – #3.
- When deleting all of the settings using "-manager-numbers 1-3", not only the manager settings on the profile setting, but also the community profile are deleted.
- The result is the same as when "-community community4" is specified.

#### Syntax

```
delete community-profile -community community_name [-manager-number manager_numbers]
```

#### Parameter

-community This parameter specifies the SNMP community name of profiles to be deleted. Only one community name can be specified at the same time.

*community\_name* SNMP community name

-manager-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the manager number.

Any value between 1 and 10 can be specified. This number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-manager" command. One or more numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). If omitted, all the profiles that contain the specified SNMP community name are deleted.

*manager\_numbers* SNMP manager number (1 – 10)

#### Example(s)

The following example deletes all the SNMP community profiles whose name is "community1":

```
CLI> delete community-profile -community community1
```

The following example deletes SNMP manager number 4 from community2:

```
CLI> delete community-profile -community2 -manager-number 4
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show snmp-trap

### show snmp-trap

This command displays a list of the defined SNMP traps.

#### Syntax

```
show snmp-trap
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
Trap No.	Number of the entered SNMP traps
SNMP Version	SNMP version (v1/v2c/v3)
Manager Number	Manager number
IP Address	IP address
Community Name	SNMP community name. This is not displayed if the version is not v1 or v2c.
User Name	SNMP user name. This is not displayed if the version is v1 or v2c.
Port Number	Trap sending port number

#### Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the defined SNMP trap:

```
CLI> show snmp-trap
Trap SNMP Manager IP
No. Version Number Address          Community
Name                               User
Name                               Port
Number
-----  -----
 1 v1      1 1.1.1.1      "community1"   162
 1 v1      1 192.168.100.250    "community1"   162
 2 v2c     2 fd80::abdd:223:ab    "community2"   162
 3 v3      3 10.0.0.1        "User1"       162
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-trap

### set snmp-trap

This command defines an SNMP trap, which is a definition associating an SNMP community string with an IP address. A maximum of ten SNMP traps can be defined.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set snmp-trap -manager-number manager_number [-version {v1 | v2c | v3}]  
[-community {community_name | ""} | -user {user_name | ""}]  
[-trap-number trap_number] [-port-number port_number]
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -manager-number

This parameter specifies the SNMP manager number to send trap. Any value between 1 and 10 can be specified. This number can be confirmed by using the "show snmp-manager" command.

*manager\_number* SNMP manager number

##### -version

Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP version. If this parameter is omitted when setting an existing trap, the existing setting for this parameter is not changed.

v1 SNMP version 1.

v2c SNMP version 2c.

v3 SNMP version 3. (default)

##### -community

Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP community name, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters. A single command cannot define multiple traps. This should be specified for SNMP version 1 or 2c. This is not necessary for SNMP version 3. If a null character ("") is specified, the associated community is removed from this trap setting.

*community\_name* SNMP community name

"" The associated community is removed from this trap setting.

##### -user

Optional. This parameter specifies the SNMP user name. This should be specified for SNMP version 3. This is not necessary for SNMP version 1 or 2c. If a null character ("") is specified, the associated user is removed from this trap setting.

*user\_name* SNMP user name

"" The associated user is removed from this trap setting.

##### -trap-number

This parameter specifies the trap number. The trap number can be confirmed using the "show snmp-trap" command.

*trap\_number* Trap number

##### -port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the port number of the manager. If omitted, the previously set port number is used. If no port has been previously set, default port number 162 is used.

*port\_number* Port number

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set snmp-trap

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the SNMP trap corresponding to the SNMP community named "community1" and SNMP manager number 3:

```
CLI> set snmp-trap -community community1 -manager-number 3
```

The following example sets the v3 SNMP trap corresponding to the SNMP user named "user4" and SNMP manager number 3:

```
CLI> set snmp-trap -user user4 -manager-number 3
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > delete snmp-trap

### delete snmp-trap

This command deletes the SNMP trap that corresponds to an SNMP community. This command deletes the trap, but does not delete the specified SNMP community.

#### ■ Syntax

```
delete snmp-trap -trap-number trap_numbers
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -trap-number

This parameter specifies the setting trap number. The trap number can be confirmed using the "show snmp-trap" command. Two or more trap numbers can be specified by separating them with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-).

*trap\_numbers*      Trap number

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes SNMP trap numbers 2-4:

```
CLI> show snmp-trap
Trap   SNMP   Manager   IP           Community          User
No.   Version Number   Address     Name               Name
1     v1       1         192.168.100.250  "community1"
2     v2c      2         192.168.2.1    "community2"
3     v3       3         10.0.0.1
4     v3       4         192.168.100.101
5     v3       1         192.168.100.250
CLI> delete snmp-trap -trap-number 2-4
CLI> show snmp-trap
Trap   SNMP   Manager   IP           Community          User
No.   Version Number   Address     Name               Name
1     v1       1         192.168.100.250  "community1"
5     v3       1         192.168.100.250  "trap_user2"
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test snmp-trap

### test snmp-trap

This command sends an SNMP trap to the registered SNMP Manager for testing.

#### Syntax

```
test snmp-trap
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Example(s)

The following example sends the SNMP trap for testing:

```
CLI> test snmp-trap
```

The following example sends the SNMP trap to the SNMP Managers:

```
CLI> show snmp-trap
Trap    SNMP      Manager   IP           Community
No.    Version   Number   Address       Name
1      v1        1        192.168.100.250 "community1"
2      v2c       2        192.168.2.1   "community2"
3      v3        3        10.0.0.1
4      v3        4        192.168.100.101
5      v3        1        192.168.100.250
CLI> test snmp-trap
```

## export enhanced-mib

This command exports the enhanced MIB file in the system to an FTP server.

### Syntax

```
export enhanced-mib -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name -user login_user_name  
[-server-view {enable | disable}] [-version {v1 | v2cv3}] [-dir directory] [-filename filename]
```

### Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies the LAN port used to connect to the FTP server.
- maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
- remote      Remote port (RMT port)
- fst      FST port
- server      This parameter specifies the FTP server name to store the enhanced MIB file. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name.
- Example: -server 192.168.1.20
- Example: -server fd80::ab0:223:ad
- Example: -server foo.bar
- server\_name*      FTP server name
- user      This parameter specifies the user account name for access to the FTP server. This command displays an FTP server password prompt.
- login\_user\_name*      User account name
- server-view
- Optional. This parameter specifies whether a file defined for use by ServerView is included or not. If this parameter is omitted, the file is not included.
- enable      The file defined for ServerView is included.
- disable      The file defined for ServerView is not included.
- version
- Optional. This parameter specifies the version of an exported MIB file by using the SNMP version. If omitted, the default value "v1" is used.
- v1      SNMP version v1. (default)
- v2cv3      SNMP version v2c or v3
- dir
- Optional. This parameter specifies the directory name on the FTP server where the MIB file is to be stored. Since the file name cannot be specified within this string, use the "-filename" parameter to specify the file name.
- directory*      Directory name

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > export enhanced-mib

**-filename** Optional. This parameter specifies the file name to store the MIB file. Since the directory name cannot be specified within this string, use the "-dir" parameter to specify the directory name. If this parameter is omitted, the default file name is "FJDARY-E153.MIB". If the file already exists, it is overwritten.

*filename* File name

The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced by their corresponding value at the time of execution. If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.

%s Serial number of the system

Example: MIB%s-mib.bin -> MIB123456789012-mib.bin

%d Current date

Example: MIB%d-mib.bin -> MIB20080819-mib.bin

%t Current time

Example: MIB%t-mib.bin -> MIB144855-mib.bin

%% Percent character

Example: mib%%.bin -> mib%.bin

## ■ Example(s)

The following example exports the enhanced MIB to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com". The FTP server login is user "profile1", the stored location is "/temp", the default stored filename "/FJDARY-E153.MIB" is used, and the Ethernet port that is used is the Maintenance port (MNT port).

```
CLI> export enhanced-mib -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -dir /temp
Password :
exporting /temp/FJDARY-E153.MIB to ftp.a.com
Complete.
```

## E-mail Notification

---

This section explains the commands related to setting up e-mail notification.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show email-notification

### show email-notification

This command displays the parameters of E-mail notification functions.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show email-notification
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Send E-Mail	E-mail send mode (Enable or Disable)
Port	Ethernet port
SMTP Server	SMTP server name
SMTP Port No	Port number to access an SMTP server
Authentication Method	SMTP authentic method
User Name	User name for SMTP authentication
From	Sender email address
To1 – To5	Receiver addresses of an email that is sent from the system
Text1 – Text10	The fixed messages included in email messages
Retry Count	Retry count
Retry Interval(sec)	Retry interval (seconds)
Response Timeout(sec)	Timeout value for inactive communication that occurs during communication to the mail server (in seconds)
Connection Timeout(sec)	Timeout value for establishment of communication with the mail server (in seconds)
Partial mode	Partial mode
Partial size(KB)	Partial size (KB)
Send Log	E-mail log send mode
I/O Module Log	I/O module log send mode
Customer info	Customer information send mode
SMTP over SSL	Indicates whether the SMTP over SSL is used and the method to be used (Disable, STARTTLS, or SSL/TLS).

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show email-notification

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the parameters related to E-mail notification setup:

```
CLI> show email-notification
Send E-Mail          Enable
Port                 MNT
SMTP Server          fool.bar1
SMTP Port No         25
Authentication Method Auto
User Name             profile
From                foo2@bar2
To1                 foo1@bar1
To2                 foo2@bar2
To3                 foo3@bar3
To4                 foo4@bar4
To5
Text1               Hello
Text2               This is the ABC.
Text3               Thank you.
Maximum Retries      1
Retry Interval(sec)   4
Connection Timeout(sec) 5
Response Timeout(sec) 30
SMTP over SSL         SSL/TLS
Partial mode          Disable
Partial size(KB)      64
Send Log              Enable
I/O Module Log        Enable
Customer info         Enable
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set email-notification

### set email-notification

This command sets up parameters relating to E-mail notification functions.

#### Syntax

```
set email-notification [-send {enable | disable}] [-port {maintenance | remote}]
[-port-number port_number] [-server smtp_server] [-smtp-over-ssl {disable | starttls | ssl-tls}]
[-authentication {none | auto | cram-md5 | plain | login}] [-user user_name] [-from mail_address]
[-to1 {address | ""}] [-to2 {address | ""}] [-to3 {address | ""}] [-to4 {address | ""}] [-to5 {address | ""}]
[-text-count count] [-text1 {strings | ""}] [-text2 {strings | ""}] [-text3 {strings | ""}] [-text4 {strings | ""}]
[-text5 {strings | ""}] [-text6 {strings | ""}] [-text7 {strings | ""}] [-text8 {strings | ""}] [-text9 {strings | ""}]
[-text10 {strings | ""}] [-retry-count count] [-retry-interval interval] [-timeout seconds]
[-connection-timeout seconds] [-partial-mode {enable | disable}] [-partial-size size]
[-send-log {enable | disable}] [-iom-log {enable | disable}] [-customer-info {enable | disable}]
```

#### Parameter

- send      Optional. This parameter specifies the E-mail notification mode. It specifies whether the E-mail notification function is enabled or not. If this parameter is omitted, the status is not changed. The initial value is disabled. All necessary parameters to send E-mail must be specified when enabling this parameter.
  - enable      E-mail notification is enabled.
  - disable      E-mail notification is disabled (default).
- port      Optional. This parameter specifies the LAN port to connect to an SMTP Server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
  - remote      Remote port (RMT port)
- port-number      Optional. This parameter specifies the port number to connect to an SMTP server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The initial value is 25.
  - port\_number*      Port number
- server      Optional. This parameter specifies the SMTP server address. Up to 64 letters can be specified. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), IPv6 address format, or a fully qualified domain name. The types of IPv6 addresses that can be specified are global addresses (including 6to4 addresses), link local addresses, and unique local addresses. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.
  - Example: -server 192.168.1.20
  - Example: -server fd80::abd0:223:ad
  - Example: -server foo.bar
  - smtp\_server*      SMTP server address

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set email-notification

### -authentication

Optional. This parameter specifies the authentication method of the SMTP server. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

none	The system connects to the SMTP server without authentication.
auto	The system connects to the SMTP server using AUTH SMTP authentication and automatically selects the appropriate authentication method from "cram-md5", "plain" or "login".
cram-md5	The system connects to the SMTP server using AUTH SMTP authentication and uses "cram-md5" as the authentication method.
plain	The system connects to the SMTP server using AUTH SMTP authentication and uses "plain" as the authentication method.
login	The system connects to the SMTP server using AUTH SMTP authentication and uses "login" as the authentication method.

### -user

Optional. This parameter specifies the user account name to connect to the SMTP server using AUTH SMTP authentication. This command displays a password prompt. When "none" is specified for "-authentication", this parameter is unnecessary. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*user\_name* User account name

### -from

Optional. This parameter specifies the "from address" field of E-mail sent from the system. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*mail\_address* Sender email address

### -to1

Optional. This parameter specifies up to 5 e-mail addresses sent from the system. If any parameter is omitted, the corresponding value is not changed.

### -to2

### -to3

### -to4

### -to5

#### Caution

To delete an address, specify a null character ("").

Example: -to2 ""

*address* Receiver email address

"" An address is deleted.

### -text-

count Optional. This parameter specifies the number of valid message lines. The fixed message is output according to the specified one. Although this command is optional, it must be specified when the fixed message is modified.

#### Caution

When 0 is specified, the fixed message is deleted.

*count* Number of message lines

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set email-notification

-text1 . . . -text10

Optional. These parameters specify the fixed lines of the e-mail messages. The maximum number of lines is 10 and the maximum size is a total of 255 bytes. The system sends the message from the "-text1" parameter to the last parameter that is not blank as consecutive messages. If any parameter is omitted, the corresponding value is not changed.

### Caution

- The number after "-text" indicates the message line number. For example, "-text5" indicates the 5th line. With the exception of the last line, two bytes of carriage return code (CR) are added to each non-blank line.

Example: -text1 Hello -text2 Hello -text3 Hello

The total number of characters is 19 (5\*3 + 2\*2)

- The messages must be specified in ascending order beginning at "-text1".

Example: -text1 Hello

-text2 Morning.

-text3 bye.

- A null character ("") indicates a blank line.

Example: -text1 Hello

-text2 ""

-text3 bye

Result of this example:

line1 : Hello

line2 :

line3 : bye

\* Line2 is blank.

- If a line includes a blank letter, both ends of the parameter must be enclosed in double quotation marks (""). Double quotation marks are not included in the word count.

Example: -text1 Hello.

-text2 "This is your system." (20 letters)

- To include a double quotation mark, precede it by the back slash character. Back slash characters are not included in the word count.

Example: -text1 abc \ "def \ "ghi (11 letters)

Result of this example:

abc"def"ghi

*strings*      Fixed line of the email message

""            Blank line

-retry-count

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of retries that are performed when an e-mail fails to send. Specify a value from 0 to 5 for the retry count. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is 0 (no retry).

*count*      Number of retries

-retry-interval

Optional. This parameter specifies the time of the interval to retry sending. Between 1 and 300 seconds should be specified for the value. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is 1 (a retry is attempted after a 1 second interval).

*interval*      Retry interval (1 – 300)

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set email-notification

**-timeout**    Optional. This parameter specifies the timeout period for inactive communication that occurs in communication with a mail server. Between 1 and 300 seconds should be specified for the timeout period. A timeout occurs after the period of time that is specified with this parameter elapses when communication becomes inactive during forwarding of an email to the mail server. The default value is five seconds.

---

#### Caution

This parameter is mostly used to examine the network environment. Do not change the setting of this parameter for normal operations.

---

*seconds*    Timeout period for inactive communication (1 – 300)

**-connection-timeout**

Optional. This parameter specifies the timeout period for the establishment of communication with the mail server. Between 1 and 300 seconds should be specified for the timeout period. A timeout occurs after the period of time that is specified with this parameter elapses when a connection destination is not found or when a connection destination is found but the mail server cannot forward the email. The default value is five seconds.

---

#### Caution

This parameter is mostly used to examine the network environment. Do not change the setting of this parameter for normal operations.

---

*seconds*    Timeout period for the establishment of communication with the mail server (1 – 300)

**-smtp-over-ssl**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the SMTP over SSL is used. If the SMTP over SSL is used, the STARTTLS method or the SSL/TLS method can be selected. If this parameter is omitted, SMTP over SSL is not used.

**disable**    SMTP over SSL is not used. (Default)

**starttls**    SMTP over SSL is used with the STARTTLS method.

**ssl-tls**    SMTP over SSL is used with the SSL/TLS method.

**-partial-mode**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to divide e-mail into parts when sending. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is disabled (e-mails are not divided).

**enable**    Partial e-mail mode is enabled.

**disable**    Partial e-mail mode is disabled (default).

**-partial-size**

Optional. This parameter specifies the part size of an e-mail. It is available when "-partial-mode" is enabled, and any mode can be specified. Between 64kb and 6400kb should be specified for the value (between 64KB and 6400KB). "kb" must be specified after the number. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The ETERNUS DX default value is 64KB (the size of each e-mail is 64KB).

**size**    Part size of an e-mail

**-send-log**    Optional. This parameter specifies the E-mail log notification mode. This parameter specifies whether the E-mail log notification function is enabled or not. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. The default value is disable.

**enable**    Sending the E-mail log is enabled.

**disable**    Sending the E-mail log is disabled (default).

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set email-notification

**-iom-log**    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the I/O module logs are included. If omitted, the I/O module logs are included.

enable      The I/O module log is included (default).

disable     The I/O module log is not included.

**-customer-info**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to include customer information in the exported logs. If this parameter is omitted, customer information is included in the logs.

enable      Customer information is included in the logs (default).

disable     Customer information is not included in the logs.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up the parameters of the SMTP server. The Ethernet port is the Maintenance port (MNT port), the SMTP server is "foo1.bar1", and the authentication method is "CRAM-MD5". The user name for SMTP authentication is "profile1", the SMTP port number is the default, an e-mail sender address is "foo2@bar2", and the e-mail receiver address is "foo@bar". The SMTP over SSL function is used with the SSL/TLS method. The port number is 465. The fixed message is the following:

```
test-line 1  
test-line 2
```

```
CLI> set email-notification -send enable -port maintenance -server foo1.bar1 -authentication cram-md5 -smtp-over-ssl ssl-tls -port-number 465 -user profile1 -from foo2@bar2 -to1 foo@bar -text-count 2 -text1 "test-line 1" -text2 "test-line 2"  
Password :
```

The following example sets up the parameters of the SMTP server. The Ethernet port is remote port (RMT port), SMTP server is "buz.varx". E-mails sent that are larger than 128KB are divided into 128KB parts, other options are not set, and default values are used:

```
CLI> set email-notification -send enable -port remote -server buz.varx -partial-mode enable -partial-size 128kb
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test email

### test email

This command sends an email from the system for testing.

#### ■ Syntax

```
test email
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example tests whether the email can correctly be sent or not:

```
CLI> test email
```

## Event Notification

---

There are three categories of events that can occur; Error, Warning and Information. When an event occurs, a notification can be sent via E-mail, via SNMP, by returning a SCSI sense to the host, or by recording a syslog to syslog server. This section explains the commands to set up event notifications.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show event-notification

### show event-notification

This command displays the parameters that have been set for event notification.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show event-notification
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

- When AIS Connect is disabled.

Item name	Description
E-mail	Indicates whether a notification is performed by email. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.
SNMP	Indicates whether a notification is performed by SNMP trap. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.
Host	Indicates whether a notification is performed by Host sense. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares. When Host sense operator message (OPMSG) is enabled (the "-host-sense-opmsg" parameter is set to "enable"), "(OPMSG)" is also displayed. For unsupported models, "Notify" or "Notify(HS<0)" is displayed.
REMCS	Indicates whether a notification is performed by REMCS.
syslog	Indicates whether a notification is performed by syslog. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.

- When AIS Connect is enabled.

Item name	Description
E-mail	Indicates whether a notification is performed by email. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.
SNMP	Indicates whether a notification is performed by SNMP trap. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.
Host	Indicates whether a notification is performed by Host sense. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares. When Host sense OPSMG is enabled (the "-host-sense-opmsg" parameter is set to "enable"), "(OPMSG)" is also displayed.
REMCS	Indicates whether a notification is performed by REMCS.
syslog	Indicates whether a notification is performed by syslog. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.
AIS Connect	Indicates whether a notification is performed by AIS Connect. "(HS<0)" also appears when the system has no hot spares.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > show event-notification

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the parameters that have been set for event notification (when AIS connect is disabled):

CLI> show event-notification					
[Severity: Error Level]	E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Disk Error	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Succeed HDD Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify				
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Redundant Copy Start Finish	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
Copy Session Error	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
[Severity: Warning Level]	E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog
Parts Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Temperature Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
Battery life Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
[Severity: Information Level]	E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > show event-notification

The following example displays the parameters that have been set for event notification (when AIS connect is enabled):

CLI> show event-notification		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog	AIS Connect
<b>[Severity: Error Level]</b>							
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Disk Error	Notify	Notify	Notify	-		Do not notify	Notify
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify		Do not notify	Do not notify
Success RAID Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify		Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-		-	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-		-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify		Do not notify	Notify
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify		Do not notify	Do not notify
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-		Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Redundant Copy Start Finish	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
Copy Session Error	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Do not notify	Notify
SED Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify		Do not notify	Notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Notify	Notify
<b>[Severity: Warning Level]</b>							
Parts Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-		Do not notify	Notify
Disk Warning	Notify	Notify	-			Do not notify	Notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify		Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-		Do not notify	Notify
Battery life Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-		Do not notify	Notify
<b>[Severity: Information Level]</b>							
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-		Do not notify	Notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-		Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	-		Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Notify	Notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Notify	Notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify		Notify	Notify

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set event-notification

### set event-notification

This command sets up the parameters for event notification, primarily the notification targets such as E-mail, SNMP traps, host sense, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect. Notification targets for specific events can be set individually, all events of a particular level can be set to be notified in the same way, or one of two preset options can be selected. When selecting either of the two preset values, other parameters cannot be specified.

#### Syntax

```
set event-notification
{-preset {system-default | remcs-default} |
 {-severity {error | warning | information |
 e-parts-error | e-disk-error | e-disk-error-hdd-shield | e-succeed-hdd-shield |
 e-temperature-error | e-battery-life |
 e-rebuild-copyback-with-redundant |
 e-rebuild-copyback-without-redundant |
 e-complete-redundant-copy | e-complete-redundant-copy-hdd-shield | e-complete-rebuild |
 e-bad-data | e-pinned-data | e-not-ready | e-remote-path-with-transfer |
 e-remote-path-without-transfer | e-halt-path |
 e-halt-overload | e-halt-other | e-tp-pool-ratio |
 e-redundant | e-sed-network-error | e-copy-session-error | e-storage-cluster-controller-disconnected |
 w-parts-warning | w-disk-warning | w-disk-warning-hdd-shield | w-temperature-warning | w-battery-life |
 i-recovery-module | i-temperature-restoration | i-user-logon-logoff |
 i-operate-raid-group | i-add-release-hot-spare | i-operate-volume | i-power-off-on-cfl |
 i-sdp-policy-level1 | i-sdp-policy-level2 | i-sdp-policy-level3 |
 i-limit-copy-table | i-expire-trial-copy-license | i-odx | i-sed-network-error-recovered |
 i-fc-ca-port-link-status-changed | i-iscsi-ca-port-link-status-changed | i-host-login-over | i-remote-path-recovered |
 i-storage-cluster-controller-connected | i-storage-cluster-state-auto-changed |
 i-storage-cluster-state-manual-changed }}}
{-method {email | snmp | host | remcs | syslog | ais}}
{-suppression {enable | disable | disable-when-no-hs}}
[-host-sense-opmsg {enable | disable}]]}
```

#### Parameter

**-preset** This parameter specifies preset settings for event notification values. If this parameter is selected, other parameters cannot be specified. The default values are described in the examples below:

system-default Set the system default (Factory shipping default).

remcs-default Set the remote service default (recommended REMCS operation value).

**-severity** This parameter specifies the events that will trigger a notification and cannot be specified if the preset function is specified. An operand name starting with "e-" indicates a severity "Error level" event, "w-" indicates a severity "Warning level" event, and "i-" indicates a severity "Information level event". One or more event types can be specified by separating them with a comma (,).

Example: -severity error, w-warning-disk (Specify "error" and "w-warning-disk")

"-suppression disable-when-no-hs" indicates whether the specified event is notified or not when there is no hot spare in the system. It can be specified when "e-broken-disk", "e-rebuild-copyback-without-redundant", "e-redundant", "w-warning-disk", or "w-raid-degrade-event" is specified.

error All the Error level events are notified.

warning All the Warning level events are notified.

information All the Information level events are notified.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set event-notification

e-parts-error	When modules other than drives are broken, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-disk-error	When a drive that is not a protection (Shield) target is broken, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-disk-error-hdd-shield	When the protection (Shield) target drive fails, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-succeed-hdd-shield	When the failed drive is installed after being determined to be operational as a result of a diagnosis using the protection (Shield) function, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-temperature-error	When the sensor detects an error level temperature, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-battery-life	When battery life expires, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-rebuild-copyback-with-redundant	When rebuild/copyback occurs to a RAID group with redundancy, error level events are notified. Only Host sense may be specified as the notice method. Any notice method may be specified.
e-rebuild-copyback-without-redundant	When rebuild/copyback occurs to a RAID group without redundancy, error level events are notified. Only Host sense may be specified as the notice method. Any notice method may be specified.
e-complete-redundant-copy	When the redundant copy is complete and the drive that is disconnected from the ETERNUS DX is not a protection (Shield) target, error level events are notified. Any notice method may be specified.
e-complete-redundant-copy-hdd-shield	When the redundant copy is complete and the drive that is disconnected from the ETERNUS DX is a protection (Shield) target, error level events are notified. Any notice method may be specified.
e-complete-rebuild	When rebuild is finished, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, e-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-bad-data	When bad data on a track occurs, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, e-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-pinned-data	When pinned data occurs or disappears, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, e-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method. Note that, however, host sense is not used as the notification method when pinned data disappears.
e-not-ready	When Not-Ready occurs, error level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.
e-remote-path-with-transfer	When an REC path error (with data transfer) occurs, error level events are notified. Any notice method may be specified.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

#### e-remote-path-without-transfer

When an REC path error (without data transfer) occurs, error level events are notified. Any notice method may be specified.

#### e-halt-path

When REC path(s) are halted due to a path(s) error, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and REMCS may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-halt-overload

When REC path(s) are halted due to line overload, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and REMCS may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-halt-other

When REC path(s) are halted due to another cause, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and REMCS may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-tp-pool-ratio

When the transition of the thin provisioning pool ratio increases, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-redundant

When the redundant copy starts or ends, error level events are notified. Any notice method may be specified.

#### e-sed-network-error

When network connection errors occur with the key server, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-copy-session-error

When an error occurs for a copy session or an abnormal copy session disappears, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### e-storage-cluster-controller-disconnected

When communication with the Storage Cluster Controller is disconnected, error level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

#### w-parts-warning

When other modules are in a warning condition, warning level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### w-disk-warning

When the drive that is not a protection (Shield) target is in a warning condition, warning level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### w-disk-warning-hdd-shield

When the drive that is a protection (Shield) target is in a warning condition, warning level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### w-temperature-warning

When the sensor detects warning level temperature, warning level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### w-battery-life

When battery life will soon expire, warning level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-recovery-module

When parts are recovered, information level events are notified. Host sense, SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method. When reset groups for host ports are set, only SNMP and E-mail may be specified as the notice method.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

#### i-temperature-restoration

When the temperature sensor detects that the transition of error/warning level to normal level is occurred, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-user-logon-logoff

When the user logs on/logs off, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-operate-raid-group

When RAID groups are created or deleted, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-add-release-hot-spare

When hot spares are added or released, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-operate-volume

When volumes are created or deleted, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-power-off-on-cfl

When the ETERNUS DX is rebooted or a hot controller firmware update has been executed, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-sdp-policy-level1

When the snap data pool usage reaches the Error level of the Advanced Copy policy, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-sdp-policy-level2

When the snap data pool usage reaches the Warning level of the Advanced Copy policy, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog can be specified as the notice method. Notifications are sent when the system boot is complete. SNMP and E-mail may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-sdp-policy-level3

When the snap data pool usage reaches the Information level of the Advanced Copy policy, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-limit-copy-table

When copy table usage reaches the limit, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-expire-trial-copy-license

When the trial copy license expires, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-odx

When the backup area of the ODX Buffer volume is insufficient, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-sed-network-error-recovered

When network connection errors with the key server are cleared, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, and syslog may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-fc-ca-port-link-status-changed

When the link status of the FC port is changed, information level events are notified. E-mail, SNMP, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

#### i-iscsi-ca-port-link-status-changed

When the link status of the iSCSI port is changed, information level events are notified. E-mail, SNMP, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set event-notification

i-host-login-over When the number of hosts that log in exceeds the defined number, information level events are notified. E-mail, SNMP, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

i-remote-path-recovered

When a remote path error is recovered, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, syslog, AIS Connect, and REMCS may be specified as the notice method.

i-storage-cluster-controller-connected

When the Storage Cluster controller is recovered, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

i-storage-cluster-state-auto-changed

When the status (Active/Standby) of the Storage Cluster TFO group is switched automatically from Standby to Active, or vice versa, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

i-storage-cluster-state-manual-changed

When the status (Active/Standby) of the Storage Cluster TFO group is switched manually from Standby to Active, or vice versa, information level events are notified. SNMP, E-mail, REMCS, syslog, and AIS Connect may be specified as the notice method.

-method This parameter specifies the notification method. One or more methods can be specified by separating them with a comma (,). However, "remcs" and "ais" cannot be specified simultaneously.

Example: -method email,snmp (Specify "E-mail" and "SNMP")

email E-mail

snmp SNMP trap

host Host sense

remcs REMCS (remote support)

syslog syslog

ais AIS Connect

-suppression

This parameter specifies the suppression mode. It sets whether the specified event level and notice method are notified. This parameter cannot be specified in conjunction with the preset function.

### Caution

Set "-suppression on" for events that should not be notified.

enable Not notified (Suppression is enabled)

disable Notified

disable-when-no-hs Notified when no hot spare exists.

-host-sense-opmsg

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to also display the operator message (OPMSG) when notifying with host sense.

This parameter can be specified if "-method" is "host" and "-suppression" is "disable" or "disable-when-on-hs".

enable OPMSG is notified

disable OPMSG is not notified

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the system default (when AIS Connect is disabled):

	E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog
<b>[Severity: Error Level]</b>					
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Disk Error	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Succeed HDD Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify				
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Do not notify				
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Redundant	Do not notify				
Copy Session Error	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
<b>[Severity: Warning Level]</b>					
Parts Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify				
Temperature Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
Battery life Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify
<b>[Severity: Information Level]</b>					
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

The following example sets the system default (when AIS Connect is enabled):

CLI> set event-notification -preset system-default		[Severity: Error Level]					
		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCs	Syslog	AIS Connect
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Disk Error	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Succeed HDD Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	-	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Notify
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Redundant	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Session Error	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
SSN Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
[Severity: Warning Level]		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCs	Syslog	AIS Connect
Parts Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Disk Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Battery life Warning	Notify	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
[Severity: Information Level]		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCs	Syslog	AIS Connect
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

The following example sets the remote service default (when AIS Connect is disabled):

	E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog
<b>[Severity: Error Level]</b>					
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Disk Error	Notify(HS<0)	Notify(HS<0)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Succeed HDD Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Do not notify	-	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(HS<0,OPMSG)	-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Do not notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
Redundant	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Session Error	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
<b>[Severity: Warning Level]</b>					
Parts Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify
Battery life Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify
<b>[Severity: Information Level]</b>					
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-	Do not notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Do not notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set event-notification

The following example sets the remote service default (when AIS Connect is enabled):

CLI> set event-notification -preset remcs-default		[Severity: Error Level]					
		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog	AIS Connect
Parts Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Disk Error	Notify(HS<0)	Notify(HS<0)	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	Notify(HS<0)
Disk Error (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Succeed HDD Shield	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Error	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
End of battery life	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Rebuild/Copyback w/ redundant	-	-	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	-
Rebuild/Copyback w/o redundant	-	-	Notify(HS<0,OPMSG)	-	-	-	-
Complete Redundant Copy	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Notify
Complete Redundant Copy (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Complete rebuild	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Bad data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Pinned data	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Not ready	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	-	-	Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w transfer	Notify	Notify	Notify(OPMSG)	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Remote Path Error w/o transfer	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
REC Buffer Halt (Path Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Overload)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
REC Buffer Halt (Other Error)	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Thin Provisioning Pool Rate	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Redundant	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Session Error	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
SSD Network Error	Notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disconnect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
[Severity: Warning Level]		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog	AIS Connect
Parts Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disk Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Disk Warning (HDD Shield)	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Battery life Warning	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
[Severity: Information Level]		E-Mail	SNMP	Host	REMCS	Syslog	AIS Connect
Recovery module	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Temperature restoration	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
User login/logout	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated RAID Group	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Added/Released Hot Spare	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Operated Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Power off/on Apply Firmware	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lvl1	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv2	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SDP Usage Rate Over Lv3	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Copy Table Size Usage Rate Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Trial copy license expired	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
No Free Space on ODX Volume	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
SED Network Error Recovered	Notify	Notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
FC CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
iSCSI CA Port Link Status Changed	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Host Login Over	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Remote Path Error Recovered	Do not notify	Do not notify	-	-	-	Do not notify	Do not notify
Connect Storage Cluster Controller	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify
Automatic Change Storage Cluster State	Notify	Notify	-	Notify	Notify	Do not notify	Notify
Manual Change Storage Cluster State	Do not notify	Notify	-	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify	Do not notify

The following example sets up the parameters for an event notification. The notification method is E-mail. All events with Warning level are notified.

```
CLI> set event-notification -severity warning -method email -suppression disable
```

The following example sets up the parameters used for event notification. The notification methods are E-mail and SNMP trap. All events with Warning level or Error level are notified.

```
CLI> set event-notification -severity error,warning -method email,snmp -suppression disable
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show lcd-suppress

### show lcd-suppress

This command displays the display suppression state for the LCD message of the operation panel. This command can only be used for the DX8900 S4.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show lcd-suppress
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item	Description
Parts Error	Indicates whether the error display for the components (other than the drives) is displayed on the LCD. (Display: Displayed, Suppress: Not displayed)
Parts Warning	Indicates whether the warning display for the components (other than the drives) is displayed on the LCD. (Display: Displayed, Suppress: Not displayed)
Disk Error	Indicates whether the error display for the drives is displayed on the LCD. (Display: Displayed, Suppress: Not displayed regardless of the number of hot spares left, Display (HS<0): Not displayed when hot spares are left)
Disk Warning	Indicates whether the warning display for the drives is displayed on the LCD. (Display: Displayed, Suppress: Not displayed regardless of the number of hot spares left, Display (HS<0): Not displayed when hot spares are left)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of the LCD display suppression:

```
CLI> show lcd-suppress
Parts Error [Display]
Parts Warning [Suppress]
Disk Error [Display (HS<0)]
Disk Warning [Display]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set lcd-suppress

### set lcd-suppress

This command sets the display suppression for the LCD message of the control panel. This command can only be used for the DX8900 S4.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set lcd-suppress [-parts-error {enable | disable}] [-parts-warning {enable | disable}]  
[-disk-error {enable | disable | disable-when-no-hs}]  
[-disk-warning {enable | disable | disable-when-no-hs}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

##### -parts-error

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to suppress the error display for the components (other than the drives) on the LCD. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| enable  | Error display suppression is set for the components (other than the drives). The error display is not displayed on the LCD. |
| disable | Error display suppression is canceled for the components (other than the drives).   |

##### -parts-warning

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to suppress the warning display for the components (other than the drives) on the LCD. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| enable  | Warning display suppression is set for the components (other than the drives). The warning display is not displayed on the LCD. |
| disable | Warning display suppression is canceled for the components (other than the drives)  |

##### -disk-error

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to suppress the error display for the drives on the LCD. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| enable             | Error display suppression is set for the drives. The error display is not displayed on the LCD regardless of the number of hot spares left. |
| disable            | Error display suppression is canceled for the drives.   |
| disable-when-no-hs | Error display suppression is set for the drives when a hot spare exists. A disk error is displayed on the LCD when no hot spares are left.  |

##### -disk-warning

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to suppress the warning display for the drives on the LCD. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| enable             | Warning display suppression is set for the drives. The warning display is not displayed on the LCD regardless of the number of hot spares left. |
| disable            | Warning display suppression is canceled for the drives.   |
| disable-when-no-hs | Error display suppression is set for the drives when a hot spare exists. A disk warning is displayed on the LCD when no hot spares are left.    |

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set lcd-suppress

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets LCD display suppression:

```
CLI> set lcd-suppress -parts-error enable -parts-warning enable -disk-error enable -disk-warning enable
```

## SMI-S

---

This section explains the commands relating to the SMI-S function.  
The requirements for the SMI-S setting vary depending on the controller firmware version.  
For details, refer to "ETERNUS SMI-S Server SMI-S API Reference".

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show smi-s

### show smi-s

This command displays the setting of the SMI-S function, the SMI-S performance information response, and the SSL certificate.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show smi-s
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
SMI-S	Indicates whether or not all of the SMI-S functions are currently enabled.
Enable	All of the SMI-S functions are enabled.
Disable	All of the SMI-S functions are disabled.
Error	SMI-S is stopped.
Performance Information	Indicates whether or not the SMI-S BSP sub-profile support setting of SMI-S is enabled.
Enable	The SMI-S BSP sub-profile support setting of SMI-S is enabled.
Disable	The SMI-S BSP sub-profile support setting of SMI-S is disabled.
-	The setting cannot be displayed because SMI-S is stopped.
SSL Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate that is used for the HTTPS connection.
Built-in	Uses the self-signed SSL certificate for SMI-S.
Shared with Web GUI	Also uses the SSL certificate of ETERNUS Web GUI for HTTPS connections to SMI-S.
-	The SMI-S is stopped. The current setting cannot be displayed.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays whether or not the SMI-S function and the SMI-S performance information response are enabled:

```
CLI> show smi-s
SMI-S [Enable]
Performance Information [Disable]
SSL Certificate [Built-in]
```

The following example displays a message indicating that the SMI-S function must be enabled again:

```
CLI> show smi-s
SMI-S [Enable]
Performance Information [Disable]
SSL Certificate [Shared with Web GUI]

Warning: SSL certificate has been changed. In order to activate the new SSL certificate for
SMI-S connection, rebooting SMI-S server is necessary. Please disable and enable the SMI-S function.
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show smi-s

The following example is displayed when an SMI-S error occurs:

```
CLI> show smi-s
SMI-S [Error]
Performance Information [-]
SSL Certificate [-]
```

## set smi-s

This command enables or disables the SMI-S function and the SMI-S performance information response.

### Caution

The SMI-S setting cannot be changed for the following cases.

- The state of the ETERNUS DX is Not Ready
- There are CMs whose status is not Normal

### Syntax

```
set smi-s [-function {enable | disable}] [-performance-information {enable | disable}]  
[-ssl-certificate {built-in | shared-with-webgui}]
```

### Parameter

-function    Optional. This parameter specifies whether all SMI-S functions are enabled or not. The initial value is "disable". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable      Each SMI-S function is enabled.

disable     Each SMI-S function is disabled (default).

-performance-information

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the performance information response of SMI-S. If enabled, the performance information can be acquired through SMI-S. The default value is "disable". If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

### Caution

- Even if the SMI-S function is disabled, this parameter is retained.
- This parameter can be changed only for the following.
  - When the SMI-S function is currently enabled
  - When the SMI-S function is changed from "disable" to "enable"However, this parameter cannot be changed when the SMI-S function is changed from "enable" to "disable".
- If the GS license is registered, this parameter cannot be changed to "enable".
- If the performance information response of SMI-S is enabled, use the "start performance" command to start an acquisition of the performance information.

enable      The performance information response is enabled.

disable     The performance information response is disabled (default).

-ssl-certificate

Optional. This parameter specifies the SSL certificate that is used for HTTPS communication to SMI-S. The self-signed SSL certificate for SMI-S is used by default. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set smi-s

---

### Caution

- This parameter is available only when the SMI-S function is set to "enable".
- If the SMI-S function is disabled and "enable" is not specified for the "-function" parameter, or if the SMI-S function is already enabled, this parameter cannot be selected.
- If the SSL certificate for ETERNUS Web GUI is not registered, the "shared-with-webgui" parameter cannot be selected. The SSL certificate for ETERNUS Web GUI is not registered at the factory by default. The self-signed SSL certificate must be created using the create function of the self-signed SSL certificate, or the SSL server certificate must be registered using the registration function of the SSL server key/certificate.
- Even if the SMI-S function is disabled, this parameter is retained.

---

built-in      Uses the self-signed SSL certificate for SMI-S.

shared-with-webgui

The SSL certificate of ETERNUS Web GUI for HTTPS communication is also used for SMI-S. The following two SSL certificate types are available:

- A certificate that is registered using the registration function of the SSL server key/certificate.
- A self-signed SSL certificate that is created using the create function of the self-signed SSL certificate.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the SMI-S function:

```
CLI> set smi-s -function enable
```

The following example disables the SMI-S function:

```
CLI> set smi-s -function disable
```

## SSH/SSL Security Configuration

---

This section explains the commands related to setting up SSH/SSL security. The following items can be configured:

- Registration of the SSH server key
- Registration of the SSL server key and SSL server certificate
- Exporting the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and server key file
- Registration of the signed SSL server certificate according to the certification provider

### ■ Summary of how to register SSL certification

There are two methods for SSL certification; a self-signed certificate and a certificate that is signed by the certificate provider.

The steps involved in registering a certificate that is signed by the certificate provider using CLI are as follows:

#### Procedure ►►► —————

##### 1 Generate and export Certificate Signing Request (CSR).

Use the "create ssl-certificate-request" command to generate and export a CSR for a signed certificate from the certificate provider. This command generates and exports a CSR and a server key. The server key should be hidden from other keys.

##### 2 Send CSR to certificate provider and receive signed certificate.

Send the exported CSR to the certificate provider to sign. A signed certificate will be returned from the provider.

##### 3 Register the signed certificate.

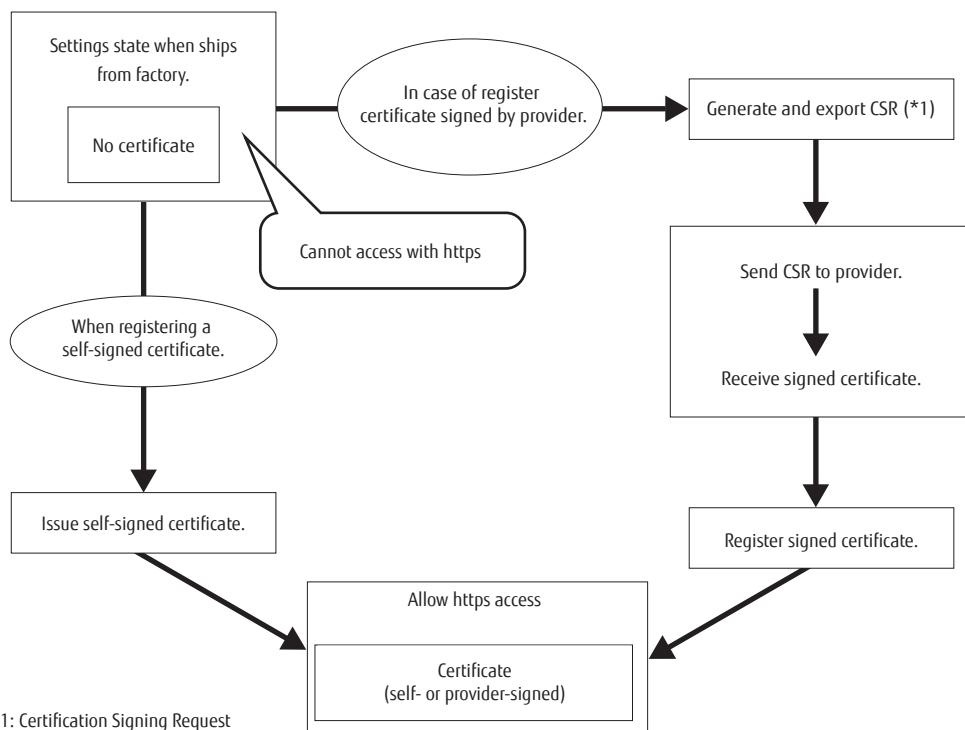
To register, use the "import ssl-certificate" command to import the received signed certificate and the server key generated in [Step 1](#).

Use the "create ssl-certificate" command to register a self-signed certificate.



The following figure shows how to register the certificate:

Figure 16 How to register the SSL certificate



## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create ssh-server-key

### create ssh-server-key

This command renews and registers an SSH (Secure Shell) server key. Once this command is executed, connection via ssh is possible after five minutes have elapsed.

#### ■ Syntax

```
create ssh-server-key [-key-length {1024 | 2048 | 4096}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-key-length** Optional. This parameter specifies the bit length of the generating SSH server key. Only one value can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, 2048 (default value) is used for the key length.

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| 1024 | Key length is 1,024bits.                 |
| 2048 | Key length is 2,048bits. (Default value) |
| 4096 | Key length is 4,096bits.                 |

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example renews the SSH server key with a key length of 2048bits:

```
CLI> create ssh-server-key -key-length 2048
```

## create ssl-certificate

This command renews and registers an SSL (Secure Socket Layer) server key and an SSL server certificate.

### Caution

If the "SSL Certificate" setting of the "show smi-s" command is "Shared with Web GUI", the old certificate is used for HTTPS communication even after the SSL certificate is updated. To use the updated certificate for SMI-S communication, disable the SMI-S function and then enable it again.

### Syntax

```
create ssl-certificate [-key-length {1024 | 2048 | 4096}]  
-common-name common_name [-subject-alt-name altname1,altname2...]
```

### Parameter

**-key-length** Optional. This parameter specifies the bit length of the generating SSL server key. Only one value can be specified.  
If this parameter is omitted, 2048 (default value) is used for the key length.

- 1024      Key length is 1,024bits.
- 2048      Key length is 2,048bits. (Default value)
- 4096      Key length is 4,096bits.

**-common-name**

This parameter specifies an IP address or domain name that accesses HTTPS for the MNT port or the RMT port. The IP address should be written in IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 address format. The domain name should be written in full-domain notation (FQDN). Only one value should be specified for this parameter.

Example:

foo.var  
192.168.1.1  
2001:1b::430:db0

### Caution

Abbreviated notations are recommended when inputting an IPv6 address. This is because some browsers support only abbreviated notations.

*common\_name*      IP address or domain name that can access HTTPS

**-subject-alt-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address and/or domain name that can access HTTPS for the MNT port or the RMT port. The IP address should be written in standard notation (string specified forming d.d.d.d 256base notation) or IPv6 address format. The domain name should be written in full-domain notation (FQDN). The string length of all the FQDNs or IP addresses with these parameters delimiters should be within 511bytes.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > create ssl-certificate

Example:

foo.var.com (11bytes) Correct  
foo.var.com, 192.168.1.1 ← (11 +1 +11bytes) Correct  
jugemujugem...co.jp ← (511bytes) Correct  
jugemujugemu...co.jp ← (512bytes) Incorrect  
jugemujugem...co.jp, foo.var.com ← (511 +1 +11bytes) Incorrect

*altname1,altname2*      IP address and/or domain name that can access HTTPS

### ■ Example(s)

The following example renews and registers the SSL server certificate:

```
CLI>create ssl-certificate -key-length 2048 -common-name eternus.example.com -subject-alt-name eternus.example.com,  
eternusmnt.example.com, 172.16.1.11
```

The following displays a message indicating that the SMI-S function must be enabled again due to the update of the SSL certificate:

```
CLI>create ssl-certificate -key-length 2048 -common-name norcal.fct.example.com  
-subject-alt-name norcalfst.example.com, norcalmnt.example.com, 172.16.1.11  
  
Warning: SSL certificate is being changed. In order to activate the new SSL certificate  
for SMI-S connection, rebooting SMI-S server is necessary. Please disable and enable  
the SMI-S function after a while.
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > export ssl-certificate-request

## export ssl-certificate-request

This command exports the CSR (Certificate Signing Request) file and server key file that were generated to send to the certificate provider.

### Syntax

```
export ssl-certificate-request -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
  -user login_user_account [-csr-filename csr-filename] [-key-filename key-filename]
  [-key-length {1024 | 2048 | 4096}] -country-name country_name
  -state-province-name state_province_name -locality-name locality_name
  -organization-name organization_name -organization-unit-name organization_unit_name
  -common-name common_name [-subject-alt-name altname1,altname2...]
  [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
  - maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
  - remote      Remote port (RMT port)
  - fst      FST port
- server      This parameter specifies the name of the FTP server on which the CSR/key file are loaded. The server name should be in IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) format, IPv6 address format or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
  - Example: -server 192.168.1.20
  - Example: -server fd80::abd0:223:ad
  - Example: -server foo.bar

*server\_name*      FTP server name
- user      This parameter specifies the user account name for access to the FTP server. This command displays an FTP server password prompt.

*login\_user\_account* User account name
- csr-filename      Optional. This parameter specifies the filename to store the CSR file. If omitted, "server.csr" (default name) is used. If the same filename already exists, it is overwritten.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > export ssl-certificate-request

<i>csr-filename</i>	Name of the file to store the CSR file The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced by their corresponding values at execution time. If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.
%s	Serial number of the system Example: server_%s.csr → server_123456789012.csr
%d	Current date Example: server_%d.csr → server_20100316.csr (March 16, 2010)
%t	Current time Example: server_%t.csr → server_123456.csr (12:34:56)
%%	Percent character Example: server%%.csr → server%.csr
<b>-key-filename</b>	Optional. This parameter specifies the filename to store the key file. If omitted, "server.key" (default file) is used. If the same filename already exists, it is overwritten.
<i>key-filename</i>	Name of the file to store the key file The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced by their corresponding value at the time of execution. If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.
%s	Serial number of the system Example: server_%s.key → server_123456789012.key
%d	Current date Example: server_%d.key → server_20100316.key (March 16, 2010)
%t	Current time Example: server_%t.key → server_123456.key (12:34:56)
%%	Percent character Example: server%%.key → server%.key
<b>-key-length</b>	Optional. This parameter specifies the bit length of the generating SSL server key. Only one value can be specified. If this parameter is omitted, 2048 (default value) is used for the key length.
1024	Key length is 1,024bits.
2048	Key length is 2,048bits. (Default value)
4096	Key length is 4,096bits.
<b>-country-name</b>	Specify a country using two uppercase characters. "JP" indicates Japan. For other countries, refer to ISO3166-1.
<i>country_name</i>	Country name

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > export ssl-certificate-request

#### -state-province-name

Specify the state where the organization is located. Up to 63 characters can be specified.

*state\_province\_name* State name

#### -locality-name

Specify the area where the organization is located. Up to 63 characters can be specified.

*locality\_name* Area name

#### -organization-name

Specify the organization name. Up to 63 characters can be specified.

*organization\_name* Organization name

#### -organization-unit-name

Specify the department name of the organization. Up to 63 characters can be specified.

*organization\_unit\_name* Department name of the organization.

#### -common-name

This parameter specifies an IP address or domain name that accesses HTTPS for the MNT port or the RMT port. The IP address should be written in IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or IPv6 address format. The domain name should be written in full-domain notation (FQDN). Only one parameter can be specified.

Example:

foo.var

192.168.1.1

2001:1b::430:db0

*common\_name* IP address or domain name that accesses HTTPS

#### -subject-alt-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the IP address or domain name that can access HTTPS for the MNT port or the RMT port. To specify the SNMP manager IP address, use IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string), the IPv6 address format, or fully qualified domain name (FQDN). One or more FQDNs or IP addresses can be specified. The string length of all the FQDNs or IP addresses with this parameter delimiters should be within 511bytes.

Example:

foo.var.com ← (11bytes) Correct

foo.var.com, 192.168.1.1 ← (11 + 1 + 11bytes) Correct

jugemujugem...co.jp ← (511bytes) Correct

jugemujugemu...co.jp ← (512bytes) Incorrect

jugemujugem...co.jp, foo.var.com ← (511 + 1 + 11bytes) Incorrect

*altname1, altname2...* IP address or domain name that can access HTTPS

#### -indicator

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.

*enable* Progress indicator is displayed.

*disable* Progress indicator is not displayed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > export ssl-certificate-request

### ■ Example(s)

The following example generates and exports the CSR and the server key:

```
CLI> export ssl-certificate-request -port maintenance -server ftp.example.com -user tornado -key-length 2048 -country-name JP -state-province-name Nagano -locality-name Nagano -organization-name FJL -organization-unit-name Eternus -common-name Eternus0001.example.com
Password :
exporting ./server.csr to ftp.example.com
Password :
exporting ./server.key to ftp.example.com
complete.
```

## import ssl-certificate

This command imports and registers the SSL server certificate that is signed by the certificate provider.

### Caution

If the "SSL Certificate" setting of the "show smi-s" command is "Shared with Web GUI", the old certificate is used for HTTPS communication even after the SSL certificate is updated. To use the updated certificate for SMI-S communication, disable the SMI-S function and then enable it again.

### Syntax

```
import ssl-certificate -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
  -user login_user_account [-cert-filename cert-filename]
  [-key-filename key-filename] [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

-port	This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
	maintenance     Maintenance port (MNT port)
	remote        Remote port (RMT port)
	fst            FST port
-server	This parameter specifies the name of the FTP server on which the certificate and key file are stored. The server name should be in IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) format, IPv6 address format or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
	Example: -server 192.168.1.20
	Example: -server fd80::abd0:223:ad
	Example: -server foo.bar
	<i>server_name</i> FTP server name
-user	This parameter specifies a user account name for access to the FTP server. This command displays an FTP server password prompt.
	<i>login_user_account</i> User account name
-cert-filename	Optional. This parameter specifies the filename to load the certificate file. If omitted, "server.crt" (default file) is used. If the same file already exists, it is overwritten.
	<i>cert-filename</i> Filename to load the certificate file
-key-filename	Optional. This parameter specifies the filename to load the certificate and the key file. If omitted, "server.key" (default file) is used. If the same file already exists, it is overwritten.
	<i>key-filename</i> Filename to load the certificate and the key file

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > import ssl-certificate

-indicator    Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.

enable      Progress indicator is displayed.

disable     Progress indicator is not displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example imports and registers the signed certificate and the server key:

```
CLI> import ssl-certificate -port maintenance -server ftp.example.com -user cli-user -cert  
-filename server.cert -key-filename server.key
```

The following displays a message indicating that the SMI-S function must be enabled again due to the update of the SSL certificate:

```
CLI> import ssl-certificate -port maintenance -server ftp.example.com -user cli-user -cert  
-filename server.cert -key-filename server.key
```

```
Warning: SSL certificate is being changed. In order to activate the new SSL certificate for SMI-S connection, rebooting  
SMI-S server is necessary. Please disable and enable the SMI-S function after a while.
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show ssl-version

### show ssl-version

This command displays the SSL version that can be used with SSL communication.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show ssl-version
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Protocol	Protocol for performing communication with SSL (application service) For Ethernet ports whose connections are set to disable (close) with the firewall setting, regardless of what is displayed by this command, SSL communication cannot be used.
HTTPS(GUI)	SSL version used with Web GUI communication
HTTPS(SMI-S)	SSL version used with SMI-S communication
Maintenance-Secure	SSL version used with ETERNUS SF communication
TLS1.0	Usability of TLS1.0 (Enable / -)
TLS1.1	Usability of TLS1.1 (Enable / -)
TLS1.2	Usability of TLS1.2 (Enable / -)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the SSL version that can be used with SSL communication:

```
CLI> show ssl-version
Protocol      TLS1.0  TLS1.1  TLS1.2
-----
HTTPS (GUI)   -       -       Enable
HTTPS (SMI-S) -       Enable  Enable
Maintenance-Secure -       Enable  Enable
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ssl-version

### set ssl-version

This command changes the setting of the SSL version that can be used for SSL communication.

#### Caution

For Ethernet ports whose connections are set to disable (close) with the firewall setting, regardless of what is displayed by this command, SSL communication cannot be used.

#### Syntax

```
set ssl-version -protocol {https-gui | https-smi-s | maintenance-secure | all}
    -version {tls1.0 | tls1.1 | tls1.2 | all} -enable {yes | no}
```

#### Parameter

- protocol      This parameter specifies the protocol (application service) for changing the SSL version setting. Multiple protocols cannot be specified. To change all the protocol settings together, specify "all".
- https-gui      Web GUI
  - https-smi-s      SMI-S
  - maintenance-secure      ETERNUS Maintenance Secure (such as monitoring software)
  - all      All protocols (such as Web GUI, SMI-S, ETERNUS SF)
- version      This parameter specifies the version of the SSL for changing the setting. Multiple versions cannot be specified. To change all the SSL version settings together, specify "all".
- tls1.0      TLS1.0
  - tls1.1      TLS1.1
  - tls1.2      TLS1.2
  - all      All versions (TLS1.0, TLS1.1, TLS1.2)
- enable      This parameter specifies the SSL communication usability of the SSL version that is specified with the "-version" parameter.

#### Caution

If the setting does not allow the use of all SSL versions, SSL communication from the protocol that was set with the "-protocol" parameter becomes unusable.

- yes      SSL communication for the specified version can be used.
- no      SSL communication for the specified version cannot be used.

#### Example(s)

The following example changes the setting so that only TLS1.2 SSL communication can be used with all protocols:

```
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol all -version all -enable no
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol all -version tls1.2 -enable yes
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ssl-version

The following example sets the version of SSL that can be used with Web GUI to TLS1.2 only and sets the version of SSL that can be used with protocols other than Web GUI to TSL1.1 and later:

```
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol all -version all -enable yes
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol https-gui -version tls1.0 -enable no
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol https-gui -version tls1.1 -enable no
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol https-smi-s -version tls1.0 -enable no
CLI> set ssl-version -protocol maintenance-secure -version tls1.0 -enable no
```

## AIS Connect Settings

AIS Connect is a remote support service function that monitors/remotely controls the ETERNUS DX storage systems from a remote server (an AIS Connect server). AIS Connect and REMCS cannot be used simultaneously.

### Note

When performing the AIS Connect setting for the ETERNUS DX for the first time, agreeing to the terms and conditions must be performed via GUI. This agreement cannot be performed via CLI.

This section explains the commands to set up the AIS Connect function.

- Setting the AIS Connect operating environment
- Setting the AIS Connect remote session
- Checking the connection of the AIS Connect server
- AIS Connect manual log transmission
- AIS Connect test event notification
- Registering the SSL server certification
- Enabling the GUI menu display (REMCS settings and AIS Connect settings)

### ■ Switching from AIS Connect operations to REMCS operations

The procedure for switching remote support operations from AIS Connect to REMCS is as follows.

#### Procedure ►►► ——————

- 1 Enable the REMCS menu display with the "set remote-support-mode" command.
- 2 Set AIS Connect to disable with the "set ais-connect" command.
- 3 Configure REMCS using GUI.



## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show ais-connect

### show ais-connect

This command displays the AIS Connect operation environment.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show ais-connect
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
AIS Connect Function	Indicates whether the AIS Connect function is enabled.
Port	LAN port on the ETERNUS DX that communicates with the AIS Connect server
Automatic Log Transmission	Indicates whether logs are automatically sent.
Country Of Installation	Code and name of the country where the ETERNUS DX is shipped. If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Service Contract Responsibility	Code and name of the country in which the support office for the ETERNUS DX is located. If it is not set, "Undefined" is displayed.
SSL Server Certification	Indicates whether server certification is enabled.
Proxy Server	FQDN or IP address (IPv4) of the proxy server. If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Proxy Port Number	Proxy server port number. If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Proxy Type	Type of communication with the proxy server (HTTP / SOCKS). If it is not set, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Proxy User Name	User name for proxy authentication
Remote Session	Indicates whether a remote session from the AIS Connect server to the ETERNUS DX is allowed.
Remote Session Timeout(hour)	Timeout interval for remote sessions. A number between 1 to 24 or "Unlimited" is displayed.
Issuer Name	Issuer name
Valid From	Starting date of the validity period
Valid To	Ending date of the validity period

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show ais-connect

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the operation environment of AIS Connect:

```
CLI> show ais-connect
AIS Connect Function      [Enable]
Port                      [MNT]
Automatic Log Transmission [Enable]
Country Of Installation   [392 (JAPAN)]
Service Contract Responsibility [392 (JAPAN)]
SSL Server Certification  [Use]
Proxy Server              [foo.bar]
Proxy Port Number         [123]
Proxy Type                [HTTP]
Proxy User Name           [User1]
Remote Session             [Permit]
Remote Session Timeout(hour) [3]
<Trusted Root Certification Authorities>
Issuer Name               [Fujitsu Certification Authority]
Valid From                [2012-08-17 13:04:47]
Valid To                  [2015-08-17 13:04:47]

Issuer Name               [Fujitsu Certification Authority2]
Valid From                [2012-08-17 13:04:47]
Valid To                  [2015-08-17 13:04:47]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ais-connect

### set ais-connect

This command sets up the AIS Connect operation environment. If the "REMCS function" is running or "E-mail log send mode" is enabled, the AIS Connect function cannot be enabled.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set ais-connect
[-function {enable | disable}] [-port {maintenance | remote}] [-send-log {enable | disable}]
[-country-code country-code] [-server-certification {enable | disable}] [-proxy-server {proxy-server| ""}]
[-proxy-port-number proxy-port-number] [-proxy-type {http | socks}] [-user-name {user-name | ""}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-function**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable the AIS Connect function. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enabled      The AIS Connect function is enabled.

disable      The AIS Connect function is disabled.

**-port**      Optional. This parameter specifies which LAN port is used to communicate with the AIS Connect server. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)

remote      Remote port (RMT port)

**-send-log**      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to automatically collect logs and send them to the AIS Connect server when a failure (Error/Warning) occurs. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled or "Undefined" is displayed for "Service Contract Responsibility" (the code of the country in which the support office for the ETERNUS DX is located). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enabled      Logs are automatically sent.

disable      Logs are not automatically sent.

**-country-code**

Optional. This parameter specifies the shipment destination of the ETERNUS DX (the country where the ETERNUS DX is located). Specify a value that is listed in ["Country code list"](#). This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled. This parameter must be specified when the AIS Connect function is enabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*country-code*      Country code

**-server-certification**

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable server certification for SSL/TLS communication between the ETERNUS DX and the AIS Connect server. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enabled      Server certification is enabled (default).

disable      Server certification is disabled.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > set ais-connect

#### -proxy-server

Optional. This parameter specifies the proxy server. Only one proxy server can be specified at the same time. The server name format should be either IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). Up to 63 alphanumeric characters can be specified. When a proxy server is not used, specify a null character (""). If consecutive double quotations ("") are specified, the proxy port number, the proxy type, and the user name are initialized. When the AIS Connect function is disabled, only a null character ("") can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

Example: -proxy-server 192.168.1.20

Example: -proxy-server foo.bar

*proxy-server* Proxy server

"" A proxy server is not used or the AIS Connect function is disabled.

#### -proxy-port-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the proxy server port number. Specify the port number within 1 to 5 digits. The port number cannot be set above 65535. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled or the proxy server is not set. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*proxy-port-number* Proxy server port number

**-proxy-type** Optional. This parameter specifies the type of communication with the proxy server. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled or the proxy server is not set. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

http Basic/NTLM HTTP authentication

socks SOCKSv5 authentication

**-user-name** Optional. This parameter specifies the user name for proxy server authentication. Up to 32 characters can be specified. This parameter cannot be specified when the AIS Connect function is disabled or the proxy server is not set. To delete the user name for proxy server authentication that is already set, specify a null character (""). If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*user-name* User name for proxy server authentication

"" The user name for proxy server authentication is deleted.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets up an AIS Connect operation environment:

```
CLI> set ais-connect -function enable -port maintenance -send-log enable -country-code 392 -server-certification enable  
-proxy-server foo.bar -proxy-port-number 123 -proxy-type http -proxy-user-name User1  
Password :  
Confirm Password :
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ais-connect

### ■ Country code list

This list provides the country codes and the country names that are used to specify the shipment destination of the ETERNUS DX.

4	AFGHANISTAN	8	ALBANIA
12	ALGERIA	16	AMERICAN SAMOA
20	ANDORRA	24	ANGOLA
660	ANGUILLA	10	ANTARCTICA
28	ANTIGUA AND BARBUDA	32	ARGENTINA
51	ARMENIA	533	ARUBA
36	AUSTRALIA	40	AUSTRIA
31	AZERBAIJAN	44	BAHAMAS
48	BAHRAIN	50	BANGLADESH
52	BARBADOS	112	BELARUS
56	BELGIUM	84	BELIZE
204	BENIN	60	BERMUDA
64	BHUTAN	68	BOLIVIA
70	BOSNIA AND HERZEGOWINA	72	BOTSWANA
74	BOUVET ISLAND	76	BRAZIL
86	BRITISH INDIAN OCEAN TERRITORY	96	BRUNEI DARUSSALAM
100	BULGARIA	854	BURKINA FASO
108	BURUNDI	116	CAMBODIA
120	CAMEROON	124	CANADA
132	CAPE VERDE	136	CAYMAN ISLANDS
140	CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC	148	CHAD
152	CHILE	156	CHINA
162	CHRISTMAS ISLAND	166	COCOS VALUES (KEELING) ISLANDS
170	COLOMBIA	174	COMOROS
178	CONGO	184	COOK ISLANDS
188	COSTA RICA	384	COTE DIVOIRE
191	CROATIA (LOCAL NAME: HRVATSKA)	192	CUBA
196	CYPRUS	203	CZECH REPUBLIC
208	DENMARK	262	DJIBOUTI
212	DOMINICA	214	DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
626	EAST TIMOR	218	ECUADOR
818	EGYPT	222	EL SALVADOR
226	EQUATORIAL GUINEA	232	ERITREA
233	ESTONIA	231	ETHIOPIA
238	FALKLAND ISLANDS VALUES (MALVINAS)	234	FAROE ISLANDS
242	FIJI	246	FINLAND
250	FRANCE	254	FRENCH GUIANA
258	FRENCH POLYNESIA	260	FRENCH SOUTHERN TERRITORIES
266	GABON	270	GAMBIA
268	GEORGIA	276	GERMANY
288	GHANA	292	GIBRALTAR
300	GREECE	304	GREENLAND

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ais-connect

308	GRENADA	312	GUADELOUPE
316	GUAM	320	GUATEMALA
324	GUINEA	624	GUINEA-BISSAU
328	GUYANA	332	HAITI
334	HEARD AND MC DONALD ISLANDS	340	HONDURAS
344	HONG KONG	348	HUNGARY
352	ICELAND	356	INDIA
360	INDONESIA	364	IRAN VALUES (ISLAMIC REPUBLIC OF)
368	IRAQ	372	IRELAND
376	ISRAEL	380	ITALY
388	JAMAICA	392	JAPAN
400	JORDAN	398	KAZAKHSTAN
404	KENYA	296	KIRIBATI
408	KOREA, DEMOCRATIC PEOPLES REPUBLIC OF	410	KOREA, REPUBLIC OF
414	KUWAIT	417	KYRGYZSTAN
418	LAO PEOPLES DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC	428	LATVIA
422	LEBANON	426	LESOTHO
430	LIBERIA	434	LIBYAN ARAB JAMAHIRIYA
438	LIECHTENSTEIN	440	LITHUANIA
442	LUXEMBOURG	446	MACAU
807	MACEDONIA, THE FORMER YUGOSLAV REPUBLIC OF	450	MADAGASCAR
454	MALAWI	458	MALAYSIA
462	MALDIVES	466	MALI
470	MALTA	584	MARSHALL ISLANDS
474	MARTINIQUE	478	MAURITANIA
480	MAURITIUS	175	MAYOTTE
484	MEXICO	583	MICRONESIA, FEDERATED STATES OF
498	MOLDOVA, REPUBLIC OF	492	MONACO
496	MONGOLIA	500	MONTSERRAT
504	MOROCCO	508	MOZAMBIQUE
104	MYANMAR	516	NAMIBIA
520	NAURU	524	NEPAL
528	NETHERLANDS	530	NETHERLANDS ANTILLES
540	NEW CALEDONIA	554	NEW ZEALAND
558	NICARAGUA	562	NIGER
566	NIGERIA	570	NIUE
574	NORFOLK ISLAND	580	NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS
578	NORWAY	512	OMAN
586	PAKISTAN	585	PALAU
275	PALESTINIAN TERRITORY, OCCUPIED	591	PANAMA
598	PAPUA NEW GUINEA	600	PARAGUAY
604	PERU	608	PHILIPPINES
612	PITCAIRN	616	POLAND
620	PORTUGAL	630	PUERTO RICO
634	QATAR	638	REUNION

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ais-connect

642	ROMANIA	643	RUSSIAN FEDERATION
646	RWANDA	659	SAINT KITTS AND NEVIS
662	SAINT LUCIA	670	SAINT VINCENT AND THE GRENADINES
882	SAMOA	674	SAN MARINO
678	SAO TOME AND PRINCIPE	682	SAUDI ARABIA
686	SENEGAL	688	SERBIA AND MONTENEGRO
690	SEYCHELLES	694	SIERRA LEONE
702	SINGAPORE	703	SLOVAKIA VALUES (SLOVAK REPUBLIC)
705	SLOVENIA	90	SOLOMON ISLANDS
706	SOMALIA	710	SOUTH AFRICA
239	SOUTH GEORGIA AND THE SOUTH SANDWICH ISLANDS	724	SPAIN
144	SRI LANKA	654	ST. HELENA
666	ST. PIERRE AND MIQUELON	736	SUDAN
740	SURINAME	744	SVALBARD AND JAN MAYEN ISLANDS
748	SWAZILAND	752	SWEDEN
756	SWITZERLAND	760	SYRIAN ARAB REPUBLIC
158	TAIWAN	762	TAJIKISTAN
834	TANZANIA, UNITED REPUBLIC OF	764	THAILAND
768	TOGO	772	TOKELAU
776	TONGA	780	TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO
788	TUNISIA	792	TURKEY
795	TURKMENISTAN	796	TURKS AND CAICOS ISLANDS
798	TUVALU	800	UGANDA
804	UKRAINE	784	UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
826	UNITED KINGDOM	840	UNITED STATES
581	UNITED STATES MINOR OUTLYING ISLANDS	858	URUGUAY
860	UZBEKISTAN	548	VANUATU
336	VATICAN CITY STATE VALUES (HOLY SEE)	862	VENEZUELA
704	VIET NAM	92	VIRGIN ISLANDS VALUES (BRITISH)
850	VIRGIN ISLANDS VALUES (U.S.)	876	WALLIS AND FUTUNA ISLANDS
732	WESTERN SAHARA	887	YEMEN
894	ZAMBIA	716	ZIMBABWE

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set ais-connect-remote-session

### set ais-connect-remote-session

This command permits remote sessions to remotely control the ETERNUS DX from a remote server by using the AIS Connect function.

This command cannot be used when the AIS Connect function is disabled.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set ais-connect-remote-session {-session {permit | forbid} [-timeout timeout]}
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-session** This parameter specifies whether remote sessions are permitted to remotely control the ETERNUS DX from the AIS Connect server. When connections of remote sessions are permitted with this option, the setting is automatically reversed if the AIS Connect server does not request remote sessions within the period that is specified for the "-timeout" option.

**permit**      Connections for remote sessions are permitted.

**forbid**      Connections for remote sessions are not permitted.

**-timeout** Optional, but must be specified when "permit" is specified for the "-session" parameter. This parameter specifies the idle timeout interval for remote sessions. If the AIS Connect server does not request remote sessions within the specified period, the setting that permits connections of remote sessions is automatically reversed. This time period can be specified on an hourly basis by using a number from 0 to 24. If "0" is specified, a timeout does not occur (the idle timeout interval is unlimited).

***timeout***      Idle timeout interval for remote sessions (0 – 24)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example allows connection from the AIS Connect server and sets two hours as the timeout interval:

```
CLI> set ais-connect-remote-session -session permit -timeout 2
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test ais-connect

### test ais-connect

This command checks the connections with the AIS Connect server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
test ais-connect
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example checks the connection with the AIS Connect server:

```
CLI> test ais-connect
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > send ais-connect-log

### send ais-connect-log

This command is used to manually send logs to the AIS Connect server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
send ais-connect-log
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example manually sends logs to the AIS Connect server:

```
CLI> send ais-connect-log
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > test ais-connect-event-notification

### test ais-connect-event-notification

This command is used to test an event notification to the AIS Connect server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
test ais-connect-event-notification
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example tests an event notification to the AIS Connect server:

```
CLI> test ais-connect-event-notification
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Network Management > import ais-ssl-certificate

## import ais-ssl-certificate

This command imports and registers the SSL server certificate that is signed by the certificate provider.

### Syntax

```
import ais-ssl-certificate -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name -user login_user_account  
-filename filename [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

### Parameter

- port      This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
  - maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
  - remote      Remote port (RMT port)
  - fst      FST port
- server      This parameter specifies the FTP server name in which the certificate file is to be stored. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (as a string in the base 256 notation d.d.d.d), IPv6 address format or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
  - Example: -server 192.168.1.20
  - Example: -server fd80::ab0d0:223:ad
  - Example: -server foo.bar

*server\_name*      FTP server name
- user      This parameter specifies the user name that is to be used to access the FTP server. When this parameter is specified, the command displays an FTP server password prompt.
  - login\_user\_account*      User name
- filename      This parameter specifies the certificate file name.
  - filename*      Certificate file name
- indicator      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, the progress indicator is displayed.
  - enable      Progress indicator is displayed.
  - disable      Progress indicator is not displayed.

### Example(s)

The following example imports and registers the signed certificate:

```
CLI> import ais-ssl-certificate -port maintenance -server ftp.example.com -user cli-user filename server.cert  
Password :
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > show ais-communication-log

### show ais-communication-log

This command displays the AIS Connect communication log. The log for the startup and shutdown of AIS Connect agent and the most recent TCP connection can be displayed.

#### Note

If AIS Connect agent is started or restarted (such as with the AIS Connect setting, an ETERNUS DX reboot, a CM reboot, or a switch of the master CM), the log is initialized.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show ais-communication-log
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

No Output.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the AIS Connect communication log:

```
CLI> show ais-communication-log
2017-02-20 10:20:30 agent started
2017-02-20 10:20:31 connect to 10.20.30.40:443 (ID:17)
:
:
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Network Management > set remote-support-mode

---

### set remote-support-mode

This command enables the GUI menu display (REMCS setting and AIS Connect setting) of the remote support.

---

#### Note

- This command can be executed regardless of the set state of REMCS and AIS Connect.
  - If the GUI menu display of the REMCS setting and the AIS Connect setting is enabled with this command, the display cannot be disabled.
- 

#### ■ Syntax

```
set remote-support-mode -mode all
```

#### ■ Parameter

-mode      This parameter enables the GUI menu display of the REMCS setting and the AIS Connect setting.  
all            REMCS setting and AIS Connect setting

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the GUI menu display of the REMCS setting and the AIS Connect setting:

```
CLI> set remote-support-mode -mode all
```

## Performance/Tuning

---

This section explains the commands related to functions that are used to acquire the performance information and tune the performance of the ETERNUS DX.

### Performance Information

---

These functions display the performance information that is collected and stored by the system. Information is collected for each volume, each host interface port, each drive, and each controller module. Collection must be enabled before performance information can be displayed.

This section explains the commands for displaying performance information as shown below:

- Displaying the performance information
- Starting the performance information acquisition
- Stopping the performance information acquisition

## show performance

This command displays the performance information collected and stored by the system. Even if software other than CLI starts collecting performance information, CLI can display the performance information.

### Syntax

```
show performance
[-type {host-io | advanced-copy | data-reduction | disks | cm | port | pfm}]
[-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
[-disks disks]
[-cm cm_number]
[-port port_number]
```

### Parameter

-type      Optional. This parameter specifies the type of performance information. If omitted, the performance collection status is displayed.

host-io      Host I/O statistics for each volume

advanced-copy      Advanced copy statistics for each volume

data-reduction      Statistics information about the Compression function of each volume  
Only the volumes with the Compression function enabled (excluding DATA\_CNTNR volumes) are displayed.

disks      Statistics for each drive

cm      Statistics for controller module

port      Statistics for host interface port

pfm      Statistics for each PCIe Flash Module (PFM) (only for the DX8900 S4)

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. This parameter can be specified only when "host-io", "advanced-copy", or "data-reduction" is selected for "-type". One or more volumes can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If omitted, the information of all the volumes is listed.

If "host-io" or "advanced-copy" is specified, all the volumes are displayed. If "data-reduction" is selected, all volumes with the Compression function enabled are displayed.

*volume\_numbers*      Volume number

*volume\_names*      Volume name

-disks      Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers. This parameter can be specified only when "disks" is selected for "-type". One or more drives can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#). If omitted, the information for all drives is listed.

*disks*      Drive

-cm      Optional. This parameter specifies the controller module (or the CM number). This parameter can be specified only when "cm" is selected for the "-type" parameter. If omitted, the information for both controller modules is listed.

*cm\_numbers*      CM number

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

0 CM#0 (DX8100 S4 only)

1 CM#1 (DX8100 S4 only)

wx CE#w-CM#x (DX8900 S4 only)

"w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number.

Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

**-port** Optional. This parameter specifies the host interface port number, and can be specified only when "port" is selected for the "-type" parameter. Only one parameter can be specified at the same time. If omitted, all the host interface ports are displayed.

Example: -port 000

For details, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

*port\_numbers* Host interface port number

xyz "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8100 S4 only).

Example: "123" indicates CM#1-CA#2-Port#3

wxyz "w" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "x" is the controller module (CM) number, "y" is the CA number, and "z" is the host port number (DX8900 S4 only).

Example: "0123" indicates CE#0-CM#1-CA#2- Port#3

## ■ Output

Item name	Description
Status	Indicates whether collection of performance information has started
Interval	The interval time by which performance information is updated
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
IOPS(IOPS)	IOPS
Read	Read IOPS
Write	Write IOPS
Transmitted	Transmitted IOPS
Received	Received IOPS
Throughput	Throughput (in MB/s)
Read	Read throughput
Write	Write throughput
Transmitted	Transmitted throughput
Received	Received throughput
Response Time	Response time (whole number in milliseconds)
Read	Read response time
Write	Write response time
Processing Time	Processing time in the ETERNUS DX of the response times (whole number in milliseconds)
Read	Read processing time
Write	Write processing time

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

Item name	Description
Cache Hit Rate	Cache hit rate (%)
Read	Read cache hit
Write	Write cache hit
Prefetch	Prefetch cache hit
EXC Cache Hit Rate Read	Extreme Cache (EXC) hit rate (%) This item does not appear when the EXC function is disabled for the ETERNUS DX. A hyphen (-) appears when the EXC function is enabled for the ETERNUS DX but disabled for the relevant volume.
Location	Location of the target component in the ETERNUS DX
Busy Rate	Busy rate (%) of the target component
Copy Residual Quantity	Copy residual quantity (MB) A hyphen (-) appears for the CM Core.
Data Compression Rate	Compression rate of the data written from the host to the volume with the Compression function enabled
Unaligned I/O Rate	Data rate that does not align with the unit data size of the Compression process for the data written from the host to the volume enabled with the Compression function

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the status of performance information collection:

```
CLI> show performance
Status [ON]
Interval [30sec]
```

The following example displays the performance information when the Host I/O statistics is specified (and when the EXC function is disabled):

Volume No.	Name	IOPS (IOPS) Read / Write	Throughput (MB/s) Read / Write	Response Time (msec.) Read / Write	Processing Time (msec.) Read / Write	Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Write	EXC Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Prefetch					
1	VOL001	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	36
2	VOL002	7791	6608	613	292	12	11	10	10	41	37	36

The following example displays the performance information when the Host I/O statistics is specified (and when the EXC function is enabled for a DX8900 S4 with a PFM installed):

Volume No.	Name	IOPS (IOPS) Read / Write	Throughput (MB/s) Read / Write	Response Time (msec.) Read / Write	Processing Time (msec.) Read / Write	Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Write	EXC Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Prefetch					
1	VOL001	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	36
2	VOL002	7791	6608	613	292	12	11	10	10	41	37	21
3	VOL003	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	20
4	VOL004	7791	6608	613	292	12	11	10	10	41	37	21
5	VOL005	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	20
6	VOL006	7791	6608	613	292	12	11	10	10	41	37	21
7	VOL007	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	36
8	VOL008	7791	6608	613	292	12	11	10	10	41	37	-

The following example displays the performance information when the Host I/O statistics is specified for the volume named "VOL001":

Volume No.	Name	IOPS (IOPS) Read / Write	Throughput (MB/s) Read / Write	Response Time (msec.) Read / Write	Processing Time (msec.) Read / Write	Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Write	EXC Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Prefetch					
1	VOL001	6621	5192	589	379	17	12	10	10	41	37	36

The following example displays the performance information when the Advanced copy statistics is specified for volume #2:

Volume No.	Name	IOPS (IOPS) Read / Write	Throughput (MB/s) Read / Write	Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Write	EXC Cache Hit Rate (%) Read / Prefetch			
2	VOL002	7791	6608	613	292	41	37	36

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

The following example displays the performance information when the Advanced copy statistics is specified (and when the EXC function is enabled for a DX8900 S4 with a PFM installed).

Volume No.	Name	IOPS (IOPS)		Throughput (MB/s)		Cache Hit Rate (%)		EXC Cache Hit Rate (%)	
		Read	/ Write	Read	/ Write	Read	/ Write	Read	/ Prefetch
1	VOL001	6621	5192	589	379	41	37	36	20
2	VOL002	7791	6608	613	292	41	37	36	21
3	VOL003	6621	5192	589	379	41	37	36	20
4	VOL004	7791	6608	613	292	41	37	36	21
5	VOL005	6621	5192	589	379	41	37	36	20
6	VOL006	7791	6608	613	292	41	37	36	21
7	VOL007	6621	5192	589	379	41	37	36	-
8	VOL008	7791	6608	613	292	41	37	36	-

The following example displays the performance information when the drive statistics is specified:

CLI> show performance -type disks	
Location	Busy Rate (%)
CE#0-Disk#0	67
CE#0-Disk#1	66

The following example displays the performance information when the drive statistics is specified for drive #0 in the CE:

CLI> show performance -type disks -disks 000	
Location	Busy Rate (%)
CE#0-Disk#0	67

The following example displays the performance information when the controller module statistics is selected (for the DX8900 S4):

CLI> show performance -type cm		
Location	Busy Rate (%)	Copy Residual Quantity (MB)
CE#0 CM#0	35	0
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#0	34	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#1	36	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#2	40	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#3	33	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#4	36	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#5	33	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#6	31	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#7	34	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#8	34	-
CE#0 CM#0 CPU Core#9	35	-
CE#0 CM#1	35	0
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#0	34	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#1	36	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#2	40	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#3	33	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#4	36	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#5	33	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#6	31	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#7	34	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#8	34	-
CE#0 CM#1 CPU Core#9	35	-

The following example displays the performance information when the controller module statistics is selected for CE#5 CM#1 (for the DX8900 S4):

CLI> show performance -type cm -cm 51		
Location	Busy Rate (%)	Copy Residual Quantity (MB)
CE#5 CM#1	35	0
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#0	34	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#1	36	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#2	40	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#3	33	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#4	36	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#5	33	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#6	31	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#7	34	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#8	34	-
CE#5 CM#1 CPU Core#9	35	-

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

For FC and iSCSI, the following example displays the performance information when the host interface port statistics is specified:

```
CLI> show performance -type port
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read    / Write     Read      / Write
-----
CM#0  CA#0  Port#0      6621        5192       589       379
CM#1  CA#1  Port#1      7791        6608       613       292
```

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is selected for CM#0-CA#0-Port#0:

```
CLI> show performance -type port -port 000
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read    / Write     Read      / Write
-----
CM#0  CA#0  Port#0      6621        5192       589       379
```

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is selected for the Fibre channel or iSCSI (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show performance -type port
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read    / Write     Read      / Write
-----
CE#0  CM#0  CA#0  Port#0      0          0         0         0
CE#0  CM#0  CA#0  Port#1      0          0         0         0
CE#0  CM#1  CA#0  Port#0      0          0         0         0
CE#0  CM#1  CA#0  Port#1      0          0         0         0
```

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is specified and the host interface port mode is RA:

```
CLI> show performance -type port
CM RA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Transmitted / Received   Transmitted / Received
-----
CM#0  CA#0  Port#2      6621        5192       589       379
CM#1  CA#0  Port#0      7791        6608       613       292
CM#1  CA#0  Port#1      6621        5192       589       379
CM#1  CA#0  Port#2      7791        6608       613       292
```

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is specified for CE#0 CM#1 CA#2 Port#3 (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show performance -type port -port 0123
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read    / Write     Read      / Write
-----
CE#0  CM#1  CA#2  Port#3      6621        5192       589       379
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is specified and the host interface ports are a mix of both RA mode and CA mode:

```
CLI> show performance -type port
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read     / Write    Read      / Write
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#0   6621      5192      589      379
CM#0 CA#0 Port#1   7791      6608      613      292
CM#0 CA#0 Port#3   6621      5192      589      379
CM#1 CA#0 Port#3   7791      6608      613      292

CM RA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Transmitted / Received
                                         Transmitted / Received
-----
CM#0 CA#0 Port#2   6621      5192      589      379
CM#1 CA#0 Port#0   7791      6608      613      292
CM#1 CA#0 Port#1   6621      5192      589      379
CM#1 CA#0 Port#2   7791      6608      613      292
```

The following example displays performance information when the host interface port statistics is specified and the host interface ports are a mix of both RA mode and CA mode (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show performance -type port
CM CA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Read     / Write    Read      / Write
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0   6621      5192      589      379
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1   7791      6608      613      292
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#3   6621      5192      589      379
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#3   7791      6608      613      292

CM RA Port Performance Data List
Location          IOPS(IOPS)           Throughput(MB/s)
                  Transmitted / Received
                                         Transmitted / Received
-----
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2   6621      5192      589      379
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0   7791      6608      613      292
CE#0 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1   6621      5192      589      379
CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2   7791      6608      613      292
```

The following example displays the performance information when the PFM statistics is specified:

```
CLI> show performance -type pfm
Location          Busy Rate(%)
-----
CE#0-PFM#0        67
CE#0-PFM#1        40
CE#0-PFM#2        35
CE#0-PFM#3        67
CE#0-PFM#4        67
CE#0-PFM#5        33
CE#0-PFM#6        35
CE#0-PFM#7        67
CE#1-PFM#0        67
CE#1-PFM#1        72
CE#1-PFM#2        35
CE#1-PFM#3        67
CE#1-PFM#4        67
CE#1-PFM#5        15
CE#1-PFM#6        35
CE#1-PFM#7        67
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > show performance

The following example displays the performance information related to the Compression function:

No.	Volume Name	Write IOPS (IOPS)	Host Throughput (MB/s)	Advanced IOPS (IOPS)	Copy Throughput (MB/s)	Data Rate (%)	Compression I/O	Unaligned I/O Rate (%)
1	VOL001	5192	379	0	0	30	3	
2	VOL002	6608	292	0	0	20	1	
3	VOL003	5092	309	0	0	40	5	
4	VOL004	0	0	6608	292	15	10	
5	VOL005	0	0	2012	79	5	100	
6	VOL006	0	0	5608	252	18	0	

## start performance

This command starts the collection of performance information. If performance information is already being collected, then the command terminates with an error message.

### Syntax

```
start performance  
[-interval {30 | 60 | 90 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 210 | 240 | 270 | 300}]
```

### Parameter

**-interval** Optional. This parameter specifies the update interval for performance information. A unit is second. If omitted, the default value (30 seconds) is used.

- |     |                                     |
|-----|-------------------------------------|
| 30  | Updated every 30 seconds (default). |
| 60  | Updated every 60 seconds.           |
| 90  | Updated every 90 seconds.           |
| 120 | Updated every 120 seconds.          |
| 150 | Updated every 150 seconds.          |
| 180 | Updated every 180 seconds.          |
| 210 | Updated every 210 seconds.          |
| 240 | Updated every 240 seconds.          |
| 270 | Updated every 270 seconds.          |
| 300 | Updated every 300 seconds.          |

### Example(s)

The following example starts collecting the performance information at 30 seconds intervals:

```
CLI> start performance -interval 30
```

## stop performance

This command stops the collection of performance information.

### ■ Syntax

```
stop performance [-force]
```

### ■ Parameter

-force      Optional. This parameter forcibly stops the collection of performance information.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example stops the collection of performance information:

```
CLI> stop performance
```

## Performance Tuning Parameters

---

This section explains the commands related to performance tuning parameters.  
The following items can be tuned:

- Setting the RAID group performance tuning parameter
- Setting the performance tuning parameter for the volume (cache control)

## show raid-tuning

This command displays the performance tuning parameters of all the RAID groups.

### Syntax

```
show raid-tuning
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
RAID Level	RAID level
Status	RAID group status
DCMF	DCMF (A multiplying factor which issues disk commands to drives)
Rebuild Priority	Rebuild priority
Drive Access Priority	Drive access priority
Disk Tuning	Indicates whether Disk Tuning is enabled.
Throttle	Ratio of command issues to drives
Ordered Cut	Interval for issuing the "Ordered Queue" command to drives

### Example(s)

The following example displays the performance tuning parameters of all the RAID groups:

```
CLI> show raid-tuning
      RAID Group      RAID     Status          DCMF  Rebuild  Drive Access  Disk   Throttle  Ordered
      No.    Name      Level      Level        Priority  Priority  Access Priority Tuning    Cut
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
      0 RLU#0       RAID1    Available      1 Low    Response  Disable     -      -      -
      1 RAIDGROUP001 RAID1+0  Spare in Use  4 Low    Response  Enable    80%    1024
      2 RAIDGROUP002 RAID5    Available      2 Middle  Throughput  Disable     -      -      -
      3 RAIDGROUP003 RAID5    Available      2 High   -        Enable     -      -      -
      4 RAIDGROUP004 RAID5    SED Locked    2 High   -        Disable     -      -      -
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > set raid-tuning

### set raid-tuning

This command sets the performance tuning parameters for the specified RAID group. For normal operations, the performance tuning parameters do not need to be changed.

#### Syntax

```
set raid-tuning {-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names}  
[-dcmf {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10}] [-rebuild-priority {low | middle | high}]  
[-drive-access-priority {response | throughput}] [-disk-tuning {enable | disable}]  
[-throttle {10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100}] [-ordered-cut {ordered_cut}]
```

#### Parameter

-rg-number or -rg-name

This parameter specifies the RAID group identifiers whose tuning parameters are to be set up. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#).

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

-dcmf

Optional. This parameter specifies the value of Disk Command Multiplying Factor (DCMF). DCMF is a coefficient that increases the limit on the number of outstanding disk commands. Increasing the value of DCMF improves sequential write performance. The default value is one. A DCMF value of two results in the limit on the number of outstanding commands by a factor of two from the default.

1 – 10 Value of Disk Command Multiplying Factor (DCMF)

-rebuild-priority

Optional. This parameter specifies the priority for Rebuild of the relevant RAID group. The same priority is set to all of the RAID groups that are specified with the "-rg-number" parameter or the "-rg-name" parameter.

low Low. Normal priority is given for rebuild, copyback, and redundant copy.

middle Middle. Rebuild, copyback, and redundant copy are given the same priority as host access.

high High. Rebuild, copyback, and redundant copy are given priority over host access.

-drive-access-priority

Optional. This parameter specifies the priority for accesses to the drives. The same priority is set to all of the RAID groups that are specified with the "-rg-number" parameter or the "-rg-name" parameter.

response Response priority mode

throughput Throughput priority mode

-disk-tuning

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable or disable the tuning settings for disk accesses. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. When "disable" is specified, the "-throttle" and "-ordered-cut" parameters cannot be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

enable The tuning settings are enabled. (default)

disable The tuning settings are disabled.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Performance/Tuning > set raid-tuning

**-throttle**    Optional. This parameter specifies the ratio of command issues to disks as a percentage value. This parameter can be specified only when "enable" is specified or is already set for the "-disk-tuning" parameter. Between 10 and 100 (in increments of 10) can be specified. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

10 – 100    Ratio of command issues to disks

**-ordered-cut**

Optional. This parameter specifies the interval for issuing the "Ordered Queue" command to disks. This parameter can be specified only when "enable" is specified or is already set for the "-disk-tuning" parameter. Enter a value between 0 and 65535. The initial value is 400. This parameter cannot be specified if the RAID groups that are specified by the "-rg-number" or "-rg-name" parameter include a RAID group that is configured with SSDs. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

*ordered\_cut* Interval for issuing the "Ordered Queue" command to disks (0 – 65535)  
(initial value is 400)

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the performance tuning parameters for the RAID group named "R1". 10 is specified for DCMF, 80% is specified for throttle, and 1024 is specified for ordered cut:

```
CLI> set raid-tuning -rg-name R1 -dcmf 10 -disk-tuning enable -throttle 80 -ordered-cut 1024
```

The following example sets the value of DCMF to 5 and disables disk tuning for the two RAID group named "R1" and "R2":

```
CLI> set raid-tuning -rg-name R1,R2 -dcmf 5 -disk-tuning disable
```

The following example sets the DCMF to 10, the rebuild priority to "middle", and the drive access priority to the Response priority mode for the RAID group named "R1":

```
CLI> set raid-tuning -rg-name R1 -dcmf 10 -rebuild-priority middle -drive-access-priority response
```

## show cache-parameters

This command displays the cache data control parameters for all the volumes.

### Syntax

```
show cache-parameters
```

### Parameter

No parameters.

### Output

Item name	Description
Exclusive Read Cache (%)	Percentage of the read-only area in the cache memory (0 – 30%)
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Type	Volume type
FP	Force Pre-fetch Mode
PL	Pre-fetch limit
MWC(Range)	Multi Write back Count (Selectable range)
PSDC	Number of times data access (Read I/O) is sequentially performed
SDDC	Number of times data access (Write I/O) is sequentially performed
SS	Value of the parameter for determining data access (Read I/O) sequentiality
SDS	Value of the parameter for determining data access (Write I/O) sequentiality
SPMC	Sequential Parallel Multi I/O Count (SPMC) value
Cache Limit Size (MB)	Upper limit value for the cache memory capacity that can be used by a volume

### Example(s)

The following example displays the cache control parameters:

```
CLI> show cache-parameters
Exclusive Read Cache(%) [10]

Volume          Type    FP   PL    MWC(Range)  PSDC  SDDC  SS    SDS   SPMC Cache Limit
No.   Name           Standard  ON     8      4 (1-4)    4     5    128   128   12      -
0    LV0000          Standard  ON     8      4 (1-4)    4     5    128   128   12      -
3    LogicalVolume003 SDV      OFF    9      1 (1-1)    4     5    128   128   12      2080
4    LogicalVolume004 MVV      OFF    9      1 (1-1)    4     5    128   128   12      32.5

TPP/FTSP        Type    FP   PL    MWC(Range)  PSDC  SDDC  SS    SDS   SPMC Cache Limit
No.   Name           TPP/FTSP  ON     9      4 (1-4)    4     5    128   128   12      -
0    TPP#0          TPP/FTSP  ON     9      4 (1-4)    4     5    128   128   12      -
```

## set cache-parameters

This command sets up the cache control conditions, which are performance tuning parameters, for the specified volume(s). For normal operations, the cache control conditions do not need to be changed.

### Syntax

```
set cache-parameters
{ {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
{-pool-number pool_numbers | -pool-name pool_names}
[-fp {enable | disable}] [-pl pre_fetch] [-mwc multi_writeback_counter]
[-psdc pre_fetch_sequential_detect_count]
[-sddc sequential_dirty_detect_count] [-ss sequential_slope]
[-sds sequential_dirty_slope]
[-cache-limit {off | 32.5mb | 65mb | 130mb | 260mb | 520mb | 1040mb | 2080mb}]
[-spmc spmc_value} | {[{-exclusive-read-cache {0 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30}}]}
```

### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifiers whose performance tuning parameters are to be set up. One or more parameters can be specified at the same time. However, if the specified volume has a UID (or LUN ID) that is inherited from an External LU or an External Volume, the setting cannot be changed. For details, refer to "[Volume Syntax](#)" (page 30).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

-pool-number or -pool-name

This parameter specifies the Thin Provisioning Pool identifiers or Flexible Tier Sub Pool identifiers for the performance tuning parameter. One or more identifiers can be specified. For details, refer to "[Thin Provisioning Pool Syntax](#)" (page 27).

*pool\_numbers*    Thin Provisioning Pool number

*pool\_names*    Thin Provisioning Pool name

-fp    Optional. This parameter specifies the Force Pre-fetch (FP) mode. If this parameter is omitted, the mode is not changed.

enable    Force Pre-fetch mode is enabled.

disable    Force Pre-fetch mode is disabled.

-pl    Optional. This parameter specifies the Pre-fetch Limit value. If this parameter is omitted, the value is not changed.

*pre\_fetch*    Pre-fetch Limit value

## 5. System Settings and Display

Performance/Tuning > set cache-parameters

**-mwc**      Optional. This parameter specifies the Multi Write Back Counter (MWC). Increasing the MWC value improves sequential write performance. If this parameter is omitted, the value is not changed. The applicable range of MWC values depends on the type of RAID group to which the volume belongs. In addition, the value that can be specified in MWC differs depending on the RAID level, the drive configuration, and the Stripe Depth. The allowed range of MWC values can be displayed by using the "show cache-parameters" command.

*multi\_writeback\_counter*    Multi Write Back Counter (MWC)

**-psdc**      Optional. This parameter specifies the number of times data access (Read I/O) is sequentially performed (Prefetch Sequential Detect Count). If omitted, then this parameter is not changed.

*pre\_fetch\_sequential\_detect\_count*    Number of times data access (Read I/O) is sequentially performed

**-sddc**      Optional. This parameter specifies the number of times data access (Write I/O) is sequentially performed (Sequential Dirty Detect Count). If omitted, then this parameter is not changed.

*sequential\_dirty\_detect\_count*    Number of times data access (Write I/O) is sequentially performed

**-ss**      Optional. This parameter specifies the parameter for determining data access (Read I/O) sequentiality (Sequential Slope). If omitted, then this parameter is not changed.

*sequential\_slope*    Parameter for determining data access (Read I/O) sequentiality

**-sds**      Optional. This parameter specifies the parameter for determining data access (Write I/O) sequentiality (Sequential Dirty Slope). If omitted, then this parameter is not changed.

*sequential\_dirty\_slope*    Parameter for determining data access (Write I/O) sequentiality

**-cache-limit**

Optional. This parameter specifies the upper limit value for the cache memory capacity that can be used by a volume. If omitted, then this parameter is not changed. Thin Provisioning Pools cannot be specified.

Volumes that are not LUN Concatenation Volumes and that are the following types can also be specified:

- Standard
- SDV
- SDPV
- MVV

**off**      No upper limit is set.

**32.5mb**    Up to 32.5MB can be used.

**65mb**      Up to 65MB can be used.

**130mb**     Up to 130MB can be used.

**260mb**     Up to 260MB can be used.

**520mb**     Up to 520MB can be used.

**1040mb**    Up to 1,040MB can be used.

**2080mb**    Up to 2,080MB can be used.

**-spmc**      Optional. This parameter specifies the Sequential Parallel Multi I/O Count (SPMC) value. This parameter is used for determining sequential access. The settable range is 0 to 32. Determining sequential access becomes more efficient when the value is bigger.

*spmc\_value*    Sequential Parallel Multi I/O Count (SPMC) value (0 - 32)

-exclusive-read-cache

Optional. This parameter specifies the percentage of the read-only area in the cache memory. Between 0 and 30 percent can be specified. The area that is set as the read-only area will not be usable as write cache. This parameter cannot be specified with other parameters.

- 0 A read-only area is not set.
- 5 The read-only area is set to 5%.
- 10 The read-only area is set to 10%.
- 15 The read-only area is set to 15%.
- 20 The read-only area is set to 20%.
- 25 The read-only area is set to 25%.
- 30 The read-only area is set to 30%.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the Pre-fetch Limit to 20 for the volumes with consecutively numbered identifiers #1 – #8:

```
CLI> set cache-parameters -volume-number 1-8 -pl 20
```

## Event Log Information

---

This section explains the commands for displaying information on events that have occurred in the system.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Event Log Information > show events

## show events

This command displays event information which has occurred in the system. The events displayed can be narrowed down by specifying various parameters. If all the parameters are omitted, all events are displayed. Multiple parameters can be combined.

### ■ Syntax

```
show events [-severity {information | warning | error}] [-cm cm_number] [-count count]
```

### ■ Parameter

**-severity**    Optional. This parameter specifies the severity of the event level. When severity is specified, the display is restricted to information about events of the specified severity level. Only one level can be specified at the same time. If omitted, all the events of the severity levels are displayed.

information    Information level

warning    Warning level

error    Error level

**-cm**    Optional. This parameter specifies the controller module (CM) number. Only events for the specified CM are displayed. If omitted, events of all CMs are displayed.

*cm\_number*    CM number

0    CM#0 (DX8100 S4 only)

1    CM#1 (DX8100 S4 only)

*wx*    CE#*w*-CM#*x* (DX8900 S4 only)

"*w*" is the controller enclosure (CE) number, "*x*" is the controller module (CM) number.

Example: "01" indicates CE#0-CM#1

For the controller enclosure number, the range that the value can be specified with is 0 to b (hex).

For the controller module number, 0 or 1 can be specified.

**-count**    Optional. This parameter limits how many events are displayed, selecting from the latest event and working backward. If omitted, all the events are displayed.

*count*    Number of events that are displayed

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss	The date and time which the events have occurred
Information, Warning, or Error	Event severity and event details For the event details, an abbreviation of the event type (T: Test I: Information J/W: Warning P/E: Error M: Maintenance R: Recovery), the event code (fixed eight-digit code), and the event message are displayed.

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Event Log Information > show events

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the event information for Error level:

```
CLI> show events -severity error
2008-01-01 12:00:05    Error          P 01000000 Controller module #0 Fault
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Event Log Information > delete events

### delete events

This command deletes all the events that have been recorded in the system.

#### ■ Syntax

```
delete events
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes all the event information:

```
CLI> delete events
```

## Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information

---

This section explains the commands that are related to displaying the maintenance operation and maintenance information for the device.

## Remote Directory

This section explains the commands related to displaying a directory in an FTP server.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show remote-dir

### show remote-dir

This command displays a list of files on the specified FTP server. A user account is required to access the FTP server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show remote-dir -port {maintenance | remote} -server server_name
-user login_user-account-dir dir_path
```

#### ■ Parameter

-port	This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
	maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
	remote          Remote port (RMT port)
-server	This parameter specifies the FTP server name to display a directory. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
	Example: -server 192.168.1.20
	Example: -server foo.bar
	<i>server_name</i> FTP server name
-user	This parameter specifies the user name that can access the FTP server. This command displays a password prompt.
	<i>login_user-account</i> User name
-dir	This parameter specifies the directory path name to be displayed.
	<i>dir_path</i> Directory path name

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	File name
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss	Created date
yyyyyyyy	File size

#### Note

The output form depends on the FTP server environment.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the file list of the directory named "/tmp" on the server named "ftp.a.com" that is connected via the maintenance port (MNT port). The user name for the FTP server is "profile1":

```
CLI> show remote-dir -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -dir /tmp -user profile1
Password :
v11110-0000.01.bin 2011-01-10 10:20:30 1048756
v11110-0000.02.bin 2011-01-10 10:20:30 1048756
```

## Controller Firmware

---

This section explains the commands related to the maintenance of controller firmware.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show controller-firmware

### show controller-firmware

This command displays the version of the controller firmware stored in the flash memory and Bootup and Utility Device (BUD).

#### ■ Syntax

```
show controller-firmware
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Slot	EC slot number This item is not displayed if the controller firmware stored in the EC is in the "Invalid" state.
EC#1	EC slot 1
EC#2	EC slot 2
Version	Version of the controller firmware stored in the EC or BUD If the controller firmware is not registered in the BUD, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Active	Indicates whether the controller firmware stored in the EC is currently running or is activated at the next power cycle. For all other cases, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Current	The controller firmware is currently running.
Next	The controller firmware is activated at the next power cycle.
Generation	Generation (1 to 3) of the controller firmware stored in the BUD
Date	Date when the controller firmware was registered in the BUD If a controller firmware is not registered in the BUD, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Register	If a controller firmware is registered in the flash memory, information on the EC that stores the controller firmware is displayed. If a controller firmware is not registered in the flash memory, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
EC#1	A controller firmware is registered in the firmware area (EC#1).
EC#2	A controller firmware is registered in the firmware area (EC#2).
Status	Status of the controller firmware stored in the BUD
Valid	A controller firmware can be applied.
Firmware Registering (Receiving)	A controller firmware is being imported using the remote support.
Firmware Registering (Suspending)	The import of the controller firmware using the remote support has been suspended.
Not Registered	A controller firmware has not been registered.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show controller-firmware

### ■ Example(s)

The following examples display the controller firmware version:

```
CLI> show controller-firmware
<Flash memory Information>
Slot Version      Active
-----
EC#1 V11L10-0000 Current/Next
EC#2 V11L10-0000 - 

<BUD Information>
Generation Version      Date      Register Status
-----
1  V11L10-0000 2018-12-01 EC#1/EC#2 Valid
2  V11L20-0000 2019-01-06 -           Valid
```

## Log

Various incidents are recorded in the system logs (component failures, environment conditions, user operations warning incidents etc.). This section explains the commands related to exporting logs.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export log

### export log

This command exports the log files that are stored in the system to the specified FTP server.

#### Syntax

```
export log -port {maintenance | remote | fst}
-server server_name-user login_user_account-filename filename
[-starting-time YYYYMMDD-hhmmss-ending-time YYYYMMDD-hhmmss | -last-24h {enable | disable} |
-last {24h | week | month}]
[-only-disk-log {enable | disable}]
[-iom-log {enable | disable}]
[-customer-info {enable | disable}] [-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

#### Parameter

- port** This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
- |                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>maintenance</i> | Maintenance port (MNT port) |
| <i>remote</i>      | Remote port (RMT port)      |
| <i>fst</i>         | FST port                    |
- server** This parameter specifies the name of the FTP server that will receive the logs. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- Example: -server 192.168.1.20  
Example: -server foo.bar
- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>server_name</i> | FTP server name |
|--------------------|-----------------|
- user** This parameter specifies the user name that can access the FTP server. This command displays a password prompt.
- |                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| <i>login_user_account</i> | User name |
|---------------------------|-----------|
- filename** This parameter specifies the name of the log file to be stored on the FTP server. If the same filename already exists, it is overwritten.
- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>filename</i> | Log file name |
|-----------------|---------------|
- The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced with their corresponding values during file creation.  
If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.
- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| <i>%s</i> | Serial number of the system                  |
| Example:  | /tmp/%s-log.bin -> /tmp/123456789012-log.bin |
| <i>%d</i> | Current date                                 |
| Example:  | /tmp/%d-log.bin -> /tmp/20080819-log.bin     |

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export log

%t	Current time Example: <code>/tmp/%t-log.bin -&gt; /tmp/144855-log.bin</code>
%%	Percent character Example: <code>/tmp/log%%.bin -&gt; /tmp/log%.bin</code>

#### -starting-time

Optional. Log entries can be restricted to a specific time range. This parameter specifies the starting time. The format is "YYYYMMDD-hhmmss". "YYYY" is the number of the year (a four-digit number), "MM" is the number of the month (01 – 12), "DD" is the number of the day (01 – 31), "hh" is the hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23), "mm" is the minute (00 – 59), and "ss" is the second (00 – 59). If omitted, the start time is the earliest entry (except when the "-last-24h" parameter is specified).

Note that both the starting time and ending time must be specified. If these parameters are specified, the "-last-24h" parameter and the "-last" parameter cannot be specified.

*YYYYMMDD-hhmmss* Starting time of the log entries

#### -ending-time

Optional. Log entries can be restricted to a specific time range. This parameter specifies the ending time. The format is "YYYYMMDD-hhmmss". "YYYY" is the number of the year (a four-digit number), "MM" is the number of the month (01 – 12), "DD" is the number of the day (01 – 31), "hh" is the hour in 24-hour time (00 – 23), "mm" is the minute (00 – 59), and "ss" is the second (00 – 59). If omitted, the start time is the latest entry (except when the "-last-24h" parameter is specified).

Note that both the starting time and ending time must be specified. If these parameters are specified, the "-last-24h" parameter and the "-last" parameter cannot be specified.

*YYYYMMDD-hhmmss* Ending time of the log entries

#### -last-24h

Optional. Log entries can be restricted to the last 24 hours. If this parameter is specified, the "-starting-time" parameter, the "-ending-time" parameter, and the "-last" parameter cannot be specified. If this parameter is omitted, this function is not used.

enable Log entries are restricted to the last 24 hours.

disable Log entries are not restricted to the last 24 hours.

#### -last

Optional. Log entries can be restricted to the log with most recent command execution. If this parameter is specified, the "-starting-time" parameter, the "-ending-time" parameter, and the "-last-24h" parameter cannot be specified. If this parameter is omitted, this function is not used.

24h Log entries are restricted to the last 24 hours. This is the same as if "-last-24h enable" is specified.

week Log entries are restricted to the last week.

month Log entries are restricted to the last month.

#### -only-disk-log

Optional. Log entries are restricted to drive (disk and SSD) related items. The file size of the log can be kept small by specifying this parameter only when drive related logs are required. The default value is "disable".

enable Log entries other than for the I/O module are restricted to drive related items. The I/O module log depends on the specification of the "-iom-log" parameter.

disable Log entries are not restricted to drive related items (default).

## 5. System Settings and Display

### Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export log

- iom-log      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the I/O module logs are included. If omitted, I/O module logs are included.
  - enable      The I/O module logs are included.
  - disable      The I/O module logs are not included.
- customer-info      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to include customer information in the exported logs. If this parameter is omitted, customer information is included in the logs.
  - enable      Customer information is included in the logs.
  - disable      Customer information is excluded from the logs.
- indicator      Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, this function is enabled.
  - enable      Progress indicator is displayed.
  - disable      Progress indicator is not displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example exports logs to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port). The user name is "profile1" and the output filename is "/tmp/log".  
The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export log -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/log  
Password :  
exporting /tmp/log to ftp.a.com  
complete
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.  
The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export log -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/log -indicator disable  
Password :
```

## Panic Dump

---

The system stores a panic dump when crashing. This section explains the commands related to exporting the panic dump.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show panic-dump

### show panic-dump

This command displays a list of the panic dumps that are stored in the system.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show panic-dump
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
No.	Panic dump number
Module	Panic dump module name
Panic Date	Panic date
Panic Code	Panic code
Data Size	Panic dump size (unit: byte)
Panic Message	Messages
Error Code	Error code for the error that occurred when panic dump information is displayed. (When no error occurs, a hyphen [-] is displayed.)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the panic dumps:

```
CLI> show panic-dump
No. Module      Panic Date      Panic Code Data Size      Panic Message      Error Code
--- -----
 1 CM#0        2008-07-10 12:15:10 0x12345678    286331153 EXC:Data Abort      -
 2 CM#1        2008-07-14 12:35:10 0x12345678    286331153 EXC:Data Abort      -
 3 CM#1 CA#0    2009-01-23 12:34:10 0x12345678    134217728 EXC:Data Abort      -
```

The following example displays a list of the panic dumps (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show panic-dump
No. Module      Panic Date      Panic Code Data Size      Panic Message      Error Code
--- -----
 1 CE#0 CM#0    2008-07-10 12:15:10 0x12345678    286331153 EXC:Data Abort      -
 2 CE#3 CM#1    2008-07-14 12:35:10 0x12345678    286331153 EXC:Data Abort      -
 3 CE#3 CM#2 CA#3 2009-01-23 12:34:10 0x12345678    134217728 EXC:Data Abort      -
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export panic-dump

### export panic-dump

This command exports a panic dump file stored in the system to the specified FTP server. The panic dump information, including the panic dump number, can be displayed by using the "show panic-dump" command.

#### ■ Syntax

```
export panic-dump -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
-user login_user_account-filename filename
-dump-number dump_number
[-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-port	This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
	maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
	remote          Remote port (RMT port)
	fst              FST port
-server	This parameter specifies the FTP server name which will store the panic dump. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
	Example: -server 192.168.1.20
	Example: -server foo.bar
	<i>server_name</i> FTP server name
-user	This parameter specifies the user name that can access the FTP server. This command displays a password prompt.
	<i>login_user_account</i> User name
-filename	This parameter specifies the name of the panic dump file to be stored on the FTP server. If the same file-name already exists, it is overwritten.
	<i>filename</i> Panic dump file name
	The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced with their corresponding values during file creation.
	If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.
	% <i>s</i> Serial number of the system
	Example:
	/tmp/%s-log.zlg -> /tmp/123456789012-log.zlg
	% <i>d</i> Current date
	Example:
	/tmp/%d-log.zlg -> /tmp/20080819-log.zlg
	% <i>t</i> Current time
	Example:
	/tmp/%t-log.zlg -> /tmp/144855-log.zlg
	% <i>%</i> Percent character
	Example:
	/tmp/log%%%.zlg -> /tmp/log%.zlg

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export panic-dump

### -dump-number

One or more panic dumps can be stored in the system. They can be displayed by using the "show panic-dump" command. This parameter specifies the panic dump number to be exported.

*dump\_number*      Panic dump number

### -indicator

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, this function is enabled.

enable      Progress indicator is displayed.

disable      Progress indicator is not displayed.

## ■ Example(s)

The following example exports panic dump #1 to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port).

The user name is "profile1" and the output filename is "/tmp/dump.zlg".

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export panic-dump -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/dump.zlg -dump-number 1
Password :
Panic Dump No.1 CM#0 2008-07-10 12:15:10 0x12345678 286331153 EXC:Data Abort
      selected panic dump details in the same format as "show panic-dump" command.
exporting /tmp/dump.zlg to ftp.a.com
complete.
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export panic-dump -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/dump.zlg -dump-number 1 -indicator disable
Password :
```

## Configuration Information

---

Configuration information can be stored externally in a file. This section explains the commands related to manipulating configuration information.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show config-information

### show config-information

This command displays a list of the configuration information that is stored in the system.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show config-information
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Information	Configuration information
Date	Configuration date (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss) If the system has no configuration information, a hyphen (-) is displayed here.
Note	Other information

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the configuration information:

```
CLI > show config-information
Information      Date          Note
----- - -----
Two Time Before - -
One Time Before 2008-07-20 23:11:00 aabbccdd
Latest           2008-07-22 15:26:45 -
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export config-information

### export config-information

This command exports the configuration information stored in the system to the specified FTP server.

#### ■ Syntax

```
export config-information -port {maintenance | remote | fst} -server server_name
-user login_user_account-filename filename-data {latest | one-before | two-before}
[-indicator {enable | disable}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-port	This parameter specifies which Ethernet port is used to connect to the FTP server.
	maintenance      Maintenance port (MNT port)
	remote          Remote port (RMT port)
	fst              FST port
-server	This parameter specifies the FTP server name that will store the configuration information. The server name format is IPv4 standard notation (a base 256 "d.d.d.d" string) or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
	Example: -server 192.168.1.20
	Example: -server foo.bar
	<i>server_name</i> FTP server name
-user	This parameter specifies the user name that can access the FTP server. This command displays a password prompt.
	<i>login_user_account</i> User name
-filename	This parameter specifies configuration information filename to be stored. If the same filename already exists, it is overwritten.
	<i>filename</i> Configuration information filename
	The following conversion specifications, which begin with a percent character, are replaced with their corresponding value at the time of execution. If other conversion strings are specified, this command terminates abnormally with an error message.
	% <i>s</i> Serial number of the system
	Example:
	/tmp/% <i>s</i> -log.cfg -> /tmp/123456789012-log.cfg
	% <i>d</i> Current date
	Example:
	/tmp/% <i>d</i> -log.cfg -> /tmp/20080819-log.cfg
	% <i>t</i> Current time
	Example:
	/tmp/% <i>t</i> -log.cfg -> /tmp/144855-log.cfg
	% <i>%</i> Percent character
	Example:
	/tmp/log%%.cfg -> /tmp/log%.cfg

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > export config-information

-data	This parameter specifies which configuration information will be exported.
latest	This parameter specifies the latest configuration information in the system.
one-before	This parameter specifies the second-latest configuration information in the system.
two-before	This parameter specifies the third-latest configuration information in the system.
-indicator	Optional. This parameter specifies whether the progress indicator is displayed. If omitted, this function is enabled.
enable	Progress indicator is displayed.
disable	Progress indicator is not displayed.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example exports the latest configuration information to the FTP server named "ftp.a.com" using the maintenance port (MNT port). The user name for the FTP server is "profile1" and the filename is "/tmp/config.cfg".

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export config-information -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/config.cfg -data latest
Password :
exporting /tmp/config.cfg to ftp.a.com
complete.
```

The following example is the same as above, except that the progress indicator is not displayed.

The entered password in "Password :" is not displayed:

```
CLI> export config-information -port maintenance -server ftp.a.com -user profile1 -filename /tmp/config.cfg -data latest
-indicator disable
Password :
```

## Error Information

---

This section explains the commands related to the error information of disks and ports.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show disk-error

### show disk-error

This command displays the details of disk errors.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show disk-error
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
E	An error sign (*). This shows that there are some errors for both ports.
Disk Location	Disk number
Status	Disk status
Port	Disk port number
Media Error	Media error count
Drive Error	Drive error count
Drive-Recovered Error	Drive recovered error count
SMART Error	SMART event count
I/O Timeout	I/O timeout count
Link Error	Link error count
Check-Code Error	Check code error count

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the disk error information:

E	Disk Location	Status	Port	Media Error	Drive Error	Drive-Recovered Error	SMART Error	I/O Timeout	Link Error	Check-Code Error
*	CE#0-Disk#0	Rebuild/Copyback	Port#0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
			Port#1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
*	CE#0-Disk#1	Available(Predictive Failure)	Port#0	2	0	0	1	0	0	0
			Port#1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	DE#04-Disk#0	Rebuild/Copyback	Port#0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
			Port#1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > clear disk-error

### clear disk-error

This command clears the disk error information. It is possible to clear the error information of specific disks.

#### ■ Syntax

```
clear disk-error [-disks disks]
```

#### ■ Parameter

-disks      Optional. This parameter specifies the disks to clear the error information from. One or more disks can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to "[Drive Syntax \(page 25\)](#)". If this parameter is omitted, the error information for all the disks is cleared.

*disks*      Disk

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example clears the error information for all the disks:

```
CLI> clear disk-error
```

The following example clears only the error information for disk#1 in the CE:

```
CLI> clear disk-error -disks 001
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show port-error

### show port-error

This command displays the error details of the SAS expander ports (the interfaces linking controllers and drive enclosures). There are eight ports for each expander module and four PHYs for each port.

#### Syntax

```
show port-error
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
Expander	Expander type
Port	Port number
PHY	PHY number
Status	Link status
Invalid Dword	Invalid Dword count
Disparity Error	Disparity Error count
Loss of Dword Synchronization	Loss of Dword Synchronization count
PHY Reset Problem	PHY Reset Problem count

#### Example(s)

The following example displays the error details of the SAS expander ports (for the DX8100 S4).

```
CLI> show port-error
      Expander   Port    PHY     Status  Invalid Dword  Disparity Error  Loss of Dword Synchronization  PHY Reset Problem
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
CM#0 EXP  Port#0  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          Port#1  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          Port#2  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          Port#3  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          Port#5  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
CM#1 EXP  Port#0  PHY#0  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#1  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#2  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
          PHY#3  Link Up       0          0            0                  0
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show port-error

		Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		Port#2	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		Port#3	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		Port#5	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CM#0	IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CM#0	IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CM#1	IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CM#1	IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#10	IOM#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#10	IOM#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show port-error

The following example displays the error details of the SAS expander ports (for the DX8900 S4):

CLI> show port-error								
Expander	Port	PHY	Status	Invalid Dword	Disparity Error	Loss of Synchronization	Dword	PHY Reset Problem
CE#0 CM#0 EXP	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#2	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#3	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#5	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#6	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
CE#0 CM#1 EXP	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#2	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#3	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#5	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#6	PHY#0	Link Down	-	-	-	-	-
		PHY#1	Link Down	-	-	-	-	-
		PHY#2	Link Down	-	-	-	-	-
		PHY#3	Link Down	-	-	-	-	-
CE#1 CM#0 EXP	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#2	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#3	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#5	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
	Port#6	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0	0

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show port-error

CE#1 CM#1 EXP	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#2	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#3	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#5	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#6	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#0 CM#0 IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#0 CM#0 IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#0 CM#1 IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#0 CM#1 IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#1 CM#0 IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#1 CM#0 IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
CE#1 CM#1 IOC#0	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
	Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
		PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show port-error

CE#1	CM#1	IOC#1	Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
			Port#1	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#04	IOM#0		Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#08	IOM#1		Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#14	IOM#0		Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0
DE#18	IOM#0		Port#0	PHY#0	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#1	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#2	Link Up	0	0	0	0
				PHY#3	Link Up	0	0	0	0

## Bad Data Information in Volumes

---

This section explains the commands for resolving the bad data information of volumes.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information > show bad-data-info

### show bad-data-info

This command displays either the bad data information for all of the volumes or for the specified volume(s).

#### Syntax

```
show bad-data-info  
[{-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}]
```

#### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to display bad data. One or more parameters can be specified. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers* Volume number

*volume\_names* Volume name

#### Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Volume Type	Volume type
Error LBA	Start offset LBA of the bad data
LBA Count	Number of LBAs of the bad data
Error Type	Error type

#### Example(s)

The following example displays bad data information for volume number #1:

```
CLI> show bad-data-info -volume-number 1  
Volume No. Name  
No. Name  
-----  
1 VOL001
```

Volume	Type	Error LBA	LBA Count	Error Type
Standard	0x0123456789ABCDEF	0xFEDCBA9876543210	Contiguity	

The following example displays bad data information for the volumes named "VOL001" and "VOL012":

```
CLI> show bad-data-info -volume-name VOL001, VOL012  
Volume No. Name  
No. Name  
-----  
1 VOL001  
12 VOL012
```

Volume	Type	Error LBA	LBA Count	Error Type
Standard	0x0123456789ABCDEF	0xFEDCBA9876543210	Contiguity	
Standard	0x0000000076543210	0x0000000089ABCDEF	Dispersion	

The following example displays all the volumes with bad data information:

```
CLI> show bad-data-info  
Volume No. Name  
No. Name  
-----  
1 VOL001  
3 VOL003  
10 VOL010
```

Volume	Type	Error LBA	LBA Count	Error Type
Standard	0x0123456789ABCDEF	0xFEDCBA9876543210	Contiguity	
MVV	0x0000000089ABCDEF	0x0000000076543210	Contiguity	
Standard	0x0000000076543210	0x0000000089ABCDEF	Dispersion	

# Utility

---

This section explains commands related to miscellaneous system utility functions.

## Diagnostic Utilities

---

This section explains the commands related to system diagnostics.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show diagnosis

### show diagnosis

This command displays the results of the diagnostic tests that have been run on the disks or RAID groups.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show diagnosis -type {disks [-disks {all | disks}] |  
raid-groups [-rg-number rg_numbers | -rg-name rg_names]}
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-type** This parameter specifies the type of diagnostic results to be displayed. Only one type can be displayed by a single command.

disks The diagnostic results of disks

raid-groups The diagnostic results of RAID groups

**-rg-number or -rg-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the RAID group identifiers to be displayed and "raid-groups" must be specified together with "-type". One or more RAID groups can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["RAID Group Syntax" \(page 29\)](#). If omitted, all the RAID groups are selected.

*rg\_numbers* RAID group number

*rg\_names* RAID group name

**-disks** Optional. This parameter specifies the disks to display more detailed diagnostic results of the disks and "raid-groups" must be specified together with "-type". One or more disks can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Drive Syntax" \(page 25\)](#). If omitted, a summary list of all the disks is displayed.

all All the disks

*disks* Disk

#### ■ Output

- Summary results of the disk diagnosis

Item name	Description
Diagnosis Status	Diagnosis status
Progress	Diagnosis progress
Method	Diagnosis mode
Diagnosis Count	Loop count for diagnosis
Location	Disk number
Diagnosis Status	Executing status
Result	Diagnosis result

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show diagnosis

- Summary results of the RAID diagnosis

Item name	Description
Diagnosis Status	Diagnosis status
Progress	Diagnosis progress
Recovery Mode	Diagnosis mode (ON: Auto Error Recovery, OFF: No Recovery)
RAID Group	RAID group identifiers
No.	RAID group number
Name	RAID group name
Diagnosis Status	Executing status
Result	Diagnosis result

- Details of the disk diagnosis

Item name	Description
Location	Disk number
Diagnosis Status	Executing status
Result	Diagnosis result
Progress	Diagnosis progress
Diagnosed Disk LBA Count	Diagnosed LBA
Total Disk LBA Count	Total LBAs of the disks

- Error Information

Item name	Description
Hard Error Count	Detected hard error count
SMART Error Count	Detected SMART count
Compare Error Count	Detected data compare error count
Medium Error Count	Detected medium error count
Recovered Error Count	Detected recovered error count
No Sense Error Count	Detected no sense error count
Interface Error Count	Detected interface error count
Other Error Count	Detected other error count

- Medium Error Details

Item name	Description
Head#0-#7	Detected medium error in the head#0 – #7 (except SENSE=01/0300 and 01/1501)
Other Error Count	Detected medium error in others (target is SENSE=01/0300 and 01/1501)

- Recovered Error Details

Item name	Description
Head#0-#7	Detected recovered error in the head#0 – #7 (except SENSE=03/1100 and 01/1300)
Other Error Count	Detected recovered error in others (target is SENSE=03/1100 and 01/1300)

- Details of the RAID diagnosis

Item name	Description
RAID Group Number	RAID group number
RAID Group Name	RAID group name

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show diagnosis

Item name	Description
Recovery Mode	Diagnosis mode (ON: Auto Error Recovery, OFF: No Recovery)
Diagnosis Status	Executing status
Result	Diagnosis result
Progress	Diagnosis progress
Diagnosed RAID Group LBA Count	Diagnosed LBA
Total RAID Group LBA Count	Total LBAs of the disks

### - Error Information

(Succeeded / Failed in Restoration)

Item name	Description
Compare Error	Compare error counts for restoration succeeded and restoration failed cases
Medium Error	Medium error counts for restoration succeeded and restoration failed cases
CRC Error	CRC error counts for restoration succeeded and restoration failed cases
Block ID Error Count	Block ID error counts for restoration succeeded and restoration failed cases
Bad Data Flag Error	Bad data flag error counts for restoration succeeded and restoration failed cases

### - Error Details

(Detailed error information for cases when a restoration fails)

Item name	Description
Volume Number	The volume number in which errors occurred.
Volume Name	The volume name in which errors occurred.
Status	Recovering status (Error status). Medium Error, CRC Error, etc.
Volume LBA	The LBA of the volume in which errors occurred
RAID Group LBA	The LBA of the RAID group in which errors occurred
Error Stripe No.	The stripe number in which errors occurred
Location	The disk number in which errors occurred
Error Disk LBA	The LBA of the disk in which errors occurred

## ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the summary results of the disk diagnosis:

```
CLI>show diagnosis -type disks
Disk Diagnosis
Diagnosis Status : Diagnosing
Progress        : 90%
Method          : Read Only
Diagnosis Count : 5/10

Disk List
Location      Diagnosis Status Result
CE-Disk#0     Complete       Normal
DE#1-Disk#0   Complete       Normal
DE#1-Disk#10  Diagnosing    Normal
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show diagnosis

The following example displays the summary results of the RAID diagnosis:

```
CLI> show diagnosis -type raid-groups
RAID Group Diagnosis
Diagnosis Status : Diagnosing
Progress : 90%
Recovery Mode : Enable(Except compare error)

RAID Group List
RAID Group      Diagnosis      Result
No.   Name       Status
-----  -----
 1 RLU#1        Diagnosing    Normal
 1 RLU000       Complete     Normal
12 RLU002       Complete     Normal
13 RLU003       Complete     Normal
14 RLU004        Diagnosing  Normal
```

The following example displays the detailed results of the disk diagnosis:

```
CLI>show diagnosis -type disks -disks 100
Location : DE#1-Disk#0
Diagnosis Status : Diagnosing
Result : Normal
Progress : 10%
Diagnosed Disk LBA Count : 0x0000000008803072
Total Disk LBA Count : 0x0000000025182720

Error Information
Hard Error Count : 0
SMART Error Count : 0
Compare Error Count : 0
Medium Error Count : 0
Recovered Error Count : 0
No Sense Count : 0
Interface Error Count : 0
Other Error Count : 0

Medium Error Detail Information
Head#0 Head#1 Head#3 Head#4 Head#5 Head#6 Head#7 Other Error Count
 0     0     0     0     0     0     0           0

Recovered Error Detail Information
Head#0 Head#1 Head#3 Head#4 Head#5 Head#6 Head#7 Other Error Count
 0     0     0     0     0     0     0           0
```

The following example displays the detailed results of the RAID diagnosis:

```
CLI> show diagnosis -type raid-group -rg-name RGP001
RAID Group Number : 0
RAID Group Name : RGP001
Recovery Mode : ON
Diagnosis Status : Diagnosing
Result : Normal
Progress : 34%
Diagnosed RAID Group LBA Count : 0x0000000008803072
Total RAID Group LBA Count : 0x0000000025182720
Succeeded in Restoration : 0
Failed in Restoration : 0

Error Information
Error      Succeeded / Failed (in Restoration)
Compare Error : 0 / 0
Medium Error : 0 / 1
CRC Error : 0 / 0
Block ID Error : 0 / 0
Bad Data Flag Error : 0 / 0

Error Detail Information(1/1)
Volume Number : 1023
Volume Name : VOL-001
Status : Recovered Medium Error
Volume LBA : 0x0000000010000000
RAID Group LBA : 0x0000000010000000
Error Strip No. : 0x00000000
Location : DE#1-Disk#10
Error Disk LBA : 0x00000100
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show diagnosis

---

### LED

This section explains the commands related to the control of the LEDs.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show led

### show led

This command displays the status of the LEDs in each enclosure and each module.

#### Syntax

```
show led
```

#### Parameter

No parameters.

#### Output

Item name	Description
Controller Enclosure Panel	LED status of the CE panel-unit
Controller Enclosure Controller Module	LED status of the CM#x
System Operation Panel	LED status of the FE operation panel (only for the DX8900 S4)
Front End Router	LED status of the FRT (only for the DX8900 S4)
Drive Enclosure Panel	LED status of the DE panel-unit
Drive Enclosure I/O Module	LED status of the I/O#x
Drive Enclosure Fan Expander Module	LED status of the FEM#x (The LED state for FEM#1 is shown regardless of the number of CMS)
CE-Disk	LED status of the CE#x-Disk#y
DE-Disk	LED status of the DE#xx-Disk#y

#### Example(s)

The following example displays the status of the LEDs for all components (for the DX8100 S4):

```
CLI> show led
Controller Enclosure #0
Panel [OFF]
Controller Module #0 [OFF]
Controller Module #1 [ON ]
Drive Enclosure #00
Panel [ON ]
I/O Module #0 [ON ]
I/O Module #1 [ON ]
Drive Enclosure #10
Panel [OFF]
I/O Module #0 [OFF]
I/O Module #1 [OFF]
CE-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [OFF] #3 [OFF] #4 [ - ] #5 [ - ] #6 [ - ] #7 [ - ] #8 [ - ] #9 [ - ] #10[ - ] #11[ - ]
#12[ - ] #13[ - ] #14[ - ] #15[ - ] #16[ - ] #17[ - ] #18[ - ] #19[ - ] #20[ - ] #21[ - ] #22[ - ] #23[ - ]
DE#10-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [ON ] #3 [OFF] #4 [ON ] #5 [ - ] #6 [ - ] #7 [ - ] #8 [ - ] #9 [ - ] #10[ - ] #11[ - ]
#12[ON ] #13[OFF] #14[ON ] #15[ON ] #16[ - ] #17[ - ] #18[ - ] #19[ - ] #20[ - ] #21[ - ] #22[ - ] #23[OFF]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show led

The following example displays the status of the LEDs for all components (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> show led
Controller Enclosure #0
Panel [ON ]
Controller Module #0 [ON ]
Controller Module #1 [ON ]
Controller Enclosure #1
Panel [ON ]
Controller Module #0 [ON ]
Controller Module #1 [ON ]
Frontend Enclosure
System Operation Panel [ON ]
Front End Router #0 [ON ]
Front End Router #1 [ON ]
Front End Router #2 [OFF]
Front End Router #3 [ON ]
Drive Enclosure #00
Panel [OFF]
I/O Module #0 [OFF]
I/O Module #1 [OFF]
Drive Enclosure #10
Panel [OFF]
I/O Module #0 [OFF]
I/O Module #1 [OFF]
CE#0-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [OFF] #3 [OFF] #4 [ - ] #5 [ - ] #6 [ - ] #7 [ - ] #8 [ - ] #9 [ - ] #10[ - ] #11[ - ]
#12[ - ] #13[ - ] #14[ - ] #15[ - ] #16[ - ] #17[ - ] #18[ - ] #19[ - ] #20[ - ] #21[ - ] #22[ - ] #23[ - ]
DE#04-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [ON ] #3 [OFF] #4 [ON ] #5 [ - ] #6 [ - ] #7 [ - ] #8 [ - ] #9 [ - ] #10[ - ] #11[ - ]
#12[ON ] #13[OFF] #14[ON ] #15[ON ] #16[ - ] #17[ - ] #18[ - ] #19[ - ] #20[ - ] #21[ - ] #22[ - ] #23[OFF]
DE#08-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [ON ] #3 [OFF] #4 [ON ] #5 [ON ] #6 [ON ] #7 [ON ] #8 [ON ] #9 [ON ] #10[ON ] #11[ON ]
#12[ON ] #13[OFF] #14[ON ] #15[ON ] #16[ - ] #17[ - ] #18[ - ] #19[ - ] #20[ - ] #21[ - ] #22[ - ] #23[OFF]
DE#0C-Disk #0 [ON ] #1 [ON ] #2 [ON ] #3 [OFF] #4 [ON ] #5 [ON ] #6 [ON ] #7 [ON ] #8 [ON ] #9 [ON ] #10[ON ] #11[ON ]
#12[ON ] #13[OFF] #14[ON ] #15[ON ] #16[ON ] #17[ON ] #18[ON ] #19[ON ] #20[ON ] #21[ON ] #22[ON ] #23[ON ]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > set led

### set led

This command turns the specified LED(s) either on or off.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set led -target {ce | fe | frt | opnl | de | disk}
[-ce enclosure_number | -frt frt_number | -de enclosure_number | -disks disks] -led {on | off}
```

#### ■ Parameter

-target	This parameter specifies which enclosure will have all of the LEDs turned on or off. When "-target disks" is specified, the "-disks" parameter must also be specified.
ce	All components in the controller enclosure (CE)
opnl	System operation panel (DX8900 S4 only)
fe	All components in the frontend enclosure (FE) (DX8900 S4 only)
frt	Front End Router (FRT) (DX8900 S4 only)
de	All components in the drive enclosure
disk	Only the specified drives
-ce	Optional. This parameter specifies the controller enclosure for turning all the LEDs on or off (and is only supported in the DX8900 S4). Only one controller enclosure can be specified. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Controller Enclosure Syntax</a> (page 25)". If "ce" is specified in "-target", this parameter must be specified.
	<i>enclosure_number</i> Controller enclosure number
-frt	Optional. This parameter specifies the Front End Router (FRT) with a range of 0 to 3 for turning all the LEDs on or off (and is only supported in the DX8900 S4). Only one FRT can be specified. If "frt" is specified in "-target", this parameter must be specified.
	<i>frt_number</i> Front End Router number
-de	Optional. This parameter specifies the drive enclosure for turning all the LEDs on or off. Only one drive enclosure can be specified. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Drive Enclosure Syntax</a> (page 25)". This parameter must be specified when "de" is specified for the "-target" parameter.
	<i>enclosure_number</i> Drive enclosure number
-disks	Optional. This parameter specifies which drives LED are turned on or off. Multiple drives can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to " <a href="#">Drive Syntax</a> (page 25)". This parameter must be specified when "disk" is specified for the "-target" parameter.
	<i>disks</i> Drive
-led	This parameter specifies whether the specified LEDs are turned on or off.
on	Turn on the LED
off	Turn off the LED

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > set led

### ■ Example(s)

The following example turns on the LEDs of disk#1 and disk#2 in DE#1:

```
CLI> set led -target disk -disks 001,002 -led on
```

The following example turns on the LEDs of all the components in DE#1:

```
CLI> set led -target de -de 1 -led on
```

The following example turns on the LEDs of all the components in the FE (for the DX8900 S4):

```
CLI> set led -target fe
```

## Other Notification

---

This section explains the commands used for setting parameters regarding other event notification functions.

## show event-parameters

This command displays the parameters set by the "set event-parameters" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
show event-parameters
```

### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Blink Panel Fault LED	Indicates whether the Panel Fault LED is blinked when the system status is warning
Redundant Copy Fault LED	Indicates whether the Fault LED lights up when the redundant copy is complete

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the event parameters:

```
CLI> show event-parameters
Blink Panel Fault LED [Enable ]
Redundant Copy Fault LED [Enable ]
```

## set event-parameters

This command specifies the notifications of an event other than the notifications specified in the "set event-notification" command.

### ■ Syntax

```
set event-parameters [-blink-panel-led {enable | disable}] [-redundant-copy-led {enable | disable}]
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -blink-panel-led

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the Panel FAULT LED will blink when the system is in the "warning" status.

enable      The Panel FAULT LED will blink.

disable     The Panel FAULT LED will not blink.

#### -redundant-copy-led

Optional. This parameter specifies whether the FAULT LED will turn on after the redundant copy is complete.

enable      The Fault LED will turn on after the redundant copy is complete.

disable     The Fault LED will not turn on after the redundant copy is complete.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the event parameters:

```
CLI> set event-parameters -blink-panel-led enable -redundant-copy-led enable
```

## Reservations

---

This section explains the commands related to the persistent reservation status of the volumes.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show reservation

### show reservation

This command displays the reservation status of the volumes.

#### Syntax

```
show reservation [-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
```

#### Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to display the reservation status. One or more volumes can be specified at the same time. If omitted, all the reserved volumes are displayed. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers* Volume number

*volume\_names* Volume name

#### Output

- When volume identifiers are omitted

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
LUN	Logical unit number associated with the target volume
Port	Host interface port number that is assigned to the host mapping (this information appears when the Host Affinity Mode is disabled).
LUN Group	LUN group identifiers (this information appears when the Host Affinity Mode is enabled).
No.	LUN group number that belongs to the volume
Name	LUN group name that belongs to the volume
Registrant Count	Number of reservation key registrations
Reservation Type	Type of the persistent reservation
Persistent	Status of the persistent reservation
APTPL	Indicates whether the reservation information is kept for the reboot that occurred.

- When volume identifiers are specified

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
Host	Host identifiers
No.	Host number
Name	Host name
Reservation Key	Reservation key (Identifier information used for the persistent reservation)
Hold Reservation	Reservation status of a volume by a reservation key

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show reservation

### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of the reserved volumes:

Volume No.	Name	LUN	Port	LUN No.	Group Name	Registrant Count	Reservation Type	Persistent	APTPL
1	LogicalVolume1	11	CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	- -		32	WE	Yes	Yes
12	LV12	222	CM#1 CA#0 Port#1	- -		1	EA-RO	Yes	No
13	LV13	13	-		1 Affinity-Group#1	10	-	No	No
111	LogicalVolume111	-	CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	- -		10	-	-	No

The following example displays a list of the reserved volumes (for the DX8900 S4):

Volume No.	Name	LUN	Port	LUN No.	Group Name	Registrant Count	Reservation Type	Persistent	APTPL
1	LogicalVolume1	11	CE#1 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0	- -		32	WE	Yes	Yes
12	LV12	222	CE#1 CM#1 CA#0 Port#1	- -		1	EA-RO	Yes	No
13	LV13	13	-		1 Affinity-Group#1	10	-	No	No
111	LogicalVolume111	-	CE#3 CM#1 CA#0 Port#0	- -		10	-	-	No

The following example displays information about all the hosts with volume #1 reserved. In the host information, the reservation key and the reservation status of the volume corresponding to the reservation key are displayed:

Volume No.	Name	Host No.	Name	Reservation Key	Hold Reservation
1	Volume#1	0	Host-name-0000	0123456789abcdef	Yes
		1	Host-name-0001	00123efa30939000	Yes
		2	Host-name-0002	00133495828492A3	No

## release reservation

This command releases the volumes that have been reserved by hosts (persistent reservation). The reservation key is also deleted.

### ■ Syntax

```
release reservation {-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names}
```

### ■ Parameter

-volume-number or -volume-name

This parameter specifies the volume identifiers to be released. One or more volumes can be specified at the same time. For details, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#).

*volume\_numbers*    Volume number

*volume\_names*    Volume name

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases the volume named "VOL001" that has been reserved by the hosts:

```
CLI > release reservation -volume-name VOL001
```

The following example releases volume numbers #5 to #25 that have been reserved by the hosts:

```
CLI > release reservation -volume-number 5-25
```

## Cache Utilities

---

This section explains the commands related to cache control utilities.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show pinned-data

### show pinned-data

If certain failure events have occurred when writing data, data cannot be written back to the drive(s) (volumes) from the cache data area. The data that cannot be written back to the drive is retained in the cache data area and is called pinned data (PIN). This command displays a list of all the pinned data.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show pinned-data
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Volume	Volume identifiers
No.	Volume number
Name	Volume name
LBA	Logical block address (LBA of volume in which pinned data is retained)
RC	Cause of pinned data (Reason Code)
SK	Sense key
ASC	Additional sense code
ASCQ	Additional sense code qualifier

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays a list of all the pinned data:

```
CLI> show pinned-data
Volume                               LBA          RC   SK   ASC   ASCQ
No.    Name
-----
1 VolumeNumber0001                 0x0000000000000000 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
1 VolumeNumber0001                 0x0000000000000100 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
3 Vol3                            0x0000000000000000 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
4 Vol4                            0x0000000000000000 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
4 Vol4                            0x0000000000000100 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
11 Vol11                           0x0000000000000000 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00
```

## Disk Patrol

---

This section explains the commands related to the disk patrol function.

The disk patrol function is a function that performs diagnostic tests on the disks without affecting the host I/O performance. This function detects and corrects any disk problems if possible before a disk error occurs.

A disk error can cause data loss or data corruption if there is a double error of the disks or if a block error occurs during rebuild operations. The disk patrol function checks the hot spares to ensure that they have no errors before they are used during Rebuild or Redundant copy operations.

In addition, the disk patrol function can disconnect a disk with an error being detected if necessary.

External Drives are not supported. Disk patrol for the External Drives is performed in the external storage systems.

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > show disk-patrol

### show disk-patrol

This command displays the disk patrol function settings.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show disk-patrol
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Disk Patrol	Indicates whether the disk patrol function is enabled for the ETERNUS DX.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example displays the disk patrol function settings:

```
CLI> show disk-patrol
Disk Patrol      [Enable]
```

## 5. System Settings and Display

Utility > set disk-patrol

### set disk-patrol

This command sets up the disk patrol function.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set disk-patrol [-mode {enable | disable}]
```

#### ■ Parameter

- mode      Optional. This parameter specifies whether to enable or disable the disk patrol function for the ETERNUS DX.
  - enable      The disk patrol function is enabled.
  - disable      The disk patrol function is disabled.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example enables the disk patrol function:

```
CLI> set disk-patrol -mode enable
```

# 6. Storage Cluster Management

---

This chapter explains the commands related to the management of the Storage Cluster functions. When installing the Storage Cluster, performing a configuration from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser's ETERNUS SF Web Console is required.

## Caution

- The host interface type of the local storage system and the remote storage system must be the same. FC cannot be mixed with iSCSI.
- External Volumes and volumes with a UID (or LUN ID) that is inherited from an External LU are not supported by this function.
- DX8100 S4 does not support the Storage Cluster function.

## ■ TFOV

Transparent Failover Volume (TFOV) is a volume in which the Storage Cluster setting is performed.

## ■ TFO group

A Transparent Failover (TFO) group is the operations unit for a failover in a single ETERNUS DX/AF, and a Storage Cluster failover is performed for each TFO group.

## ■ TFO pair port (CA port pair)

With the Storage Cluster function, a failover can be performed by controlling the Link status of each CA port in the two ETERNUS DX/AF storage systems. A single CA port assigned to a TFO group that is used as the Primary and a single CA port assigned to a TFO group that is used as the Secondary are paired to make up TFO pair ports (CA port pair).

## ■ TFO pair

In the Storage Cluster function, TFO pairs are a combination of TFOVs that consists of pairs. In addition, this also refers to the paired state.

## Storage Cluster

This section explains the details of the commands that are related to the management of the Storage Cluster.

### Caution

When installing Storage Cluster, performing a configuration from ETERNUS SF Web Console that is in ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser is required. For information about operating Storage Cluster, refer to "FUJITSU Storage ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

The control functions for Storage Cluster that are supported by CLI are listed in the following table:

Function	Command
Displaying the registration status of the Storage Cluster license	show storage-cluster-license
Setting the maximum value of the volume for the Storage Cluster function	set storage-cluster-license
Deleting the Storage Cluster license	delete storage-cluster-license
Displaying the settings of a TFO group	show tfo-groups
Registering a TFO group	create tfo-group
Changing the settings of a TFO group	set tfo-group
Deleting the settings of a TFO group	delete tfo-group
Displaying TFO pair ports	show tfo-pair
Setting TFO pair ports	set tfo-pair
Releasing TFO pairs	release tfo-pair
Restoring TFO pairs	recover tfo-pair
Activating TFO groups	forced tfo-group-activate
Displays the list or UID for the volume that belongs in the TFO group	show volumes
Changing the UID or initializing the UID	set volume
Displaying the transfer mode of the Storage Cluster	show fc-parameters show iscsi-parameters
Configuring the transfer mode of the Storage Cluster	set fc-parameters set iscsi-parameters
Stopping the copy session	stop advanced-copy

## ■ Recovery during a RAID failure (releasing and recovering TFO pairs between TFOVs)

The recovery procedure during a RAID failure in the primary storage is shown below.

### Procedure ►►►

#### 1 Release the TFO pair

In the secondary storage, by using the "release tfo-pair" command, mirror pair relationships between cabinets of the target TFOV are released.

#### 2 Maintain the primary storage RAID

Contact a maintenance engineer.

#### 3 Recover the TFO pair

In the secondary storage, by using the "recover tfo-pair" command, reconfigure the mirror pair relationships between the cabinets of the target TFOV in the direction of the primary storage from the secondary storage.

## ■ Reinitialization of the TFOV UID, serial number, and product ID

For continuous operations with the secondary storage after the primary storage becomes unrecoverable, volumes in the secondary storage continue to use the same volume information (UID, serial number, and product ID) even after the volumes become out of sync due to an operation such as TFO group removal. When volumes in the secondary storage are used as a different type of volume after the volumes are made out of sync, the volume information must be reinitialized.

### Caution

If a host recognizes multiple volumes with identical volume information, the unforeseen circumstances will occur such as data destruction.

After the volume information is initialized, have the host re-recognize the devices.

The reinitialization procedure for the TFOV UID, serial number, and product ID is shown below.

### Procedure ►►►

#### 1 Reinitialization of the TFOV UID, serial number, and product ID.

Perform a reinitialization using the "set volume" command.

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show storage-cluster-license

### show storage-cluster-license

This command displays the registration status of the Storage Cluster license key.

#### ■ Syntax

```
show storage-cluster-license
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Output

Item name	Description
Storage Cluster License	Registration status of the Storage Cluster license
Maximum TFO capacity	Maximum total capacity of the volumes for each ETERNUS DX that can be used in the Storage Cluster If the Storage Cluster license is not registered, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows the output when the Storage Cluster license has been registered:

```
CLI> show storage-cluster-license
Storage Cluster License [Registered]
Maximum TFO capacity [16 PB]
```

The following example shows the output when the Storage Cluster license has not been registered:

```
CLI> show storage-cluster-license
Storage Cluster License [-]
Maximum TFO capacity [-]
```

## set storage-cluster-license

This command sets the maximum total capacity of the volumes for each ETERNUS DX that can be used in the Storage Cluster.

### Note

The license key for the Storage Cluster function is set from the software.

### Syntax

```
set storage-cluster-license  
[-max-tfo-capacity {1pb | 2pb | 4pb | 8pb | 16pb}]
```

### Parameter

-max-tfo-capacity

Optional. This parameter specifies the maximum total capacity of the volumes for each ETERNUS DX that can be used in the Storage Cluster. If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

The values for each model are indicated below.

1pb (default), 2pb, 4pb, 8pb, 16pb

### Caution

- If the maximum total capacity is reduced, all TFO sessions must be deleted.
- If the maximum total capacity is expanded, the expanded portion uses the shared area of the cache memory. If the installed memory is insufficient, the maximum total capacity cannot be expanded.

1pb	The maximum total capacity is specified as 1PB.
2pb	The maximum total capacity is specified as 2PB.
4pb	The maximum total capacity is specified as 4PB.
8pb	The maximum total capacity is specified as 8PB.
16pb	The maximum total capacity is specified as 16PB.

### Example(s)

The following example sets the maximum total capacity of the volumes for each ETERNUS DX that can be used in the Storage Cluster to 1PB:

```
CLI> set storage-cluster-license -max-tfo-capacity 1pb
```

## delete storage-cluster-license

This command deletes the registered Storage Cluster license.

### ■ Syntax

```
delete storage-cluster-license -execution {yes | no}
```

### ■ Parameter

- execution This parameter specifies the execution mode. The registered Storage Cluster license is deleted when "yes" is specified.
- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| yes | The registered Storage Cluster license is deleted.     |
| no  | The registered Storage Cluster license is not deleted. |

### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes the registered Storage Cluster license:

```
CLI> delete storage-cluster-license -execution yes
```

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show tfo-groups

### show tfo-groups

This command displays the status of TFO groups, and TFO pair port settings (combination of local and remote ports).

#### Syntax

```
show tfo-groups [-tfog-number tfog_numbers]
```

#### Parameter

##### -tfog-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the TFO group number. The specifiable range is "0" to "31". Multiple TFO group numbers can be specified by separating multiple numbers with a comma (,) or a hyphen (-). If omitted, all TFO group states and TFO pair port settings are displayed.

Example: -tfog-number 0

Example: -tfog-number 0,1

Example: -tfog-number 0-1

*tfog\_numbers*      TFO group number

#### Output

Item name	Description
TFO Group No.	TFO group number
TFO Group Name	TFO group name
Type	TFO group type (Primary or Secondary)
Status	TFO group status (Active or Standby)
Phase	TFO group settings (Disabled, Initial, Maintenance, Failovered, Copying Back, Failback Ready, Fail-backed, Normal, Copying, Failed)
Condition	TFO group condition (Disabled, Halt, Normal) When the condition is "Halt", a Halt reason (None, TFO Group Disconnected, Version Mismatch, TFO Group Setting Missing, TFO Group Setting Mismatch, Monitoring Server Disconnected) is also displayed.
Failback Mode	Failback mode of the TFO group (Auto or Manual)
Failover Mode	Failover mode of the TFO group (Auto or Manual)
Failover in CA Port Link Down	Displays whether automatic failover is executed when a CA port Link Down is detected.  On (Enable)      Executes automatic failover when a CA port Link Down is detected. On (Disable)      Does not execute automatic failover even if the failover setting during a CA port Link Down is set to auto. (Cannot be executed for failover mode [Manual] or failback mode [Auto]) Off      Does not execute automatic failover when a CA port Link Down is detected.
Split Mode	Write permission (Read/Write or Read Only)
Monitor Interval	Interval for monitoring whether failover has completed (Normal [10 seconds or less], Long [20 seconds or less]). A hyphen (-) is displayed when the "Failover Mode" is not "Auto".
Pair Box ID	Box ID of the remote storage system
Own <-> Pair Port	Combination of the port number for the local storage system and the port number for the Pair to be. The controller enclosure number is displayed in the port number for the Pair to be.

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show tfo-groups

### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows TFO group #0:

```
CLI> show tfo-groups
TFO Group No.          [0]
TFO Group Name         [TFOG#0]
Type                  [Primary]
Status                [Active]
Phase                 [Normal]
Condition             [Halt(Version Mismatch)]
Fallback Mode         [Manual]
Failover Mode          [Auto]
Failover in CA Port Link Down [On (Disable)]
Split Mode             [Read/Write]
Monitor Interval       [normal]
Pair Box ID            [00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ00000#####]
Own <-> Pair Port      [CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 <-> CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0]
                           [CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1 <-> CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1]
```

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > create tfo-group

### create tfo-group

This command registers TFO groups and configures TFO pair port. The smallest number among the unused numbers is assigned as the TFO group number.

#### ■ Syntax

```
create tfo-group
-name name
-type {primary | secondary}
-pair-box-id pair_box_id
[-failback {auto | manual}]
[-failover {auto | manual}]
[-failover-ca-port-linkdown {on | off}]
[-split-mode {rw | r}]
[-monitor-interval {normal | long}]
-own-port port_numbers-pair-port port_numbers
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-name** This parameter specifies the TFO group name. Up to 16 characters can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Alias Name Syntax" \(page 26\)](#).

*name* TFO Name of the group

**-type** This parameter specifies the type for the TFO group.

**primary** Primary TFO group

**secondary** Secondary TFO group

**-pair-box-id** This parameter specifies the Box ID for the storage system that will become the pair.

#### Caution

- Up to 40 alphanumeric characters (US-ASCII code 0x30 to 0x39, 0x41 to 0x5A, and 0x61 to 0x7A), spaces, and pound signs (#) can be specified.
- All alphabetic characters are handled as capital letters.
- The pound sign characters (#) are automatically appended when the input characters are less than 40.

*pair\_box\_id* Box ID of the remote storage system

**-failback** Optional. This parameter specifies the failback mode setting. If omitted, "manual" is set.

**auto** Automatic failback

**manual** Manual failback (default)

**-failover** Optional. This parameter specifies the failover mode setting. If omitted, "auto" is set. Automatic failover is available if the monitoring server exists.

**auto** Automatic failover (default)

**manual** Manual failover

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > create tfo-group

#### -failover-ca-port-linkdown

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to execute automatic failover when a CA port Link Down is detected.

If omitted, "on" is set.

##### Note

For manual failover or automatic failback, even if "on" is set, automatic failover is not executed.

on        Automatic failover is executed when a CA port Link Down is detected. (Default)

off        Automatic failover is not executed when a CA port Link Down is detected.

#### -split-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies the access permission for the TFO volume when the copy path is disconnected. If omitted, readable/writable is set for the access permission.

rw        Readable/writable (default)

r        Readable only

#### -monitor-interval

Optional. This parameter sets the interval for monitoring whether a failover has completed. This parameter is specified if the "-failover" parameter is specified as "auto" or if the "-failover" parameter is omitted.

##### Caution

The Maintenance Operation policy is required.

normal    The monitor interval is set to 10 seconds or less (default: when the iSCSI port is not included in the REC path between storage systems)

long      The monitor interval is set to 20 seconds or less (default: when the iSCSI port is included in the REC path between storage systems)

#### -own-port

This parameter specifies the CA port number of the local storage system that configures the TFO pair port. The port mode of the port that is to be specified must be in the CA mode. Multiple port numbers can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to "["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#)". The number of specified port numbers must be the same as the "-pair-port" parameter.

Example: -own-port 0000,1010

*port\_numbers*    CA port number of the local storage system that configures the TFO pair port

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > create tfo-group

**-pair-port** This parameter specifies the CA port number of the remote storage system that configures the TFO pair port. The port mode of the port that is to be specified must be in the CA mode. Multiple port numbers can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#). The number of specified port numbers must be the same as the "-own-port" parameter.

For CA port numbers, specify with a 3-digit or 4-digit number.

- When specifying with a 3-digit number

The usable ports are up to an 8CM, 4CA, 4Port.

If the remote device is a DX8900 S4, when specifying CM#2 to CM#7, the CMs of CE#1 to CE#3 are set.

- CE number

The value (or quotient) of the CM number X divided by 2.

- CM number

The value (or remainder) of the CM number X divided by 2.

Example: If CM#2 was specified, the result is CE#1CM#0 ( $2 / 2 = 1$  with a remainder of 0)

Example: If CM#7 was specified, the result is CE#3CM#1 ( $7 / 2 = 3$  with a remainder of 1)

- When specifying with a 4-digit number

The usable ports are up to a 4CE, 2CM, 4CA, 4Port.

Example: -pair-port 000,001,0120,3130

*port\_numbers* CA port number of the remote storage system that configures the TFO pair port

## ■ Example(s)

The following example creates a TFO group:

```
CLI> create tfo-group -name TFOG#0 -type primary -pair-box-id 00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000000##### -own-port 000  
-pair-port 100
```

## set tfo-group

This command changes the settings of a TFO group and configures a TFO pair port.

### Syntax

```
set tfo-group -tfog-number tfog_number
[-name name]
[-failback {auto | manual}]
[-failover {auto | manual}]
[-failover-ca-port-linkdown {on | off}]
[-split-mode {rw | r}]
[-monitor-interval {normal | long}]
[-own-port port_numbers]
[-pair-port port_numbers]
```

### Parameter

#### -tfog-number

This parameter specifies the number of the TFO group to change the settings. Only one number can be specified for the TFO group number. The specifiable range is "0" to "31".

Example: -tfog-number 0

*tfog\_number*      TFO group number

#### -name

Optional. This parameter specifies the TFO group name. Up to 16 characters can be specified. For details on how to specify the TFO group name, refer to "[Alias Name Syntax \(page 26\)](#)". If omitted, the TFO group name is not changed.

*name*      TFO group name

#### -failback

Optional. This parameter specifies the failback mode setting. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

auto      Automatic failover

manual      Manual failover (default)

#### -failover

Optional. This parameter specifies the failover mode setting. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed. Automatic failover is available if the monitoring server exists.

auto      Automatic failover

manual      Manual failover (default)

#### -failover-ca-port-linkdown

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to execute automatic failover when a CA port Link Down is detected.

If omitted, this parameter remains unchanged.

#### Note

For manual failover or automatic failback, even if "on" is set, automatic failover is not executed.

on      Automatic failover is executed when a CA port Link Down is detected.

off      Automatic failover is not executed when a CA port Link Down is detected.

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > set tfo-group

**-split-mode** Optional. This parameter specifies the access permission for the TFO volume when the copy path is disconnected. If omitted, the existing setting is not changed.

<b>rw</b>	Readable/writable
<b>r</b>	Readable only

**-monitor-interval**

Optional. This parameter sets the interval for monitoring whether failover has completed. This parameter can be specified if "auto" is specified for the "-failover" parameter. If omitted, the monitoring interval is not changed.

#### Caution

The Maintenance Operation policy is required.

<b>normal</b>	Sets the interval for monitoring whether failover has completed to 10 seconds or less (default)
<b>long</b>	Sets the interval for monitoring whether failover has completed to 20 seconds or less

**-own-port** Optional. This parameter specifies the CA port number of the local storage system that configures the TFO pair port to be added. The port mode of the port that is to be specified must be in the CA mode. Multiple port numbers can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

The number of specified port numbers must be the same as the "-pair-port" parameter.

Example: -pair-port 0000,1010

*port\_number* CA port number of the local storage system that configures the TFO pair port

**-pair-port** Optional. This parameter specifies the CA port number of the remote storage system that configures the TFO pair port to be added. The port mode of the port that is to be specified must be in the CA mode. Multiple port numbers can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

The number of specified port numbers must be the same as the "-own-port" parameter.

For CA port numbers, specify with a 3-digit or 4-digit number.

- When specifying with a 3-digit number

The usable ports are up to an 8CM, 4CA, 4Port.

If the remote device is a DX8900 S4, when specifying CM#2 to CM#7, the CMs of CE#1 to CE#3 are set.

- CE number

The value (or quotient) of the CM number X divided by 2.

- CM number

The value (or remainder) of the CM number X divided by 2.

Example: If CM#2 was specified, the result is CE#1CM#0 ( $2 / 2 = 1$  with a remainder of 0)

Example: If CM#7 was specified, the result is CE#3CM#1 ( $7 / 2 = 3$  with a remainder of 1)

- When specifying with a 4-digit number

The usable ports are up to a 4CE, 2CM, 4CA, 4Port.

Example: -pair-port 000,001

Example: -pair-port 0011,3111

*port\_numbers* CA port number of the remote storage system that configures the TFO pair port

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > set tfo-group

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example changes the settings for TFO group #0:

```
CLI> set tfo-group -tfog-number 0 -name TFOG#000 -failover auto
```

## delete tfo-group

This command deletes TFO groups as well as removing TFO pair port settings. When all the ports configured in the specified TFO group are removed, that TFO group is deleted.

### Syntax

```
delete tfo-group
-tfog-number tfog_number
[-own-port {port_numbers}]
[-port-wwn-mode {keep | original}]
```

### Parameter

#### -tfog-number

This parameter specifies the number of the TFO group for deletion, or the number of the TFO group for removing the TFO pair port setting. Only one number can be specified for the TFO group number. "0" or "31" can be specified. If the "-own-port" parameter or the "-port-wwn-mode" parameter is omitted, the specified TFO group is deleted.

Example: -tfog-number 0

*tfog\_number*      TFO group number

#### -own-port

Optional. This parameter specifies the CA port number of the local storage system for removing the TFO pair port setting. The port mode of the port that is to be specified must be in the CA mode. Multiple port numbers can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#). If omitted, the TFO pair port settings are removed for all the local storage systems port numbers of the specified TFO group, and that TFO group is deleted. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-port-wwn-mode" parameter. If this parameter is specified, the WWPN of the relevant FC port will be reverted to the initial setting.

Example: --own-port 0000,1010

*port\_numbers*      The CA port number of the local storage system for removing the TFO pair port setting.

#### -port-wwn-mode

Optional. This parameter specifies whether to return the WWPN of the FC port to the initial setting if a TFO group is deleted. For the secondary TFO group, this parameter can be specified. For iSCSI ports, this parameter is ignored.

This parameter cannot be specified with the "-own-port" parameter.

*keep*      The WWPN of the port is maintained (default).

*original*      The WWPN of the port is reverted to the original setting.

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > delete tfo-group

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example deletes TFO group #0 and returns the WWPN of the port to the original setting:

```
CLI> delete tfo-group -tfog-number 0 -port-wwn-mode original
```

The following example removes TFO pair port settings for TFO group #0:

```
CLI> delete tfo-group -tfog-number 0 -own-port 000
```

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > show tfo-pair

## show tfo-pair

This command displays TFO pair port status, TFO volume information, and TFO session information.

### Syntax

```
show tfo-pair [-tfog-number tfog_number] [-session-id id]
```

### Parameter

#### -tfog-number

Optional. This parameter specifies the number of the TFO groups to display the information. Multiple TFO group numbers can be specified. "0" or "31" can be specified. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-session-id" parameter.

Example: -tfog-number 0

Example: -tfog-number 0,1

Example: -tfog-number 0-1

*tfog\_number*      TFO group number

#### -session-id

Optional. This parameter specifies the ID of the session to display the information. Multiple session IDs can be specified. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-tfog-number" parameter.

Example: -session-id 0

Example: -session-id 10,20

Example: -session-id 0-5

*id*      Session ID

### Output

- If all the parameters are omitted, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
TFO Group No.	The TFO group number of the local storage system
TFO Group Name	The TFO group name of the local storage system
Port	The port number of the local storage system
Host No.	The host number of the local storage system
Host Name	The host name of the local storage system

- When the TFO group number is specified, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
TFO Group No.	The TFO group number of the local storage system
TFO Group Name	The TFO group name of the local storage system
Port	The port number of the local storage system
Host No.	The host number of the local storage system
Host Name	The host name of the local storage system
Own Volume No.	The TFO volume number of the local storage system
Own Volume Name	The TFO volume name of the local storage system

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show tfo-pair

Item name	Description
Pair Volume No.	The TFO volume number that will be paired. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the TFO session does not exist in the relevant volume of the local storage system or if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
SID	The session ID of the local storage system. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the TFO session does not exist in the relevant volume of the local storage system (TFO sessions in "Idle" or "Reserve" status are also regarded as not existing).
Status	The status of the TFO session (Active, Error Suspend, Suspend, or Halt). A hyphen (-) is displayed if the TFO session does not exist in the relevant volume of the local storage system (TFO sessions in "Idle" or "Reserve" status are also regarded as not existing).
Phase	The phase of the TFO session (Copying or Equivalent). A hyphen (-) is displayed if the TFO session does not exist in the relevant volume of the local storage system (TFO sessions in "Idle" or "Reserve" status are also regarded as not existing).
Error Code	Error codes are displayed as two-digit hexadecimal numbers. If "Status" is a hyphen (-), a hyphen (-) is displayed. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the TFO session does not exist in the relevant volume of the local storage system (TFO sessions in "Idle" or "Reserve" status are also regarded as not existing).

- When the session ID is specified, the following items are displayed.

Item name	Description
SID	Session ID of the local storage system
Own Volume No.	TFO volume number of the local storage system A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Own Volume Name	TFO volume name of the local storage system A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Pair Volume No.	The TFO volume number that will be paired A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Status	The status of the TFO session (Active, Error Suspend, Suspend, or Halt) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Phase	The phase of the TFO session (Copying, Equivalent) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Error Code	Error codes are displayed as two-digit hexadecimal numbers A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Source Block Address	The copy source start Logical Block Address (LBA) is displayed as a 16-digit hexadecimal number A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Destination Block Address	The copy destination start Logical Block Address (LBA) is displayed as a 16-digit hexadecimal number A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Total Data Size	Total copy data block A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Copied Data Size	Completed copy data block A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Direction	Displays the roles of this system in the copy session (From Local/To Remote: copy source, From Remote/To Local: copy destination) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Sync	The operation mode (Sync) of the session A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Recovery Mode	The recovery mode (Automatic) of the session "Automatic" is the mode that automatically resumes the copy when the REC copy path is recovered from an abnormal state. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show tfo-pair

Item name	Description
Split Mode	The split mode of the session is displayed in the following way: Automatic: The mode that authorizes write I/O access to the copy source when the REC copy path is in an abnormal state. Manual: The mode that authorizes write I/O access to the copy source when the REC copy path is in an abnormal state. The specified sense information is transmitted to the host. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Remote Session-ID	The session ID of another system connected remotely to this system A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Remote Box-ID	The identifier of another system connected remotely to this system A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Time Stamp	Time stamp Displays the local time. The time stamp just before a backup is displayed when the status is "Active" or "Suspend". The time stamp the moment a problem occurs is displayed when the status is "Error Suspend" or "Halt". A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Elapsed Time	The elapsed time from the start of the session (combination of days, hours, minutes, and seconds) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Copy Range	Copy range (Total, Extent) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Secondary Access Permission	Possibility of host access to the area of the Secondary storage while the status is "Active" (Read Only at Equivalency, No Read/Write) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".
Concurrent Suspend Status	Concurrent Suspend transition state (Normal, Exec, Error, Unknown) A hyphen (-) is displayed if the session status is "Idle" or "Reserve".

### ■ Example(s)

The following example shows information when parameters are omitted. A list of all TFO pair ports is displayed:

```
CLI> show tfo-pair
TFO Group          Port           Host
No. Name          No. Name
----- ----- -----
 0 TFOG#0        CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0    0 Host#0
 0 TFOG#0        CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#1    10 Host#10
 0 TFOG#0        CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#0     7 Host#7
 0 TFOG#0        CE#0 CM#0 CA#1 Port#1    16 Host#16
 1 TFOG#1        CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#2     3 Host#3
 1 TFOG#1        CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#3     1 Host#1
```

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

The following example shows information for TFO group #0 and TFO group #1:

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

### Storage Cluster > show tfo-pai

The following example shows information for TFO group #0 and TFO group #1 (for the DX8900 S4):

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > show tfo-pair

The following example shows the session information for session ID #0 and session ID #2:

```
CLI> show tfo-pair -session-id 0,2
<Session Info #10>
Own Volume No.          [0]
Own Volume Name          [VOLUME00000000000000000000000000000000]
Pair Volume No.          [0]
Status                   [Active]
Phase                    [Copying]
Error Code               [0x00]
Source Block Address     [0x1234567890123456LBA]
Destination Block Address [0x1234567890123456LBA]
Total Data Size          [1024MB]
Copied Data Size         [512MB]
Direction                [From Local/To Remote]
Sync                     [Sync]
Recovery Mode             [Automatic]
Split Mode                [Manual]
Remote Session-ID        [10]
Remote Box-ID             [00DXL#####ET06F21AUABCPJ000000#####]
Time Stamp                [2010-11-17 18:30:00]
Elapsed Time              [1 day 1 hour 32 min 35 sec]
Copy Range                [Extent]
Secondary Access Permission [No Read/Write]
Concurrent Suspend Status [Normal]

<Session Info #2>
Own Volume No.          [-]
Own Volume Name          [-]
Pair Volume No.          [-]
Status                   [-]
Phase                    [-]
Error Code               [-]
Source Block Address     [-]
Destination Block Address [-]
Total Data Size          [-]
Copied Data Size         [-]
Direction                [-]
Sync                     [-]
Recovery Mode             [-]
Split Mode                [-]
Remote Session-ID        [-]
Remote Box-ID             [-]
Time Stamp                [-]
Elapsed Time              [-]
Copy Range                [-]
Secondary Access Permission [-]
Concurrent Suspend Status [-]
```

## set tfo-pair

This command configures TFO pair ports for each host affinity unit.

### Syntax

```
set tfo-pair
  -port port_number
  {-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name}
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the CA port number of the local storage system that configures the TFO pair port. Only one port number can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

Example: -port 1010

*port\_number* Port number

**-host-number or -host-name**

This parameter specifies the host number or host name to associate with the TFO pair port. Only one host number or host name can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#). For host number or host name association, perform with the "set host-affinity" command.

*host\_number* Host number

*host\_name* Host name

### Example(s)

The following example sets affinity for host #0 with CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0:

```
CLI> set tfo-pair -port 0000 -host-number 0
```

## release tfo-pair

This command releases TFO pairs.

### Syntax

```
release tfo-pair
-port port_number
{-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name}
[-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
[-volume-uid-mode {keep | original}]
```

### Parameter

-port This parameter specifies the port number associated with the TFO volume to release the pairing. Only one port number can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

Example: -port 1010

*port\_number* Port number

-host-number or -host-name

This parameter specifies the host number or host name associated with the TFO volume to release the pairing. Only one host number or host name can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_number* Host number

*host\_name* Host name

-volume-number or -volume-name

Optional. This parameter specifies the number or name of the TFO volume to release the pairing. Multiple TFO volume numbers or names can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to ["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If this parameter is specified, the UID will remain as the Pair TFO volume UID. If omitted, all TFO volume pairings that belongs to the target LUN group will be released. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-volume-uid-mode" parameter.

*volume\_numbers* TFO volume number

*volume\_names* TFO volume name

-volume-uid-mode

This parameter specifies whether to return the TFO volume UID to the original UID after the pairing is released. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-volume-number" parameter or the "-volume-name" parameter.

keep Maintain the TFO volume UID (default)

original Return the TFO volume UID back to the original UID

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > release tfo-pair

### ■ Example(s)

The following example releases TFO Pairs for all the TFO volumes that are associated with CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 and host #0 affinity:

```
CLI> release tfo-pair -port 0000 -host-number 0 -volume-uid-mode original
```

The following example releases TFO Pairs for TFO volume #0 that is associated with CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 and host #0 affinity:

```
CLI> release tfo-pair -port 0000 -host-number 0 -volume-number 0
```

## recover tfo-pair

This command recovers TFO pairs.

### Syntax

```
recover tfo-pair
  -port port_number
  {-host-number host_number | -host-name host_name}
  [-volume-number volume_numbers | -volume-name volume_names]
  -recovery-target {primary | secondary}
```

### Parameter

**-port** This parameter specifies the port number associated with the TFO volume for the recovery. Only one port number can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to "["Host Interface Port Syntax" \(page 33\)](#).

Example: -port 1010

*port\_number* Port number

**-host-number or -host-name**

This parameter specifies the host number or host name associated with the TFO volume for the recovery. Only one host number or host name can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to "["Host Syntax" \(page 31\)](#).

*host\_number* Host number

*host\_name* Host name

**-volume-number or -volume-name**

Optional. This parameter specifies the TFO volume number or TFO volume name for the recovery. Multiple TFO volume numbers or TFO volume names can be specified. For details on how to specify this parameter, refer to "["Volume Syntax" \(page 30\)](#). If omitted, all TFO volumes that belong to the target LUN group will be recovered.

*volume\_numbers* TFO volume number

*volume\_names* TFO volume name

**-recovery-target**

This parameter specifies the TFO group type that the TFO volume will belong to for the recovery.

primary Recovers (Copyback) the TFO volume that belongs to the Primary TFO group

secondary Recovers (Rebuild) the TFO volume that belongs to the Secondary TFO group

## 6. Storage Cluster Management

Storage Cluster > recover tfo-pair

### ■ Example(s)

The following example recovers all the TFO volumes that are associated with CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 and host #0 affinity:

```
CLI> recover tfo-pair -port 0000 -host-number 0 -recovery-target primary
```

The following example recovers TFO volume #0 that is associated with CE#0 CM#0 CA#0 Port#0 and host #0 affinity:

```
CLI> recover tfo-pair -port 0000 -host-number 0 -volume-number 0 -recovery-target secondary
```

## forced tfo-group-activate

This command activates TFO groups.

### ■ Syntax

```
forced tfo-group-activate -tfog-number tfog_number
{-active-mode {manual-failover | manual-failback} |
-forced-mode {primary-active | secondary-active}}
```

### ■ Parameter

#### -tfog-number

This parameter specifies the number of the TFO group to be activated. Only one number can be specified for the TFO group number. "0" or "31" can be specified.

Example: -tfog-number 0

*tfog\_number*      TFO group number

#### -active-mode

This parameter specifies whether to implement manual failover or manual failback. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-forced-mode" parameter. This parameter must be specified when the "-forced-mode" parameter is omitted.

manual-failover    Manual failover

manual-failback    Manual failback

#### -forced-mode

This parameter specifies whether to forcibly activate the Primary storage TFO group or the Secondary storage TFO group. This parameter cannot be specified with the "-active-mode" parameter. This parameter must be specified when the "-active-mode" parameter is omitted.

#### Caution

For the "primary-active" setting, the Maintenance Operation policy is required.

primary-active    The primary storage TFO group is activated.

secondary-active    The secondary storage TFO group is activated.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example activates TFO group #0:

```
CLI> forced tfo-group-activate -tfog-number 0 -active-mode concurrent-failover
```

# 7. CLI Original Function

---

This section explains the commands related specifically to the CLI environment itself.

## CLI Environment

---

This section explains the commands relating specifically to the CLI environment itself.

- Forcibly releasing the resources that CLI and the controller firmware control
- Idle timeout interval
- Logoff
- Viewing help

## 7. CLI Original Function

CLI Environment > set clienv-force-unlock

### set clienv-force-unlock

Multiple sessions may compete for exclusive resources. One session can execute commands, but commands issued by the other session(s) are abnormally terminated with an error message. In this case, wait for the session to complete processing, and then retry the failed command. Or, use this command to forcibly release exclusive resources. This is useful when access is lost due to unexpected errors, such as a terminal disconnecting suddenly. This command forcibly releases resources on which CLI and RAID controller firmware have an exclusive hold.

#### Caution

Do not use this command while settings are being performed by another session of Web GUI, CLI, or monitoring software.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set clienv-force-unlock
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example forcibly releases exclusive resources:

```
CLI> set clienv-force-unlock
```

## 7. CLI Original Function

CLI Environment > set clienv-idle-timeout

### set clienv-idle-timeout

This command changes the timeout related value of the CLI session.

The time can be set to automatically log off idle CLI sessions. The idle timeout interval applies to sessions that are created after the timeout interval is set. The timeout interval that is set by this command is shared in the ETERNUS DX.

In addition, if all the parameters are omitted, the current value is displayed.

#### ■ Syntax

```
set clienv-idle-timeout [-timeout minute]
```

#### ■ Parameter

**-timeout**    Optional. This parameter specifies the idle timeout interval in minutes until an idle status CLI session is automatically logged off. Any value from 5 minutes to 60 minutes can be specified. If omitted, the current idle timeout interval is displayed.

*minute*      Idle timeout interval until an idle status CLI session is automatically logged off  
(5 – 60)

#### ■ Example(s)

The following example sets the idle timeout interval to 60 minutes:

```
CLI> set clienv-idle-timeout -timeout 60
```

The following example displays the current idle timeout interval for the ETERNUS DX:

```
CLI> set clienv-idle-timeout
CLI Idle Timeout (minute) [60]
```

## 7. CLI Original Function

CLI Environment > logoff/logout/exit

### logoff/logout/exit

These commands exit the CLI session. All of these commands have the same effect.

#### ■ Syntax

```
logoff  
logout  
exit
```

#### ■ Parameter

No parameters.

#### ■ Example(s)

Any of the following commands exit a CLI session:

```
CLI> logoff  
CLI> logout  
CLI> exit
```

## help

This command displays brief descriptions for all the command names supported by CLI.

### ■ Syntax

```
help [command_name]
```

### ■ Parameter

#### *command\_name*

Optional. This parameter specifies the CLI command name. Either the verb section (the first part of the CLI command name) or the complete command name can be specified. If omitted, all the CLI command names are listed.

Examples of correct parameter specifications are as follows:

- CLI> help (no parameter)
- CLI> help show (verb section only)
- CLI> help show mapping (complete command)
- CLI> help show ma (incomplete command but OK)

#### Note

- The only complete command that matches this is "show mapping".
- An incomplete command that can be uniquely identified is treated as a complete command.

Examples of incorrect parameter specifications are as follows:

- CLI> help mapping (object section only)
- CLI> help sh (incomplete verb section of command)
- CLI> help show m (incomplete object section of command)

#### Note

"show mapping" and "show migration" are complete commands that match the help string. In this case, CLI cannot identify a unique command.

### ■ Example(s)

The following example has no parameter. Brief descriptions for all the command names are displayed:

```
CLI> help
copy host-affinity      - Copy host affinity group associations from a host interface port to other ports.
copy mapping            - Copy the LUN mapping definitions from a specified host interface port to one or more host interface ports.
create community-profile - Create a SNMP community profile.
create eco-schedule     - Create one ECO schedule and only one ECO schedule event.
... (snip)
```

## 7. CLI Original Function

CLI Environment > help

The following example shows when "create" (the verb section or first part of the CLI command name) is specified as the command parameter for the help command. Brief descriptions of all the command names beginning with the word "create" are output:

```
CLI> help create
create community-profile - Create a SNMP community profile.
create eco-schedule - Create one ECO schedule and only one ECO schedule event.
create host-wwn-name - Create a host identifier and alias for an FC host port.
create raid-group - Create a RAID group with the specified RAID group name, RAID level and disks.
create snmp-view - Create an SNMP Management Information Base view (MIB view).
create ssl-certificate - Re-create a server key and a server certificate for network security using SSH/SSL.
create user - A new user name of profile
create volume - Create one or more volumes on a specified RAID group.
```

The following example displays a detailed description of the "create raid-group" command:

```
CLI> help create raid-group
Descriptions:
  Create a RAID group with the specified RAID group name, RAID level and disks.
Syntax:
  create raid-group -name alias_name -disks disks -level {0|1|5|6|10|50} [-assigned-cm {0|1|auto}]
Parameter description(s):
  -name
    Name of a RAID group
  -disks
    Disk drives to use in the RAID group
  -level
    RAID level
      0 : RAID0
      1 : RAID1
      5 : RAID5
      6 : RAID6
      10 : RAID1+0
      50 : RAID5+0
  -assigned-cm
    Assigned controller for the RAID group
      0 : Controller Module #0
      1 : Controller Module #1
      auto : Automatically (default)
```

# A. Error Messages/Error Codes

---

This appendix provides descriptions for the error messages and error codes that the CLI outputs.

## Error Messages

---

This section explains error message numbers, and messages output to the CLI, as well as recommended actions. Refer to "["Error Message Format" \(page 39\)](#) (in the overview section of this manual) for a detailed explanation on CLI error messages.

Table 7 List of error messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0001	Bad value. The operand of the specified parameter is incorrect. Check the parameters identified in the details of this message.
E0002	Value out of range. The operand of the specified parameter is out of the correct range. Check the parameters identified in the details of this message.
E0003	Too many parameters. Too many parameters were specified. Check the parameters identified in the details of this message.
E0004	Missing parameter. Too few parameters were specified. Check the parameters identified in the details of this message.
E0005	Incorrect parameter combination. The combination of the parameters specified is incorrect. Check the parameters identified in the details of this message.
E0006	Inconsistent status. The status of the object specified is inappropriate for the operation requested. Check the status of the object identified in the details of this message.
E0007	Inconsistent usage. The usage requested is incorrect for the specified object. Check the permitted usage of the object identified in the details of this message.
E0008	Inconsistent size. The size requested does not correspond with the current size. Check the size of the object identified in the details of this message.
E0009	Inconsistent RAID level. The operation is not appropriate for the RAID level of the specified RAID group. Check the RAID level of the group identified in the details of this message.
E0010	Inconsistent model type of device. The specified operation is not appropriate for the type of device. Check the type of device identified in the details of this message.
E0011	Inconsistent network setup. This message indicates that the network settings are incorrect. Check the network settings by using the "show network" command.
E0012	Inconsistent e-mail setup. This message indicates that the e-mail settings are incorrect. Check the e-mail settings by using the "show email-notification" command.
E0014	Inconsistent disk status. Cannot execute the specified command because the drive is not in an appropriate state. Check the status of the drives identified in the details of this message.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0015	<p>Inconsistent enclosure status.</p> <p>Cannot execute the specified command because the enclosure is not in an appropriate state. Check the status of the drives identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0019	<p>Inconsistent parameter.</p> <p>The specified parameter does not correspond with the command. Check the parameters indicated in the details of this message.</p>
E0020	<p>Internal error.</p> <p>An internal error has occurred. Retry the command, and if unsuccessful, contact the support department.</p>
E0021	<p>The requested operation has failed.</p> <p>The specified command process has failed. If this error continues to recur even after numerous command retries, the specified command cannot be executed for an unknown reason.</p>
E0030	<p>Command not supported.</p> <p>This command is not supported. Check the execution conditions (Example: model type, host interface type [FC/iSCSI], and firmware levels).</p>
E0031	<p>Reserved keyword is used.</p> <p>Reserved keyword cannot be used. Use another name.</p>
E0032	<p>Controller firmware cannot be downgraded.</p> <p>Reverting to an earlier version is not allowed for the hot application mode. Confirm the controller firmware version by using the "show firmware" command, and use the cold application mode if necessary.</p>
E0033	<p>Not applicable to this target.</p> <p>The specified resource cannot be applied to the specified command process. Check the specified resource.</p>
E0034	<p>Mainframe resources.</p> <p>The specified Mainframe resource cannot be applied to the specified command process. Check the specified resource.</p>
E0035	<p>Disk firmware can only be upgraded.</p> <p>Confirm the firmware version that is registered in the ETERNUS DX and the firmware version that has been applied to the disks. The disk firmware that is currently being used can only be upgraded to a newer version.</p>
E0041	<p>Incorrect password syntax.</p> <p>The syntax of the specified password is incorrect. Check that the length and characters of the passwords are acceptable.</p>
E0042	<p>Incorrect password.</p> <p>The password entered is incorrect. Check and then re-enter the password.</p>
E0050	<p>Incorrect file.</p> <p>The specified file format is incorrect. Check the format of the file identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0051	<p>Incorrect license key.</p> <p>The specified license key is incorrect. Check the license key shown in the details of this message.</p>
E0052	<p>File access failure.</p> <p>Unable to access the specified file. Possible causes include file restrictions or a lack of free space when creating a file.</p>
E0053	<p>Remote server access failure.</p> <p>Access to the remote server failed. Check the ETERNUS DX's network setting, the remote server setting, or the network environment's status.</p>
E0060	<p>Resource locked.</p> <p>The resource is being used by another session. Wait for a while and retry the command. If this error message continues to recur even after numerous command retries, a resource can be forcibly released by using the "set client-force-unlock" command (do not use this command while settings are being performed by another session of Web GUI, CLI, or monitoring software).</p>
E0061	<p>Lock was relinquished to another user.</p> <p>The process privilege is taken by another user (GUI, CLI, or monitoring software). Wait for a while and try again.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0070	<p>Resource busy.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter are used by another process. Check the working status of the resources identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0071	<p>Resource is linked to the other resource.</p> <p>The specified parameter is associated with other resources. Confirm the associated status of the specified parameter (Example: host mappings, ECO definitions, etc.). Release the association if necessary and try again. For example, host mappings can be released by using the "release host-affinity" command and/or the "release mapping" command, and Eco-mode definitions can be deleted by using the "release eco-raid-group" command.</p>
E0072	<p>Resource is temporarily insufficient.</p> <p>Could not execute because the required resource is temporarily insufficient. Wait for a while and retry the command.</p>
E0073	<p>Drive is currently Busy. Wait a while, and then retry.</p> <p>A timeout occurred while performing an internal retry. Wait for a while and retry the command.</p>
E0080	<p>Resource limited.</p> <p>A resource has reached its limit. Confirm the limit and the status of the specified parameter/function.</p>
E0081	<p>Number of active disks has reached the system limit.</p> <p>The drives or volumes have reached the specified upper limit. Check either the specified parameter or the system's upper limit value.</p>
E0089	<p>Not available under current Advanced Copy usable mode conditions.</p> <p>The current Advanced Copy mode does not permit this operation. Use the "show advanced-copy-parameters" command to check the Advanced Copy usable mode.</p> <p>The Advanced Copy usable mode can be canceled by using the "set advanced-copy-parameters" command if necessary.</p>
E0090	<p>Not available under current system status conditions.</p> <p>The current system status does not permit this operation. Check the status of the ETERNUS DX using the "show status" command or the "show enclosure-status" command.</p>
E0091	<p>Not available under current SNMP settings.</p> <p>The current SNMP mode does not permit this operation. Check the SNMP mode by using the "show snmp" command. The SNMP mode can be changed by using the "set snmp" command if necessary.</p>
E0092	<p>Not available under current operation mode conditions.</p> <p>The current operation mode does not permit this operation. Check the operation mode by using the "show enclosure-status" command.</p> <p>The operation mode can be set by using the "start maintenance" command or canceled by using the "stop maintenance" command if necessary.</p>
E0093	<p>Not available under current host affinity mode conditions.</p> <p>The current host affinity mode does not permit this operation. Check the host affinity mode by using the "show fc-parameters" command, the "show sas-parameters" command, or the "show iscsi-parameters" command. The host affinity mode can be set or canceled by using the "set fc-parameters" command, the "set sas-parameters" command, or the "set iscsi-parameters" command if necessary.</p>
E0094	<p>Not available under current encryption status conditions.</p> <p>The current encryption mode does not permit this operation. Check the encryption mode or the encryption state using the "show encryption" command or the "show volumes" command.</p> <p>The encryption mode can be set or canceled by using the "set encryption" command if necessary.</p>
E0095	<p>Not available under current e-mailing conditions.</p> <p>The current e-mail send condition does not permit this operation. Confirm whether the e-mail send condition is enabled by using the "show email-notification" command.</p> <p>Set the e-mail environment by using the "set email-notification" command if necessary.</p>
E0097	<p>Not available under master controller module.</p> <p>Could not execute this command from the master controller module. Try again from the slave controller module, which can be accessed by the redundant IP address. For details, refer to the "<a href="#">show network</a>" command.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0098	<p>Not available under slave controller module.</p> <p>Could not execute this command from the slave controller module. Try again from the master controller module.</p>
E0099	<p>Not available under current system configuration.</p> <p>The operation cannot be performed because of inconsistency with the system configuration.</p> <p>The setting operation cannot be performed because the configuration is not applied. Reboot the ETERNUS DX.</p>
E0100	<p>No space.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter have insufficient space. Check the resources associated with the object that was identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0101	<p>No memory.</p> <p>Could not allocate working memory. Close other sessions and try again.</p>
E0102	<p>Not available under system disk status.</p> <p>This message indicates that the execution condition does not match with the BUD (Bootup and Utility Device) status. Confirm the BUD status by using the "show disks" command.</p>
E0110	<p>Resource does not exist.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter do not exist. Check the resources associated with the object identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0111	<p>Resource is not reserved.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter are not reserved. Check the status of resources associated with the object identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0113	<p>No SNMP trap information.</p> <p>Could not execute because SNMP trap information is not registered. Check the SNMP trap information by using the "show snmp-trap" command.</p> <p>Create SNMP trap information by using the "create snmp-trap" command if necessary.</p>
E0114	<p>No volumes in the RAID Group / Thin provisioning pool.</p> <p>There are no volumes in the specified RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool. Check the number of volumes in the specified RAID group or Thin Provisioning Pool by using the "show raid-groups" command or the "show thin-pro-pools" command.</p>
E0115	<p>Performance monitor has not started.</p> <p>Collecting performance information has not started. Start collecting performance information by using the "start performance" command.</p>
E0116	<p>The system disks are included in the RAID group.</p> <p>System drives exist in the RAID group.</p>
E0117	<p>No target disks.</p> <p>The target drives do not exist. Confirm the drive status or details by using the "show disks" command.</p>
E0118	<p>Remote Copy target is not supported model.</p> <p>The specified storage system is not supported for Remote Equivalent Copy. Check whether or not to specify an appropriate storage system.</p>
E0120	<p>Already registered.</p> <p>The resource is already registered. Check the status of the object shown in the details of this message.</p>
E0122	<p>Closure of all CLI and GUI ports requires confirmation.</p> <p>Displayed when all the connection methods for both the CLI and GUI are to be disabled. If this is intentional, retry the command with the "-confirm-close-all yes" parameter specified to make the storage system inaccessible via CLI or GUI.</p>
E0123	<p>Closure of all CLI ports requires confirmation.</p> <p>Displayed when all the CLI connection methods are to be disabled. If this is intentional, retry the command with the "-confirm-close-all yes" parameter specified to make the storage system inaccessible via CLI.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0131	<p>Already unmapped.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter are already unmapped. Check the resources identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0132	<p>Already stopped.</p> <p>Resources corresponding to the specified parameter are already stopped. Check the resources identified in the details of this message.</p>
E0133	<p>Already running for expanding others.</p> <p>The relevant operation has been already executed with another resource.</p>
E0140	<p>One or more components have failed.</p> <p>One or more components have failed during the maintenance operation. Check the reason for the failure or take log files and ask the support department to investigate.</p>
E0141	<p>At least one resource is required.</p> <p>At least one or more resources are required. Check the specification.</p>
E0142	<p>One or more encrypted volumes exist.</p> <p>Cannot execute this command because encrypted volumes exist. Please check the status of volumes by using the "show volumes" command.</p>
E0143	<p>Unexpected error occurred during operator intervention.</p> <p>During operator intervention, an unexpected error occurred (Example: the terminal session was suddenly disconnected). Try the operation again.</p>
E0145	<p>Advanced Copy table exists.</p> <p>Advanced Copy table has already been defined in the system. Check the Advanced Copy table size by using the "show advanced-copy-parameters" command. The table size should be zero. Set the Advanced Copy table size to 0 by using the "set advanced-copy-parameters" command if necessary.</p>
E0146	<p>RAID group contains a temporary volume.</p> <p>Could not execute because a temporary volume exists in the RAID group. If necessary, retry the command after deleting the temporary volume.</p>
E0150	<p>Collecting performance data.</p> <p>Performance data is currently being collected. Wait for a while and retry the command.</p>
E0151	<p>Power-off or power-on in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while the system is turning on or turning off. Try again after the system has completed powering-on.</p>
E0152	<p>Volumes formatting in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while volumes are formatting. Check the progress status of the volumes using the "show volume-progress" command. Try again after formatting is complete.</p>
E0153	<p>Encryption or decryption of volumes in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while volumes are being encrypted or decrypted. Please check the progress of volumes operations by using the "show volume-progress" command. Try again after volume encryption or decryption is complete.</p>
E0154	<p>Advanced Copy session active.</p> <p>Could not execute while Advanced Copy sessions are processing. Check the status by using the "show advanced-copy-sessions" command and wait for the session to complete before retrying the command. Try again after the Advanced Copy sessions starts up.</p>
E0155	<p>Volumes migration in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while volumes are being migrated. Check the progress status of volumes by using the "show volume-progress" command.</p>
E0156	<p>RAID group expansion in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while a RAID group is being expanded. Check the progress status of RAID group operations by using the "show raid-group-progress" command.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0157	<p>Remote Copy session active.</p> <p>Could not execute while Remote Copy sessions are processing. Check the status using ETERNUS Web GUI or ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager (ACM).</p>
E0158	<p>Controller firmware update in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while controller firmware update is processing. Wait for a while and retry the command after the controller firmware update is complete.</p>
E0159	<p>Remote maintenance in process.</p> <p>Could not execute while remote maintenance is processing. Wait for a while and retry the command after remote maintenance is complete.</p>
E0160	<p>Competing with background process.</p> <p>Some operations are being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0161	<p>Competing with disk diagnosis running in background process.</p> <p>Disk diagnosis is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again or stop the disk diagnosis.</p>
E0162	<p>Competing with RAID group diagnosis running in background process.</p> <p>RAID group diagnosis is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0163	<p>Competing with hot update of firmware in background process.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0164	<p>Competing with cold update of firmware in background process.</p> <p>A cold controller firmware update is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0165	<p>Competing with update of disk firmware in background process.</p> <p>Disk firmware is being updated by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0166	<p>Competing with quick formatting of volume in background process.</p> <p>Quick formatting of a volume is running in other process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0167	<p>Competing with changing Advanced Copy parameters in background process.</p> <p>Advanced Copy parameters are being changed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0168	<p>Competing with allocating remote copy buffer in background process.</p> <p>A remote copy buffer is being allocated by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0169	<p>Competing with preparing firmware update in background process.</p> <p>A firmware update is being prepared by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0170	<p>Competing with setting cache control in background process.</p> <p>Cache control parameters are being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0171	<p>Competing with reassigning RAID group controller in background process.</p> <p>A RAID group is being reassigned to a different controller by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0172	<p>Competing with initializing volume in background process.</p> <p>A volume is being initialized by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0173	<p>Competing with encrypting or decrypting volume in background process.</p> <p>A volume is being encrypted or decrypted by another process. Please wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0174	<p>Competing with registering RAID group in background process.</p> <p>A RAID group is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0175	<p>Competing with deleting RAID group in background process.</p> <p>A RAID group is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
E0176	<p>Competing with registering volume in background process.</p> <p>A volume is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0177	Competing with deleting volume in background process. A volume is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0178	Competing with registering global hot spare in background process. A global hot spare is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0179	Competing with changing maintenance mode in background process. The maintenance mode is being changed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0180	Competing with moving volume in background process. A volume is being moved by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0181	Competing with expanding RAID group in background process. A RAID group is being expanded by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0182	Competing with collecting G-List information in background process. G-List information is being collected by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0183	Competing with setting ECO mode in background process. An Eco-mode is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0184	Competing with assigning ECO schedule in background process. An Eco-mode schedule is being assigned by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0185	Competing with setting ECO schedule in background process. An Eco-mode schedule is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0186	Competing with setting date and time in background process. Date and time are being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0187	Competing with expanding volume in background process. A volume is being expanded by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0188	Competing with deleting Advanced Copy session in background process. An Advanced Copy session is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0190	Competing with registering dedicated hot spare in background process. A dedicated hot spare is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0191	Competing with releasing dedicated hot spare in background process. A dedicated hot spare is being released by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0192	Competing with collecting event information in background process. Event information is being collected by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0193	Competing with deleting snap data volume in background process. A Snap Data Volume is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0194	Reclamation of Thin Provisioning Volume is in progress. A Thin Reclamation process is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E0195	Rebuild or Copyback in process. Rebuild or Copyback is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E0196	Competing with storage migration in background process. Storage Migration is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0197	Quick Unmap in process. Quick UNMAP (release of physical area) is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E0198	Flexible tier migration in process. Flexible Tier Migration is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E0200	Competing with setting Flexible tier mode in background process. The Flexible Tier mode is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0201	Competing with deleting Flexible tier pool in background process. A Flexible Tier Pool is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0202	Competing with formatting Flexible tier pool in background process. A Flexible Tier Pool is being formatted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0203	Competing with registering Flexible tier volume in background process. A Flexible Tier Volume is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0204	Competing with setting Flexible tier sub pool priority in background process. The Flexible Tier Sub Pool Priority is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0205	Competing with setting Flexible tier pool parameters in background process. The Flexible Tier Pool parameters are being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0206	Competing with Flexible tier migration in background process. Flexible Tier Migration is being started or stopped by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0207	Competing with registering Thin Provisioning Pool in background process. A Thin Provisioning Pool is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0208	Competing with deleting Thin Provisioning Volume in background process. A Thin Provisioning Pool is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0209	Competing with formatting Thin Provisioning Volume in background process. A Thin Provisioning Pool is being formatted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0210	Competing with setting Thin Provisioning Volume parameters in background process. The Thin Provisioning Pool parameters are being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0211	Competing with registering REC Disk Buffer Volume in background process. An REC disk buffer volume is being registered by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0212	Competing with deleting REC Disk Buffer Volume in background process. An REC disk buffer volume is being deleted by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0213	Competing with inhibiting copy destination volume in background process. A copy destination volume is being protected by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0214	Competing with Thin Provisioning Pool migration in background process. Thin Provisioning Pool Migration is being performed by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0215	Competing with setting cache size limit to volume in background process. The cache size limit is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0216	Competing with setting Offloaded Data Transfer Mode in background process. The ODX mode is being set by another process. Wait for a while and try again.
E0217	Competing with setting Key management group ID in background process. The ID of the key management group is being set as a background process.
E0218	Competing with changing Key in background process. The key of the key management group is being changed as a background process.
E0300	Syntax error in REC path information. (Incorrect file header) A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the header identifier is incorrect. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend the header identifier.
E0301	Syntax error in REC path information. (Version mismatch) A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the version information is mismatched. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend the version information.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0302	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Incorrect label)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the label name is incorrect. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend the label name.</p>
E0303	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Incorrect operand)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the operand name is incorrect. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend the operand name.</p>
E0304	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Duplicate definition)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the specified definitions are duplicated. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend the incorrect definition.</p>
E0305	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Missing label)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the required label names are missing. Check the output line given in the details of this message and add the required label names.</p>
E0306	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Too many labels)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, unnecessary label names exist. Check the output line given in the details of this message and delete any unnecessary label names.</p>
E0307	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Missing double quotes)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the specified operand name is not enclosed in double quotations. Check the output line given in the details of this message.</p>
E0308	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Unexpected label)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the specified label names are mismatched. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend it to the correct label.</p>
E0309	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Undefined information)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, undefined information was found. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend it to match the defined information.</p>
E0311	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Too many lines)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of lines used has reached its limit. Delete unnecessary lines.</p>
E0312	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Overlong line)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of characters used has reached its limit. Begin on a newline.</p>
E0313	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (WWN does not match actual)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, an inappropriate WWN was used. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend it to the appropriate WWN.</p>
E0314	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Host port mode does not match actual)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, an inappropriate host interface port mode was used. Check the output line given in the details of this message and amend it to the appropriate host interface port mode.</p>
E0315	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Number of storage-links for one storage system over upper limit)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of path information definitions for one storage system has reached its limit. Check the output line given in the details of this message.</p>
E0316	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Number of storage-links between one pair of storage systems over upper limit.)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of path information definitions between one pair of storage systems has reached its upper limit. Check the output line given in the details of this message.</p>
E0317	<p>Syntax error in REC path information. (Number of port-links for one host interface port over upper limit)</p> <p>A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of path information definitions for one host interface port has reached its limit. Check the output line given in the details of this message.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0318	Syntax error in REC path information. (Number of host interface ports for one storage system over upper limit)  A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of host interface port definitions for one storage system has reached its limit. Check the output line given in the details of this message.
E0319	Syntax error in REC path information. (Total number of storage systems over upper limit)  A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the number of storage system definitions has reached its limit. Check the output line given in the details of this message.
E0320	Syntax error in REC path information. (Total number of links over upper limit)  A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Specifically, the total number of linkages has reached its limit. Refine the result to obtain the necessary information.
E0321	Syntax error in REC path information. (CA type or IP version do not match)  A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. The CA type or IP version is not the same.
E0330	Flexible tier mode has already been valid.  The Flexible Tier mode is already enabled.
E0331	Flexible tier mode is not valid.  The Flexible Tier mode is disabled.
E0332	One or more flexible tier pools exist.  Flexible Tier Pools exist. Check whether Flexible Tier Pools exist by using the "show flexible-tier-pools" command.
E0333	Cannot format Flexible Tier Pool.  The specified Flexible Tier Pool cannot be formatted. Check the Flexible Tier Pool by using the "show flexible-tier-pools" command.
E0334	RAID Migration cannot be set to the specified volume.  RAID Migration cannot be set for the specified volume. Check the volume by using the "show volumes" command.
E0335	RAID Migration cannot be set to the specified Flexible Tier Pool.  RAID Migration cannot be set for the specified Flexible Tier Pool volume. Check the Flexible Tier Pool by using the "show flexible-tier-pools" command.
E0336	Migration failed because of insufficient free space of the destination pool.  The migration failed because the free space in the migration destination pool is insufficient.
E0337	The specified Flexible Tier Pool does not have a Flexible Tier Sub Pool.  A Flexible Tier Sub Pool does not exist in the specified Flexible Tier Pool. Check whether Flexible Tier Sub Pools exist by using the "show flexible-tier-pools" command.
E0342	The time out occurred.  A timeout occurred during AIS Connect processing. Check the network status.
E0343	The network is not normal.  The AIS Connect network is not in normal status. Check the network status.
E0344	The time out occurred in the network.  A timeout occurred in the AIS Connect network. Check the network status.
E0345	The network of IDM server is unreachable.  The network of the AIS Connect server cannot be accessed. Check the network status.
E0346	The IDM server is unreachable.  The AIS Connect server cannot be accessed. Check the network status.
E0347	The IDM server refused the connection.  The AIS Connect server refused the connection. Check the network status.
E0348	The IDM server reset the connection.  The AIS Connect server reset the connection. Check the network status.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0349	The SSL communication fault occurred. An SSL communication error occurred. Check the network status.
E0350	The name resolution of the host name failed. Name resolution of the host name failed. Check the network status.
E0351	It failed in the HTTP authentication. HTTP authentication failed. Check the authentication setting.
E0352	The HTTP authentic method does not correspond. HTTP authentication is not supported. Check the authentication setting.
E0353	It failed in the SOCKS authentication. SOCKS authentication for the proxy server failed. Check the authentication setting.
E0354	The SOCKS authentic method does not correspond. SOCKS authentication is not supported. Check the authentication setting.
E0355	Export log in process. A log is already being exported. Wait for a while and retry the command.
E0356	AIS Connect or AIS Connect server authentication is enabled. AIS Connect function is enabled. Disable the AIS Connect function, and then retry the command.
E0357	AIS Connect is disabled. AIS Connect function is disabled. Enable the AIS Connect function, and then retry the command.
E0358	REMCS is enabled. REMCS function is enabled. Disable the REMCS function, and then retry the command.
E0359	Log Transmission of E-Mail Notification is enabled. Log transmission via email notification is enabled. Disable the log transmission, and then retry the command.
E0360	AIS SSL certificate is not registered. A proper root certificate is not registered. Register a proper root certificate.
E0361	AIS SSL certificate is invalid. The root certificate is invalid or has expired. Register a proper root certificate.
E0362	Log transmission of E-Mail notification and AIS connect cannot be enabled simultaneously. The log transmission of the E-mail notification and AIS Connect cannot be enabled simultaneously.
E0390	Backup REC Path information does not exist. A backup file does not exist in the system. This also means a path information file has not been set for the system yet.
E0391	Round trip time measurement has failed. Measuring the round trip time has failed for any reason. Confirm the environment between the ETERNUS DX storage systems.
E0392	Unsupported path type. Could not execute due to the path type. Confirm the path type by using the "show rec-path" command.
E0393	Syntax error in REC path information. (iSCSI parameter(s) do not match actual) A syntax error occurred for the specified path information file. Check the iSCSI parameter and correct the syntax.
E0394	Failed to access the server. Access to the server failed.
E0395	The object cannot be operated. The target object cannot be operated.
E0396	A part of SpinUp/Down failed. Some of the spinup/spindown operations failed.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E0397	All SpinUp/Down failed. All of the spinup/spindown operations failed.
E0399	Syntax error in REC path information. A syntax error was detected in the specified REC path information file. Check the output line given in the details of this message.
E5000	Parameter not supported. The specified parameter is not supported. Check the parameter that was specified.
E5001	User authority to use the parameter is improper. The specified parameter cannot be used with the current policy.
E5002	Authority of security is necessary for data decryption. The data cannot be decrypted because the user does not have the required privilege.
E5003	The user authority to use the command is improper. The specified command cannot be executed with the current policy.
E5010	The volume encryption is specified for SED disk. Volume encryption cannot be performed for a RAID group that is configured with SEDs.
E5033	Cannot Warm Boot CFL. A warm boot cannot be performed because a hot controller firmware update is currently being executed.
E5034	Cannot Hard Boot CFL. A hard boot cannot be performed because a hot controller firmware update is currently being executed.
E5081	Abnormal pinned CBE error. Formatting cannot be performed because Pin exists.
E5084	System not ready. The status of the ETERNUS DX is "Not Ready".
E5100	Thin Provisioning mode is invalid. The Thin Provisioning function is disabled.
E5101	Check thin-pro-pool Status. The Thin Provisioning Pool cannot be formatted. Check the status of the Thin Provisioning Pool by using the "show thin-pro-pools" command.
E5102	Migration session count is limit. The number of sessions (including balancing sessions) has reached the maximum number of sessions that can run in an ETERNUS DX.
E5104	Thin Provisioning Pool capacity is limit. The TPP capacity exceeds the maximum TPP capacity that can be created in an ETERNUS DX.
E5105	Not exist unused disk enough The number of unused drives is insufficient.
E5106	RAID or Volume is insufficient. The number of RAID groups or volumes is insufficient.
E5107	RAID type is temporary. The RAID group is temporarily being used.
E5108	Volume type is not Thin Provisioning Volume. The volume type is not TPV.
E5109	RAID group belong to thin-provisioning-pool/flexible-tier-pool. The RAID group belongs to a Thin Provisioning Pool or a Flexible Tier Pool.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5110	Thin Provisioning Volume count is limit. The maximum number of volumes has been registered in the ETERNUS DX.
E5200	No copy license. No copy license is registered.
E5201	Invalid copy phase The current phase of the copy session is incorrect. Check the session phase by using the "show advanced-copy-sessions" command.
E5202	Exist SDV / SDPV. SDVs or SDPVs exist.
E5203	Exist REC disk buffer. REC disk buffer volumes exist.
E5204	Exist REC buffer. The REC buffer is set.
E5205	Exist REC path setting. The REC path is set.
E5206	Exist any of copy session(s). Copy sessions exist. Check the sessions by using the "show advanced-copy-sessions" command. Wait until the copy sessions finish, and then try again.
E5207	Exist volume(s) of protection from copy destination. Copy destination volumes with protection settings exist.
E5208	Copy license information updating due to trial license expired. The copy license information is being updated. Wait for a while and try again.
E5209	Not support E6K to target of REC. An REC session cannot be established because the connection destination storage system does not support REC or there is another cause.
E5210	Data in disk buffer. Data exists in the disk buffer. Check the disk buffer by using the "show rec-buffer" command.
E5211	The raid group is for REC disk buffer. The specified RAID group is configured with an REC disk buffer. Check the RAID group by using the "show rec-disk-buffer" command.
E5212	Source and destination RA type is not match. The RA type does not match for the copy source and copy destination devices in the REC path settings. Check the contents of the settings for the path information file.
E5213	The times registering trial license has been reached the system limit. The limit for the number of times that the trial license can be registered has been reached.
E5214	Exist RA. The RA is set. Check the RA by using the "show host-port-mode" command.
E5215	Result string is too long. The CLI execution result in the remote terminal exceeds the predetermined size.
E5216	Compete for the affinity path. A conflict occurred in an affinity port.
E5217	The specified multiplicity or priority level mismatch connect mode (Direct/Switched) of the REC path. The connected path type is different from the specified condition of the parameter.
E5300	An error occurred in the copy path connection. An error (timeout or blockage) occurred during communication between the ETERNUS DX storage systems.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5301	An unsupported command was issued by the remote storage. The remote ETERNUS storage system issued a command that the local ETERNUS DX does not support.
E5302	The specified volume number is not correct (exceeding the maximum volume number). A number that is larger than the maximum value for the configuration is specified for the LU.
E5303	The specified volume is not supported. The LU type of the specified volume is not supported.
E5304	Advanced copy cannot be set to the specified volume. A copy session cannot be set for the LU.
E5305	There is "Bad Sector" in the copy source volume. The copy source volume contains a bad sector.
E5306	Encryption settings of copy source volume and copy destination volume are different. The encryption settings of the copy source LU and the copy destination LU are different.
E5307	The copy source volume and copy destination volume don't belong to the same resource domain. The resource domain number for the copy source LU and the copy destination LU are different.
E5308	The specified volume is a "Temporary". The LU is a dummy volume. A dummy volume is a volume that remains after RAID Migration fails. A restoration copy cannot be set for a session that is to be restored because the session will be deleted.
E5309	Disk failure occurred while the relevant copy session is in "Suspend" state. The copy session turns into "Error" state. The session transitioned to error status because the drive in Suspend status failed.
E5310	Parameter error occurred. Parameter error (incorrect settings).
E5311	Source volume whose capacity is larger than destination volume's cannot be specified. The copy source LU is larger than the copy destination LU for all of the copy sessions.
E5312	It failed to reverse the copy session. The relevant session could not be reversed or its mode could not be changed.
E5313	Copy range conflicts with the existing RAID migration session. The scope of the copy session overlaps the scope of the existing RAID Migration session.
E5314	The specified copy range of the copy source volume is overlap with the copy range in an existing session (excluding cascade and restore). The copy source LU area is the same as the copy destination LU area for the existing copy session (excluding cascade copy sessions and restoration copy sessions).
E5315	The specified copy range of the copy destination volume is overlap with the copy range in an existing session (excluding cascade and restore copy). The copy destination LU area is the same as the copy source LU area for the existing copy session (excluding cascade copy sessions and restoration copy sessions).
E5316	The specified cascade copy cannot be done. The scope for the cascade copy is out of the allowed range.
E5317	The copy session which is in progress of restoring was specified. A restoration copy session is attempted to be restored.
E5318	The number of cascades exceeds the maximum. The number of cascades exceeds the upper limit.
E5319	An "Error Suspend" session was specified. The restoration copy is attempted with Concurrent OPC and the session that is specified for this restoration copy is in ErrorSuspend state or in the Readyng phase.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5320	<p>Multiple copy sessions in REC Consistency mode cannot operate in a single storage.</p> <p>A multiple copy in REC Consistency mode is attempted in a single ETERNUS DX (this type of multiple copy is allowed when one of the copy sessions is suspended).</p>
E5321	<p>The state of the specified session is not correct.</p> <p>The relevant session has been deleted. The status of the QuickOPC session is not Active or Copying when the session restarts. The SUSPEND command is issued when the status of the relevant session is not Active/Equivalent. (This does not apply when an REC session is forcibly specified.) The SUSPEND command is issued when the status of the relevant (REC) session is ErrorSuspend or Halt and when the status of the REC buffer is Buffering (this also applies when an REC session is forcibly specified). The CHANGE command is issued when the status of the relevant session is not Suspend.</p>
E5322	<p>A command was issued while processing CONCURRENT SUSPEND command.</p> <p>A command is issued while the CONCURRENT SUSPEND command transitions the asynchronous session status to Suspend.</p>
E5323	<p>The specified operation is not a "Force specify".</p> <p>The session cannot be transitioned to Suspend status or cannot be deleted because it is not forcibly specified. A STOP command is issued to a session that is not the oldest for a SnapOPC+ operation without specifying the session forcibly.</p>
E5324	<p>There is no path to access to the copy source volume or copy destination volume.</p> <p>The RAID group for the copy source LU or the copy destination LU is blocked.</p>
E5325	<p>The specified volume is an Advanced Copy read-only volume. It cannot be set as copy destination volume.</p> <p>The copy destination LU is write-protected.</p>
E5326	<p>The STOP command was issued to a SnapOPC/SnapOPC+ session which is in progress of restoring.</p> <p>A STOP command is issued to a SnapOPC session that is being restored.</p>
E5327	<p>REC buffer transfer is not complete in time or buffer recovery is processing under SUSPEND command process. SUSPEND command cannot be done.</p> <p>The REC buffer transfer did not complete within a certain period of time. A buffer recovery is performed while the SUSPEND command is being processed (the SUSPEND command cannot be executed because untransferred data is recovered).</p>
E5328	<p>REC buffer data transfer is under monitoring. The specified session cannot be reversed.</p> <p>The session cannot be reversed because the untransferred REC buffer is being monitored.</p>
E5329	<p>It will lead to EC/REC cascade copy session that is not in "Suspend" state but has cascade source volume.</p> <p>The session cannot be reversed because it is the cascade source for an EC/REC that is not in Suspend status.</p>
E5330	<p>The copy session has already been reversed.</p> <p>The session cannot be reversed because it has been already reversed.</p>
E5331	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for this storage.</p> <p>The number of sessions exceeds the maximum number in a single ETERNUS DX.</p>
E5332	<p>The copy license is not valid.</p> <p>The copy license is invalid.</p>
E5333	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for each copy source volume.</p> <p>The number of sessions exceeds the maximum number for a copy source LU in a single ETERNUS DX.</p>
E5334	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for each copy destination volume.</p> <p>The number of sessions exceeds the maximum number for a copy destination LU in a single ETERNUS DX.</p>
E5335	<p>The number of SnapOPC+ copy session generations exceeds the maximum for a copy source volume.</p> <p>The number of SnapOPC+ generations exceeds the maximum number for a copy source LU.</p>
E5336	<p>Copy area of copy source volumes in monitoring copy sessions is overlap.</p> <p>The copy source LU areas of some monitoring sessions overlap.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5337	The new copy session settings are the same with an existing one's. The new copy session cannot be started.
	The scope of the new copy session and the existing copy session are identical (excluding the case when these sessions are OPC sessions or QuickOPC sessions and these session restart in Copying status) or the copy destination areas of the new copy session and the existing copy overlap each other.
E5338	Copy destination volume and cascade copy destination volume in the copy session is overlap.
	The copy destination for the relevant session overlaps the cascade linkage destination.
E5339	It will lead to copy destination volumes overlap. EC/REC cascade copy session cannot be reversed.
	The copy destinations of some sessions overlap each other because the EC/REC session that is cascaded is reversed.
E5340	SDV is being initialized.
	An SDV is being initialized.
E5341	There is already a copy session where the specified SDV was set as copy destination.
	A session for which the copy destination is an SDV exists.
E5342	The copy session has already been set.
	The copy session has already been set.
E5343	The copy session has already been deleted.
	The copy session has already been deleted.
E5344	The copy session is in progress of transition to "Suspend" state asynchronously or has already been in "Suspend" state.
	The session to which the SUSPEND command is issued is being asynchronously transitioned to Suspend status. The session has been transitioned to Suspend status.
E5345	The state of the session is already Active.
	The session is already in Active status.
E5346	The copy table has not been set yet.
	The copy table has not been set yet.
E5347	Copy table size is not sufficient.
	The size of the copy bitmap is not sufficient.
E5348	REC buffer is not in "Active" state.
	The REC buffer is not in Active status.
E5349	Copy source and copy destination, usage (sending or receiving) of REC buffer settings after resuming copy sessions don't match the original settings.
	The copy source and the copy destination do not correspond with the sender and receiver targets of the REC buffer after the copy session is reversed.
E5350	REC buffer setting is being changed or REC buffer related functions are in progress.
	The REC buffer setting is being changed. An REC buffer operation is running with ETERNUS Web GUI or ETERNUS CLI.
E5351	Copy source and copy destination, usage (sending or receiving) of REC buffer settings after reversing copy sessions don't match the original settings.
	The REC buffer setting is being changed. An REC buffer operation is running with ETERNUS Web GUI or ETERNUS CLI.
E5352	The disk configured the RAID group of the specified volume is in motor OFF state due to ECO-mode.
	The specified LU cannot be copied because the drive motor is turned off (this applies for OPC sessions).
E5353	The specified BoxID cannot be found.
	The specified Box ID information cannot be found in the configuration information.
E5354	The copy path is not in "Normal" state. Copy sessions in this storage were deleted but copy sessions in the remote storage still exist.
	The session could be deleted in the local ETERNUS DX but could not be deleted in the remote ETERNUS DX because of an error in the path status.
E5355	Firmware update is in progress. The specified operation cannot be done.
	The command cannot be processed because a hot controller firmware update is currently being executed.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5356	Advanced copy resolution settings of the local storage and remote storage are different. The storage system resolution is not the same between the copy source and the copy destination.
E5357	SDV was specified as a copy destination volume where the copy session is not SnapOPC+. An SDV is specified for the copy destination of the non-SnapOPC copy session.
E5358	SDV was specified as a copy source volume in SnapOPC+. An SDV is specified for the copy source of the SnapOPC copy session.
E5359	A standard volume was specified as copy destination volume in SnapOPC+. A volume is specified for the copy destination of the SnapOPC copy session.
E5360	An error, which can be recovered by retry, occurred. An error that is recoverable with a retry has occurred. Try again.
E5361	The storage is in "Not Ready" or internal error state. The ETERNUS DX is in a Not Ready status or an error event occurred in the firmware.
E5362	The specified volume is currently configured with Bind-in-Cache extent. RAID Migration cannot apply to this volume. RAID Migration cannot be performed for the specified LU because Bind-in-Cache is running for the LU.
E5363	The previous generation session is Readying The latest generation was attempted to be set for the SnapOPC+ session with a generation in Readying Session status.
E5364	The restore OPC can not start by using concurrent OPC. A restoration OPC session was attempted to be set with Concurrent OPC.
E5365	The restore OPC of readying session can not start. A restoration session was attempted to be set for a Readying session.
E5366	The specified copy range is overlap with the copy range in an existing xcopy session. The copy destination area of a new session that is cascaded with a XCOPY session overlaps the copy destination area of an existing XCOPY session or an XCOPY session that is to be restored.
E5367	The specified copy range is overlap with the copy range in an existing Readying or Copying OPC session. The Concurrent OPC command attempted to overwrite an existing OPC session in Copying status or the normal OPC start command attempted to overwrite an existing OPC session in Readying status.
E5368	The specified session can not restart because it is under restore. A QuickOPC session that is being restored was attempted to be restarted with Concurrent OPC.
E5369	The specified remote box id is not support the out of band copy. The ETERNUS storage system that is connected to start the REC does not support copying via a LAN (Support is only available for connections between two ETERNUS DX S2 series systems or later).
E5370	In the remote old model storage, the specified volume is invalid. An invalid volume is specified in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5371	In the remote old model storage, parameter error occurred. A command parameter error occurred in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5372	In the remote old model storage, the specified copy range is overlap with the copy range in an existing session. The scope of some sessions overlap each other in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5373	In the remote old model storage, status of session or status of volume is error. The session status or the LU status is not normal in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5374	In the remote old model storage, the number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions. The number of sessions exceeds the maximum number in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5375	In the remote old model storage, the new copy session overlap with the existing one's. The new copy session cannot be started.
	The copy destination of a new session overlaps the copy destination of an existing session in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5376	In the remote old model storage, error occurred about setting of the copy table or status of REC Buffer.
	The copy table setting or the REC buffer status is not normal in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5377	In the remote old model storage, the specified copy volume is a "SDV".
	An SDV is specified for the copy volume in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an model.
E5378	In the remote old model storage, an error occurred in the copy path connection.
	A communication error between the ETERNUS storage systems occurred in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5379	An unsupported command was issued by the remote old model storage.
	An unsupported command for communication between ETERNUS storage systems is issued from the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5380	In the remote old model storage, copy session has been already set.
	The session is already set in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5381	In the remote old model storage, copy session has been already deleted.
	The session is already deleted in the remote ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5382	In the remote old model storage, copy session is already in "Suspend" status or changing to be "Suspend" status.
	An asynchronous session is being transitioned to Suspend status or the session is in Suspend status in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5383	In the remote old model storage, copy session status is already in "Active" status.
	The session is in Active status in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5384	In the remote old model storage, no copy license.
	No copy license is registered in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5385	In the remote old model storage configuration, the specified BoxID cannot be found.
	The specified Box ID information cannot be found in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5386	The copy path is not in "Normal" state. Copy sessions in this storage were deleted but copy sessions in the remote old model storage still exist.
	A session could be deleted in the local ETERNUS DX but could not be deleted in the remote ETERNUS DX that is an older model because of an error in the path status.
E5387	In the remote old model storage, firmware update is in progress. The specified operation cannot be done.
	The command cannot be processed in the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model because a hot controller firmware update is currently being executed.
E5388	Copy resolution settings of the local storage and remote old model storage are different.
	The storage system resolution is not the same between the copy source (older model) and the copy destination.
E5389	In the remote old model storage, an error, which can be recovered by retry, occurred.
	An error that is recoverable with a retry has occurred in the old model of the connection destination. Try again.
E5390	The remote old model storage is in "Not Ready" or internal error state.
	The connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model is in a Not Ready status or an error event occurred in the firmware of the connection destination ETERNUS storage system that is an older model.
E5391	There is not the certification of consistency.
	The Concurrent OPC error recovered (this does not guarantee data integrity).
E5392	Multiple copy source storage exists.
	The copy destination to which the command was issued has multiple copy source ETERNUS storage systems.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E5393	The certification of consistency is unknown. The Concurrent OPC warning recovered (this may or may not guarantee data integrity).
E5394	The copy source storage is not support this command. The command that was issued to the copy destination is not supported by the copy source firmware.
E5395	Controller Module failed. Copy session control failed because a CM degraded.
E5396	The remote storage is not support this function. The firmware of the remote ETERNUS storage system does not support REC.
E5400	The same command that was issued by specifying by start has already been processed. The same command that is specified by start is already being processed.
E5401	The same command that was issued by specifying by restart has already been processed. The same command that is specified by restart is already being processed.
E5402	REC transfer mode which specified by Start or Resume command is invalid at all RA ports which configure path. The REC transfer mode that is specified by the Start command or the Resume command is invalid for all of the RA ports that configure the path.
E5501	iSNS server cannot be connected from the specified iSCSI CA port. The iSNS server is not set for the specified iSCSI CA port.
E5502	CLI cannot change the host or port parameter setting created by GUI. A host name and port setting that are created with GUI cannot be changed by CLI.
E5503	The Multiple VLAN setting of a specified port is invalid. The multiple VLAN setting of the specified port is invalid.
E5504	The specified Additional IP Information setting is invalid. The specified virtual port setting is invalid.
E5601	The automatic setup of IPv6 address cannot be performed. The setup of automatic IPv6 address typing cannot be performed.
E5701	The factory setup is not done. The factory settings have not been performed.
E5900	Command error. Common MMI error.
E6000	Advanced Copy session that covers the entire volume is active. An Advanced Copy session that affects the entire volume is being performed.
E6001	The specified volume is ODX Buffer Volume. The specified volume is an ODX Buffer volume.
E6002	The specified volume is volume during Zero Reclamation execution. The specified volume is a volume that is currently undergoing Zero Reclamation.
E6003	Offloaded Data Transfer Mode is valid. The Offloaded Data Transfer mode is enabled.
E6004	Offloaded Data Transfer Mode is not valid. The Offloaded Data Transfer mode is disabled.
E6005	ODX Buffer Volume exist. ODX Buffer volumes exist.
E6006	The specified volume is not ODX Buffer Volume. The specified volume is not an ODX Buffer volume.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E6007	Offloaded Data Transfer in process. An Offloaded Data Transfer is in progress.
E6008	The specified volume is not volume during Zero Reclamation execution. The specified volume is a volume that is currently not undergoing Zero Reclamation.
E6009	Not available under operating Bind-in-Cache. The specified command cannot be executed because Bind-in-Cache is set.
E6010	Current cache page size is over specified cache limit size. The cache capacity that is being used by the Write process has exceeded the specified cache capacity limit.
E6011	Not available under cache limit settings. The cache memory cannot be used because its capacity is set to be limited.
E6012	The RAID migration from which a security level differs requires security authority. The Security Setting policy is required to perform RAID Migration with a different security level.
E6201	The specified RAID Group does not consist of SED. The specified RAID group does not consist of SEDs.
E7001	SED authentication key is not registered. The SED authentication key is not registered.
E7002	The master server is not registered in the key management group. The master server is not registered in the key management group.
E7003	Rejected by the server. Please try again to be accepted on the server. The server rejected the relevant operation. Set the server to accept the operation and try again.
E7004	The key which can be changed is not in the server. The server contains no keys that can be changed.
E7005	Abnormal state of the key. The key state is not normal.
E7006	The key is not acquired. The key is not acquired.
E7007	The key management group is not registered. The key management group is not registered.
E7100	The specified Flexible Tier Pool has Flexible Tier Volume(s) which is balancing. The specified Flexible Tier Pool has Flexible Tier Volumes that are being balanced.
E7101	There is no free OLU or SLU to create destination LUN. There is no free volume to create a destination LUN.
E7102	It is in the process of deleting source Thin Provisioning Volume internally which is done after migration. A source Thin Provisioning Volume is internally being deleted after migration.
E7103	Number of migration sessions has reached the system limit. The number of migration sessions has reached the system limit.
E7104	The source LUN has already using for migrated. The source LUN is already being used for a migration session.
E7105	The source LUN has already using at other session. The source LUN is already being used for another session.
E7106	The resource in the internal is depleted. All of the internal resources are already been used.
E7107	State of source volume or destination volume is error. An error has occurred in the source volume or the destination volume.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E7108	The specified volume don't have migration session during startup. A migration session is not running for the specified volume.
E7109	The specified volume is currently configured with Bind-in-Cache extent. Bind-in-Cache is set for the specified volume.
E7110	Logical capacity which can be migrate is over. The logical capacity that can be migrated exceeds the maximum capacity.
E7111	Physical capacity of destination pool is error. The physical capacity of the destination pool is abnormal.
E7112	There is not enough free space to create the pool in the device. There is not enough free space to create the pool in the ETERNUS DX.
E7113	Balancing cannot be executed because there is not enough free space in the pool. Balancing cannot be executed because there is not enough free space in the pool.
E7114	Balancing cannot be executed because the device is in error state. Balancing cannot be executed because the ETERNUS DX is in error state.
E8000	Undefined command. Undefined command.
E8001	Undefined parameter. Undefined parameter.
E8002	Another user is performing an operation. Another user is performing an operation.
E8003	The lock session ID cannot be obtained. The lock session ID cannot be obtained.
E8004	The value cannot be specified under current user authority. The specified parameter includes a parameter that cannot be specified with the current user policy.
E8005	The specified user account does not exist. The specified user account does not exist.
E8006	Because there will be no user account that can configure user account or role, the specified operation cannot be done. There are no user accounts with the User Management policy.
E8007	Your password has expired. You must change your password and log in again. A disabled command was executed using an account with an expired password.
E8008	Password policy and Lockout policy cannot be enforced on a user account with the Software role. The password policy and the account lockout policy cannot be applied to user accounts with the Software role.
E8100	The syntax is incorrect. The syntax is incorrect.
E8101	An unusable character is specified. An unusable character is specified.
E8102	The parameter is out of the allowed range. The parameter is out of the allowed range.
E8103	An unnecessary parameter is specified. An unnecessary parameter is specified.
E8104	The required parameter is not specified. The required parameter is not specified.
E8105	The number of specified values is too many. The number of specified values is too many.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E8106	The number of specified values is not enough. The number of specified values is not enough.
E8107	The number of specified characters is too many. The number of specified characters is too many.
E8108	The number of specified characters is not enough. The number of specified characters is not enough.
E8109	The combination of the parameters or values is incorrect. The combination of the parameters or values is incorrect.
E810A	A value that is not a multiple of 100GB is specified for the Extreme Cache capacity. A value that is not a multiple of 100GB is specified for the Extreme Cache capacity.
E810B	The specified value does not match the current setting value. The specified value does not match the current setting value. Check the current setting value.
E810C	The specified value is not supported by the device model. The specified value is not supported by the ETERNUS DX.
E810D	No values are specified. No values are specified.
E810E	The format of the value is incorrect. The format of the value is incorrect.
E810F	The password is incorrect. The password is incorrect.
E8800	Unable to resolve destination address. The address resolution failed.
E8801	The route addition failed. Check the network address of the destination and the src port. The route configuration failed.
E8802	Cannot connect to the server. Connecting to the host failed.
E8803	Login incorrect. The login failed.
E8804	The processing status of packet capture is invalid. The packet capture process state is invalid.
E8805	Detected an error during ftp command establishment. An error was detected while preparing to execute the FTP command.
E8806	Detected an error during ftp command execution. Maybe incorrect the file name or permission settings are the cause of the error. An error was detected while executing the FTP command.
E8807	Detect FTP Connection Failure. The connection to the FTP server failed.
E8808	Reading data from the FTP server failed. Reading data from the FTP server failed.
E8809	Writing data to the FTP server failed. Writing data from the FTP server failed.
E9000	The device model does not support the command. The ETERNUS DX model does not support the command.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E9001	The command cannot be executed because the device is in "Not Ready" status. The command cannot be executed because the ETERNUS DX is in Not Ready status.
E9002	The storage cluster license is not registered. The Storage Cluster license is not registered.
E9003	The storage cluster license is already registered. The Storage Cluster license is already registered.
E9004	The copy license and storage cluster license is not registered. Both the copy license and the Storage Cluster license are not registered.
E9006	The command cannot be executed because the device is not in "Normal" status. The command cannot be executed because the ETERNUS DX is not in Normal status.
E9007	The GS license is registered. The GS license is registered.
E9008	The Advanced Copy license is not registered. The Advanced Copy license is not registered.
E9009	The Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is not registered. The Non-disruptive Storage Migration License is not registered.
E900A	The Non-disruptive Storage Migration license is already registered. The Non-disruptive Storage Migration License is already registered.
E9200	The Extreme Cache function is not enabled. The Extreme Cache function is not enabled for the ETERNUS DX.
E9201	The Flexible Tier mode is enabled. The Flexible Tier mode is enabled. Disable the Flexible Tier mode.
E9202	The Thin Provisioning allocation mode is TPV balancing. The Thin Provisioning allocation mode is TPV balancing. Change the Thin Provisioning allocation mode to TPP balancing.
E9203	Disk Patrol is disabled. Disk Patrol is disabled.
E9204	The device contains pinned data. The ETERNUS DX contains pinned data.
E9205	The command cannot be executed because the network setting is the factory default setting. The command cannot be executed because the network setting is the factory default setting.
E9206	The Extreme Cache function is enabled. The Extreme Cache function is enabled.
E9207	The operation mode is not "Maintenance Mode". The operation mode is not Maintenance Mode.
E9208	SMI-S server is already enabled. The SMI-S function is enabled.
E9209	SMI-S server is already disabled. The SMI-S function is disabled.
E920A	SMI-S server is work in progress for changing the state. The operational state of the SMI-S function is currently being modified.
E920B	The WoL function is not enabled. The VVOL function is not enabled.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E920D	The Extreme Cache function and Extreme Cache Pool function is not enabled. The Extreme Cache function is not enabled.
E920E	The encryption mode is disabled. The command cannot be executed due to an inconsistency between the encryption mode and the parameter.
E920F	It is necessary to disable the EXC or EXC Pool function before enable the EXC or EXC Pool function. The Extreme Cache function must be disabled before enabling.
E9210	Collecting performance data is already running. A performance information acquisition is already in progress.
E9211	Collecting performance data has been started by Storage Cruiser. A performance information acquisition has been started from Storage Cruiser.
E9212	The Compression mode is not enabled. The Compression mode setting of the ETERNUS DX is not enabled.
E9219	The current default chunk size of the device is different from one or more existing Flexible Tier Pools. Because the ETERNUS DX has FTRPs with chunk sizes that are different from the current default chunk size, the chunk sizes within the ETERNUS DX may differ.
E9220	SSL certificate used for SMI-S HTTPS connection can be changed only when enabling SMI-S function. The SSL certificate used for SMI-S can be changed only when the SMI-S function is changed from "disabled" to "enabled".
E9221	SSL certificate for Web GUI is not registered. The SSL certificate for ETERNUS Web GUI is not registered.
E9300	Competing with cold update of firmware in background process. A cold controller firmware update is currently being executed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9301	Competing with hot update of firmware in background process. A hot controller firmware update is currently being executed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9302	Competing with update of disk firmware in background process. Disk firmware is being updated. Wait for a while and try again.
E9303	Competing with diagnosing RAID groups. The RAID group is being diagnosed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9304	Competing with diagnosing Disks. The drive is being diagnosed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9305	Competing with quick formatting of volume in background process. The QF Bit Map is being obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9306	Competing with changing Advanced Copy parameters in background process. The copy table size is being changed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9307	Competing with allocating remote copy buffer in background process. The REC buffer is being obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9308	Competing with preparing firmware update in background process. The EC is being switched. Wait for a while and try again.
E9309	Competing with setting cache control in background process. Bind-in-Cache is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E930A	Competing with reassigning RAID group controller in background process. The assigned CM for the RAID group is being changed. Wait for a while and try again.
E930B	Competing with initializing volume in background process. The Snap Data Volume is being initialized. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E930C	Competing with encrypting or decrypting volume in background process. An encryption process or a decryption process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E930D	Competing with registering RAID group in background process. A RAID group is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E930E	Competing with deleting RAID group in background process. A RAID group is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E930F	Competing with registering volume in background process. An LU is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E9310	Competing with deleting volume in background process. An LU is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E9311	Competing with registering global hot spare in background process. A hot spare is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E9312	Competing with changing maintenance mode in background process. A maintenance operation is being started or terminated. Wait for a while and try again.
E9313	Competing with expanding RAID group in background process. LDE is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9314	Competing with collecting G-List information in background process. G-List information is being collected. Wait for a while and try again.
E9315	Competing with setting ECO mode in background process. An Eco-mode operation is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9316	Competing with assigning ECO schedule in background process. An Eco-mode operation is being set for each RAID group. Wait for a while and try again.
E9317	Competing with setting ECO schedule in background process. An Eco-mode schedule is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9318	Competing with setting date and time in background process. Date and time are being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9319	Competing with expanding volume in background process. LUN Concatenation is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E931A	Competing with deleting Advanced Copy session in background process. An EC/REC session is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E931B	Competing with deleting Advanced Copy session in background process. An OPC session is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E931C	Competing with storage migration in background process. Data migration is being performed in an open system. Wait for a while and try again.
E931D	Competing with storage migration in background process. Data migration is being performed in a Mainframe system. Wait for a while and try again.
E931E	Competing with deleting snap data volume in background process. An SDPV is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E931F	Competing with changing Advanced Copy parameters in background process. The SDPV resolution is being changed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9320	Competing with searching target WWNs. The target WWN is being obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9321	Competing with collecting disk performance information. Drive performance error information is being obtained. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E9322	Competing with checking file of storage migration path information. A data migration file is being confirmed in an open system. Wait for a while and try again.
E9323	Competing with checking file of storage migration path information. A data migration file is being confirmed in a Mainframe system. Wait for a while and try again.
E9324	Competing with registering Thin Provisioning Pool in background process. A pool is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E9325	Competing with deleting Thin Provisioning Pool in background process. A pool is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E9326	Competing with formatting Thin Provisioning Pool in background process. A pool is being formatted. Wait for a while and try again.
E9327	Competing with registering Thin Provisioning Volume in background process. A pool volume is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E9328	Competing with deleting Thin Provisioning Volume in background process. A pool volume is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E9329	Competing with formatting Thin Provisioning Volume in background process. A pool volume is being formatted. Wait for a while and try again.
E932A	Competing with setting Thin Provisioning pool parameters in background process. The pool parameters are being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E932B	Competing with setting Thin Provisioning Volume parameters in background process. The pool volume parameters are being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E932C	Competing with setting Thin Provisioning mode in background process. A pool is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E932D	Competing with assigning ECO schedule in background process. An Eco-mode operation is being set for a Thin Provisioning Pool. Wait for a while and try again.
E932E	Competing with registering REC Disk Buffer Volume in background process. An REC disk buffer volume is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E932F	Competing with deleting REC Disk Buffer Volume in background process. An REC disk buffer volume is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E9330	Competing with inhibiting copy destination volume in background process. An operation to specify a copy destination is being suppressed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9331	Competing with moving volume in background process. Thin Provisioning or RAID Migration is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9332	Competing with balancing Thin Provisioning Pool or Flexible Tier Pool data in background process. Thin Provisioning data or Flexible Tier data is being balanced. Wait for a while and try again.
E9333	Competing with registering dedicated hot spare in background process. A dedicated hot spare is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E9334	Competing with releasing dedicated hot spare in background process. A dedicated hot spare is being released. Wait for a while and try again.
E9335	Competing with collecting event information in background process. An event message log is being collected. Wait for a while and try again.
E9336	Competing with controlling advanced copy session. An EC session is being controlled. Wait for a while and try again.
E9337	Competing with controlling advanced copy session. An REC session is being controlled. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E9338	Competing with controlling advanced copy session. An OPC session is being controlled. Wait for a while and try again.
E9339	Competing with controlling advanced copy session. A monitoring session is being controlled. Wait for a while and try again.
E933A	Competing with setting Flexible tier mode in background process. The Flexible Tier mode is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E933B	Competing with deleting Flexible tier pool in background process. A Flexible Tier Pool is being deleted. Wait for a while and try again.
E933C	Competing with formatting Flexible tier pool in background process. A Flexible Tier Pool is being formatted. Wait for a while and try again.
E933D	Competing with registering Flexible tier volume in background process. A Flexible Tier Volume is being registered. Wait for a while and try again.
E933E	Competing with setting Flexible tier sub pool priority in background process. The Flexible Tier Sub Pool Priority is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E933F	Competing with setting Flexible tier pool parameters in background process. The Flexible Tier Pool parameter (threshold) are being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9340	Flexible tier migration in process. Flexible Tier Migration is being started or stopped. Wait for a while and try again.
E9341	Competing with setting cache size limit to volume in background process. The cache LUN size limit is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9342	Competing with setting Offloaded Data Transfer Mode in background process. The Offloaded Data Transfer mode is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9343	Competing with setting Key management group ID in background process. The ID of the key management group is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
E9344	Competing with changing Key in background process. The key for the key management group is being changed. Wait for a while and try again.
E9346	Storage cluster license configuration process is in progress. The Storage Cluster license process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E9347	TFO group configuration process is in progress. The TFO Group configuration process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E9348	TFOV configuration process is in progress. The TFOV configuration process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E9349	TFO group activate process is in progress. The TFO Group activation process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E934A	TFO pair configuration process is in progress. The TFO Pair configuration process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
E934B	Wol mode setting process is in progress. The WOL mode configuration process is running.
E934D	System cache function setting process is in progress. The configuration process of the function for acquiring the active table is running.
E934E	Starting SSD sanitization process is in progress. An SSD sanitization startup process is running.
E9380	The Storage migration is in progress. The storage migration process is running.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
E9400	No memory. No resources can be obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9401	No message queue. No resources can be obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9402	No semaphore. No resources can be obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
E9403	CLI session limit reached. No resources can be obtained. Wait for a while and try again.
EA000	The CM status is not normal. The CM status is not normal. Wait for a while and try again.
EA001	The specified CE does not exist. The specified controller enclosure does not exist.
EA002	The specified CM does not exist. The specified controller module does not exist.
EA003	One or more CMs are not normal. The system cannot be operated because a controller module in the error state exists.
EA004	One or more CEs are not normal. The system cannot be operated because a controller enclosure in the error state exists.
EA200	The CA port type is incorrect. The CA port type is incorrect.
EA201	The specified CA port does not exist. The specified CA port does not exist.
EA203	Host port mode of the CA port is incorrect. The port mode of the CA port is incorrect.
EA204	The WWPN/WWNN has not been changed. WWPN/WWNN has not been changed.
EA205	The CA Port status is not normal. The CA port state is abnormal.
EA400	The number of maximum disk slots is exceeded. The number of drives exceeds the maximum slot number. The drive cannot be added.
EA401	Cannot add Drive Enclosure any more. The drive enclosure cannot be added because the number of drive enclosures has reached the maximum number of drive enclosure.
EA402	The Drive Enclosure type does not support. The drive enclosure type is not supported.
EA600	No PFM is installed in the device. A PFM is not installed in the ETERNUS DX.
EA601	A PFM is not installed in some of the CMs in the device. A PFM is not installed in some of the CMs in the ETERNUS DX.
EA602	The PFM status is not normal. The PFM status is not normal.
EA603	The number of PFMs is different between the CMs. The number of PFMs is different between the CMs.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EA604	The specified disk does not exist. The specified drive does not exist.
EA605	The disk type is incorrect. The drive type is incorrect.
EA606	The capacity of the specified disk is insufficient. The capacity of the specified drive is insufficient.
EA607	The specified disk is not available as a member disk. The specified drive cannot be used as a member drive.
EA608	One or more specified disks are installed in the CE different from the specified assigned CM. The specified drive is installed to a controller enclosure that is different from the controller enclosure that the assigned CM belongs to.
EA609	SED and non-SED cannot be specified at the same time. SEDs and non-SEDs cannot be specified together.
EA60A	The drive is being used. The drive is currently being used.
EA60B	The drive status is incorrect. The status of the specified drive is incorrect.
EA60C	The specified PFM does not exist. The specified PFM does not exist.
EA60D	The specified PFMs are not available as Extreme Cache. The specified PFM is in the error state.
EA800	The maintenance target is inconsistent status. The status of the maintenance target is inconsistent.
EA801	Not available under current system status conditions. Under the current system condition, this is not available.
EB000	The specified Flexible tier sub pool does not exist. The specified Flexible Tier Sub Pool does not exist.
EB001	One or more TPP or FTSP exists in the device. A TPP or an FTSP exists in the ETERNUS DX. Delete the TPP or the FTSP.
EB002	The Fast Recovery RAID Group cannot be specified. The Fast Recovery RAID group cannot be specified.
EB003	The specified RAID Group does not exist. The specified RAID group does not exist.
EB004	The specified RAID Group status is not normal. The status of the RAID group is incorrect.
EB005	The specified RAID Group are already used. The specified RAID Group is currently in use for another purpose.
EB006	The number of volumes exceeds the maximum number of registrations in the RAID Group. The number of registered volumes has reached the maximum number for the RAID group.
EB007	The free capacity of the RAID Group is insufficient. The remaining capacity of the RAID group is insufficient.
EB008	One or more VVOLs exist in the specified Flexible tier pool. A VVOL exists in the specified Flexible Tier Pool.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EB00C	The specified disk is already used. The specified drive is already being used for an existing RAID group.
EB00D	One or more Compression enabled volumes exist in the specified pool. The specified pool has the Compression function enabled volumes.
EB00E	Compression is not enabled for the specified pool. The Compression function is disabled in the specified pool.
EB010	Not allowed to configure this RAID Level with the specified disks. The specified drive does not match the RAID level.
EB011	The free capacity of the pool is insufficient. The free space of the TPP or FTRP is insufficient.
EB012	The pool status is not normal. The pool is not in a normal state.
EB013	The flexible tier pool status is not normal. The FTRP is not in a normal state.
EB014	A volume for VVOL metadata exists in the specified pool. A VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV exist in the specified pool.
EB015	There are one or more Thin provisioning pools with Compression enabled. A pool that has the Compression function enabled exists.
EB017	ECO schedule is assigned to the specified pool. The ECO mode schedule is assigned to the specified pool.
EB018	Compression is enabled for the specified pool. The Compression function is enabled for the specified pool.
EB02A	The specified RAID Group is not in use for Flexible Tier Pool. The specified RAID group is not used in the FTRP.
EB02C	The specified chunk size exceeds the current default chunk size of the device. The specified chunk size exceeds the current default chunk size of the ETERNUS DX.
EB02D	The specified PFM has already been used as Extreme Cache. The specified PFM is already being used as Extreme Cache.
EB02E	There are no PFMs which can be used as Extreme Cache. There are no PFMs that can be used as Extreme Cache.
EB02F	One or more PFMs being currently used as Extreme Cache exist. PFMs that are already being used as Extreme Cache exist.
EB030	The specified CE is not using Extreme Cache. The specified controller enclosure is not using Extreme Cache.
EB031	There are no PFMs being used as Extreme Cache. No PFMs are being used as Extreme Cache.
EB032	There are one or more PFMs which cannot be used as Extreme Cache. Unused PFMs that cannot be used as Extreme Cache exist.
EB033	Chunk size cannot be specified under the current maximum pool capacity. The specified chunk size is not available for the current maximum pool capacity.
EB300	This command is not available for the type or usage of the specified volume. The volume type is incorrect.
EB301	The volume status is not normal. The volume status is incorrect.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EB302	The type of drive that configures the RLU or the TPP that the volume belongs to is incorrect. The type of drive that configures the RAID group or the TPP that the volume belongs to is incorrect.
EB303	The specified volume does not exist. The specified volume does not exist.
EB304	An incorrect UID is specified. An incorrect UID is specified.
EB305	The cache size limit is set. The cache size limit is set.
EB306	The volume in Fast Recovery RAID Group cannot be specified. The volume in Fast Recovery RAID group cannot be specified.
EB307	One or more VVols exist in the device. A VVOL exists in the ETERNUS DX.
EB308	The number of volumes exceeds the maximum number of registrations. The number of registered volumes has reached the maximum number for the system.
EB309	The specified volume is being used as a VVOL. The specified volume is used for VVOLs.
EB30A	The specified volume's data integrity is T10-DIF. T10-DIF is set for the specified volume.
EB30B	The specified volume is thick provisioning volume. The allocation setting of the specified volume is Thick Provisioning.
EB30D	Zero Reclamation is running. Zero Reclamation is being performed on the specified volume.
EB30E	The VVOL cannot be specified with the other resources. A VVOL cannot be specified more than once.
EB30F	Data migration is running. A migration is being performed on the specified volume.
EB31A	Balancing process is running. A balancing process is being performed on the specified volume.
EB31D	The volume for VVOL metadata already exists. The VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV already exists in the ETERNUS DX.
EB31E	The specified volume is being used as a volume for VVOL metadata. The specified volume is a VVOL Metadata exclusive FTV.
EB31F	The status of the Data Container Volume is not normal. The status of the DATA_CNTNR volume is not normal.
EB334	The resource, which can be used only in expand volume mode, exists. A volume that can only be used when the Expand Volume Mode is enabled exists.
EB339	Data migration or Advanced Copy function is running at the Compression volume(s) allocated in the same Thin provisioning pool as the specified Data Container Volume. The DATA_CNTNR volume cannot be formatted because it belongs to the Thin Provisioning Pool where a copy session or a migration is running for the volume that is enabled with the Compression function.
EB33A	Non-disruptive Storage Migration is in process. A Non-disruptive Storage Migration process is running.
EB33B	External LU information cannot be deleted or does not exist for the specified volumes. Deletion of the External LU information of the specified volume has failed.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EB33C	Data migration is not running for the specified volume(s). A data migration is not running for the specified volumes.
EB33D	The migration status of the specified volume(s) is not normal. The migration status of the specified volumes is abnormal.
EB33E	Data synchronization cannot be stopped manually for the specified volume(s) because it is not running in manual-stop mode. The migration of the specified volumes is not in the manual-stop mode.
EB33F	No target volumes to stop data synchronization. The migration source is an External Volume and sessions with the manual-stop mode do not exist.
EB340	Compression is not applicable for the specified volume. For migration to the compression enabled pool, "-data-reduction-disable yes" needs to be specified. Volumes that do not support the Compression function cannot be created in pools where the Compression function is enabled.
EB341	The specified volume is used for Snapshot. TPP or FTRP needs to be specified for the destination. Snapshot copy destination TPVs were attempted to be migrated to destinations other than Thin Provisioning Pools or FTRPs.
EB342	The specified operation is not applicable because compression is enabled for the specified Thin provisioning pool or volume. An operation that cannot be executed for volumes or pools where the Compression function is enabled has been attempted.
EB343	The specified volume is used for Data Container. The DATA_CNTNR volume has been specified.
EB344	No target volumes exist. The operation target volume does not exist.
EB345	One or more Data Container Volumes are not normal. DATA_CNTNR volumes in the error state exist.
EB346	The specified volume is not enabled for Compression. The Compression function is not enabled for the specified volume.
EB347	Migrating within the same pool is not applicable except for changing compression function of the specified volume. The same pool has been specified for a migration without changing the Compression function to enabled or disabled.
EB348	Only Data Container Volume can be specified. Only DATA_CNTNR volumes are available.
EB500	Number of iSNS server has reached the iSCSI CA port limit. The number of iSNS servers has reached the maximum number for the specified iSCSI CA port.
EB501	The specified port belongs to a port group. The specified port belongs to a port group.
EB502	The lun group, which is set in specified host affinity and port, specify volume does not exist. The specified volume does not exist in the LUN group where affinity is configured with the specified port and/or host.
EB505	Host affinity mode is inconsistent. Host affinity mode is inconsistent.
EB506	The host specified does not exist. The specified host does not exist.
EB507	The specified port and host is not affinity setting. The specified port and host are not configured with affinity.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EB508	The specified port is affinity setting. The target port has been configured with affinity.
EB509	The specified lun group are already used in the host affinity. The LUN group is already using host affinity.
EB50A	The specified lun group are already used in the TFO group. The LUN group is already used in the TFO group.
EB50B	The specified volume are already used in the host affinity. The specified volume is already used in the host affinity.
EB50C	The specified volume are already used in the TFO group. The specified volume is already used in the TFO group.
EB50D	The specified volume is already used in other TFO group. The specified volume is already used in another TFO group.
EB510	TFO pair does not exist in the volume of all of the lun group that has been set affinity in the specified host and port specified. A volume with a TFO pair does not exist in the LUN group where affinity is configured with the specified port and/or host.
EB511	The specified host is already used in the host affinity that includes the lun mask group. The specified host is already being used with host affinity in the LUN mask group.
EB512	The specified host belongs to a host group. The specified host belongs to a host group.
EB513	The specified lun mask group are already used in the host affinity. The specified LUN mask group has been set with host affinity.
EB514	The lun mask group which can be affinity setting does not exist. A LUN mask group that can be set with host affinity does not exist.
EB515	The source port is already used in the host affinity that includes the lun mask group. The copy source port configures host affinity with the LUN mask group.
EB516	The destination port is already used in the host affinity that includes the lun mask group. The copy destination port configures host affinity with the LUN mask group.
EB517	Host number or lun group number, which can be used only in expand host mode, exists. The host number or the LUN group number that can be used only when the Expand Host Mode is enabled already exists.
EB518	The number of hosts exceeds the maximum number of hosts which can be registered if expand host mode is disabled. The number of hosts that can be registered when the Expand Host Mode is disabled has exceeded the maximum.
EB519	The iSCSI hosts, which have the same iSCSI name but one of them has no IP address configuration, cannot be used for the same CA port in host affinity setting. Host affinity cannot be set for the same iSCSI host interface port accessed by both an iSCSI host with a random IP address and an iSCSI host with a specific IP address that have the same iSCSI name.
EB51A	The iSCSI hosts, which have the same iSCSI name but one of them has no IP address configuration, cannot be used for the same host group. If an iSCSI host group is created or if an iSCSI host is added to an iSCSI host group, the host group cannot have both an iSCSI host with a random IP address and an iSCSI host with a specific IP address that have the same iSCSI name.
EB51B	The specified iSCSI Name cannot be used because it causes a conflict in host affinity setting at a CA port in which a host with the same iSCSI Name has already been used. The iSCSI name cannot be changed, because by changing the iSCSI name, the iSCSI host with a random IP address that has the same name as the iSCSI host with a specific IP address becomes the target of the host affinity setting in the same iSCSI host interface port.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EB51C	The specified iSCSI Name cannot be used because it causes a conflict in host group setting in which a host with the same iSCSI Name has already been used.
	The iSCSI name cannot be changed, because by changing the iSCSI name, the iSCSI host with a random IP address that has the same name as the iSCSI host with a specific IP address becomes the target of the registration in the same host group.
EB900	REC path is not set.
	A REC path is not set.
EB901	REC path is not normal.
	An error is detected in the REC path.
EB902	REC Buffer is mirror recovery status.
	The REC buffer is in mirror recovery status.
EB903	CFL is canceled because REC session is not continuable state.
	A hot controller firmware update was suspended because the remote copy session is in a state where continuation is not possible. Take one of the following actions:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recover the Advanced Copy path.</li> <li>• Set the concurrent loading (path switching linkage) mode to "Manual (Operator linkage)" and try again.</li> <li>• Suspend REC sessions that are not in "Suspend" status, "Error Suspend" status, or "Halt" status by using the software that started these REC sessions.</li> </ul>
	<p>EB904</p> <p>REC path is set in this device.</p> <p>A REC path has been configured.</p>
EB905	REC path using iSCSI interface exists.
	A REC path of the iSCSI interface exists.
EB906	There are CA port that port mode is CA/RA or RA is exists.
	An RA mode port or an RA/CA mode port exists.
EB907	The resource, which can be used only in expand volume mode, exists.
	A copy session that can only be used when the Expand Volume Mode is enabled exists.
EB908	There is no REC path information connected to the specified remote storage.
	The REC path information for the specified connection destination storage system does not exist.
EB909	The specified RA path does not exist.
	The specified connection path does not exist.
EB90A	REC Line Speed cannot be changed since the Connection Type of the REC path connected to the specified remote storage is "Direct".
	The line speed cannot be changed because the connection type of the specified REC path information is not "Remote".
EBD02	The controller firmware is being received from the REMCS center.
	The controller firmware is being received from the REMCS center.
EBD03	The specified generation is not in valid status.
	The controller firmware of the specified generation is not valid.
EBD04	The specified controller firmware is already registered.
	An archive of the same version has already been registered.
EBD05	The specified generation is already registered on the Flash memory.
	The controller firmware of the specified generation has already been registered to the flash memory.
EBD06	Not available under current system status conditions.
	Under the current system condition, this is not available.
EBD07	The "hot-auto" application type cannot be executed in current configuration.
	A hot application cannot be performed automatically (without cooperation).

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EBD08	The "hot-manual" application type cannot be executed in current configuration. A hot application cannot be performed manually (with operator cooperation).
EBD09	One or more components have failed when applying the firmware. The process failed due to a built-in process associated with applying the firmware.
EBD0A	An internal process failed. The ETERNUS DX status is not normal.
EBD0B	An error occurred in Master CM but the controller firmware has been applied. An error occurred in the master CM but the hot controller firmware update has completed.
EBDOC	An error occurred in Master CM and the controller firmware has not been applied. The hot controller firmware update has failed because an error occurred in the master CM.
EBD0D	The hot application failed because the system is under heavy I/O load. The hot controller firmware update has failed because the system is under heavy I/O load.
EBD0E	The hot application failed because the pinned data exists. The hot controller firmware update has failed because pinned data exists.
EBD0F	The Data migration is in progress. A data migration is running.
EBD10	A conflict exists between the specified application type and the Advanced Copy Session. A conflict exists between the copy session and the hot controller firmware update.
EBD11	There is no redundant path available for accessing the external storage device(s). There is no redundant path available to access the external storage system.
EBD13	The specified firmware version is newer than or equal to the current firmware version. An unnecessary option has been specified when the downgrade of the firmware is not performed.
EBD14	An error has been detected. The controller firmware application has failed. Application of the controller firmware has failed.
EBD15	The controller firmware application has finished, but has failed for one or more components. Application of the controller firmware has partially failed.
EBD16	The status of the Master CM is not normal. The firmware application cannot be executed. Application of the controller firmware has failed due to an error in the Master CM.
EBD17	An error has been detected. The rebooting process has failed. The hot controller firmware update has failed.
EBD18	The rebooting process has finished, but has failed for one or more components. The hot controller firmware upgrade has partially failed.
EBD19	The hot firmware application has been canceled. The hot controller firmware upgrade has been canceled by a user.
EBD1A	The rebooting process has finished, but one or more access paths, by which external LUs are not accessible, have been detected. There is a possibility that an error occurs on the access paths or the external LUs. An error occurred in the access path, but the hot controller firmware update has succeeded.
EBD1B	An error has been detected. The firmware application for the PFM has failed. Application of the PFM firmware has failed.
EBD1C	The firmware application for the PFM has finished, but has failed for one or more PFMs. Application of the PFM firmware has partially failed.
EBD1D	Switching firmware has failed. Switching of the EC has failed.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EBE01	This operation is not applicable to the specified object. Advanced copy cannot be executed for the specified volume.
EBE32	Another non-VLAN IP address has been registered with this port. The specified port is already set for a non-VLAN interface.
EBE33	The specified IPv4 address is already registered. The specified IPv4 address is already registered.
EBE34	The specified IPv6 link local address is already registered. The specified IPv6 link local address is already registered.
EBE35	The specified IPv6 address is already registered. The specified IPv6 address is already registered.
EBE36	No valid IP address exists. No valid IP address exists.
EBE37	The VLAN ID setting is incorrect. The VLAN ID setting is incorrect.
EBE38	The IPv4 address is incorrect. The IPv4 address is incorrect.
EBE39	The subnet mask setting is incorrect. The subnet mask setting is incorrect.
EBE3A	The gateway address is incorrect. The specified gateway address is incorrect.
EBE3B	The IPv4 host address should be non-zero. The specified IPv4 address is incorrect.
EBE3C	The specified IPv6 link local address is incorrect. The specified IPv6 link local address is incorrect.
EBE3D	The specified IPv6 global address is incorrect. The specified IPv6 global address is incorrect.
EBE3E	The IPv6 prefix length should be 3-128. The specified prefix length is incorrect.
EBE3F	The IPv6 gateway address should be same subnet or have other interface ID. The specified IPv6 gateway address is incorrect.
EBE40	The specified IPv6 address is not a link local address or a global address. The specified IPv6 address is not a link local address or a global address.
EBE41	The specified IP address already exists. The specified IP address already exists.
EBE42	The primary DNS server information is not set. The primary DNS server information is not set.
EBE44	The same VLAN ID has been registered to this port. The same VLAN ID interface has already been set for the specified port.
EBE74	The specified port is on a different CM. The specified port is a port on a different CM.
EBE75	The number of member ports exceeds the maximum number of registrations. The number of member ports exceeds the maximum number of registrations.
EBE76	Cannot delete the bond because the multi-path is enabled. Multipath has been set. Bonding cannot be deleted.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EBE80	The specified port belong to the multi-path.
	The specified port is set for a multipath.
EBE81	The specified port is not multi-path pair.
	The specified port is not set for a multipath.
EBE82	The specified port is installed in the same CM.
	The specified port is a port in the same CM.
EBE90	The server settings conflicted.
	The server settings are duplicated.
EBE91	Some more parameters need to be specified.
	Some required settings are not specified.
EBAE0	The specified route is already registered.
	The specified route is already registered.
EBAE1	The specified route is not registered.
	The specified route is not registered.
EBAE2	The specified gateway cannot be accessed.
	The specified gateway cannot be accessed.
EBAE3	The host address or the interface ID portion of the IP address should be zero.
	The host address portion or interface ID portion of the IP address is not zero.
EBAE4	The destination address is the same as the interface address.
	The target address is the same as the interface address.
EBAE5	The gateway address is the same as the interface address.
	The gateway address is the same as the interface address.
EBAE6	The specified destination address is incorrect.
	The specified destination address is incorrect.
EBEB3	The Snap Data Pool Volume which is match the encryption status of the specified volume, does not exist.
	The SDPV that corresponds the encryption state of the specified volume does not exist.
EBF00	The number of registered TFO group has exceeded maximum in this device.
	The number of registered TFO groups has exceeded the maximum number set in the ETERNUS DX.
EBF01	TFO group is exist.
	TFO Groups exist.
EBF02	TFO group does not exist.
	TFO groups do not exist.
EBF03	The specified TFO group name is already registered.
	The specified TFO group name has already been registered.
EBF04	The specified CA Port is not in the specified TFO group.
	The target port is not included in the specified TFO group.
EBF05	The specified TFO group is primary.
	The TFO group that is specified is the primary.
EBF06	The specified port is not TFO port.
	The specified port is not a TFO pair port.
EBF07	The specified port is already TFO pair port configured.
	The specified port is already configured in the TFO pair port.
EBF08	Different types of CA ports cannot be used in TFO group.
	Different types of interface ports cannot be used in the TFO group.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EBF09	The maximum TFO capacity cannot be decreased when TFO pair exists.
	If a TFO session exists, a value smaller than the current value cannot be set for the maximum capacity of the specified TFOV.
EBFOA	The specified volume is not in process of TFO pair.
	The TFO pair does not exist in the specified volume.
EBF0B	The TFO group is primary.
	The command was executed on the primary TFO group.
EBFOC	The specified volume is in process of TFO pair.
	The TFO pair is configured in the specified volume.
EBF0D	There is a volume what is in process of TFO pair.
	The volume that has been configured with the TFO pair exists in the specified pool.
EBF0E	The specified volume is configured TFOV.
	The specified volume is configured as the TFOV.
EBF10	Change of size was specified volume is TFOV.
	Changing the size was specified by the TFOV.
EBF11	The parameter needs storage cluster license.
	The Storage Cluster license is not registered. The specified parameter cannot be used.
EBF12	The destination port belongs to TFO group.
	The copy destination port belongs to the TFO Group.
EBF13	The source port belongs to TFO group.
	The copy source port belongs to the TFO Group.
EBF15	The specified port has been changed WWPN/WWNN.
	The WWPN/WWNN of the specified port has been changed.
EBF16	TFO group is set to manual failover.
	For the TFO group that is configured to manual failover, the monitoring interval is specified until the failover completes.
EC000	Wol Fault : ActivateProviderFailed
	Activation of Provider has failed.
EC001	Wol Fault : InactiveProvider
	Provider has not been activated.
EC002	Wol Fault : IncompatibleVolume
	There is no compatibility in the volume.
EC003	Wol Fault : IncorrectSite
	The site is incorrect.
EC004	Wol Fault : InvalidArgument
	The value of the specified parameter is not defined (the value does not exist). Verify the entered parameter.
EC005	Wol Fault : InvalidCertificate
	The certificate is invalid.
EC006	Wol Fault : InvalidLogin
	The login is invalid.
EC007	Wol Fault : InvalidProfile
	The profile is invalid.
EC008	Wol Fault : InvalidSession
	The session is invalid.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EC009	<p>WVol Fault : InvalidStatisticsContext</p> <p>The source context is invalid.</p>
EC00A	<p>The specified WVol copy session does not exist.</p> <p>The WVol copy session does not exist.</p>
EC010	<p>WVol Fault : LostAlarm</p> <p>The alarm was lost.</p>
EC011	<p>WVol Fault : LostEvent</p> <p>The event was lost.</p>
EC012	<p>WVol Fault : NotCancellable</p> <p>The specified target is not in a cancellable state.</p>
EC013	<p>WVol Fault : NotFound</p> <p>The value of the specified parameter does not exist or is already processing. Verify the entered parameter.</p>
EC014	<p>WVol Fault : NotImplemented</p> <p>Not implemented.</p>
EC015	<p>WVol Fault : NotSupported</p> <p>Not supported.</p>
EC016	<p>WVol Fault : OutOfResource</p> <p>The specified parameter has reached the defined upper limit or the value of the specified parameter is outside the defined range. Verify the upper limit value or the entered parameter.</p>
EC017	<p>WVol Fault : PermissionDenied</p> <p>Permission was denied.</p>
EC018	<p>WVol Fault : ResourceInUse</p> <p>The target of the specified parameter is currently being used or is in an unspecifiable state.</p>
EC019	<p>WVol Fault : SnapshotTooMany</p> <p>There are too many snapshots.</p>
EC020	<p>WVol Fault : StorageFault</p> <p>The WVol function is disabled, there is an error with the value of the specified parameter, or there is an error in the combination of the specified parameters.</p>
EC021	<p>WVol Fault : Timeout</p> <p>A timeout has occurred.</p>
EC022	<p>WVol Fault : TooMany</p> <p>The specified parameter has exceeded the number of defined events. Verify the entered parameter.</p>
EC100	<p>One or more external drives exist.</p> <p>One or more External Drives exist in the ETERNUS DX.</p>
EC101	<p>The specified external storage devices do not exist.</p> <p>The specified external storage does not exist.</p>
EC102	<p>The number of external drives exceeds the maximum number of registrations.</p> <p>The number of External Drives exceeds the maximum number that can be created.</p>
EC103	<p>External LUs do not exist.</p> <p>External LUs do not exist.</p>
EC104	<p>External drives do not exist.</p> <p>External Drives do not exist.</p>
EC105	<p>External drives are already used.</p> <p>External Drives are used for an External RAID Group.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
EC106	The status of external drives is not normal. The status of External Drives is not normal.
EC107	The specified external RAID Group does not exist. The specified External RAID Group does not exist.
EC108	External RAID Groups are already used. External RAID Groups are used for volumes for Non-disruptive Storage Migration.
EC109	The specified external RAID Group is not in "Broken" state. The specified External RAID Group is not in "Broken" state.
EC10A	The number of external RAID Groups exceeds the maximum number of registrations. The number of External RAID Groups exceeds the maximum number that can be created.
EC10B	The status of external RAID Groups is not normal. The status of External RAID Groups is not normal.
EC10C	The specified external RAID Group name has already been used. The specified External RAID Group name has already been registered.
EC10D	External LUs are not accessible. The External RAID Group is blocked.
ED000	Send failed internal command. An internal error has occurred. If this error persists, request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED001	Receive failed internal command response. An internal error has occurred. If this error persists, request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED002	Internal command retry timeout. An internal error has occurred. If this error persists, request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED003	Internal command progress retry timeout. An internal error has occurred. If this error persists, request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED180	Flexible Tier Migration is running. Flexible Tier Migration is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED181	Quick UNMAP is being performed. Quick UNMAP is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED182	The cache LUN size limit is being set. The cache LUN size limit is being set. Wait for a while and try again.
ED183	Because EC is being executed, the processing was discontinued. A complete EC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED184	Because OPC is being executed, the processing was discontinued. A complete OPC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED185	Because REC is being executed, the processing was discontinued. A complete REC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED186	Offloaded Data Transfer is being performed. An Offloaded Data Transfer is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED187	The REC disk buffer volume is associated. The REC disk buffer volume is associated. Wait for a while and try again.
ED190	The internal resources are insufficient. The internal resources are insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.
ED191	The internal resources are insufficient. The internal resources are insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED192	The internal resources are insufficient. The memory area is insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.
ED193	A non-master-CM component received a command. A non-master-CM component received a command. Wait for a while and try again.
ED194	The internal resources are insufficient. The dynamic allocating memory is insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.
ED195	Internal processes are running. Wait for a while and try again. An internal process is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED196	The internal resources are insufficient. The internal resources are insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.
ED197	Number of the processing request is reached the limit. The internal resources are insufficient. Wait for a while and try again.
ED198	Process is timeout. An internal process is being performed. Wait for a while and try again. If the result is the same even after performing a retry, request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED199	The process terminated with an error because pinned data existed. The process terminated with an error because pinned data was detected. Wait for a while and try again.
ED19A	The key management server responded with an error. The key management server responded with an error.
ED19B	An error occurred during communication with the key management server. An error occurred during communication with the key management server.
ED19C	The key management server contains no keys that can be changed. The key management server contains no keys that can be changed.
ED19F	The command process is being canceled. The command process is being canceled. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A0	Another process is running. Another process is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A1	EC is running. An EC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A2	OPC is running. An OPC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A3	REC is running. An REC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A4	ROPC is running. ROPC is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A5	CCP is running. CCP is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A6	Quick Format is running. Quick Format is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A7	Rebuild operation is running. A Rebuild operation is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1A8	There is no redundancy. There is no redundancy.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED1A9	<p>A DE is being rebooted.</p> <p>A DE is being rebooted. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1AA	<p>CFL is running.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update is currently being executed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1AB	<p>CFD is running.</p> <p>A cold controller firmware update is currently being executed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1AC	<p>Operations associated with Log file, Panic Dump or Event information are being processed.</p> <p>The information for the log, panic dump, or event is being deleted or retrieved. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1AD	<p>The hot spare is in use.</p> <p>The hot spare is in use.</p>
ED1AE	<p>Upgrade Dirty Recovery is running.</p> <p>An Upgrade Dirty Recovery is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1AF	<p>Degradate Dirty Recovery is running.</p> <p>A Degradate Dirty Recovery is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B0	<p>Remote Maintenance is running.</p> <p>Remote Maintenance is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B1	<p>Command Lock is being processed.</p> <p>An internal process is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B2	<p>The configuration is being changed.</p> <p>The configuration is being changed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B3	<p>Bind In Cache (Extent) is set.</p> <p>Bind-in-Cache is set. (Extent)</p>
ED1B4	<p>Data Migration is running.</p> <p>Data Migration is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B5	<p>Logical Device Expansion is running.</p> <p>Logical Device Expansion is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B6	<p>Write Through is running.</p> <p>Write Through is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B7	<p>An encryption process or a decryption process is running.</p> <p>An encryption process or a decryption process is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1B8	<p>Bind In Cache is set.</p> <p>Bind-in-Cache is set.</p>
ED1B9	<p>Some of the spinup or spindown operations failed.</p> <p>Some of the spinup or spindown operations failed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1BA	<p>Eco-mode schedule suspension timeout occurred.</p> <p>An Eco-mode schedule suspension timeout occurred. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1BB	<p>All of the spinup and spindown operations failed.</p> <p>All of the spinup and spindown operations failed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED1BC	<p>There is an encryption volume.</p> <p>There is an encrypted volume.</p>
ED1BD	<p>Operation Mode is not in "Maintenance Mode".</p> <p>The Maintenance mode is not set.</p>
ED1BE	<p>A Storage Migration path is set or Storage Migration is running.</p> <p>A Storage Migration path is set or Storage Migration is running.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED1BF	Extended Copy is running. An Extended Copy is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1C0	An error occurred in the module. An error occurred in the module. Check the module status.
ED1C1	An error occurred in the CM. An error occurred in the CM.
ED1C2	An error occurred in the CA. An error occurred in the CA.
ED1C3	An error occurred in the BRT. An error occurred in the BRT.
ED1C4	An error occurred in the SVC. An error occurred in the SVC.
ED1C5	An error occurred in the RSP. An error occurred in the RSP.
ED1C6	An error occurred in the FRT. An error occurred in the FRT.
ED1C7	An error occurred in the PBC. An error occurred in the PBC.
ED1C8	An error occurred in the battery. An error occurred in the battery.
ED1C9	An error occurred in the DE. An error occurred in the DE.
ED1CA	An error occurred in the DE path. An error occurred in the DE path.
ED1CB	An error occurred in the user drive. An error occurred in the user drive.
ED1CC	An error occurred in the system drive. An error occurred in the system drive.
ED1CD	An error occurred in the Flash-ROM. An error occurred in the Flash-ROM.
ED1CE	An error occurred in the FE Expander. An error occurred in the FE Expander.
ED1CF	An error occurred in the BE Expander. An error occurred in the BE Expander.
ED1D0	An error occurred in the EXP. An error occurred in the EXP.
ED1D1	An error occurred in the drive path. An error occurred in the drive path.
ED1D2	An error occurred in the drive. An error occurred in the drive.
ED1E0	Power-on has not been performed yet or power-off is being performed. Power-on has not been performed yet or power-off is being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1E1	Zero is specified for the module ID in the transmitter. Zero is specified for the module ID in the transmitter. Wait for a while and try again.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED1E2	The lock has been acquired. The lock has been acquired. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1E3	Locking has not been performed. Locking has not been performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1E4	An unsupported command was specified. An unsupported command was specified.
ED1E5	The parameter length is incorrect. The parameter length is incorrect. Check the input content.
ED1E6	The specified parameter is incorrect. The specified parameter is incorrect. Wait for a while and try again. Check the input content.
ED1E7	The data length is incorrect. The data length is incorrect. Check the input content.
ED1E8	The specified data is incorrect. The specified data is incorrect. Check the input content.
ED1E9	The execution of the command is requested while this command is already being performed. The execution of the command is requested while this command is already being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1EA	The target object cannot be operated. The target object cannot be operated. Check the input content or the device status.
ED1EB	An internal process failed. An internal process failed to complete successfully. Request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED1EC	Because Storage Cluster is being executed, the processing was discontinued. The Storage Cluster is running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED1ED	The Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is in process. A Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is running.
ED200	The user name or password is incorrect. The user name or password is incorrect. Check the input content.
ED201	The user name is duplicated. The user name is duplicated. Check the input content.
ED202	The number of registered users has reached the limit. The number of registered users has reached the limit. Check the input content.
ED203	This user has already registered the User Key. The process was aborted. Deleting of a user with a registered user key is attempted. Check the input content.
ED204	The specified role name is not registered. The specified role name is not registered in the ETERNUS DX. Check the input content.
ED205	An internal process failed. Execution is not possible due to other factors. Wait for a while and try again.
ED206	The login request exceeds the allowable maximum number of login process. The number of issuances exceeds the maximum number for simultaneous issuances. Wait for a while and try again.
ED207	The specified process cannot be performed because a process that the Virtual Disk Service issued is already running. The specified process cannot be performed because a process that the Virtual Disk Service issued is already running.
ED208	The specified RAID Group is not in "Available" state. The RAID group is not in Available status.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED209	An error has occurred in a communication path. An error has occurred in a communication path.
ED20B	The source volume of migration is being deleted by internal process after completed migration. The migration source Thin Provisioning Volume is internally being deleted after migration is complete. Wait for a while and try again.
ED20C	The cache memory size is insufficient for Bind-in-Cache. The cache memory size that is allocated for Bind-in-Cache is insufficient.
ED20D	No response is received. No response is received. Wait for a while and try again.
ED20E	iSNS server is not set. An iSNS server is not set.
ED20F	The installation type information for the DE that is to be added is insufficient. The installation type information for the DE that is to be added is insufficient. Check the input content or the device status.
ED210	Maintenance mode start or maintenance mode end is being executed by operation. Maintenance is being started or being terminated due to a Maintenance SW.
ED211	The license information is being updated because the trial license expired. The license information is being updated because the trial license expired. Wait for a while and try again.
ED212	The Bitmap is being acquired. The Bitmap is being acquired. Wait for a while and try again.
ED213	The storage is not in "Not Ready" state. The ETERNUS DX is in Not Ready status. Check the device status.
ED214	The Not Ready factor is not Machine Down Recovery failed. The cause of Not Ready status is not Machine Down Recovery Fail. Check the device status.
ED215	(if processing mode is 0x00) CM with the following status exists among defined CM: Status other than Online - This CM is not included in the Cyclic composition. The status of the CM is not Online or the CM is not included in the Cyclic configuration.
ED216	The device is a busy state. Please wait for a while. Two internal processes are running. Wait for a while and try again.
ED217	Storage Cruiser is being used. The process was aborted. A process (collecting performance information) that was started from ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser is currently being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED218	Command executed from except Storage Cruiser. The process was aborted. A process (collecting performance information) that was started from software other than ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser is currently being performed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED219	Reading all BUDs failed. Reading of all the BUDs failed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED21A	No BUDs are accessible. No BUDs are accessible. Wait for a while and try again.
ED21B	Writing all BUDs failed. Writing of all the BUDs failed. Wait for a while and try again.
ED21C	All of the BUD capacity is used. All of the BUD capacity is used. Wait for a while and try again.
ED21D	A timeout occurred during firmware registration. A timeout occurred during firmware registration.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED21E	<p>A checksum error occurred.</p> <p>A checksum error occurred.</p>
ED21F	<p>The size of the archive in the header is not corresponding to the size of the forwarding archive.</p> <p>The size of the archive in the header is not the same as the size of the forwarding archive.</p>
ED220	<p>The disk where the archive that tries to be registered can be applied doesn't exist in the device.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX contains no drives that the target archive for registration can be applied to.</p>
ED221	<p>The archive that tries to be registered is unsupported firmware.</p> <p>The archive that is to be registered is unsupported firmware.</p>
ED222	<p>Reading the history data failed.</p> <p>Reading of the history data failed.</p>
ED223	<p>Reading the composition data failed.</p> <p>Reading of the configuration data failed.</p>
ED224	<p>Writing the history data failed.</p> <p>Writing of the history data failed.</p>
ED225	<p>Keeping the composition data failed.</p> <p>Writing of the configuration data failed.</p>
ED226	<p>Keeping the newest composition data failed.</p> <p>Writing of the "newest" configuration data failed.</p>
ED227	<p>The configuration is internally being updated.</p> <p>The configuration is internally being updated. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED228	<p>Reading from a BUD failed.</p> <p>Reading from a BUD failed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED229	<p>The BUD doesn't exist.</p> <p>The BUD does not exist. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED22A	<p>The target module does not exist.</p> <p>The target module does not exist. Check the input content.</p>
ED22B	<p>The process cannot be performed because another function is being executed.</p> <p>The process cannot be performed because another function is being executed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED22C	<p>The revision that changes the Advanced Copy version cannot be performed because an EC, an OPC, or a REC is running.</p> <p>The revision that changes the Advanced Copy version cannot be performed because an EC, an OPC, or an REC is running.</p>
ED22D	<p>The execution was canceled because an error occurred during communication with the CM.</p> <p>The execution was canceled because an error occurred during communication with the CM.</p>
ED22E	<p>The firmware application or EC switch has not executed.</p> <p>The firmware is not applied or the EC is not switched.</p>
ED22F	<p>The free capacity of the Flexible Tier Pool is insufficient.</p> <p>The FTRP size is insufficient.</p>
ED230	<p>The EC switching operation that changes the Advanced Copy version is attempted while an EC, an OPC, or a REC is running.</p> <p>The EC switching operation that changes the Advanced Copy version is attempted while an EC, an OPC, or an REC is running.</p>
ED231	<p>Distribution of the control domain failed.</p> <p>Distribution of the control domain failed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED232	<p>The storage is not in "Normal" state.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX status is not normal. Request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.</p>
ED233	<p>The version is not normal.</p> <p>The version is not normal.</p>
ED234	<p>A remote copy is running.</p> <p>A remote copy is running. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED235	<p>Reclamation of Thin Provisioning Volume is in progress.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update cannot be executed due to a Reclamation factor.</p>
ED236	<p>Not all batteries are in "Full Charge" state.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update cannot be executed because the battery charge is insufficient.</p>
ED237	<p>Controller Firmware is not registered.</p> <p>The target module does not exist in the BUD.</p>
ED238	<p>CFL is not executed yet.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update has not been executed yet.</p>
ED239	<p>Because the numbers of connections to the specified device reached the maximum number, it is not possible to connect it. Please wait for a while.</p> <p>The number of connections exceeds the maximum number.</p>
ED23A	<p>The firmware distribution function between devices of the specified device doesn't have interchangeability with this device.</p> <p>The function levels do not match.</p>
ED23B	<p>The firmware types do not match.</p> <p>The firmware types do not match.</p>
ED23C	<p>The error occurred by the communication with the specified device.</p> <p>The model types do not match.</p>
ED23D	<p>Powering off is being performed.</p> <p>Powering off is being performed.</p>
ED23E	<p>CFL is running.</p> <p>A hot controller firmware update is currently being executed. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED23F	<p>The firmware is being downloaded.</p> <p>The firmware is being downloaded. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED240	<p>Gateway is not set though the specified device is set outside the subnet.</p> <p>The gateway is not set for the specified device that is outside of the subnet.</p>
ED241	<p>Duplicated IP address between the specified device and used LAN port.</p> <p>The IP addresses of the specified device and the LAN port that is used are duplicated.</p>
ED242	<p>The specified device is in the subnet of unused LAN port.</p> <p>The specified device is in the subnet of an unused LAN port.</p>
ED243	<p>Duplicated IP address between the specified device and allowed IP of unused LAN port.</p> <p>The IP addresses of the specified device and the LAN port that is not used are duplicated.</p>
ED244	<p>Group IDs of the specified storage and the current storage are different.</p> <p>The group IDs of the specified ETERNUS DX and the current ETERNUS DX are different.</p>
ED245	<p>IP address of DNS is not valid.</p> <p>The IP address of the DNS is invalid.</p>
ED246	<p>Acceptable IP addresses from other subnet have been specified but Gateway has not been set.</p> <p>A communication destination that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED247	The port specified for used LAN port of a remote support is not set. The specified port is not set to the LAN port that is used.
ED248	Gateway is not set though DNS is set outside of the subnet. A DNS that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED249	Gateway is not set though the PROXY server is set outside of the subnet. A proxy server that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED24A	Gateway is not set though the HTTP server is set outside of the subnet. An http server that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED24B	Gateway is not set though the SMTP server is set outside of the subnet. An SMTP server that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED24C	Gateway is not set though the POP server is set outside of the subnet. A POP server that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED24D	Gateway is not set though the NTP server is set outside of the subnet. An NTP server that is outside of the subnet is set but the gateway is not set.
ED24E	DNS server to resolve server name is not specified. A DNS is not set for the name resolution.
ED24F	Please export the log, and contact the person in charge of maintenance. Export the log and then request your maintenance engineer to investigate the error.
ED250	The name resolution of the proxy server failed. The name resolution of the proxy server failed.
ED251	The name resolution of the http server failed. The name resolution of the http server failed.
ED252	The name resolution of the SMTP server failed. The name resolution of the SMTP server failed.
ED253	The name resolution of the POP server failed. The name resolution of the POP server failed.
ED254	The name resolution of the NTP server failed. The name resolution of the NTP server failed.
ED255	Even though the command terminated successfully, the name resolution of the primary DNS failed. The secondary DNS is used instead. Even though the command terminated successfully, the name resolution of the primary DNS failed. The secondary DNS is used instead (this message is a warning message).
ED256	The name resolution succeeded by the IPv6 Primary DNS server. The command terminated successfully (the name resolution succeeded with the IPv6 primary DNS).
ED257	The name resolution succeeded by the IPv6 Secondary DNS server. The command terminated successfully (the name resolution succeeded with the IPv6 secondary DNS).
ED258	The name resolution succeeded by the IPv4 Primary DNS server. The command terminated successfully (the name resolution succeeded with the IPv4 primary DNS).
ED259	The name resolution succeeded by the IPv4 Secondary DNS server. The command terminated successfully (the name resolution succeeded with the IPv4 secondary DNS).
ED25A	Login to the POP server is impossible because the user name or password is incorrect. Logging in to the POP server is not possible because the user name or password is incorrect.
ED25B	Error occurred in authentication with AUTH. An error occurred during AUTH authentication

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED25C	Error occurred in communication with SMTP server. An error occurred during communication with the MTP server.
ED25D	Error occurred in communication with HTTP server. An error occurred during communication with the http server.
ED25E	Error occurred in communication with PROXY server. An error occurred during communication with the proxy server.
ED25F	Error occurred in communication with POP server. An error occurred during communication with the POP server.
ED260	Time out occurred in communication with SMTP server. A timeout occurred during communication with the SMTP server.
ED261	Time out occurred in communication with HTTP server. A timeout occurred during communication with the http server.
ED262	Time out occurred in communication with PROXY server. A timeout occurred during communication with the proxy server.
ED263	Time out occurred in communication with POP server. A timeout occurred during communication with the POP server.
ED264	Error occurred in sending data to SMTP server. An error occurred during communication with the SMTP server.
ED265	Error occurred in sending data to HTTP server. An error occurred while sending data to the http server.
ED266	Error occurred in sending data to PROXY server. An error occurred while sending data to the proxy server.
ED267	Error occurred in sending data to POP server. An error occurred while sending data to the POP server.
ED268	Error occurred in receiving data from SMTP server. An error occurred while receiving data from the SMTP server.
ED269	Error occurred in receiving data from HTTP server. An error occurred while receiving data from the http server.
ED26A	Error occurred in receiving data from PROXY server. An error occurred while receiving data from the proxy server.
ED26B	Error occurred in receiving data from POP server. An error occurred while receiving data from the POP server.
ED26C	Duplicated IP address between DNS server and used LAN port. The IP address of the DNS is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.
ED26D	The IP address for DNS server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The DNS is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED26E	Duplicated IP address between DNS server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the DNS is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED26F	Duplicated IP address between PROXY server and used LAN port. The IP address of the proxy server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.
ED270	Duplicated IP address between HTTP server and used LAN port. The IP address of the http server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.
ED271	Duplicated IP address between SMTP server and used LAN port. The IP address of the SMTP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED272	Duplicated IP address between POP server and used LAN port. The IP address of the POP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.
ED273	Duplicated IP address between NTP server and used LAN port. The IP address of the NTP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is used.
ED274	The IP address for the PROXY server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The proxy server is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED275	The IP address for the HTTP server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The http server is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED276	The IP address for the SMTP server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The SMTP server is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED277	The IP address for the POP server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The POP server is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED278	The IP address for the NTP server is in the subnet of unused LAN port. The NTP server is in the subnet of the LAN port that is not used.
ED279	Duplicated IP address between PROXY server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the proxy server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED27A	The Flexible Tier Pool is in "Broken" state. The FTRP state is "Broken".
ED27B	The ODX Buffer volume exists. The ODX Buffer volume exists.
ED27C	The Flexible Tier Pool balancing is in process. An FTRP balancing is running.
ED27D	Online Storage Migration is in process. An Online Storage Migration is running.
ED27E	Freeing up space in the Flexible Tier Pool is in process. An FTRP UNMAP is running.
ED27F	The last RAID Group in the Flexible Tier Pool cannot be deleted. The last RAID group within the FTRP cannot be deleted.
ED280	The RAID Group is being deleted by internal process after Flexible Tier Pool shrinking. An internally executed deletion process for a RAID group is running after the process of the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking.
ED281	Duplicated IP address between HTTP server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the http server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED282	Duplicated IP address between SMTP server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the SMTP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED283	Duplicated IP address between POP server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the POP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED284	Duplicated IP address between NTP server and allowed IP of unused LAN port. The IP address of the NTP server is the same as the IP address of the LAN port that is not used.
ED285	The Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is in process. A Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is running.
ED286	Failed to start SSD sanitization. The SSD sanitization startup process failed.
ED287	The Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is in process. The RAID group currently reserved for deletion is specified by starting the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED288	<p>The Flexible Tier Pool shrinking is not in process.</p> <p>A RAID group that is not currently reserved for deletion is specified by stopping the Flexible Tier Pool shrinking.</p>
ED289	<p>The password cannot be set. (Minimum password age policy violation)</p> <p>The password cannot be changed due to the minimum password age.</p>
ED28A	<p>The device is not registered.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX is not registered.</p>
ED28B	<p>The password cannot be set. (Password history policy violation)</p> <p>The password cannot be changed because previously used passwords cannot be specified again.</p>
ED28C	<p>No BUDs are available.</p> <p>No BUDs are available.</p>
ED28D	<p>The password cannot be set. (Minimum password length policy violation)</p> <p>The password cannot be set due to an incorrect password length.</p>
ED28E	<p>The remote support center is busy.</p> <p>The remote support center is busy.</p>
ED28F	<p>The network information is being set.</p> <p>The network information is being set. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED290	<p>No controller firmware can be downloaded.</p> <p>No controller firmware can be downloaded.</p>
ED291	<p>The information of the device is being sent again because outdated information is registered in the remote support center. Wait approximately ten minutes and try again.</p> <p>The information of the ETERNUS DX is being sent again because outdated information is registered in the remote support center. Wait approximately 10 minutes and try again.</p>
ED292	<p>An error occurred during HTTP communication.</p> <p>An error occurred during http communication.</p>
ED293	<p>An error occurred during SMTP communication.</p> <p>An error occurred during SMTP communication.</p>
ED294	<p>A communication error occurred.</p> <p>A communication error occurred.</p>
ED295	<p>No log files exist.</p> <p>No log files exist (the timeout interval for this error is five minutes.)</p>
ED296	<p>The specified SLU does not exist.</p> <p>A volume number that is not configured is specified.</p>
ED297	<p>Data cannot be obtained because of a cache miss.</p> <p>Data cannot be obtained because of a cache miss.</p>
ED298	<p>The cache data cannot be obtained because the specified mirror cache does not exist.</p> <p>The cache data cannot be obtained because the specified mirror cache does not exist.</p>
ED299	<p>The cache data cannot be obtained because the cache of the drive that is specified contains dirty data.</p> <p>The cache data cannot be obtained because the cache of the specified drive contains dirty data.</p>
ED29B	<p>Specified Head Number is invalid.</p> <p>The specified Head value is incorrect.</p>
ED29E	<p>The storage is in "Machine Down" state.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX is in Machine Down status.</p>
ED29F	<p>Status of target RAID Group is not Broken.</p> <p>The specified RAID group is not in Broken status.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED2A0	The access path to the specified RAID group is not normal.
	The access path to the specified RAID group is not normal.
ED2A1	There is no access path to the target RAID Group.
	The specified RAID group is blocked.
ED2A2	The password cannot be set. (Password complexity policy violation)
	The password cannot be set because it does not satisfy the password complexity policy.
ED2A3	Invalid firmware file.
	An error occurred in the firmware file that is being applied.
ED2A4	The specified Role name has already been used.
	The specified Role name has already been used.
ED2A5	The number of roles has reached the maximum number of registrations.
	The number of roles has reached the maximum number of registrations.
ED2A6	Deletion of a role that is assigned to a user is attempted.
	Deletion of a role that is assigned to a user is attempted.
ED2A8	The specified Snap Data Pool Volume does not exist.
	The specified SDPV does not exist.
ED2A9	The Copy Bitmap is insufficient.
	All of the Copy Bitmap has been used.
ED2AA	Processing was interrupted because it reached max copy session count or copy function is not enable.
	The number of sessions exceeds the maximum number for operation.
ED2AB	The specified volume is in process of copy session or RAID Migration.
	A session is running for the specified LU.
ED2AC	An invalid LU is specified.
	An invalid LU is specified.
ED2AD	Because specified session is not the oldest one, the processing was not performed.
	The session is not in the correct status (a generation that is not the oldest is specified).
ED2AE	The specified volume is being initialized.
	The specified SDV is being initialized.
ED2AF	The encryption settings of the copy source and the copy destination are different.
	The encryption settings of the copy source and the copy destination are different.
ED2B0	The drive motor is stopped for either the copy source or the copy destination due to an Eco-mode schedule.
	The drive motor is stopped for either the copy source or the copy destination due to an Eco-mode schedule.
ED2B1	The specified destination volume is being used by another session.
	A copy scope overlap occurs in the specified SDV.
ED2B2	The Thin Provisioning function is disabled.
	The Thin Provisioning function is disabled.
ED2B3	Slave CM: Execution was discontinued for the other command accepted.
	In the Slave CM, the configuration management received a command because a passage occurs (this is an error).
ED2B4	Slave CM: Error occurred in receiving data from Master CM.
	In the Slave CM, a reception error occurred during communication between the CMs for receiving the response from the master CM.
ED2B5	Master CM: Error occurred in sending data from Slave CM.
	In the Master CM, a transmission error occurred during communication between the CMs for obtaining command data from the Slave CM.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED2B6	<p>Master CM: Error occurred in receiving data from Slave CM.</p> <p>In the Master CM, a reception error occurred during communication between the CMs for obtaining command data from the Slave CM.</p>
ED2B7	<p>Bind-in-Cache Memory Size has already been set. Cache Parameters cannot be changed.</p> <p>The Bind-in-Cache memory capacity is set.</p>
ED2B8	<p>The specified resource number exceeds the maximum value for the allowed range.</p> <p>The specified resource number exceeds the maximum value for the allowed range.</p>
ED2B9	<p>Incorrect parameter combination.</p> <p>Some of the specified parameters are incorrect.</p>
ED2BA	<p>The specified license key is incorrect.</p> <p>The specified license key is incorrect. Check the input content.</p>
ED2BB	<p>The specified User Public Key file is not correct.</p> <p>The specified key file is incorrect.</p>
ED2BC	<p>The specified SSL Server Key file does not match the SSL Server Certificate file.</p> <p>The specified key or certificate file is incorrect.</p>
ED2BD	<p>No session is running.</p> <p>No session is running.</p>
ED2BE	<p>Access to the BUD is being suppressed.</p> <p>Access to the BUD is being suppressed.</p>
ED2BF	<p>The pool capacity that can be created in the device exceeds the maximum pool capacity.</p> <p>The maximum pool capacity that can be created in the ETERNUS DX exceeds the maximum pool capacity.</p>
ED2C0	<p>The number of unused disks is insufficient.</p> <p>The number of unused drives is insufficient.</p>
ED2C1	<p>RLU/DLU/SLU are insufficient.</p> <p>The number of RAID groups or volumes is insufficient.</p>
ED2C2	<p>The Flexible Tier function is disabled.</p> <p>The Flexible Tier function is disabled.</p>
ED2C6	<p>The SSL/KMIP certificate file is not normal.</p> <p>The certificate file is not normal.</p>
ED2C7	<p>The process has failed. It failed in some CA port(s).</p> <p>Some of the CA ports failed to be started or stopped.</p>
ED2C8	<p>The process has failed. It failed in all CA ports.</p> <p>All of the CA ports failed to be started or stopped.</p>
ED2C9	<p>The specified TPPE ID does not exist.</p> <p>The specified TPPE ID does not exist.</p>
ED2CA	<p>The trial license key is incorrect.</p> <p>The trial license key is incorrect.</p>
ED2CB	<p>The trial license key has reached the registration limit number of times.</p> <p>The number of times the trial license is set exceeds the limit.</p>
ED2CC	<p>Competing with AIS connect operation in background process.</p> <p>The specified AIS Connect process is internally being performed.</p>
ED2CD	<p>Competing with AIS connect send log operation in background process.</p> <p>An AIS Connect log transmission is internally being performed.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED2CE	Volume Type which is the Migration destination is different. The volume type of the migration destination differs from the volume type of the migration source.
ED2CF	The Data Container Volume Diagnosis process has already been running. A DATA_CNTNR volume check is running.
ED2D0	Displaying Snap OPC restore size is not supported. The estimated amount of SDP used by SnapOPC+ restore cannot be obtained.
ED2D1	Recovery process is running. Wait for a while and try again. A recovery process is running.
ED2D2	The installed memory is insufficient. The installed memory is insufficient.
ED2D3	The VVOL function is not disabled. The setting cannot be changed because the VVOL function is enabled.
ED2D4	Drives are not installed on the required slots for using the specified maximum pool capacity. The backup area for the pool information cannot be created because the drives are not installed in the appropriate slots.
ED2D5	The total volume capacity which can be created or expanded by one operation is up to 2PB. The total capacity of the volumes that are being created or expanded in a single operation exceeds 2PB.
ED2D6	There are one or more PFM's which can be downgraded. Some PFM's will be downgraded due to application of the firmware specified in Total Version.
ED500	An error occurred in the Data Reduction Process. An error was detected during the Compression process.
ED506	The usable capacity of the Data Container Volume is insufficient temporarily. Please wait for a while and retry. The usable capacity of the DATA_CNTNR volume is temporarily insufficient. Wait a while and try again.
ED507	The system is in high-load state. Please wait for a while. The ETERNUS DX is in a high-load state. Wait a while and try again.
ED508	The specified external LU has already been registered. The specified External LU has already been imported.
ED509	The access path of the external storage device is not normal. The access path of the specified External RAID Group is not normal.
ED50A	The number of drives that is used exceeds the maximum number. The number of drives that is used exceeds the maximum number.
ED50B	The target mapping table number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range. The target mapping table number exceeds the allowed range.
ED50C	The target OLU already exists in the same mapping table. The target volume already exists in the same mapping table.
ED50D	Incorrect parameter combination. Some of the specified parameters are incorrect.
ED50E	The specified host number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range. The specified host number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range.
ED50F	The WWN that is to be registered is duplicated. The WWN that is to be registered is duplicated.
ED510	The specified external RAID Group cannot be recovered. Recovery for the specified External RAID Group is not supported.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED511	<p>CA port is overlapping in group.</p> <p>The settings are duplicated for a single CA port of a single host.</p>
ED512	<p>The external LU information is not consistent. Please refer to ETERNUS CLI User's Guide for more details.</p> <p>The External LU information is not consistent between the target ports.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There may be an error in the mapping setting of the target port. Check the mapping setting of the target port in the external storage system.</li> <li>• A connection to an incorrect target port may exist. Check the connection destination target port.</li> </ul>
ED513	<p>The specified LCU number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range.</p> <p>The specified LCU number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range.</p>
ED514	<p>The specified host response number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range.</p> <p>The specified host response number exceeds the maximum number in the allowed range.</p>
ED515	<p>The external storage device responded with an error.</p> <p>The external storage system responded with an error.</p>
ED516	<p>An error occurred in accessing the external storage device.</p> <p>An error occurred in issuing I/Os to the external storage system.</p>
ED517	<p>A copy session is running.</p> <p>A copy session is running.</p>
ED518	<p>The connected device does not support this function.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX that is connected is not supported.</p>
ED519	<p>The forwarding interval cannot be specified when the ETERNUS6000 is connected.</p> <p>The forwarding interval cannot be specified when the ETERNUS6000 is connected.</p>
ED51A	<p>The buffer size exceeds the maximum size for the device.</p> <p>The buffer size exceeds the maximum size for the ETERNUS DX.</p>
ED51B	<p>REC Buffer has already been configured. The process was aborted.</p> <p>The REC buffer setting has already been applied.</p>
ED51C	<p>The storage is in "Not Ready" state. The process was aborted.</p> <p>The ETERNUS DX is in Not Ready status.</p>
ED51D	<p>The REC disk buffer contains some data.</p> <p>The REC disk buffer contains some data.</p>
ED51E	<p>Some REC Consistency sessions are not in Suspend status.</p> <p>Some REC Consistency sessions are not in Suspend status.</p>
ED51F	<p>There is no Pinned Data or Bad Data in the specified volume.</p> <p>Pinned data or bad data do not exist in the specified DATA_CNTNR volume.</p>
ED520	<p>The specified volume has too many Pinned Data or Bad Data for checking.</p> <p>A large amount of pinned data or bad data exists in the specified DATA_CNTNR volume.</p>
ED523	<p>The number of migration sessions has reached the maximum number for operations in the device.</p> <p>The number of migration sessions has reached the maximum number for operations in an ETERNUS DX.</p>
ED524	<p>The migration source LUN is being used by another migration process.</p> <p>The migration source LUN is being used by another migration process. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED525	<p>The migration source LUN is being used by another copy session.</p> <p>The migration source LUN is being used by another copy session. Wait for a while and try again.</p>
ED526	<p>All of the internal resources have already been used.</p> <p>All of the internal resources have already been used. Wait for a while and try again.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED527	The status of the volume in the migration source or the migration destination is not normal. The status of the volume in the migration source or the migration destination is not normal.
ED528	Migration session(s) are not running for the specified volume(s). No migration sessions are running for the specified volume.
ED529	Bind-in-Cache is set for the specified OLU. Bind-in-Cache is set for the specified volume.
ED52A	The migration capacity exceeds the maximum logical capacity that can be migrated. The migration capacity exceeds the maximum logical capacity that can be migrated.
ED52B	There is not enough free space in the specified destination pool. An error occurred while checking the physical pool capacity in the migration destination.
ED52C	The total capacity of pool is not enough in the storage system. The process was aborted. The pool capacity that can be created in the ETERNUS DX is insufficient.
ED52D	There are one or more volumes whose migration status is not normal. The migration session is in the abnormal status.
ED52F	Enough work capacity for Balancing Thin Provisioning Volume or Balancing Flexible Tier Pool does not exist. This function cannot be executed. No unused volume numbers are available to create a migration destination LUN.
ED531	The necessary LU resources are insufficient. The necessary LU resources are insufficient.
ED53A	Communication to other device is failure. Communication between the ETERNUS DX storage systems failed.
ED53B	TFO group status is inconsistent. The status of the TFO group is inconsistent.
ED53C	TFO group phase is inconsistent. The command cannot be executed with the current TFO group Phase.
ED53D	The specified TFO group has no volume. The specified volume in the TFO group does not exist.
ED53E	Capacity of volume differs with in the secondary and primary. The volume sizes for the Primary storage and Secondary storage are inconsistent.
ED53F	The volume is used TFO group already. A pairing was performed on a volume that has already been paired.
ED540	Firmware of the other storage does not support the Storage Cluster. The operation firmware of the remote storage system does not support the Storage Cluster.
ED541	The specified type of TFO group is already registered. A TFO group for the specified type is already registered.
ED542	Box ID is inconsistent. The Box ID is inconsistent.
ED543	The TFO group is inconsistent of pair port configuration between primary and secondary. The pair port configuration between the Primary storage and Secondary storage is inconsistent.
ED544	Volume that can not be used in TFO pair port exists. A volume that cannot configure a TFO pair port exists.
ED545	Failover mode or Split mode does not match between the secondary and primary. The operation mode (Failover Mode, Split Mode) in the Primary storage and the Secondary storage does not match.

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED546	<p>Copy session exists in the volume.</p> <p>The copy session exists in the volume.</p>
ED548	<p>Volume UID differs with in the secondary and primary.</p> <p>The UID in the Primary storage and Secondary storage is inconsistent.</p>
ED549	<p>Can not to delete TFO group that is changed WWN in the standby state.</p> <p>For TFO groups in a Standby state, WWPN was deleted permanently.</p>
ED54A	<p>Volume of primary paired with specified volume is not exist.</p> <p>The volume that will be paired with the specified volume in the Primary storage does not exist.</p>
ED54B	<p>TFO group activation was specified for incorrect device.</p> <p>An ETERNUS DX (Primary storage or Secondary storage) that has no relevance was specified for activation.</p>
ED54C	<p>Port of primary paired is not affinity setting.</p> <p>The primary pair port is not set with host affinity.</p>
ED54D	<p>Storage Cluster data transfer feature is disabled in all RA ports constituting the copy path.</p> <p>For all RA ports that constitute the copy path, the data transfer for the Storage Cluster function is set to disable.</p>
ED54E	<p>TFO pair is active.</p> <p>The TFO pair exists.</p>
ED54F	<p>Device of manual failover is inappropriate TFO group condition.</p> <p>The manual failover target storage system is in an inappropriate TFO group state.</p>
ED550	<p>The volume cannot be set the copy.</p> <p>The LU for the copy source or copy destination is in a state in which the copy session cannot be set.</p>
ED551	<p>There is "Bad Sector" in the copy source volume.</p> <p>A bad sector exists in the copy source LU.</p>
ED552	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for this storage.</p> <p>The maximum number of sessions per copy source or copy destination ETERNUS DX storage systems has been exceeded.</p>
ED553	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for each copy source volume.</p> <p>The maximum number of sessions per copy source LU has been exceeded.</p>
ED554	<p>The number of copy sessions exceeds the allowable maximum copy sessions for each copy destination volume.</p> <p>The maximum number of sessions per copy destination LU has been exceeded.</p>
ED555	<p>Firmware update is in progress. The specified operation cannot be done.</p> <p>The command cannot be executed because a hot controller firmware update is currently being executed in the copy source or copy destination.</p>
ED556	<p>WOL session is active.</p> <p>The WOL session exists.</p>
ED557	<p>The free capacity of the pool is insufficient.</p> <p>The free space in the TPP or FTRP is insufficient.</p>
ED558	<p>Process to free up space in the TPP from a host is running.</p> <p>The allocation mode cannot be changed from "Thin" to "Thick" because the area is currently being released from the server.</p>
ED800	<p>Stack suspend timeout.</p> <p>A timeout error occurred because monitoring of the Asynchronous Stack mode with the timer is suspended.</p>
ED801	<p>Cascade copy session exist.</p> <p>The cascade destination copy session uses the data in the specified copy session.</p>

## A. Error Messages/Error Codes

### Error Messages

Message number	Message Countermeasure for the error
ED802	<p>Cascade local copy session exist.</p> <p>An OPC, QuickOPC, SnapOPC, or SnapOPC+ session is set in the cascade destination.</p>
ED803	<p>Cascade EC/REC session is not suspended.</p> <p>The EC/REC in the cascade destination is not in Suspend status.</p>
ED805	<p>Started of advanced copy session which uses TFOV to unsupported volume type.</p> <p>An Advanced Copy session using TFOV started for an unsupported combination.</p>
ED806	<p>Copy of an illegal combination with TFO pair.</p> <p>A copy started for an illegal case combined with a TFO pair.</p>
ED807	<p>Copy of an illegal combination with storage cluster continuous copy session.</p> <p>A copy session that is illegally combined with the Storage Cluster continuous copy session was started.</p>
ED808	<p>Illegal copy session has been specified for the TFO port.</p> <p>An illegal copy session has been specified for the TFO pair port.</p>
ED809	<p>Illegal combination with Online Storage Migration.</p> <p>A combination with Online Storage Migration is illegal.</p>
EF000	<p>Internal Error Occurred.</p> <p>An internal error occurred.</p>

## Error Codes

---

This section explains error codes.

### Copy Session Error Codes

---

Table 8 List of copy session error codes

Error code	Description
0x10 – 0x1F	An error that is caused by a copy source volume occurs. Some copy source volumes cannot be accessed because a failure has occurred in a component (e.g. drives and drive enclosures).
0x20 – 0x2F	An error that is caused by a copy destination volume occurs. Some copy destination volumes cannot be accessed because a failure has occurred in a component (e.g. drives and drive enclosures).
0x30 – 0x3F	An error occurred due to a copy path or an REC buffer HALT occurred.
0xBA	Bad data exists.
0xBB	SDV/SDP capacity is insufficient.
0xBD	Overload status is detected in a copy destination volume or a copy destination storage system.
0xBE	A copy path has failed. Data is stored in the REC Buffer. This error is displayed only when the "Type" is "REC".
0xBF	A copy path has failed. Data is stored in the REC Disk Buffer. This error is displayed only when the "Type" is "REC".
Error codes other than above	An error other than the ones listed above occurs.

## B. List of Supported Commands

---

This appendix provides a list of supported commands. An "x" mark indicates that the command is supported.

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

---

Commands that are supported are shown by model.

Table 9 List of supported commands for status display (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
Storage System Status			
show status	x	x	
show enclosure-status	x	x	
show fru-ce	x	x	
show fru-fe		x	
show pfm		x	
show fru-de	x	x	
show disks	x	x	
show hardware-information	x	x	
show power-consumption	x	x	

Table 10 List of supported commands for RAID group management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
RAID Groups			
show raid-groups	x	x	
show raid-group-progress	x	x	
create raid-group	x	x	
set raid-group	x	x	
delete raid-group	x	x	
expand raid-group	x	x	
Hot Spares			
set global-spare	x	x	
release global-spare	x	x	
set dedicated-spare		x	
release dedicated-spare		x	
Eco-mode Management			
show eco-mode		x	
set eco-mode		x	
show eco-schedule		x	
create eco-schedule		x	
set eco-schedule		x	
delete eco-schedule		x	
show eco-raid-group		x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
set eco-raid-group		x	
release eco-raid-group		x	

Table 11 List of supported commands for volume management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Volume</b>			
show volumes	x	x	
show volume-progress	x	x	
show volume-mapping	x	x	
create volume	x	x	
set volume	x	x	
delete volume	x	x	
delete all-volumes	x	x	
format volume	x	x	
expand volume	x	x	
set volume-parameters	x	x	
show migration	x	x	
start migration	x	x	
stop migration	x	x	
stop external-volume-data-synchronization		x	
show balancing-thin-pro-volumes		x	
start balancing-thin-pro-volume		x	
stop balancing-thin-pro-volume		x	
start zero-reclamation		x	
stop zero-reclamation		x	
<b>Volume (QoS)</b>			
show volume-qos		x	
set volume-qos		x	
<b>Flexible Tier Volume</b>			
create flexible-tier-volume		x	
set flexible-tier-volume		x	
format flexible-tier-volume		x	
expand flexible-tier-volume		x	
delete flexible-tier-volume		x	
delete all-flexible-tier-volumes		x	
start flexible-tier-migration		x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>ODX Buffer Volume</b>			
show odx-mode		x	
set odx-mode		x	
create odx-buffer-volume		x	
set odx-buffer-volume		x	
delete odx-buffer-volume		x	
<b>Extreme Cache</b>			
show extreme-cache		x	
set extreme-cache		x	
release extreme-cache		x	
set volume-exc		x	
<b>VVOL</b>			
show vvvol-mode		x	
set vvvol-mode		x	
show vvvol-task		x	

Table 12 List of supported commands for Thin Provisioning Pool management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool</b>			
show thin-provisioning		x	
set thin-provisioning		x	
show thin-pro-pools		x	
show thin-pro-pool-progress		x	
create thin-pro-pool		x	
set thin-pro-pool		x	
delete thin-pro-pool		x	
expand thin-pro-pool		x	
format thin-pro-pool		x	
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool Eco-mode Management</b>			
show eco-thin-pro-pool		x	
set eco-thin-pro-pool		x	
release eco-thin-pro-pool		x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Table 13 List of supported commands for Flexible Tier management (of the target model)

Target model	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Flexible Tier Pool</b>			
show flexible-tier-mode		x	
show flexible-tier-pools		x	
show flexible-tier-pool-progress		x	
delete flexible-tier-pool		x	
show flexible-tier-sub-pools		x	
set flexible-tier-sub-pool		x	
stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool		x	
<b>FTRPE Migration</b>			
show ftrpe-migration		x	
<b>FTRP Balancing</b>			
show balancing-flexible-tier-pools		x	
start balancing-flexible-tier-pool		x	
stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool		x	

Table 14 List of supported commands for host interface management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Host Interface Port Parameters</b>			
show fc-parameters	x	x	
set fc-parameters	x	x	
show iscsi-parameters	x	x	
set iscsi-parameters	x	x	
<b>Host Identifiers (Host Nickname)</b>			
show host-wwn-names	x	x	
create host-wwn-name	x	x	
set host-wwn-name	x	x	
delete host-wwn-name	x	x	
discover host-wwn-names	x	x	
show host-iscsi-names	x	x	
create host-iscsi-name	x	x	
set host-iscsi-name	x	x	
delete host-iscsi-name	x	x	
discover host-iscsi-names	x	x	
<b>Mapping (when LUN Groups are Used)</b>			
show host-affinity	x	x	
set host-affinity	x	x	
copy host-affinity	x	x	
release host-affinity	x	x	
<b>Mapping (when Host Affinity Mode is Not Used)</b>			
show mapping	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
set mapping	x	x	
copy mapping	x	x	
release mapping	x	x	
<b>Host Groups</b>			
show host-groups	x	x	
create host-group	x	x	
set host-group	x	x	
delete host-group	x	x	
<b>Port Groups</b>			
show port-groups	x	x	
create port-group	x	x	
set port-group	x	x	
delete port-group	x	x	
<b>LUN Groups</b>			
show lun-groups	x	x	
create lun-group	x	x	
set lun-group	x	x	
copy lun-group	x	x	
delete lun-group	x	x	
show host-path-state	x	x	
set host-path-state	x	x	
<b>LUN Groups (Host LU QoS)</b>			
show host-lu-qos-performance		x	
start host-lu-qos-performance		x	
stop host-lu-qos-performance		x	
<b>Host Response</b>			
show host-response	x	x	
set host-response	x	x	
delete host-response	x	x	
<b>Host Sense Conversion</b>			
show host-sense	x	x	
set host-sense	x	x	
delete host-sense	x	x	
<b>Reset Group for Host Interface Port</b>			
show ca-reset-group	x	x	
set ca-reset-group	x	x	
<b>Ping Command for iSCSI Hosts</b>			
test iscsi-ping	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Host LU QoS</b>			
show qos-mode		x	
set qos-mode		x	
show lu-qos-groups		x	
set lu-qos-group		x	
delete lu-qos-group		x	
show host-lu-qos		x	
set host-lu-qos		x	
show qos-schedule		x	
set qos-schedule		x	
delete all-qos-setting		x	
show qos-bandwidth-limit		x	
set qos-bandwidth-limit		x	
<b>Login Host Display</b>			
show ca-port-login-host	x	x	

Table 15 List of supported commands for Advanced Copy management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Copy Session Management</b>			
show advanced-copy-license	x	x	
set advanced-copy-license	x	x	
delete advanced-copy-license	x	x	
show advanced-copy-policy	x	x	
set advanced-copy-policy	x	x	
show advanced-copy-parameters	x	x	
set advanced-copy-parameters	x	x	
show snap-data-volume		x	
initialize snap-data-volume		x	
show snap-data-pool		x	
delete snap-data-pool-volume		x	
show advanced-copy-sessions	x	x	
start advanced-copy	x	x	
stop advanced-copy	x	x	
<b>Remote Equivalent Copy Management</b>			
show host-port-mode	x	x	
set host-port-mode	x	x	
show rec-path	x	x	
import rec-path	x	x	
show backup-rec-path-information	x	x	
export backup-rec-path	x	x	
convert rec-path	x	x	
set rec-path-parameters	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
measure rec-round-trip-time	x	x	
set rec-round-trip-time	x	x	
set rec-multiplicity	x	x	
show rec-buffer	x	x	
set rec-buffer	x	x	
delete rec-buffer	x	x	
show rec-disk-buffer		x	
create rec-disk-buffer		x	
set rec-disk-buffer		x	
delete rec-disk-buffer		x	
format rec-disk-buffer		x	
release rec-disk-buffer		x	
set rec-path-qos		x	

Table 16 List of supported commands for system management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Date, Time, and NTP</b>			
show date	x	x	
set date	x	x	
show ntp	x	x	
set ntp	x	x	
<b>ETERNUS DX Name</b>			
show storage-system-name	x	x	
set storage-system-name	x	x	
<b>Box ID</b>			
show boxid	x	x	
set boxid	x	x	
<b>Subsystem Parameters</b>			
show subsystem-parameters	x	x	
set subsystem-parameters	x	x	
<b>Encryption Mode</b>			
show encryption	x	x	
set encryption	x	x	
<b>Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) Authentication Settings</b>			
show sed-authentication	x	x	
set sed-authentication	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Syslog Server Settings</b>			
show syslog-notification		x	
set syslog-notification		x	
<b>Audit Log Settings</b>			
show audit	x	x	
set audit	x	x	
<b>Key Management Server Linkage Function</b>			
show sed-key-machine-name	x	x	
set sed-key-machine-name	x	x	
show sed-key-servers	x	x	
set sed-key-server	x	x	
import ssl-kmip-certificate	x	x	
show sed-key-groups	x	x	
create sed-key-group	x	x	
set sed-key-group	x	x	
delete sed-key-group	x	x	
change sed-key	x	x	
recover sed-key-group	x	x	
<b>Power Synchronization</b>			
show power-synchronization	x	x	
set power-synchronization	x	x	
<b>Power-Off/Reboot System</b>			
shutdown	x	x	
<b>Compression Function</b>			
show data-reduction		x	
set data-reduction		x	
<b>Non-disruptive Storage Migration Function</b>			
show non-disruptive-storage-migration		x	
set non-disruptive-storage-migration		x	
discover external-storage		x	
show external-drive		x	
create external-drive		x	
delete external-drive		x	
show external-raid-group		x	
create external-raid-group		x	
delete external-raid-group		x	
recover external-raid-group		x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Table 17 List of supported commands for user management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Role</b>			
show role	x	x	
create role	x	x	
set role	x	x	
delete role	x	x	
<b>User Policy Setting</b>			
show user-policy	x	x	
set user-policy	x	x	
show users	x	x	
create user	x	x	
set user	x	x	
delete user	x	x	
show login-users	x	x	
set password	x	x	
initialize all-users	x	x	
import ssh-public-key	x	x	
delete ssh-public-key	x	x	
show maintenance-key	x	x	
<b>RADIUS Server Settings</b>			
show radius	x	x	
set radius	x	x	

Table 18 List of supported commands for network management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Network Settings</b>			
show network	x	x	
set network	x	x	
show firewall	x	x	
set firewall	x	x	
show network-stat	x	x	
test network	x	x	
<b>SNMP</b>			
show snmp	x	x	
set snmp	x	x	
show snmp-manager	x	x	
create snmp-manager	x	x	
set snmp-manager	x	x	
delete snmp-manager	x	x	
show snmp-view	x	x	
create snmp-view	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
set snmp-view	x	x	
delete snmp-view	x	x	
show snmp-user	x	x	
create snmp-user	x	x	
set snmp-user	x	x	
delete snmp-user	x	x	
show community-profile	x	x	
create community-profile	x	x	
set community-profile	x	x	
delete community-profile	x	x	
show snmp-trap	x	x	
set snmp-trap	x	x	
delete snmp-trap	x	x	
test snmp-trap	x	x	
export enhanced-mib	x	x	
<b>E-mail Notification</b>			
show email-notification	x	x	
set email-notification	x	x	
test email	x	x	
<b>Event Notification</b>			
show event-notification	x	x	
set event-notification	x	x	
show lcd-suppress		x	
set lcd-suppress		x	
<b>SMI-S</b>			
show smi-s		x	
set smi-s		x	
<b>SSH/SSL Security Configuration</b>			
create ssh-server-key	x	x	
create ssl-certificate	x	x	
export ssl-certificate-request	x	x	
import ssl-certificate	x	x	
show ssl-version	x	x	
set ssl-version	x	x	
<b>AIS Connect Settings</b>			
show ais-connect		x	(*1)
set ais-connect		x	(*1)
set ais-connect-remote-session		x	(*1)
test ais-connect		x	(*1)
send ais-connect-log		x	(*1)
test ais-connect-event-notification		x	(*1)
import ais-ssl-certificate		x	(*1)

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
show ais-communication-log		x	(*1)
set remote-support-mode		x	(*1)

\*1: The command cannot be used with Japanese models.

Table 19 List of supported commands for performance management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Performance Information</b>			
show performance	x	x	
start performance	x	x	
stop performance	x	x	
<b>Performance Tuning Parameters</b>			
show raid-tuning	x	x	
set raid-tuning	x	x	
show cache-parameters	x	x	
set cache-parameters	x	x	

Table 20 List of supported commands for event log information management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Event Log Information</b>			
show events	x	x	
delete events	x	x	

Table 21 List of supported commands for maintenance operation and maintenance information management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Remote Directory</b>			
show remote-dir	x	x	
<b>Controller Firmware</b>			
show controller-firmware	x	x	
<b>Log</b>			
export log	x	x	
<b>Panic Dump</b>			
show panic-dump	x	x	
export panic-dump	x	x	
<b>Configuration Information</b>			
show config-information	x	x	
export config-information	x	x	
<b>Error Information</b>			
show disk-error	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
clear disk-error	x	x	
show port-error	x	x	
<b>Bad Data Information in Volumes</b>			
show bad-data-info	x	x	

Table 22 List of supported commands for utility management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Diagnostic Utilities</b>			
show diagnosis	x	x	
<b>LED</b>			
show led	x	x	
set led	x	x	
<b>Other Notification</b>			
show event-parameters	x	x	
set event-parameters	x	x	
<b>Reservations</b>			
show reservation	x	x	
release reservation	x	x	
<b>Cache Utilities</b>			
show pinned-data	x	x	
<b>Disk Patrol</b>			
show disk-patrol	x	x	
set disk-patrol	x	x	

Table 23 List of supported commands for Storage Cluster management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>Storage Cluster</b>			
show storage-cluster-license		x	
set storage-cluster-license		x	
delete storage-cluster-license		x	
show tfo-groups		x	
create tfo-group		x	
set tfo-group		x	
delete tfo-group		x	
show tfo-pair		x	
set tfo-pair		x	
release tfo-pair		x	
recover tfo-pair		x	
forced tfo-group-activate		x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (of the Target Model)

Table 24 List of supported commands for CLI original function management (of the target model)

Command name	Target model		Remarks
	DX8100 S4	DX8900 S4	
<b>CLI Environment</b>			
set clienv-force-unlock	x	x	
set clienv-idle-timeout	x	x	
logoff/logout/exit	x	x	
help	x	x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

# List of Supported Commands (Policies)

This section shows the policies for each command.

Table 25 List of supported commands (policies)

Command name	Policy							
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management
<b>Storage System Status</b>								
show status	x							
show enclosure-status	x							
show fru-ce	x							
show fru-fe	x							
show pfm	x					x		
show fru-de	x							
show disks	x	x						
show hardware-information	x							
show power-consumption	x							
<b>RAID Group Management</b>								
show raid-groups	x	x	x					
show raid-group-progress	x	x	x					
create raid-group		x						
set raid-group		x						x (*1)
delete raid-group		x						
expand raid-group		x						
set global-spare		x						
release global-spare		x						
set dedicated-spare		x						
release dedicated-spare		x						
show eco-mode	x	x						
set eco-mode		x						
show eco-schedule	x	x						
create eco-schedule		x						
set eco-schedule		x						
delete eco-schedule		x						
show eco-raid-group	x	x						
set eco-raid-group		x						
release eco-raid-group		x						

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy							
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management
<b>Volume Management</b>								
show volumes	x		x	x	x	x	x	
show volume-progress	x		x	x	x			x
show volume-mapping	x		x	x	x		x	
create volume			x					
set volume			x					
delete volume				x				
delete all-volumes				x				
format volume				x				
expand volume			x					
set volume-parameters			x					
show migration	x		x	x	x			x
start migration				x				x (*1)
stop migration				x				
stop external-volume-data-synchronization				x				
show balancing-thin-pro-volumes	x		x					
start balancing-thin-pro-volume				x				
stop balancing-thin-pro-volume				x				
start zero-reclamation			x					
stop zero-reclamation				x				
show volume-qos	x		x					
set volume-qos			x					
create flexible-tier-volume			x					
set flexible-tier-volume			x					
format flexible-tier-volume				x				
expand flexible-tier-volume			x					
delete flexible-tier-volume				x				
delete all-flexible-tier-volumes				x				
start flexible-tier-migration			x					x
show odx-mode							x	
set odx-mode							x	
create odx-buffer-volume			x					
set odx-buffer-volume			x					
delete odx-buffer-volume				x				
show extreme-cache	x		x				x	
set extreme-cache							x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy							
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management
release extreme-cache			x					
set volume-exc			x					
<b>VVOL</b>								
show vvol-mode	x						x	
set vvol-mode							x	
show vvol-task							x	
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool Management</b>								
show thin-provisioning		x					x	
set thin-provisioning							x	
show thin-pro-pools	x	x	x	x				
show thin-pro-pool-progress	x	x	x					
create thin-pro-pool		x						
set thin-pro-pool		x						
delete thin-pro-pool		x						
expand thin-pro-pool		x						
format thin-pro-pool		x						
show eco-thin-pro-pool	x	x						
set eco-thin-pro-pool		x						
release eco-thin-pro-pool		x						
<b>Flexible Tier Management</b>								
show flexible-tier-mode		x					x	
show flexible-tier-pools	x	x	x	x				
show flexible-tier-pool-progress	x	x	x					
delete flexible-tier-pool		x						
show flexible-tier-sub-pools	x	x	x	x				
set flexible-tier-sub-pool		x						
stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool		x						
show ftrpe-migration	x		x	x	x			x
show balancing-flexible-tier-pools	x		x					
start balancing-flexible-tier-pool			x					
stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool			x					
<b>Host Interface Management</b>								
show fc-parameters	x				x			
set fc-parameters					x			
show iscsi-parameters	x				x			
set iscsi-parameters					x			

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy				
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management
show host-wwn-names	x				
create host-wwn-name		x			
set host-wwn-name		x			
delete host-wwn-name		x			
discover host-wwn-names		x			
show host-iscsi-names	x		x		
create host-iscsi-name			x		
set host-iscsi-name			x		
delete host-iscsi-name			x		
discover host-iscsi-names			x		
show host-affinity	x		x		
set host-affinity			x		
copy host-affinity			x		
release host-affinity			x		
show mapping	x		x		
set mapping			x		
copy mapping			x		
release mapping			x		
show host-groups	x		x		
create host-group			x		
set host-group			x		
delete host-group			x		
show port-groups	x		x		
create port-group			x		
set port-group			x		
delete port-group			x		
show lun-groups			x		
create lun-group			x		
set lun-group			x		
copy lun-group			x		
delete lun-group			x		
show host-path-state	x		x		
set host-path-state			x		
show host-lu-qos-performance			x		
start host-lu-qos-performance			x		
stop host-lu-qos-performance			x		
Status					

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy							
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management
show host-response	x							
set host-response				x				
delete host-response			x					
show host-sense			x					
set host-sense			x					
delete host-sense			x					
show ca-reset-group	x		x					
set ca-reset-group			x					
test iscsi-ping			x					
show qos-mode	x		x					
set qos-mode			x					
show lu-qos-groups	x		x					
set lu-qos-group			x					
delete lu-qos-group			x					
show host-lu-qos	x		x					
set host-lu-qos			x					
show qos-schedule	x		x					
set qos-schedule			x					
delete all-qos-setting			x	x				
show qos-bandwidth-limit	x	x	x					
set qos-bandwidth-limit		x	x					
show ca-port-login-host	x		x					
Advanced Copy Management								
show advanced-copy-license	x			x	x	x		
set advanced-copy-license						x		
delete advanced-copy-license						x		
show advanced-copy-policy	x							
set advanced-copy-policy				x				
show advanced-copy-parameters	x			x	x	x		
set advanced-copy-parameters				x				
show snap-data-volume	x							
initialize snap-data-volume		x						
show snap-data-pool	x				x			
delete snap-data-pool-volume		x						
show advanced-copy-sessions	x				x			
start advanced-copy					x			

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy								
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management	Host Interface Management
stop advanced-copy				x					
show host-port-mode									
set host-port-mode			x						
show rec-path	x			x					
import rec-path				x					
show backup-rec-path-information	x								
export backup-rec-path				x					
convert rec-path				x					
set rec-path-parameters				x					
measure rec-round-trip-time				x					
set rec-round-trip-time				x					
set rec-multiplicity				x					
show rec-buffer	x			x					
set rec-buffer				x					
delete rec-buffer				x					
show rec-disk-buffer	x			x					
create rec-disk-buffer				x					
set rec-disk-buffer				x					
delete rec-disk-buffer				x					
format rec-disk-buffer				x					
release rec-disk-buffer				x					
set rec-path-qos				x					
<b>System Settings</b>									
show date	x			x	x			x	
set date					x				
show ntp	x				x				
set ntp					x				
show storage-system-name	x			x	x			x	
set storage-system-name					x				
show boxid				x					
set boxid				x					
show subsystem-parameters					x				
set subsystem-parameters					x				
show encryption				x	x			x	
set encryption								x	
show sed-authentication	x			x	x			x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy						
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management
set sed-authentication							x
show syslog-notification	x				x		
set syslog-notification					x		
show audit	x						x
set audit							x
show sed-key-machine-name	x			x	x		x
set sed-key-machine-name							x
show sed-key-servers	x			x	x		x
set sed-key-server							x
import ssl-kmip-certificate							x
show sed-key-groups	x			x	x		x
create sed-key-group							x
set sed-key-group							x
delete sed-key-group							x
change sed-key							x
recover sed-key-group		x (*2)					x
show power-synchronization					x		
set power-synchronization					x		
shutdown					x		
show data-reduction	x				x		
set data-reduction					x		
show non-disruptive-storage-migration	x				x		
set non-disruptive-storage-migration					x		
discover external-storage		x					
show external-drive	x	x					
create external-drive		x					
delete external-drive		x					
show external-raid-group	x	x					
create external-raid-group		x					
delete external-raid-group		x					
recover external-raid-group		x					
<b>User Management</b>							
show role					x	x	
create role						x	
set role						x	
delete role						x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy											
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management	Host Interface Management	Volume - Create / Modify	Volume - Delete / Format	
show user-policy				x	x							
set user-policy				x								
show users					x	x						
create user					x							
set user						x						
delete user							x					
show login-users							x	x				
set password	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
initialize all-users									x			
import ssh-public-key									x			
delete ssh-public-key									x			
show maintenance-key									x			
show radius										x		
set radius										x		
Network Management												
show network	x								x			
set network									x			
show firewall									x			
set firewall									x			
show network-stat									x			
test network									x			
show snmp	x								x			
set snmp									x			
show snmp-manager									x			
create snmp-manager									x			
set snmp-manager									x			
delete snmp-manager									x			
show snmp-view									x			
create snmp-view									x			
set snmp-view									x			
delete snmp-view									x			
show snmp-user									x			
create snmp-user									x			
set snmp-user									x			
delete snmp-user									x			
show community-profile									x			

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy							
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management
create community-profile				x				
set community-profile				x				
delete community-profile				x				
show snmp-trap				x				
set snmp-trap				x				
delete snmp-trap				x				
test snmp-trap				x				
export enhanced-mib				x				
show email-notification	x			x				
set email-notification				x				
test email				x				
show event-notification				x				
set event-notification				x				
show lcd-suppress				x				
set lcd-suppress				x				
show smi-s				x				
set smi-s				x				
create ssh-server-key				x				
create ssl-certificate				x				
export ssl-certificate-request				x				
import ssl-certificate				x				
show ssl-version				x				
set ssl-version				x				
show ais-connect				x				x
set ais-connect				x				x
set ais-connect-remote-session				x				
test ais-connect				x				
send ais-connect-log				x				
test ais-connect-event-notification				x				
import ais-ssl-certificate				x				
show ais-communication-log				x				
set remote-support-mode				x				
Performance								
show performance	x							
start performance					x			
stop performance					x			

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy										
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management	Host Interface Management	Volume - Create / Modify	Volume - Delete / Format
show raid-tuning	x										
set raid-tuning		x									
show cache-parameters			x								
set cache-parameters			x								
Event Log Information											
show events										x	
delete events										x	
Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information											
show remote-dir	x										
show controller-firmware	x										x
export log	x										x
show panic-dump											x
export panic-dump											x
show config-information											x
export config-information											x
show disk-error											x
clear disk-error											x
show port-error											x
show bad-data-info	x										
Utility											
show diagnosis	x										
show led	x										
set led	x										
show event-parameters							x				
set event-parameters							x				
show reservation	x				x						
release reservation					x						
show pinned-data	x										
show disk-patrol								x			
set disk-patrol								x			
Storage Cluster											
show storage-cluster-license	x							x			
set storage-cluster-license								x			
delete storage-cluster-license								x			
show tfo-groups	x				x						
create tfo-group					x						

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Policies)

Command name	Policy										
	Firmware Management	Maintenance Information	Security Setting	Authentication / Role	User Management	Storage Management	Copy Session Management	Advanced Copy Management	Host Interface Management	Volume - Delete / Format	Volume - Create / Modify
set tfo-group											
delete tfo-group											
show tfo-pair	x				x						
set tfo-pair					x						
release tfo-pair					x						
recover tfo-pair					x						
forced tfo-group-activate					x						
<b>CLI Environment</b>											
set clienv-force-unlock	x										
set clienv-idle-timeout									x		
logoff/logout/exit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
help	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

\*1: Policies that are required to set some parameters.

\*2: Both the RAID Group Management policy and the Security Setting policy are required to execute this command.

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

# List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

This section shows the default role of each command.

Table 26 List of supported commands (default roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
<b>Storage System Status</b>						
show status	x	x	x		x	x
show enclosure-status	x	x	x		x	x
show fru-ce	x	x	x		x	x
show fru-fe	x	x	x		x	x
show pfm	x	x	x		x	x
show fru-de	x	x	x		x	x
show disks	x	x	x		x	x
show hardware-information	x	x	x		x	x
show power-consumption	x	x	x		x	x
<b>RAID Group Management</b>						
show raid-groups	x	x	x		x	x
show raid-group-progress	x	x	x		x	x
create raid-group		x	x			x
set raid-group		x	x			x
delete raid-group		x	x			x
expand raid-group		x	x			x
set global-spare		x	x			x
release global-spare		x	x			x
set dedicated-spare		x	x			x
release dedicated-spare		x	x			x
show eco-mode	x	x	x		x	x
set eco-mode		x	x			x
show eco-schedule	x	x	x		x	x
create eco-schedule		x	x			x
set eco-schedule		x	x			x
delete eco-schedule		x	x			x
show eco-raid-group	x	x	x		x	x
set eco-raid-group		x	x			x
release eco-raid-group		x	x			x
<b>Volume Management</b>						
show volumes	x	x	x		x	x
show volume-progress	x	x	x		x	x
show volume-mapping	x	x	x		x	x
create volume		x	x			x
set volume		x	x			x
delete volume		x	x			x

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
delete all-volumes		X	X			X
format volume		X	X			X
expand volume		X	X			X
set volume-parameters		X	X			X
show migration	X	X	X		X	X
start migration		X	X			X
stop migration		X	X			X
stop external-volume-data-synchronization		X	X			X
show balancing-thin-pro-volumes	X	X	X		X	X
start balancing-thin-pro-volume		X	X			X
stop balancing-thin-pro-volume		X	X			X
start zero-reclamation		X	X			X
stop zero-reclamation		X	X			X
show volume-qos	X	X	X		X	X
set volume-qos		X	X			X
create flexible-tier-volume		X	X			X
set flexible-tier-volume		X	X			X
format flexible-tier-volume		X	X			X
expand flexible-tier-volume		X	X			X
delete flexible-tier-volume	X	X	X		X	X
delete all-flexible-tier-volumes	X	X	X		X	X
start flexible-tier-migration	X	X	X		X	X
show odx-mode		X				X
set odx-mode		X				X
create odx-buffer-volume		X	X			X
set odx-buffer-volume		X	X			X
delete odx-buffer-volume		X	X			X
show extreme-cache	X	X	X			X
set extreme-cache		X				X
release extreme-cache		X				X
set volume-exc		X	X			X
<b>VVOL</b>						
show vvol-mode	X	X	X		X	X
set vvol-mode		X				X
show vvol-task		X				X
<b>Thin Provisioning Pool Management</b>						
show thin-provisioning		X	X			X
set thin-provisioning		X				X
show thin-pro-pools	X	X	X		X	X
show thin-pro-pool-progress	X	X	X		X	X
create thin-pro-pool		X	X			X
set thin-pro-pool		X	X			X
delete thin-pro-pool		X	X			X

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
expand thin-pro-pool		x	x			x
format thin-pro-pool		x	x			x
show eco-thin-pro-pool	x	x	x		x	x
set eco-thin-pro-pool		x	x			x
release eco-thin-pro-pool		x	x			x
Flexible Tier Management						
show flexible-tier-mode		x	x			x
show flexible-tier-pools	x	x	x		x	x
show flexible-tier-pool-progress		x	x			x
delete flexible-tier-pool	x	x	x		x	x
show flexible-tier-sub-pools	x	x	x		x	x
set flexible-tier-sub-pool		x	x			x
stop shrinking-flexible-tier-pool		x	x			x
show ftrpe-migration	x	x	x		x	x
show balancing-flexible-tier-pools	x	x	x		x	x
start balancing-flexible-tier-pool		x	x			x
stop balancing-flexible-tier-pool		x	x			x
Host Interface Management						
show fc-parameters	x	x	x		x	x
set fc-parameters		x	x			x
show iscsi-parameters	x	x	x		x	x
set iscsi-parameters		x	x			x
show host-wwn-names	x	x	x		x	x
create host-wwn-name		x	x			x
set host-wwn-name		x	x			x
delete host-wwn-name		x	x			x
discover host-wwn-names		x	x			x
show host-iscsi-names	x	x	x		x	x
create host-iscsi-name		x	x			x
set host-iscsi-name		x	x			x
delete host-iscsi-name		x	x			x
discover host-iscsi-names		x	x			x
show host-affinity	x	x	x		x	x
set host-affinity		x	x			x
copy host-affinity		x	x			x
release host-affinity		x	x			x
show mapping	x	x	x		x	x
set mapping		x	x			x
copy mapping		x	x			x
release mapping		x	x			x
show host-groups	x	x	x		x	x
create host-group		x	x			x
set host-group		x	x			x

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
delete host-group		X	X			X
show port-groups	X	X	X		X	X
create port-group		X	X			X
set port-group		X	X			X
delete port-group		X	X			X
show lun-groups		X	X			X
create lun-group		X	X			X
set lun-group		X	X			X
copy lun-group		X	X			X
delete lun-group		X	X			X
show host-path-state	X	X	X		X	X
set host-path-state		X	X			X
show host-lu-qos-performance		X	X			X
start host-lu-qos-performance		X	X			X
stop host-lu-qos-performance		X	X			X
show host-response	X	X	X		X	X
set host-response		X	X			X
delete host-response		X	X			X
show host-sense		X	X			X
set host-sense		X	X			X
delete host-sense		X	X			X
show ca-reset-group	X	X	X		X	X
set ca-reset-group		X	X			X
test iscsi-ping		X	X			X
show qos-mode	X	X	X		X	X
set qos-mode		X	X			X
show lu-qos-groups	X	X	X		X	X
set lu-qos-group		X	X			X
delete lu-qos-group		X	X			X
show host-lu-qos	X	X	X		X	X
set host-lu-qos		X	X			X
show qos-schedule	X	X	X		X	X
set qos-schedule		X	X			X
delete all-qos-setting		X	X			X
show qos-bandwidth-limit	X	X	X		X	X
set qos-bandwidth-limit		X	X			X
show ca-port-login-host	X	X	X		X	X
Advanced Copy Management						
show advanced-copy-license	X	X	X		X	X
set advanced-copy-license		X				X
delete advanced-copy-license		X				X
show advanced-copy-policy	X	X	X		X	X
set advanced-copy-policy		X	X			X

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
show advanced-copy-parameters	x	x	x		x	x
set advanced-copy-parameters		x	x			x
show snap-data-volume	x	x	x		x	x
initialize snap-data-volume		x	x			x
show snap-data-pool	x	x	x		x	x
delete snap-data-pool-volume		x	x			x
show advanced-copy-sessions	x	x	x		x	x
start advanced-copy		x	x			x
stop advanced-copy		x	x			x
show host-port-mode		x	x			x
set host-port-mode		x	x			x
show rec-path	x	x	x		x	x
import rec-path		x	x			x
show backup-rec-path-information	x	x	x		x	x
export backup-rec-path		x	x			x
convert rec-path		x	x			x
set rec-path-parameters		x	x			x
measure rec-round-trip-time		x	x			x
set rec-round-trip-time		x	x			x
set rec-multiplicity		x	x			x
show rec-buffer	x	x	x		x	x
set rec-buffer		x	x			x
delete rec-buffer		x	x			x
show rec-disk-buffer	x	x	x		x	x
create rec-disk-buffer		x	x			x
set rec-disk-buffer		x	x			x
delete rec-disk-buffer		x	x			x
format rec-disk-buffer		x	x			x
release rec-disk-buffer		x	x			x
set rec-path-qos		x	x			x
<b>System Settings</b>						
show date	x	x	x		x	x
set date		x				x
show ntp	x	x	x		x	x
set ntp		x				x
show storage-system-name	x	x	x		x	x
set storage-system-name		x				x
show boxid		x	x			x
set boxid		x	x			x
show subsystem-parameters		x				x
set subsystem-parameters		x				x
show encryption		x	x		x	x
set encryption		x			x	

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
show sed-authentication	x	x	x		x	x
set sed-authentication		x			x	
show syslog-notification	x	x	x		x	x
set syslog-notification		x				x
show audit	x	x	x		x	x
set audit					x	
show sed-key-machine-name	x	x	x		x	x
set sed-key-machine-name		x			x	
show sed-key-servers	x	x	x		x	x
set sed-key-server		x			x	
import ssl-kmip-certificate		x			x	
show sed-key-groups	x	x	x		x	x
create sed-key-group		x			x	
set sed-key-group		x			x	
delete sed-key-group		x			x	
change sed-key		x			x	
recover sed-key-group		x			x	
show power-synchronization		x				x
set power-synchronization		x				x
shutdown		x				x
show data-reduction	x	x	x		x	x
set data-reduction		x				x
show non-disruptive-storage-migration	x	x	x		x	x
set non-disruptive-storage-migration		x				x
discover external-storage		x	x			x
show external-drive	x	x	x		x	x
create external-drive		x	x			x
delete external-drive		x	x			x
show external-raid-group	x	x	x		x	x
create external-raid-group		x	x			x
delete external-raid-group		x	x			x
recover external-raid-group		x	x			x
<b>User Management</b>						
show role		x		x		
create role		x		x		
set role		x		x		
delete role		x		x		
show user-policy		x		x		
set user-policy		x		x		
show users		x		x		
create user		x		x		
set user		x		x		
delete user		x		x		

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
show login-users		x		x		
set password	x	x	x	x	x	x
initialize all-users		x		x		
import ssh-public-key		x		x		
delete ssh-public-key		x		x		
show maintenance-key		x		x		
show radius		x		x		
set radius		x		x		
<b>Network Management</b>						
show network	x	x	x		x	x
set network		x				x
show firewall		x				x
set firewall		x				x
show network-stat		x				x
test network		x				x
show snmp	x	x	x		x	x
set snmp		x				x
show snmp-manager		x				x
create snmp-manager		x				x
set snmp-manager		x				x
delete snmp-manager		x				x
show snmp-view		x				x
create snmp-view		x				x
set snmp-view		x				x
delete snmp-view		x				x
show snmp-user		x				x
create snmp-user		x				x
set snmp-user		x				x
delete snmp-user		x				x
show community-profile		x				x
create community-profile		x				x
set community-profile		x				x
delete community-profile		x				x
show snmp-trap		x				x
set snmp-trap		x				x
delete snmp-trap		x				x
test snmp-trap		x				x
export enhanced-mib		x				x
show email-notification	x	x	x		x	x
set email-notification		x				x
test email		x				x
show event-notification		x				x
set event-notification		x				x

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
show lcd-suppress		x				x
set lcd-suppress		x				x
show smi-s		x				x
set smi-s		x				x
create ssh-server-key		x				x
create ssl-certificate		x				x
export ssl-certificate-request		x				x
import ssl-certificate		x				x
show ssl-version		x				x
set ssl-version		x				x
show ais-connect		x				x
set ais-connect		x				x
set ais-connect-remote-session		x				x
test ais-connect		x				x
send ais-connect-log		x				x
test ais-connect-event-notification		x				x
import ais-ssl-certificate		x				x
show ais-communication-log		x				x
set remote-support-mode		x				x
Performance and Tuning						
show performance	x	x	x		x	x
start performance		x				x
stop performance		x				x
show raid-tuning	x	x	x		x	x
set raid-tuning		x	x			x
show cache-parameters		x	x			x
set cache-parameters		x	x			x
Event Log Information						
show events		x			x	x
delete events		x			x	x
Maintenance Operation and Maintenance Information						
show remote-dir	x	x	x		x	x
show controller-firmware	x	x	x		x	x
export log	x	x	x		x	x
show panic-dump		x			x	x
export panic-dump		x			x	x
show config-information		x			x	x
export config-information		x			x	x
show disk-error		x			x	x
clear disk-error		x			x	x
show port-error		x			x	x
show bad-data-info	x	x	x		x	x

## B. List of Supported Commands

### List of Supported Commands (Default Roles)

Command name	Default role					
	Monitor	Admin	Storage Admin	Account Admin	Security Admin	Maintainer
<b>Utility</b>						
show diagnosis	x	x	x		x	x
show led	x	x	x		x	x
set led	x	x	x		x	x
show event-parameters		x				x
set event-parameters		x				x
show reservation	x	x	x		x	x
release reservation		x	x			x
show pinned-data	x	x	x		x	x
show disk-patrol		x				x
set disk-patrol		x				x
<b>Storage Cluster</b>						
show storage-cluster-license	x	x	x		x	x
set storage-cluster-license		x				x
delete storage-cluster-license		x				x
show tfo-groups	x	x	x		x	x
create tfo-group		x	x			x
set tfo-group		x	x			x
delete tfo-group		x	x			x
show tfo-pair	x	x	x		x	x
set tfo-pair		x	x			x
release tfo-pair		x	x			x
recover tfo-pair		x	x			x
forced tfo-group-activate		x	x			x
<b>CLI Environment</b>						
set clienv-force-unlock	x	x	x		x	x
set clienv-idle-timeout		x				x
logoff/logout/exit	x	x	x	x	x	x
help	x	x	x	x	x	x

## C. Status List

---

This appendix describes status meanings.

### General Status

---

The meaning of each general status is described below.

Table 27 List of general statuses

Status	Description
Empty	The ETERNUS DX is not defined or is not installed.
Normal	The ETERNUS DX is in normal state.
Pinned Data	Pinned data exists.
Unused	A component is undefined.
Warning	A component requires preventive maintenance.
Maintenance	The ETERNUS DX is under maintenance.
Error	A component with an error exists.
Loop Down	The ETERNUS DX is in BackEnd Down status.
Not Ready	A failure is detected in the ETERNUS DX. I/O from the host cannot be received normally.
Subsystem Down	The ETERNUS DX is cannot be used.
Change Assigned CM	Hot expansion and recovery of the CM is required.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

### Component Status

---

The meaning of each component status is described below.

Table 28 List of component statuses

Status	Description
Normal	The component is operating normally.
Warning	The component requires preventive maintenance.
Maintenance	The component is under maintenance.
Error	An error has occurred in the component.
Normal (Inside unused parts)	There is an unused component that is installed in the ETERNUS DX.
Check1	The component is being rebooted.
Undefined	The component is installed, but not used.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

## Drive Status

---

The meaning of each drive status is described below.

Table 29 List of drive statuses

Status	Description
Available	The drive is in normal status. The drive is used in the RAID group.
Available (Predictive Failure)	SMART occurred in a user data drive.
Spare	The drive is an unused hot spare.
Present	The drive is not used (not registered as a RAID group or hot spare), or is waiting for rebuild/copy back.
Readyng	The drive is starting up.
Rebuild/Copyback	Rebuild or copy back is being performed in the drive.
Redundant Copy	A Redundant copy is being performed in the drive.
Not Supported	The drive is not supported. [Example] Drive capacity is insufficient.
Not Exist	The drive cannot be recognized.
Failed Usable	An error involving RAID group failure has occurred in the drive.
Broken	An error has occurred in the drive.
Not Available	The drive is not defined or has not been installed.
Formatting	Quick formatting has just started in the drive.
Not Format	The drive is not formatted.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

## Volume Status

---

The meaning of each volume status is described below.

Table 30 List of volume statuses

Status	Description
Available	The volume is in normal status.
Spare in Use	The RAID group that contains the relevant volume manages redundancy by using the hot spare.
Readyng	The volume is not formatted.
Rebuild	Rebuilding from a failed data disk to the hot spare or to the replaced drive is being performed in the RAID group to which the volume belongs.
Copyback	Copyback is being performed from the hot spare to the new data drive in the RAID group to which the volume belongs.
Redundant Copy	Redundant copy to the hot spare is being performed in the RAID group to which the volume belongs.
Partially Exposed Rebuild	Rebuilding from the first failed data drive to the hot spare or to the replaced disk is being performed in the RAID group to which the volume belongs. This status is displayed only when the RAID type of the RAID group to which the volume belongs is "High Reliability (RAID6)".
Exposed	The RAID group to which the volume belongs lost redundancy due to drive failure.

C. Status List  
Volume Usage Details

Status	Description
Partially Exposed	One of the drive that configure the RAID group to which the volume belongs has failed. This status is displayed only when the type of the RAID group to which the volume belongs is "High Reliability (RAID6)".
Not Ready	The RAID group to which the volume belongs is blocked.
Broken	The volume is broken.
Data Lost	Data in the volume is lost. Reading or writing of data cannot be performed.
Not Available	The volume is not defined or has not been installed.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

## Volume Usage Details

---

The volume usage details are described below.

Table 31 List of volume usage details

Status	Description
Block	User data
VVOL Metadata	VVOL metadata

## Pool Status (TPP/FTRP/FTSP Status)

---

The meaning of each pool status is described below.

Table 32 List of pool statuses

Status	Description
Available	The pool is operating normally.
Maintenance	Forcible recovery of the pool is being performed.
Readyng	All the physical area in the pool is not formatted.
Part Readyng	Some parts of the physical area in the pool are not formatted.
Exposed	The pool is available. The "Exposed" status of the pool is displayed not only when the RAID group that configures the pool has lost redundancy and is in "Exposed" status, but also when the RAID group maintains redundancy in "Spare in Use" status. The "Exposed" status of pool indicates that the RAID group in the pool is not in normal status because of any causes such as the drive failure.
Broken	The pool is broken.
Data Lost	Data in the pool is lost. Reading or writing of data cannot be performed.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

## RAID Group Status

---

The meaning of each RAID group status is described below.

Table 33 List of RAID group statuses

Status	Description
Available	The RAID group is operating normally.
Spare in Use	Rebuilding to the hot spare is complete. The RAID group manages redundancy by using the hot spare.
Readying	The RAID group that is registered as an REC Disk Buffer is not formatted. This status is displayed only for a RAID group that is registered as an REC Disk Buffer.
Rebuild	Rebuilding from a failed data drive to the hot spare or to the replaced drive is being performed in the RAID group.
Copyback	Copyback from the hot spare to the new data drive is being performed in the RAID group.
Redundant Copy	Redundant copy to the hot spare is being performed in the RAID group.
Partially Exposed Rebuild	Rebuilding from the first failed data drive to the hot spare or to the replaced drive is being performed in the RAID group. This status is displayed only when the RAID type of the RAID group is "High Reliability (RAID6)".
Exposed Rebuild	Two of the data drive for the RAID group have failed. Rebuilding from the first failed data drive to the hot spare or to the replaced drive is being performed. In addition, all the hot spares have already been used. As a result, the second failed data drive is waiting for the hot spare to become available. This status is displayed only when the RAID type of the RAID group is "High Reliability (RAID6)".
Exposed	The RAID group lost redundancy due to drive failure.
Partially Exposed	One of the drive that configure the RAID group has failed. This status is displayed only when the type of the RAID group is "High Reliability (RAID6)".
No Disk Path	The RAID group is blocked.
SED Locked	The RAID group is blocked. If an SED authentication key cannot be obtained from the key server, "SED Locked" is displayed.
Broken	The RAID group is broken.
Unknown	A status other than the ones listed above.

## Key Status

---

The meaning of each key status is described below.

Table 34 List of key statuses

Status	Description
Normal	A valid key is registered for the SEDs. The key is in normal state.
Expiration	An expired key is registered in the SED. The key has expired, but a new key can be obtained from the server.
Not Acquired	The required key for starting key server management is not obtained. The allocation of the Master server and the Slave server to the key group has been deleted.
Key Server Error	The network between the ETERNUS DX and the key server is in normal status, but no SED key is stored in the key server.
Network Error	The key cannot be obtained due to a network error between the ETERNUS DX and the key server.

C. Status List  
Key Server Status

Status	Description
Modifying	A RAID group in which the key is being modified exists in the key group. "RAID group of which key is modifying" indicates the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key is being updated manually from GUI or CLI</li> <li>• The key is automatically being updated because it expired</li> <li>• Updating of the key stopped due to an error</li> <li>• SEDs are maintained while a network error occurs when the security level is "Low"</li> </ul>
Unregistered Server Certificate	The "SSL / KMIP Certificate" (key server certification) is not registered in the ETERNUS DX. Communication between the ETERNUS DX and the key server cannot be performed.
Expired Server Certificate	The "SSL / KMIP Certificate" (key server certification) has expired. Communication between the ETERNUS DX and the key server cannot be performed.
No SSL Certificate	An SSL certificate (*1) for the ETERNUS DX has not been created. Communication between the ETERNUS DX and the key server cannot be performed.

\*1: "Self-signed SSL certificate" or "SSL server certificate"

## Key Server Status

The meaning of each key server status is described below.

Table 35 List of key server statuses

Status	Description
Normal	The communication between the ETERNUS DX and the key server is normal. The key can be obtained successfully. The key server is in normal state.
Setting	"Setting" indicates the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The "SSL / KMIP Certificate" (key server certification) or SSL certificate (*1) is not registered.</li> <li>• The network between the ETERNUS DX and the key server is normal, but connection to the key server is forbidden.</li> </ul>
Network Error	The network between the ETERNUS DX and the key server is not connected normally.
Key Acquisition Failure	The key that is requested from the ETERNUS DX does not exist in the key server.
Key Server Error	An error due to a failure other than key acquisition failure is detected.
Internal Error	Communication to the key server could not be performed due to an internal failure of the ETERNUS DX.

\*1: "Self-signed SSL certificate" or "SSL server certificate"

## D. Default Value List

The default values for commands are shown below.

Table 36 List of the default values for RAID group management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
RAID group		
create raid-group	assigned-cm	auto
Eco-mode management		
set eco-mode	mode	disable
create eco-schedule	event-type	every-day

Table 37 List of the default values for volume management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Volume		
create volume	attention	80%
	allocation	thin
set volume	alua	follow-host-response
Flexible Tier Volume		
create flexible-tier-volume	attention	80%
	allocation	thin
	type	default
set flexible-tier-volume	alua	follow-host-response
ODX Buffer Volume		
create odx-buffer-volume	attention	80%
	allocation	thin
Extreme Cache		
set extreme-cache	initial-caching-threshold	1
	caching-threshold	5
	monitoring-io	read

Table 38 List of the default values for Thin Provisioning management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Thin Provisioning Pool		
create thin-pro-pool	warning	90%
	attention	75%
	assigned-cm	auto
	encryption	disable
	expand thin-pro-pool	assigned-cm

Table 39 List of the default values for Flexible Tier management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Flexible Tier Pool		
set flexible-tier-sub-pool	assigned-cm	auto

## D. Default Value List

Table 40 List of the default values for host interface management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Host Interface Port Parameters		
set fc-parameters	host-affinity	disable
	rate	auto
	loop-id-assign	manual
	loop-id	0x00
	frame-size	2048
	reset-scope	initiator-lun
	reserve-cancel	disable
	rec-line-no	0
	rec-transfer-sync	enable
	rec-transfer-stack	enable
	rec-transfer-consistency	enable
	rec-transfer-through	enable
	tfo-transfer-mode	enable

## D. Default Value List

Command	Parameter	Default value
set iscsi-parameters	multiple-vlan	disable
	additional-ip-function	enable
	host-affinity	disable
	reset-scope	initiator-lun
	reserve-cancel	disable
	ipv4-flag	enable
	ipv6-flag	disable
	link-local-ip	The IP address that is generated from the ETER-NUS DX WWN
	tcp-port	3260
	tcp-window-scale	2
	isns-server	disable
	isns-server-port	3205
	chap	disable
	header-digest	disable
	data-digest	disable
	jumbo-frame	disable
	rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For 1Gbit/s iSCSI, "1gauto"</li> <li>• For 10Gbit/s iSCSI, "10gauto"</li> </ul>
	cmdsn-count	unlimited
	vlan-id	disable
	vlan-id-value	0
	mtu	1300
	bandwidth	400 Mbit/s
	chap-ca	disable
	chap-ra	disable
	rec-line-no	0
	rec-transfer-sync	enable
	rec-transfer-stack	enable
	rec-transfer-consistency	enable
	rec-transfer-through	enable
	tfo-transfer-mode	enable

## D. Default Value List

Command	Parameter	Default value
set host-response	lun-address	prhl-dev
	lun-expand-mode	disable
	symmetric	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the DX8100 S4, "passive"</li> <li>• For the DX8900 S4, "active"</li> </ul>
	tpgs	enable
	tpg-referrals	disable
	prhl-dev-type	no-dev-type
	flat-prhl-dev-type	no-dev-type
	scsi-version	6
	naca	off
	dev-id-type	type3
	product-id	default
	rsv-rsp-status	disable
	lun-mapping	enable
	lun-capacity	enable
	vendor-unique-sense	disable
	monitor-time	25 seconds
	load-balance-rsp-status	unit-attention
	iscsi-disc-rsp	all
	iscsi-rsv-range	system
	rsv-mode-sense	conflict
Host Identifiers (Host Alias)		
create host-wwn-name	host-response-number	0
create host-iscsi-name	host-response-number	0
Host Sense Conversion		
set host-sense	preset	no-conversion
Host Interface Port Reset Group		
set ca-reset-group	group	A reset group is set for all of the host interface ports.

Table 41 List of the default values for Advanced Copy management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Copy Session Management		
set advanced-copy-policy	threshold	information : 50% warning : 70% error : 99%
set advanced-copy-parameters	resolution	x1
	table-size	OMB
	sdpe	1GB
	ec-opc-priority	auto
	warning	80%
	copy-schedule-mode	session-balancing
Remote Equivalent Copy Management		
import rec-path	indicator	enable
export backup-rec-path	indicator	enable

#### D. Default Value List

Command	Parameter	Default value
convert rec-path	indicator	enable
set rec-multiplicity	multiplicity	auto
	priority-level	auto
	copy-schedule-mode	session-balancing
set rec-buffer	buffer-size	128MB
	forwarding-interval	1 second
	halt-wait-timer	15 seconds
	monitoring-time	5 minutes
	io-response-mode	enable
	immed-halt-mode	enable
	high-bandwidth-mode	enable
create rec-disk-buffer	encryption	disable
	assigned-cm	auto
	stripe-depth	64kb

Table 42 List of the default values for user management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
<b>User Policy Settings</b>		
set user-policy	password-length	4
	password-complexity	disable
	password-history	0
	password-min-age	0
	password-max-age	0
	lockout-threshold	0
	lockout-duration	30
create user	function	enable
	enforce-password-policy	no
	enforce-lockout-policy	no
set user	function	enable
	enforce-password-policy	no
	enforce-lockout-policy	no
<b>RADIUS Server Settings</b>		
set radius	primary-port-number	1812
	primary-authentication-mode	chap
	primary-retry-timeout	30 seconds
	secondary-port-number	1812
	secondary-authentication-mode	chap
	secondary-retry-timeout	30 seconds

## D. Default Value List

Table 43 List of the default values for network management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Network Settings		
set network	ip-format	IPv4
	ipv6-set-auto	disable
	master-ip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For MNT ports, "the address assigned by the DHCP server"</li> <li>For RMT and FST ports, "192.168.1.1"</li> </ul>
	slave-ip	Not specified
	master-link-local-ip	The WWN base link local address of the ETERNUS DX
	netmask	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For MNT ports, "the address assigned by the DHCP server"</li> <li>For RMT and FST ports, "255.255.255.0"</li> </ul>
	wake-on-lan	disable
set firewall	http	open
	https	open
	telnet	open
	ssh	open
	maintenance-secure	open
	icmp	open
	snmp	open
	rcil	close
	icmp-redirect	close
test network	port	maintenance
	retry	1
	timeout	5
SNMP		
set snmp	function	disable
	port	maintenance
	authentication-failure	enable
	engine-id	default
	mib-ii-rfc-version	1213
create snmp-user	authentication	enable
	authentication-method	md5
	encryption	enable
	encryption-method	des
set snmp-user	authentication	disable
	authentication-method	md5
	encryption	disable
	encryption-method	des
set snmp-trap	version	v3
	port-number	162
export enhanced-mib	version	v1

## D. Default Value List

Command	Parameter	Default value
E-mail Notifications		
set email-notification	send	disable
	port	maintenance
	port-number	25
	authentication	none
	retry-count	0
	retry-interval	1 second
	timeout	5 seconds
	connection-timeout	5 seconds
	smtp-over-ssl	disable
	partial-mode	disable
	partial-size	64KB
	send-log	disable
	iom-log	enable
	customer-info	enable
Event Notification		
set event-notification	preset	system-default
set lcd-suppress	parts-error	enable
	parts-warning	enable
	disk-error	disable-when-no-hs
	disk-warning	disable-when-no-hs
SMI-S		
set smi-s	function	disable
	performance-information	disable
	ssl-certificate	built-in
SSH/SSL Security		
create ssh-server-key	key-length	2048
create ssl-certificate	key-length	2048
export ssl-certificate-request	csr-filename	server.crt
	key-filename	server.key
	key-length	2048
	indicator	enable
import ssl-certificate	cert-filename	server.crt
	key-filename	server.key
	indicator	enable
AIS connect Settings		
set ais-connect	server-certification	enable

## D. Default Value List

Table 44 List of the default values for system management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
<b>Subsystem Parameters</b>		
set subsystem-parameters	load-balance	enable
	reject-inquiry	disable
	tp-alloc-mode	tpp-balancing
	enforce-checkcode	enable
	copybackless	enable
	turbo-mode	enable
	optimize-af-ssd	enable
	writeback-limit-count	512
	expand-host-mode	disable
	expand-volume-mode	disable
	esf-wwn-mode	disable
<b>Encryption Mode</b>		
set encryption	mode	disable
<b>Power Synchronization</b>		
set power-synchronization	auto-power	disable
	resume-power	disable
	preset	manual
	power-fail-signal	positive
	low-battery-signal	positive
	ups-shutdown-signal	negative
	ups-shutdown	disable
<b>Self-Encrypting Drive (SED) Authentication Setting</b>		
set sed-authentication	execution	no
<b>Syslog Server Settings</b>		
set syslog-notification	server1-function	disable
	server1-port-number	514
	server1-port	maintenance
	server2-function	disable
	server2-port-number	514
	server2-port	maintenance
<b>Audit Log Function Settings</b>		
set audit	server1-port-number	514
	server2-port-number	514
<b>Key Management Server Link Function</b>		
create sed-key-group	security-level	high
	recovery-mode	auto
set sed-key-server	port-number	5696
	port	maintenance
<b>Compression Mode Setting</b>		
set data-reduction	mode	disable
<b>Non-disruptive Storage Migration Function</b>		
create external-drive	inherit-external-lu-info	yes

## D. Default Value List

Table 45 List of the default values for performance management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Performance Information		
start performance	interval	30 seconds
Performance Tuning Parameters		
set raid-tuning	dcmf	1
	disk-tuning	enable
	ordered-cut	400
set cache-parameters	fp	disable
	pl	8
	mwc	-
	psdc	5
	sddc	5
	ss	128
	sds	128
	cache-limit	off
	spmc	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the DX8100 S4, "8"</li> <li>• For the DX8900 S4, "12"</li> </ul>
	exclusive-read-cache	0

Table 46 List of the default values for maintenance operation/information management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Log		
export log	only-disk-log	disable

Table 47 List of the default values for utility management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Other Notifications		
set event-parameters	blink-panel-led	enable
	redundant-copy-led	disable

Table 48 List of the default values for Storage Cluster management commands

Command	Parameter	Default value
Storage Cluster		
set storage-cluster-license	max-tfo-capacity	1pb
create tfo-group	fallback	manual
	failover	auto
	failover-cap-port-linkdown	on
	split-mode	rw
	monitor-interval	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If iSCSI ports are not included in the REC paths between storage systems, "normal"</li> <li>• If iSCSI ports are included in the REC paths between storage systems, "long"</li> </ul>
	volume-uid-mode	keep

## D. Default Value List

Table 49 List of the default values for management commands for CLI original functions

Command	Parameter	Default value
CLI Environment		
set clienv-idle-timeout	timeout	30 minutes

---

FUJITSU Storage  
ETERNUS DX8100 S4/DX8900 S4 Hybrid Storage Systems

ETERNUS CLI User's Guide

P2X0-1211-01ENZ0

Date of issuance: December 2018

Issuance responsibility: FUJITSU LIMITED

---

- The content of this manual is subject to change without notice.
- This manual was prepared with the utmost attention to detail.  
However, Fujitsu shall assume no responsibility for any operational problems as the result of errors, omissions, or the use of information in this manual.
- Fujitsu assumes no liability for damages to third party copyrights or other rights arising from the use of any information in this manual.
- The content of this manual may not be reproduced or distributed in part or in its entirety without prior permission from Fujitsu.

FUJITSU<sup>∞</sup>